

Universitext

VISIT...

LANZAROTE
Caliente.COM

Friedrich Sauvigny

Partial Differential Equations 2

Functional Analytic Methods

With Consideration of Lectures
by E. Heinz



Friedrich Sauvigny
Brandenburgische Technische Universität Cottbus
Fakultät 1, Lehrstuhl Mathematik, insbes. Analysis
Universitätsplatz 3/4
03044 Cottbus
Germany
e-mail: sauvigny@math.tu-cottbus.de

Llibrary of Congress Control Number: 2006929533

Mathematics Subject Classification (2000): 35, 30, 31, 45, 46, 49, 53

ISBN-10 3-540-34461-6 Springer Berlin Heidelberg New York
ISBN-13 978-3-540-34461-2 Springer Berlin Heidelberg New York

This work is subject to copyright. All rights are reserved, whether the whole or part of the material is concerned, specifically the rights of translation, reprinting, reuse of illustrations, recitation, broadcasting, reproduction on microfilm or in any other way, and storage in data banks. Duplication of this publication or parts thereof is permitted only under the provisions of the German Copyright Law of September 9, 1965, in its current version, and permission for use must always be obtained from Springer. Violations are liable for prosecution under the German Copyright Law.

Springer is a part of Springer Science+Business Media
springer.com
© Springer-Verlag Berlin Heidelberg 2006
Printed in Germany

The use of general descriptive names, registered names, trademarks, etc. in this publication does not imply, even in the absence of a specific statement, that such names are exempt from the relevant protective laws and regulations and therefore free for general use.

Cover design: Erich Kirchner, Heidelberg
Typeset by the author using a Springer $\text{\LaTeX}$ macro package
Production: LE- $\text{\TeX}$ Jelonek, Schmidt & Vöckler GbR, Leipzig

Printed on acid-free paper 40/3100YL - 5 4 3 2 1 0

DEDICATED TO

THE MEMORY OF MY PARENTS

PAUL SAUVIGNY UND MARGRET, GEB. MERCKLINGHAUS.

Introduction to Volume 2 – Functional Analytic Methods

In this second volume, FUNCTIONAL ANALYTIC METHODS, we continue our textbook PARTIAL DIFFERENTIAL EQUATIONS OF GEOMETRY AND PHYSICS. From both areas we shall answer central questions such as curvature estimates or eigenvalue problems, for instance. With the title of our textbook we also want to emphasize the pure and applied aspects of partial differential equations. It turns out that the concepts of solutions are permanently extended in the theory of partial differential equations. Here the classical methods do not lose their significance. Besides the n -dimensional theory we equally want to present the two-dimensional theory – so important to our geometric intuition.

We shall solve the differential equations by the continuity method, the variational method or the topological method. The continuity method may be preferred from a geometric point of view, since the stability of the solution is investigated there. The variational method is very attractive from the physical point of view; however, difficult regularity questions for the weak solution appear with this method. The topological method controls the whole set of solutions during the deformation of the problem, and does not depend on uniqueness as does the variational method.

We would like to mention that this textbook is a translated and expanded version of the monograph by *Friedrich Sauvigny: Partielle Differentialgleichungen der Geometrie und der Physik 2 – Funktionalanalytische Lösungsmethoden – Unter Berücksichtigung der Vorlesungen von E.Heinz*, which appeared in Springer-Verlag in 2005.

In Chapter VII we consider – in general – nonlinear operators in Banach spaces. With the aid of Brouwer's degree of mapping from Chapter III we prove Schauder's fixed point theorem in § 1 ; and we supplement Banach's fixed point theorem. In § 2 we define the Leray-Schauder degree for mappings in Banach spaces by a suitable approximation, and we prove its fundamental properties in § 3 . In this section we refer to the lecture [H4] of my academic teacher, Professor Dr. E. Heinz in Göttingen.

Then, by transition to linear operators in Banach spaces, we prove the fundamental solution-theorem of F. Riesz via the Leray-Schauder degree. At the end of this chapter we derive the Hahn-Banach continuation theorem by Zorn's lemma (compare [HS]).

In Chapter VIII on Linear Operators in Hilbert Spaces, we transform the eigenvalue problems of Sturm-Liouville and of H. Weyl for differential operators into integral equations in § 1. Then we consider weakly singular integral operators in § 2 and prove a theorem of I. Schur on iterated kernels. In § 3 we further develop the results from Chapter II, § 6 on the Hilbert space and present the abstract completion of pre-Hilbert-spaces. Bounded linear operators in Hilbert spaces are treated in § 4: The continuation theorem, Adjoint and Hermitian operators, Hilbert-Schmidt operators, Inverse operators, Bilinear forms and the theorem of Lax-Milgram are presented. In § 5 we study the transformation of Fourier-Plancherel as a unitary operator on the Hilbert space $L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$.

Completely continuous, respectively compact operators are studied in § 6 together with weak convergence. The operators with finite square norms represent an important example. The solution-theorem of Fredholm on operator equations in Hilbert spaces is deduced from the corresponding result of F. Riesz in Banach spaces. We particularly apply these results to weakly singular integral operators.

In § 7 we prove the spectral theorem of F. Rellich on completely continuous and Hermitian operators by variational methods. Then we address the Sturm-Liouville eigenvalue problem in § 8 and expand the relevant integral kernels into their eigenfunctions. Following ideas of H. Weyl we treat the eigenvalue problem for the Laplacian on domains in $\mathbb{R}^n$ by the integral equation method in § 9. In this chapter as well, we take a lecture of Professor Dr. E. Heinz into consideration (compare [H3]). For the study of eigenvalue problems we recommend the classical treatise [CH] of R. Courant and D. Hilbert, which has also smoothed the way into modern physics.

We have been guided into functional analysis with the aid of problems concerning differential operators in mathematical physics (compare [He1] and [He2]). The usual content of functional analysis can be taken from the Chapters II §§ 6-8, VII and VIII. Additionally, we investigated the solvability of nonlinear operator equations in Banach spaces. For the spectral theorem of unbounded, selfadjoint operators we refer the reader to the literature.

In our compendium we shall directly construct classical solutions of boundary and initial value problems for linear and nonlinear partial differential equations with the aid of functional analytic methods. By appropriate a priori estimates with respect to the Hölder norm we establish the existence of solutions in classical function spaces.

In Chapter IX, §§ 1-3, we essentially follow the book of I. N. Vekua [V] and solve the Riemann-Hilbert boundary value problem by the integral equation

method. Using the lecture [H6], we present Schauder's continuity method in §§ 4-7 in order to solve boundary value problems for linear elliptic differential equations with n independent variables. Therefore, we completely prove the Schauder estimates.

In Chapter X on weak solutions of elliptic differential equations, we profit from the *Grundlehren* [GT] Chapters 7 and 8 of D. Gilbarg and N. S. Trudinger. Here, we additionally recommend the textbook [Jo] of J. Jost and the compendium [E] by L. C. Evans.

We introduce Sobolev spaces in § 1 and prove the embedding theorems in § 2. Having established the existence of weak solutions in § 3, we show the boundedness of weak solutions by Moser's iteration method in § 4. Then we investigate Hölder continuity of weak solutions in the interior and at the boundary; see §§ 5-7. Restricting ourselves to interesting classes of equations, we can illustrate the methods of proof in a transparent way. Finally, we apply the results to equations in divergence form; see § 8, § 9, and § 10.

In Chapter XI, §§ 1-2, we concisely lay the foundations of differential geometry (compare [BL]) and of the calculus of variations. Then, we discuss the theory of characteristics for nonlinear hyperbolic differential equations in two variables (compare [CH], [G], [H5]) in § 3 and § 4. In particular, we solve the Cauchy initial value problem via Banach's fixed point theorem. In § 6 we present H. Lewy's ingenious proof for the analyticity theorem of S. Bernstein. Here, we would like to refer the reader to the textbook by P. Garabedian [G] as well.

On the basis of Chapter IV from Volume 1, Generalized Analytic Functions, we treat Nonlinear Elliptic Systems in Chapter XII. We give a detailed survey of the results at the beginning of this chapter.

Having presented Jäger's maximum principle in § 1, we develop the general theory in §§ 2-5 from the fundamental treatise of E. Heinz [H7] about nonlinear elliptic systems. An existence theorem for nonlinear elliptic systems is situated in the center, which is gained by the Leray-Schauder degree. In §§ 6-10 we apply the results to differential geometric problems. Here, we introduce conformal parameters into a nonanalytic Riemannian metric by a nonlinear continuity method. We directly establish the necessary a priori estimates which extend to the boundary. Finally, we solve the Dirichlet problem for nonparametric equations of prescribed mean curvature by the uniformization method. For this chapter, one should also study the *Grundlehren* [DHKW], especially Chapter 7, by U. Dierkes and S. Hildebrandt, where the theory of minimal surfaces is presented. With the aid of nonlinear elliptic systems we can also study the Monge-Ampère differential equation, which is not quasilinear any more. This theory has been developed by H. Lewy, E. Heinz and F. Schulz (vgl. [Sc]) in order to solve Weyl's embedding problem.

This textbook PARTIAL DIFFERENTIAL EQUATIONS has been developed from lectures, which I have been giving in the Brandenburgische Technische Univer-

sität at Cottbus since the winter semester 1992/93. The monograph , in part, builds upon the lectures of Professor Dr. E. Heinz, whom I was fortunate to know as his student in Göttingen from 1971 to 1978. As an assistant in Aachen from 1978 to 1983, I very much appreciated the elegant lecture cycles of Professor Dr. G. Hellwig. Since my research visit to Bonn in 1989/90, Professor Dr. S. Hildebrandt has followed my academic activities with his supportive interest. All of them will forever have my sincere gratitude!

My thanks go also to M. Sc. Matthias Bergner for his elaboration of Chapter IX. Dr. Frank Müller has excellently worked out the further chapters, and he has composed the whole $\text{\TeX}$ -manuscript. I am cordially grateful for his great scientific help. Furthermore, I owe to Mrs. Prescott valuable suggestions to improve the style of the language. Moreover, I would like to express my gratitude to the referee of the English edition for his proposal, to add some historical notices and pictures, as well as to Professor Dr. M. Fröhner for his help, to incorporate the graphics into this textbook. Finally, I thank Herrn C. Heine and all the other members of Springer-Verlag for their collaboration and confidence.

Last but not least, I would like to acknowledge gratefully the continuous support of my wife, Magdalene Frewer-Sauvigny in our University Library and at home.

Cottbus, in May 2006

Friedrich Sauvigny

Contents of Volume 2 – Functional Analytic Methods

VII	Operators in Banach Spaces	1
§1	Fixed point theorems	1
§2	The Leray-Schauder degree of mapping	12
§3	Fundamental properties for the degree of mapping	18
§4	Linear operators in Banach spaces	22
§5	Some historical notices to the chapters III and VII	29
VIII	Linear Operators in Hilbert Spaces	31
§1	Various eigenvalue problems	31
§2	Singular integral equations	45
§3	The abstract Hilbert space	54
§4	Bounded linear operators in Hilbert spaces	64
§5	Unitary operators	75
§6	Completely continuous operators in Hilbert spaces	87
§7	Spectral theory for completely continuous Hermitian operators	103
§8	The Sturm-Liouville eigenvalue problem	110
§9	Weyl's eigenvalue problem for the Laplace operator	117
§9	Some historical notices to chapter VIII	125
IX	Linear Elliptic Differential Equations	127
§1	The differential equation $\Delta\phi + p(x, y)\phi_x + q(x, y)\phi_y = r(x, y)$	127
§2	The Schwarzian integral formula	133
§3	The Riemann-Hilbert boundary value problem	136
§4	Potential-theoretic estimates	144
§5	Schauder's continuity method	156
§6	Existence and regularity theorems	161
§7	The Schauder estimates	169
§8	Some historical notices to chapter IX	185

X	Weak Solutions of Elliptic Differential Equations	187
§1	Sobolev spaces	187
§2	Embedding and compactness	201
§3	Existence of weak solutions	208
§4	Boundedness of weak solutions	213
§5	Hölder continuity of weak solutions	216
§6	Weak potential-theoretic estimates	227
§7	Boundary behavior of weak solutions	234
§8	Equations in divergence form	239
§9	Green's function for elliptic operators	245
§10	Spectral theory of the Laplace-Beltrami operator	254
§11	Some historical notices to chapter X	256
XI	Nonlinear Partial Differential Equations	259
§1	The fundamental forms and curvatures of a surface	259
§2	Two-dimensional parametric integrals	265
§3	Quasilinear hyperbolic differential equations and systems of second order (Characteristic parameters)	274
§4	Cauchy's initial value problem for quasilinear hyperbolic differential equations and systems of second order	281
§5	Riemann's integration method	291
§6	Bernstein's analyticity theorem	296
§7	Some historical notices to chapter XI	302
XII	Nonlinear Elliptic Systems	305
§1	Maximum principles for the H -surface system	305
§2	Gradient estimates for nonlinear elliptic systems	312
§3	Global estimates for nonlinear systems	324
§4	The Dirichlet problem for nonlinear elliptic systems	328
§5	Distortion estimates for plane elliptic systems	336
§6	A curvature estimate for minimal surfaces	344
§7	Global estimates for conformal mappings with respect to Riemannian metrics	348
§8	Introduction of conformal parameters into a Riemannian metric	357
§9	The uniformization method for quasilinear elliptic differential equations and the Dirichlet problem	362
§10	An outlook on Plateau's problem	374
§11	Some historical notices to chapter XII	379
	References	383
	Index	385

Contents of Volume 1 – Foundations and Integral Representations

I Differentiation and Integration on Manifolds

- §1 The Weierstraß approximation theorem
- §2 Parameter-invariant integrals and differential forms
- §3 The exterior derivative of differential forms
- §4 The Stokes integral theorem for manifolds
- §5 The integral theorems of Gauß and Stokes
- §6 Curvilinear integrals
- §7 The lemma of Poincaré
- §8 Co-derivatives and the Laplace-Beltrami operator
- §9 Some historical notices to chapter I

II Foundations of Functional Analysis

- §1 Daniell's integral with examples
- §2 Extension of Daniell's integral to Lebesgue's integral
- §3 Measurable sets
- §4 Measurable functions
- §5 Riemann's and Lebesgue's integral on rectangles
- §6 Banach and Hilbert spaces
- §7 The Lebesgue spaces $L^p(X)$
- §8 Bounded linear functionals on $L^p(X)$ and weak convergence
- §9 Some historical notices to chapter II

III Brouwer's Degree of Mapping with Geometric Applications

- §1 The winding number
- §2 The degree of mapping in $\mathbb{R}^n$
- §3 Geometric existence theorems
- §4 The index of a mapping
- §5 The product theorem
- §6 Theorems of Jordan-Brouwer

IV Generalized Analytic Functions

- §1 The Cauchy-Riemann differential equation
- §2 Holomorphic functions in $\mathbb{C}^n$
- §3 Geometric behavior of holomorphic functions in $\mathbb{C}$
- §4 Isolated singularities and the general residue theorem
- §5 The inhomogeneous Cauchy-Riemann differential equation
- §6 Pseudoholomorphic functions
- §7 Conformal mappings
- §8 Boundary behavior of conformal mappings
- §9 Some historical notices to chapter IV

V Potential Theory and Spherical Harmonics

- §1 Poisson's differential equation in $\mathbb{R}^n$
- §2 Poisson's integral formula with applications
- §3 Dirichlet's problem for the Laplace equation in $\mathbb{R}^n$
- §4 Theory of spherical harmonics: Fourier series
- §5 Theory of spherical harmonics in n variables

VI Linear Partial Differential Equations in $\mathbb{R}^n$

- §1 The maximum principle for elliptic differential equations
- §2 Quasilinear elliptic differential equations
- §3 The heat equation
- §4 Characteristic surfaces
- §5 The wave equation in $\mathbb{R}^n$ for $n = 1, 3, 2$
- §6 The wave equation in $\mathbb{R}^n$ for $n \geq 2$
- §7 The inhomogeneous wave equation and an initial-boundary-value problem
- §8 Classification, transformation and reduction of partial differential equations
- §9 Some historical notices to the chapters V and VI

VII

Operators in Banach Spaces

We shall now present methods from the nonlinear functional analysis. In this chapter we build upon our deliberations from Chapter II, §§ 6-8. A detailed account of the contents for this chapter is given in the 'Introduction to Volume 2' above.

§1 Fixed point theorems

Definition 1. *The Banach space $\mathcal{B}$ is a linear normed complete (infinite-dimensional) vector space above the field of real numbers $\mathbb{R}$.*

Example 1. Let the set $\Omega \subset \mathbb{R}^n$ be open, $1 \leq p < +\infty$, $\mathcal{B} := L^p(\Omega)$. We have $f \in L^p(\Omega)$ if and only if $f : \Omega \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ is measurable and

$$\int_{\Omega} |f(x)|^p dx < +\infty$$

holds true. For the element $f \in \mathcal{B}$ we define the norm

$$\|f\| := \left(\int_{\Omega} |f(x)|^p dx \right)^{\frac{1}{p}}.$$

We obtain the *Lebesgue space* with $\mathcal{B}$. The case $p = 2$ reduces to the Hilbert space using the inner product

$$(f, g) := \int_{\Omega} f(x)g(x) dx.$$

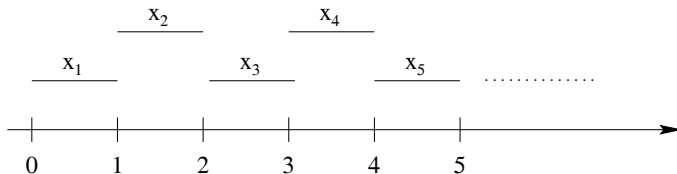
Example 2. (Hilbert's sequence space ℓ^p) For the sequence $x = (x_1, x_2, x_3, \dots)$ we have $x \in \ell^p$ with $1 \leq p < +\infty$ if and only if

$$\sum_{i=1}^{\infty} |x_i|^p < +\infty$$

is fulfilled. By the norm

$$\|x\| := \left(\sum_{i=1}^{\infty} |x_i|^p \right)^{\frac{1}{p}}$$

the set ℓ^p becomes a Banach space. Obviously, we have $\ell^p \subset L^p((0, +\infty))$.



Example 3. (Sobolev spaces) Let the numbers $k \in \mathbb{N}$, $1 \leq p < +\infty$ be given, and $\Omega \subset \mathbb{R}^n$ denotes an open set. The space

$$\mathcal{B} = W^{k,p}(\Omega) := \left\{ f : \Omega \rightarrow \mathbb{R} : D^\alpha f \in L^p(\Omega) \text{ for all } |\alpha| \leq k \right\}$$

with the norm

$$\|f\|_{W^{k,p}(\Omega)} := \left(\sum_{|\alpha| \leq k} \int_{\Omega} |D^\alpha f(x)|^p dx \right)^{\frac{1}{p}}, \quad f \in \mathcal{B},$$

represents a Banach space. Here, the vector $\alpha = (\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n) \in \mathbb{N}_0^n$ indicates a multi-index, and we set

$$|\alpha| := \sum_{i=1}^n \alpha_i \in \mathbb{N}_0 := \mathbb{N} \cup \{0\}.$$

In this context we refer the reader to Chapter X, §1.

Example 4. Finally, we consider the *classical Banach spaces* $C^k(\overline{\Omega})$, $k = 0, 1, 2, 3, \dots$, on a bounded domain $\Omega \subset \mathbb{R}^n$. We have $f \in C^k(\overline{\Omega})$ if and only if

$$\sup_{x \in \Omega} \sum_{|\alpha| \leq n} |D^\alpha f(x)| < +\infty$$

holds true. Here $\alpha \in \mathbb{N}_0^n$ again denotes a multi-index. The vector space $\mathcal{B} := C^k(\overline{\Omega})$ equipped with the norm

$$\|f\|_{C^k(\overline{\Omega})} := \sum_{|\alpha| \leq k} \sup_{x \in \Omega} |D^\alpha f(x)|$$

is complete, and consequently represents a Banach space. Here, we abbreviate

$$D^\alpha f(x) := \frac{\partial^{|\alpha|}}{\partial x_1^{\alpha_1} \dots \partial x_n^{\alpha_n}} f(x), \quad \alpha \in \mathbb{N}_0^n, \quad \mathbb{N}_0 := \mathbb{N} \cup \{0\}.$$

Definition 2. A subset $K \subset \mathcal{B}$ of the Banach space $\mathcal{B}$ is named *convex*, if we have the inclusion $\lambda x + (1 - \lambda)y \in K$ for each two points $x, y \in K$ and each parameter $\lambda \in [0, 1]$.

Remarks:

1. When K is closed, this set is convex if and only if

$$x, y \in K \quad \Rightarrow \quad \frac{1}{2}(x + y) \in K$$

holds true.

2. For a convex set K we have the following implication: Choosing the points $x_1, \dots, x_n \in K$ and the parameters $\lambda_i \geq 0$, $i = 1, \dots, n$ with $\lambda_1 + \dots + \lambda_n = 1$, we infer

$$\sum_{i=1}^n \lambda_i x_i \in K.$$

Definition 3. A subset $E \subset \mathcal{B}$ is called *precompact*, if each sequence

$$\{x_n\}_{n=1,2,\dots} \subset E$$

contains a *Cauchy sequence* as a *subsequence*. If the set E is additionally closed, which means $\{x_n\}_{n \in \mathbb{N}} \subset E$ with $x_n \rightarrow x$ for $n \rightarrow \infty$ in $\mathcal{B}$ implies $x \in E$, we call the set E *compact*.

Example 5. Let $E \subset \mathcal{B}$ be a closed and bounded subset of a finite-dimensional subspace of $\mathcal{B}$. Then the Weierstraß selection theorem yields that E is compact.

Example 6. For infinite-dimensional Banach spaces, bounded and closed subsets are not necessarily compact: Choosing $k \in \mathbb{N}$ we consider the set of sequences $x_k := (\delta_{kj})_{j=1,2,\dots}$ in the space ℓ^2 . As usual, δ_{kj} denotes the Kronecker symbol. Obviously, we have $\|x_k\| = 1$ for $k \in \mathbb{N}$ and

$$\|x_k - x_l\| = \sqrt{2}(1 - \delta_{kl}) \quad \text{for all } k, l \in \mathbb{N}.$$

Therefore, the set $\{x_k\}_{k=1,2,\dots}$ is not precompact.

Example 7. A bounded set in $C^k(\overline{\Omega})$ is compact, if we additionally require a modulus of continuity for the k -th partial derivatives: Consider the set

$$E := \left\{ f \in C^k(\overline{\Omega}) : \begin{array}{l} \|f\|_{C^k(\overline{\Omega})} \leq M; \\ |D^\alpha f(x) - D^\alpha f(y)| \leq M'|x - y|^\vartheta \\ \text{for all } x, y \in \overline{\Omega}, |\alpha| = k \end{array} \right\}$$

with $k \in \mathbb{N}_0$, $M, M' \in (0, +\infty)$ and $\vartheta \in (0, 1]$. By the Theorem of Arzelà-Ascoli we easily deduce that the set

$$E \subset \mathcal{B} := C^k(\overline{\Omega})$$

is compact.

Definition 4. On the subset $E \subset \mathcal{B}$ in the Banach space $\mathcal{B}$ we have defined the mapping $F : E \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$. We call F continuous, if

$$x_n \rightarrow x \quad \text{for } n \rightarrow \infty \quad \text{in } E$$

implies

$$F(x_n) \rightarrow F(x) \quad \text{for } n \rightarrow \infty \quad \text{in } \mathcal{B}.$$

We name F completely continuous (or compact as well), if additionally the set $F(E) \subset \mathcal{B}$ is precompact; this means all sequences $\{x_n\}_{n=1,2,\dots} \subset E$ contain a subsequence $\{x_{n_k}\}_k \subset \{x_n\}_n$, such that $\{F(x_{n_k})\}_{k=1,2,\dots}$ gives a Cauchy sequence in $\mathcal{B}$.

Proposition 1. Let K be a precompact subset of the Banach space $\mathcal{B}$. For all $\varepsilon > 0$ we have finitely many elements $w_1, \dots, w_N \in K$ with $N = N(\varepsilon) \in \mathbb{N}$, such that the covering property

$$K \subset \bigcup_{j=1}^{N(\varepsilon)} \left\{ x \in \mathcal{B} : \|x - w_j\| \leq \frac{\varepsilon}{2} \right\}$$

is fulfilled.

Proof: We choose $w_1 \in K$ and the covering property is already valid if

$$K \subset \left\{ x \in \mathcal{B} : \|x - w_1\| \leq \frac{\varepsilon}{2} \right\}$$

holds true. When this is not the case, there exists a further point $w_2 \in K$ with $\|w_2 - w_1\| > \frac{\varepsilon}{2}$ and we consider the balls

$$\left\{ x \in \mathcal{B} : \|x - w_j\| \leq \frac{\varepsilon}{2} \right\} \quad \text{for } j = 1, 2.$$

If they do not yet cover the set K , there would exist a third point $w_3 \in K$ with $\|w_3 - w_j\| > \frac{\varepsilon}{2}$ for $j = 1, 2$. In case the procedure did not stop, we could find a sequence $\{w_j\}_{j=1,2,\dots} \subset K$ of points satisfying

$$\|w_j - w_i\| > \frac{\varepsilon}{2} \quad \text{for } i = 1, \dots, j-1.$$

This yields a contradiction to the precompactness of the set K . q.e.d.

Proposition 2. Let K be a precompact set in $\mathcal{B}$, and $\varepsilon > 0$ is arbitrarily given. Then we have finitely many elements $w_1, \dots, w_N \in K$ with $N = N(\varepsilon) \in \mathbb{N}$ continuous functions

$$t_i = t_i(x) : \overline{K} \rightarrow \mathbb{R} \in C^0(\overline{K})$$

satisfying

$$t_i(x) \geq 0 \quad \text{and} \quad \sum_{i=1}^N t_i(x) = 1 \quad \text{in } K,$$

such that the following inequality holds true:

$$\left\| \sum_{i=1}^N t_i(x) w_i - x \right\| \leq \varepsilon \quad \text{for all } x \in \overline{K}.$$

Proof: We choose the points $\{w_1, \dots, w_N\} \subset K$ according to Proposition 1. We define the continuous function $\varphi(\tau) : [0, +\infty) \rightarrow [0, +\infty)$ via

$$\varphi(\tau) := \begin{cases} \varepsilon - \tau, & \text{for } 0 \leq \tau \leq \varepsilon \\ 0, & \text{for } \varepsilon \leq \tau < +\infty \end{cases},$$

and obtain

$$\sum_{j=1}^N \varphi(\|x - w_j\|) \geq \frac{\varepsilon}{2} \quad \text{for all } x \in \overline{K}.$$

Consequently, the functions

$$t_i(x) := \frac{\varphi(\|x - w_i\|)}{\sum_{j=1}^N \varphi(\|x - w_j\|)}, \quad x \in \overline{K}, \quad i = 1, \dots, N$$

are well-defined, and we note that

$$t_i \in C^0(\overline{K}, [0, 1]) \quad \text{and} \quad \sum_{i=1}^N t_i(x) = 1 \quad \text{for all } x \in \overline{K}.$$

Now, we can estimate as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} \left\| x - \sum_{i=1}^N t_i(x) w_i \right\| &= \left\| \sum_{i=1}^N t_i(x) (x - w_i) \right\| \\ &\leq \sum_{i=1}^N t_i(x) \|x - w_i\| \\ &\leq \sum_{i=1}^N t_i(x) \varepsilon = \varepsilon \quad \text{for all } x \in \overline{K}. \end{aligned}$$

This gives us the inequality stated.

q.e.d.

Proposition 3. *Let the set $E \subset \mathcal{B}$ be closed and the function $F : E \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$ be completely continuous. To each number $\varepsilon > 0$ then we have $N = N(\varepsilon) \in \mathbb{N}$ elements $w_1, \dots, w_N \in F(E)$ and N continuous functions $F_j : E \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$, $j = 1, \dots, N$ satisfying*

$$F_j(x) \geq 0 \quad \text{and} \quad \sum_{j=1}^N F_j(x) = 1, \quad x \in E,$$

such that the following inequality is valid:

$$\left\| F(x) - \sum_{j=1}^N F_j(x) w_j \right\| \leq \varepsilon \quad \text{for all } x \in E.$$

Proof: The set $K := F(E) \subset \mathcal{B}$ is precompact and we apply Proposition 2. Then we have the elements

$$w_1, \dots, w_N \in F(E)$$

and the nonnegative continuous functions

$$t_i = t_i(x), x \in \overline{K}$$

satisfying $t_1(x) + \dots + t_N(x) = 1$ in $\overline{K}$ for each $\varepsilon > 0$, such that

$$\left\| x - \sum_{i=1}^N t_i(x) w_i \right\| \leq \varepsilon \quad \text{for all } x \in \overline{K}.$$

Setting $F_i(x) := t_i(F(x))$, $x \in E$, we comprehend the statement above.

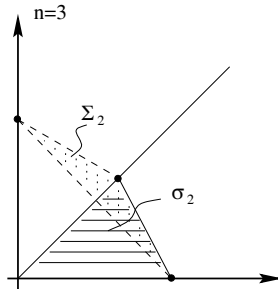
q.e.d.

We now consider the *unit simplex*

$$\Sigma_{n-1} := \left\{ x \in \mathbb{R}^n : x_i \geq 0 \text{ for } i = 1, \dots, n, \sum_{i=1}^n x_i = 1 \right\}$$

and its projection onto the plane $\mathbb{R}^{n-1} \times \{0\} \subset \mathbb{R}^n$

$$\sigma_{n-1} := \left\{ x \in \mathbb{R}^{n-1} : x_i \geq 0 \text{ for } i = 1, \dots, n-1, \sum_{i=1}^{n-1} x_i \leq 1 \right\}.$$



We note that

$$\Sigma_{n-1} = \left\{ (x_1, \dots, x_n) \in \mathbb{R}^n : x_n = 1 - \sum_{i=1}^{n-1} x_i \text{ with } (x_1, \dots, x_{n-1}) \in \sigma_{n-1} \right\}.$$

Proposition 4. (Brouwer's fixed point theorem for the unit simplex)

Each continuous mapping $f : \Sigma_{n-1} \rightarrow \Sigma_{n-1}$ possesses a fixed point.

Proof:

1. The function $f = (f_1, \dots, f_n) : \Sigma_{n-1} \rightarrow \Sigma_{n-1}$ being given, we define the mapping $g(x) = (g_1(x), \dots, g_{n-1}(x)) : \sigma_{n-1} \rightarrow \sigma_{n-1}$ by

$$g_i(x) = g_i(x_1, \dots, x_{n-1}) := f_i \left(x_1, \dots, x_{n-1}, 1 - \sum_{j=1}^{n-1} x_j \right)$$

with $i = 1, \dots, n$. Now the point $\eta = (\eta_1, \dots, \eta_{n-1}) \in \sigma_{n-1}$ is a fixed point of the mapping $g : \sigma_{n-1} \rightarrow \sigma_{n-1}$ if and only if the point

$$\left(\eta_1, \dots, \eta_{n-1}, 1 - \sum_{i=1}^{n-1} \eta_i \right) \in \Sigma_{n-1}$$

is a fixed point of the mapping $f : \Sigma_{n-1} \rightarrow \Sigma_{n-1}$.

2. We consider the following mapping defined in 1., namely

$$g = (g_1, \dots, g_{n-1}) : \sigma_{n-1} \rightarrow \sigma_{n-1}.$$

The adjoint functions

$$h_i = h_i(x_1, \dots, x_{n-1}) := \sqrt{g_i(x_1^2, \dots, x_{n-1}^2)}, \quad i = 1, \dots, n-1$$

are defined on the ball

$$K := \left\{ (x_1, \dots, x_{n-1}) \in \mathbb{R}^{n-1} : x_1^2 + \dots + x_{n-1}^2 \leq 1 \right\}.$$

According to Brouwer's fixed point theorem for the ball (compare Theorem 2 from Chapter III, § 3) the continuous mapping $h = (h_1, \dots, h_{n-1}) : K \rightarrow K$ has a fixed point $\xi = (\xi_1, \dots, \xi_{n-1}) \in K$, more precisely $h(\xi) = \xi$. This implies

$$g_i(\xi_1^2, \dots, \xi_{n-1}^2) = \xi_i^2 \quad \text{for } i = 1, \dots, n-1.$$

With the point $\eta := (\xi_1^2, \dots, \xi_{n-1}^2) \in \sigma_{n-1}$ we finally obtain a fixed point of the mapping $g : \sigma_{n-1} \rightarrow \sigma_{n-1}$ satisfying $g(\eta) = \eta$.

q.e.d.

Theorem 1. (Schauder's fixed point theorem)

Let $A \subset \mathcal{B}$ be a closed and convex subset of the Banach space $\mathcal{B}$. Then each completely continuous mapping $F : A \rightarrow A$ possesses a fixed point $\xi \in A$, more precisely $F(\xi) = \xi$.

Proof:

1. We apply Proposition 3 to the completely continuous mapping F : For each $\varepsilon > 0$ there exist $N = N(\varepsilon) \in \mathbb{N}$ elements $\{w_1, \dots, w_N\} \subset F(A) \subset A$ and N nonnegative continuous functions $F_j : A \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$, $j = 1, \dots, N$ satisfying $F_1(x) + \dots + F_N(x) = 1$ in A , such that

$$\left\| F(x) - \sum_{j=1}^{N(\varepsilon)} F_j(x)w_j \right\| \leq \varepsilon \quad \text{for all } x \in A.$$

We now consider the continuous function

$$g(\lambda) = (g_1(\lambda_1, \dots, \lambda_N), \dots, g_N(\lambda_1, \dots, \lambda_N)) : \Sigma_{N-1} \rightarrow \Sigma_{N-1}$$

with

$$g_j(\lambda_1, \dots, \lambda_N) := F_j \left(\sum_{i=1}^N \lambda_i w_i \right), \quad j = 1, \dots, N.$$

Due to Proposition 4, we have a point $\lambda \in \Sigma_{N-1}$ satisfying $g(\lambda) = \lambda$. This implies

$$F_j \left(\sum_{i=1}^N \lambda_i w_i \right) = \lambda_j \quad \text{for } j = 1, \dots, N.$$

2. According to 1. the mapping

$$F_\varepsilon(x) := \sum_{j=1}^{N(\varepsilon)} F_j(x)w_j$$

possesses the fixed point

$$\xi_\varepsilon := \sum_{i=1}^N \lambda_i w_i.$$

We note that $\|F(x) - F_\varepsilon(x)\| \leq \varepsilon$ for all $x \in A$ holds true and obtain $\|F(\xi_\varepsilon) - \xi_\varepsilon\| \leq \varepsilon$. Taking the zero sequence $\varepsilon = \frac{1}{n}$, $n = 1, 2, \dots$ as our parameter ε , we obtain a sequence of points $\{\xi_n\}_{n=1,2,\dots}$ satisfying

$$\|F(\xi_n) - \xi_n\| \leq \frac{1}{n}, \quad n = 1, 2, \dots$$

Since $F(A)$ is precompact, we can select a subsequence such that $F(\xi_{n_k}) \rightarrow \xi(k \rightarrow \infty)$. We obtain $\xi \in A$ because the set A is closed. Therefore, we deduce

$$\|\xi - \xi_{n_k}\| \leq \|F(\xi_{n_k}) - \xi_{n_k}\| + \|\xi - F(\xi_{n_k})\| \rightarrow 0 \quad \text{for } k \rightarrow \infty.$$

Together with the continuity of F finally follows

$$\xi = \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} F(\xi_{n_k}) = F(\lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} \xi_{n_k}) = F(\xi). \quad \text{q.e.d.}$$

We now provide an application of Theorem 1, namely

Theorem 2. (Leray's eigenvalue problem)

Let $K(s, t) : [a, b] \times [a, b] \rightarrow (0, +\infty)$ be a continuous and positive integral kernel. Then the integral equation

$$\int_a^b K(s, t)x(t) dt = \lambda x(s), \quad a \leq s \leq b,$$

possesses at least one positive eigenvalue λ with the adjoint nonnegative continuous eigenfunction $x(s) \not\equiv 0$.

Proof: We choose the Banach space $\mathcal{B} := C^0([a, b])$ with the norm

$$\|x\| := \max_{a \leq s \leq b} |x(s)|.$$

Then we consider the convex subset

$$A := \left\{ x = x(s) \in C^0([a, b]) : x(s) \geq 0 \text{ in } [a, b], \int_a^b x(s) ds = 1 \right\},$$

which is closed in $\mathcal{B}$. Furthermore, we study the mapping $F : A \rightarrow A$ defined by

$$F(x) := \frac{\int_a^b K(s, t)x(t) dt}{\int_a^b \left(\int_a^b K(s, t)x(t) dt \right) ds}, \quad x \in A.$$

With the aid of the Arzelà-Ascoli theorem one shows that the mapping $F : A \rightarrow A$ is completely continuous. According to Schauder's fixed point theorem there exists a point $\xi \in A$ with $F(\xi) = \xi$. Consequently, we see

$$\int_a^b K(s, t)\xi(t) dt = \left[\int_a^b \left(\int_a^b K(s, t)\xi(t) dt \right) ds \right] \xi(s), \quad s \in [a, b].$$

Therefore, ξ is the desired eigenfunction for the eigenvalue

$$\lambda := \int_a^b \left(\int_a^b K(s, t) \xi(t) dt \right) ds \in (0, +\infty).$$

q.e.d.

In Brouwer's as well as Schauder's fixed point theorem only the existence of a fixed point is established, which is in general not uniquely determined. The subsequent fixed point theorem of S. Banach supplies both the existence and uniqueness of the fixed point. Furthermore, we shall show the continuous dependence of the fixed point from the parameter. The Picard iteration scheme proving the existence of initial value problems with ordinary differential equations already contains the essence of the Banach fixed point theorem in the classical spaces.

Definition 5. The family of operators $T_\lambda : \mathcal{B} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$, $0 \leq \lambda \leq 1$, is called contracting, if we have a constant $\theta \in [0, 1)$ satisfying

$$\|T_\lambda(x) - T_\lambda(y)\| \leq \theta \|x - y\| \quad \text{for all } x, y \in \mathcal{B} \quad \text{und } \lambda \in [0, 1].$$

For each fixed $x \in \mathcal{B}$ let the curve $\{T_\lambda(x)\}_{0 \leq \lambda \leq 1}$ in $\mathcal{B}$ be continuous. If $T := T_\lambda : \mathcal{B} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$ for $0 \leq \lambda \leq 1$ is constant, we call the operator T contracting.

Theorem 3. (Banach's fixed point theorem)

Let the family of operators

$$T_\lambda : \mathcal{B} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}, \quad 0 \leq \lambda \leq 1$$

be contracting on the Banach space $\mathcal{B}$. Then we have exactly one point $x_\lambda \in \mathcal{B}$ satisfying $T_\lambda(x_\lambda) = x_\lambda$ for each $\lambda \in [0, 1]$, namely a fixed point of T_λ . Furthermore, the curve

$$[0, 1] \ni \lambda \rightarrow x_\lambda \in \mathcal{B}$$

is continuous.

Proof:

1. We define $y_\lambda := T_\lambda(0)$, $0 \leq \lambda \leq 1$, and set

$$\varrho := \max_{0 \leq \lambda \leq 1} \|y_\lambda\| \in (0, +\infty).$$

On the ball $\mathcal{B}_r := \{x \in \mathcal{B} : \|x\| \leq r\}$ of radius $r := \frac{\varrho}{1-\theta} \in (0, +\infty)$ in the Banach space $\mathcal{B}$ we consider the family of mappings

$$T_\lambda : \mathcal{B}_r \rightarrow \mathcal{B}_r, \quad 0 \leq \lambda \leq 1.$$

Taking $x \in \mathcal{B}_r$ we have

$$\begin{aligned} \|T_\lambda(x)\| &\leq \|T_\lambda(x) - T_\lambda(0)\| + \|T_\lambda(0)\| \\ &\leq \theta \|x\| + \|y_\lambda\| \leq \theta r + \varrho \\ &\leq \theta \frac{\varrho}{1-\theta} + \varrho = r. \end{aligned}$$

2. For $n = 0, 1, 2, \dots$ we consider the *iterated points*

$$x_\lambda^{(n)} := T_\lambda^n(0) = \underbrace{T_\lambda \circ \dots \circ T_\lambda}_{n\text{-times}}(0).$$

Evidently, we have $x_\lambda^{(0)} = 0$ and $x_\lambda^{(1)} = y_\lambda$ for $0 \leq \lambda \leq 1$. Furthermore, we observe

$$x_\lambda^{(n+1)} = x_\lambda^{(n+1)} - x_\lambda^{(0)} = \sum_{k=0}^n \left(x_\lambda^{(k+1)} - x_\lambda^{(k)} \right) = \sum_{k=0}^n \left(T_\lambda^{k+1}(0) - T_\lambda^k(0) \right).$$

Now, we can estimate

$$\begin{aligned} \|T_\lambda^{k+1}(0) - T_\lambda^k(0)\| &\leq \theta \|T_\lambda^k(0) - T_\lambda^{k-1}(0)\| \\ &\leq \dots \leq \theta^k \|T_\lambda(0) - T_\lambda^0(0)\| \\ &= \theta^k \|y_\lambda\|, \quad 0 \leq \lambda \leq 1, \quad k = 0, 1, 2, \dots \end{aligned}$$

Therefore, the series

$$\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \left(T_\lambda^{k+1}(0) - T_\lambda^k(0) \right)$$

possesses the convergent majorizing function $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \theta^k \|y_\lambda\|$, and the following limit exists:

$$x_\lambda := \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} x_\lambda^{(n+1)} = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \left(T_\lambda^{(k+1)}(0) - T_\lambda^{(k)}(0) \right) \in \mathcal{B}_r.$$

3. The contracting operator $T_\lambda : \mathcal{B} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$ is continuous. Consequently, we see

$$x_\lambda = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} x_\lambda^{(n+1)} = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} T_\lambda \left(x_\lambda^{(n)} \right) = T_\lambda \left(\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} x_\lambda^{(n)} \right) = T_\lambda(x_\lambda)$$

for $0 \leq \lambda \leq 1$. The fixed points x_λ depend continuously on the parameters $\lambda \in [0, 1]$: We choose the parameters $\lambda_1, \lambda_2 \in [a, b]$ and infer

$$\begin{aligned} \|x_{\lambda_1} - x_{\lambda_2}\| &= \|T_{\lambda_1}(x_{\lambda_1}) - T_{\lambda_2}(x_{\lambda_2})\| \\ &\leq \|T_{\lambda_1}(x_{\lambda_1}) - T_{\lambda_1}(x_{\lambda_2})\| + \|T_{\lambda_1}(x_{\lambda_2}) - T_{\lambda_2}(x_{\lambda_2})\| \\ &\leq \theta \|x_{\lambda_1} - x_{\lambda_2}\| + \|T_{\lambda_1}(x_{\lambda_2}) - T_{\lambda_2}(x_{\lambda_2})\| \end{aligned}$$

as well as

$$\|x_{\lambda_1} - x_{\lambda_2}\| \leq \frac{1}{1 - \theta} \|T_{\lambda_1}(x_{\lambda_2}) - T_{\lambda_2}(x_{\lambda_2})\|.$$

4. Finally, we show the uniqueness of the fixed point. Therefore, we consider two elements $x_\lambda, \tilde{x}_\lambda \in \mathcal{B}$ satisfying

$$x_\lambda = T_\lambda(x_\lambda), \quad \tilde{x}_\lambda = T_\lambda(\tilde{x}_\lambda).$$

Then the contraction inequality implies

$$\|x_\lambda - \tilde{x}_\lambda\| = \|T_\lambda(x_\lambda) - T_\lambda(\tilde{x}_\lambda)\| \leq \theta \|x_\lambda - \tilde{x}_\lambda\|$$

and $\|x_\lambda - \tilde{x}_\lambda\| = 0$ or $x_\lambda = \tilde{x}_\lambda$ for $\lambda \in [0, 1]$. q.e.d.

Remark: If the family of operators T_λ depends even differentiably on the parameter $\lambda \in [0, 1]$, we can additionally deduce the differentiable dependence of the fixed point from the parameter as in part 3 of the proof above.

§2 The Leray-Schauder degree of mapping

In the sequel we denote mappings between Banach spaces $\mathcal{B}$ by

$$f : \mathcal{B} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}, \quad x \mapsto f(x).$$

Let $\mathcal{B}$ be a finite-dimensional Banach space with $1 \leq \dim \mathcal{B} = n < +\infty$. Furthermore, we have the bounded open set $\Omega \subset \mathcal{B}$ and $g : \overline{\Omega} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$ denotes a continuous mapping with the property $0 \notin g(\partial\Omega)$. At first, we shall define the degree of mapping $\delta_{\mathcal{B}}(g, \Omega)$.

Let $\{w_1, \dots, w_n\} \subset \mathcal{B}$ constitute a basis of the linear space $\mathcal{B}$. Consider the *coordinate mapping*

$$\psi = \psi_{w_1 \dots w_n}(x) := x_1 w_1 + \dots + x_n w_n, \quad x = (x_1, \dots, x_n) \in \mathbb{R}^n.$$

Evidently, $\psi : \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$ holds true and the inverse mapping $\psi^{-1} : \mathcal{B} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$ exists. We pull back the mapping $g : \overline{\Omega} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$ onto the space $\mathbb{R}^n$. Therefore, we set

$$\Omega_n := \psi^{-1}(\Omega), \quad \partial\Omega_n = \psi^{-1}(\partial\Omega), \quad \overline{\Omega}_n = \psi^{-1}(\overline{\Omega})$$

and consider the mapping

$$g_n := \psi^{-1} \circ g \circ \psi|_{\overline{\Omega}_n} \quad \text{with} \quad 0 \notin g_n(\partial\Omega_n).$$

Parallel to Chapter III, § 2 we can attribute the degree of mapping $d(g_n, \Omega_n)$ to the continuous mapping $g_n : \overline{\Omega}_n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$.

Definition 1. Let the finite-dimensional Banach space $\mathcal{B}$ be given with $n = \dim \mathcal{B} \in \mathbb{N}$, and $\Omega \subset \mathcal{B}$ denotes a bounded open set. Furthermore, the continuous mapping $g : \overline{\Omega} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$ with $0 \notin g(\partial\Omega)$ is prescribed. Then we define the degree of mapping

$$\delta_{\mathcal{B}}(g, \Omega) := d(g_n, \Omega_n).$$

Here, we have set $g_n := \psi^{-1} \circ g \circ \psi|_{\overline{\Omega}_n}$ with $\Omega_n := \psi^{-1}(\Omega)$, and $\psi : \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$ denotes an arbitrary coordinate mapping.

We still have to show the independence of the definition above from the basis chosen: Let $\{w_1^*, \dots, w_n^*\}$ be a further basis of $\mathcal{B}$ with the coordinate mapping

$$\psi^*(x^*) = \psi_{w_1^* \dots w_n^*}^*(x_1^*, \dots, x_n^*) = x_1^* w_1^* + \dots + x_n^* w_n^* : \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$$

and its inverse $\psi^{*-1} : \mathcal{B} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$. On $\Omega_n^* := \psi^{*-1}(\Omega)$ we define the mapping

$$g_n^* := \psi^{*-1} \circ g \circ \psi^*|_{\overline{\Omega_n^*}}, \quad 0 \notin g_n^*(\partial\Omega_n^*).$$

Definition 1 makes sense on account of

Proposition 1. *We have $d(g_n^*, \Omega_n^*) = d(g_n, \Omega_n)$.*

Proof: The mapping

$$\chi := \psi^{-1} \circ \psi^* : \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$$

is linear and nonsingular, and we note that $\psi^* = \psi \circ \chi$. Furthermore, $\chi(\Omega_n^*) = \Omega_n$ holds true and we calculate

$$\begin{aligned} g_n^* = \psi^{*-1} \circ g \circ \psi^* &= (\psi \circ \chi)^{-1} \circ g \circ (\psi \circ \chi) \\ &= \chi^{-1} \circ (\psi^{-1} \circ g \circ \psi) \circ \chi = \chi^{-1} \circ g_n \circ \chi \quad \text{on } \Omega_n^*. \end{aligned}$$

Now, we have a sequence of mappings

$$g_{n,\nu} : \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n \in C^1(\mathbb{R}^n, \mathbb{R}^n)$$

with the following properties (compare Chapter III, § 4):

- (a) The convergence $g_{n,\nu}(x) \rightarrow g_n(x)$ for $\nu \rightarrow \infty$ is uniformly on $\overline{\Omega_n}$.
- (b) For all numbers $\nu \geq \nu_0$ the equation

$$g_{n,\nu}(x) = 0, \quad x \in \overline{\Omega_n}$$

possesses only finitely many solutions $\{x_\nu^{(\mu)}\}_{\mu=1, \dots, p_\nu}$ with the Jacobian

$$J_{g_{n,\nu}}(x_\nu^{(\mu)}) \neq 0 \quad \text{for } \mu = 1, \dots, p_\nu.$$

The mapping $g_{n,\nu}^* := \chi^{-1} \circ g_{n,\nu} \circ \chi$ then satisfies

$$g_{n,\nu}^*(x) \rightarrow g_n^*(x) \quad \text{for } \nu \rightarrow \infty \quad \text{uniformly on } \overline{\Omega_n^*}.$$

The zeroes $g_{n,\nu}^*(y) = 0$, $y \in \overline{\Omega_n^*}$ are evidently given by $\chi^{-1}(x_\nu^{(\mu)}) =: y_\nu^{(\mu)}$ for $\mu = 1, \dots, p_\nu$, and we evaluate

$$J_{g_{n,\nu}^*}(y_\nu^{(\mu)}) = (\det \chi^{-1}) \cdot J_{g_{n,\nu}}(x_\nu^{(\mu)}) \cdot \det \chi = J_{g_{n,\nu}}(x_\nu^{(\mu)}), \quad \mu = 1, \dots, p_\nu.$$

With the aid of Theorem 3 from Chapter III, § 4 we deduce the following identity for all $\nu \geq \nu_0$:

$$\begin{aligned}
d(g_{n,\nu}, \Omega_n) &= \sum_{\mu=1}^{p_\nu} \operatorname{sgn} J_{g_{n,\nu}}(x_\nu^{(\mu)}) \\
&= \sum_{\mu=1}^{p_\nu} \operatorname{sgn} J_{g_{n,\nu}^*}(y_\nu^{(\mu)}) \\
&= d(g_{n,\nu}^*, \Omega_n^*).
\end{aligned}$$

Passing to the limit $\nu \rightarrow \infty$, we have proved the statement above. q.e.d.

Via the pull-back onto the space $\mathbb{R}^n$ we immediately obtain the subsequent Propositions 2-5 from the corresponding results in Chapter III.

Proposition 2. *Let $g_\lambda : \overline{\Omega} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$ with $a \leq \lambda \leq b$ denote a family of continuous mappings, which satisfy the relation $g_\lambda(x) \rightarrow g_{\lambda_0}(x)$ for $\lambda \rightarrow \lambda_0$ uniformly on the set $\overline{\Omega}$. Furthermore, $g_\lambda(x) \neq 0$ for all $x \in \partial\Omega$ and $\lambda \in [a, b]$ holds true. Then we conclude*

$$\delta_{\mathcal{B}}(g_\lambda, \Omega) = \text{const} \quad \text{on } [a, b].$$

Proposition 3. *Let the mapping $g : \overline{\Omega} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$ be continuous and $g(x) \neq 0$ for all $x \in \partial\Omega$. Furthermore, $\delta_{\mathcal{B}}(g, \Omega) \neq 0$ is valid. Then we have a point $z \in \Omega$ with $g(z) = 0$.*

Proposition 4. *Let Ω_1 and Ω_2 be bounded open disjoint subsets of $\mathcal{B}$, and we define $\Omega := \Omega_1 \cup \Omega_2$. Furthermore, $g : \overline{\Omega} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$ denotes a continuous mapping satisfying $0 \notin g(\partial\Omega_i)$ for $i = 1, 2$. Then we have the following identity*

$$\delta_{\mathcal{B}}(g, \Omega) = \delta_{\mathcal{B}}(g, \Omega_1) + \delta_{\mathcal{B}}(g, \Omega_2).$$

Proposition 5. *On the open bounded subset $\Omega \subset \mathcal{B}$ we have defined the continuous function $g : \overline{\Omega} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$. Furthermore, let $\Omega_0 \subset \Omega$ be an open set with the property $g(x) \neq 0$ for all $x \in \overline{\Omega} \setminus \Omega_0$. Then we have*

$$\delta_{\mathcal{B}}(g, \Omega) = \delta_{\mathcal{B}}(g, \Omega_0).$$

In the Banach space $\mathcal{B}$ we have an open bounded subset $\Omega \subset \mathcal{B}$. Furthermore, $\mathcal{B}'$ denotes a finite-dimensional subspace of $\mathcal{B}$ satisfying $\Omega_{\mathcal{B}'} := \Omega \cap \mathcal{B}' \neq \emptyset$. The set $\Omega_{\mathcal{B}'}$ is open and bounded in $\mathcal{B}'$, and we have

$$\partial\Omega_{\mathcal{B}'} \subset \partial\Omega \cap \mathcal{B}', \quad \overline{\Omega}_{\mathcal{B}'} \subset \overline{\Omega} \cap \mathcal{B}'.$$

With the continuous mapping $f : \overline{\Omega} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}'$ we associate the mapping

$$\varphi_f(x) := x - f(x), \quad x \in \overline{\Omega}.$$

For all Banach spaces $\mathcal{B}'' \supset \mathcal{B}'$ we have the inclusion

$$\varphi_f(\overline{\Omega} \cap \mathcal{B}'') \subset \mathcal{B}''.$$

Proposition 6. *Let the Banach spaces $\mathcal{B}' \subset \mathcal{B}'' \subset \mathcal{B}$ be given with*

$$0 < \dim \mathcal{B}' \leq \dim \mathcal{B}'' < +\infty.$$

The open bounded set $\Omega \subset \mathcal{B}$ fulfills $\Omega_{\mathcal{B}'} = \Omega \cap \mathcal{B}' \neq \emptyset$. With the continuous mapping $f : \overline{\Omega} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}'$ we associate $\varphi_f(x) := x - f(x)$, $x \in \overline{\Omega}$ satisfying

$$\varphi_f(x) \neq 0 \quad \text{for all } x \in \partial\Omega.$$

Then we have the equality

$$\delta_{\mathcal{B}'}(\varphi_f, \Omega_{\mathcal{B}'}) = \delta_{\mathcal{B}''}(\varphi_f, \Omega_{\mathcal{B}''}).$$

Proof: On account of $\partial\Omega_{\mathcal{B}'} \subset \partial\Omega$ and $\partial\Omega_{\mathcal{B}''} \subset \partial\Omega$ the degrees of mapping above are well-defined. Without loss of generality we can assume

$$\dim \mathcal{B}'' > \dim \mathcal{B}'.$$

We choose a basis $\{w_1, \dots, w_n\} \subset \mathcal{B}'$ of $\mathcal{B}'$ and extend the vectors to a basis

$$\{w_1, \dots, w_n, w_{n+1}, \dots, w_{n+p}\} \subset \mathcal{B}''$$

of $\mathcal{B}''$; with an integer $p \in \mathbb{N}$. When we represent the mapping $\varphi_f : \mathcal{B}'' \rightarrow \mathcal{B}''$ in the coordinates belonging to the basis $\{w_1, \dots, w_{n+p}\}$, we obtain the mapping $\varphi'' := \varphi_f|_{\mathcal{B}''} : \mathcal{B}'' \rightarrow \mathcal{B}''$ via

$$\begin{aligned} & (x_1 - f_1(x_1, \dots, x_n, x_{n+1}, \dots, x_{n+p}), \dots \\ (x_1, \dots, x_n, x_{n+1}, \dots, x_{n+p}) \mapsto & x_n - f_n(x_1, \dots, x_n, x_{n+1}, \dots, x_{n+p}), \\ & x_{n+1}, \dots, x_{n+p}). \end{aligned}$$

The restricted mapping $\varphi' := \varphi_f|_{\mathcal{B}'} : \mathcal{B}' \rightarrow \mathcal{B}'$ appears with respect to the coordinates $x_1, \dots, x_n$ as follows:

$$(x_1, \dots, x_n) \mapsto (x_1 - f_1(x_1, \dots, x_n, 0, \dots, 0), \dots, x_n - f_n(x_1, \dots, x_n, 0, \dots, 0)).$$

Now, the function φ'' has a zero $x'' = (\overset{\circ}{x}_1, \dots, \overset{\circ}{x}_n, 0, \dots, 0)$ if and only if φ' has a zero $x' = (\overset{\circ}{x}_1, \dots, \overset{\circ}{x}_n)$, and we see $J_{\varphi''}(x'') = J_{\varphi'}(x')$ and consequently

$$\operatorname{sgn} J_{\varphi''}(x'') = \operatorname{sgn} J_{\varphi'}(x').$$

Summing up all zeroes, we finally obtain

$$\delta_{\mathcal{B}''}(\varphi_f, \Omega_{\mathcal{B}''}) = \delta_{\mathcal{B}'}(\varphi_f, \Omega_{\mathcal{B}'}). \quad \text{q.e.d.}$$

Definition 2. *Let Ω be a bounded open set in $\mathcal{B}$ and $\mathcal{B}'$ denotes a linear subspace of $\mathcal{B}$ with $1 \leq \dim \mathcal{B}' < +\infty$ and $\Omega_{\mathcal{B}'} := \Omega \cap \mathcal{B}' \neq \emptyset$. Furthermore, let the function $f : \overline{\Omega} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}'$ be continuous, and we assume*

$$\varphi_f(x) = x - f(x) \neq 0 \quad \text{for all } x \in \partial\Omega.$$

Then we define

$$\delta_{\mathcal{B}}(\varphi_f, \Omega) := \delta_{\mathcal{B}'}(\varphi_f, \Omega_{\mathcal{B}'}).$$

We have to establish independence from the choice of the finite-dimensional subspace $\mathcal{B}'$ now. Let $\mathcal{B}'' \subset \mathcal{B}$ with $1 \leq \dim \mathcal{B}'' < +\infty$ and $\Omega \cap \mathcal{B}'' \neq \emptyset$ be an additional subspace of $\mathcal{B}$. We set $\mathcal{B}^* := \mathcal{B}' \oplus \mathcal{B}''$, such that $\mathcal{B}' \subset \mathcal{B}^*$ and $\mathcal{B}'' \subset \mathcal{B}^*$ holds true. Then Proposition 6 yields

$$\delta_{\mathcal{B}'}(\varphi_f, \Omega_{\mathcal{B}'}) = \delta_{\mathcal{B}^*}(\varphi_f, \Omega_{\mathcal{B}^*}) = \delta_{\mathcal{B}''}(\varphi_f, \Omega_{\mathcal{B}''}).$$

We shall now present the transition to completely continuous mappings $f : \mathcal{B} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$.

Proposition 7. *Let the set $A \subset \mathcal{B}$ be closed and the function $f : A \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$ be completely continuous satisfying*

$$\varphi_f(x) = x - f(x) \neq 0 \quad \text{for all } x \in A.$$

Then we have a number $\varepsilon > 0$, such that $\|\varphi_f(x)\| \geq \varepsilon$ for all $x \in A$ holds true.

Proof: If the statement were violated, we would have a sequence $\{x_n\}_{n=1,2,\dots} \subset A$ satisfying

$$\varphi_f(x_n) = x_n - f(x_n) \rightarrow 0 \quad \text{for } n \rightarrow \infty.$$

Since the set $f(A)$ is precompact, there exists a subsequence $\{x_{n_k}\}_{k=1,2,\dots}$ with $f(x_{n_k}) \rightarrow x^* \in \mathcal{B}$ for $k \rightarrow \infty$. This implies

$$\|x_{n_k} - x^*\| \leq \|x_{n_k} - f(x_{n_k})\| + \|f(x_{n_k}) - x^*\| \rightarrow 0$$

and $x_{n_k} \rightarrow x^* \in A$ for $k \rightarrow \infty$, because A is closed. Finally, we obtain

$$\varphi_f(x^*) = x^* - f(x^*) = \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} (x_{n_k} - f(x_{n_k})) = 0$$

contradicting the assumption $\varphi_f \neq 0$ in A .

q.e.d.

Proposition 3 from § 1 implies the following

Proposition 8. *Let $\Omega \subset \mathcal{B}$ be a bounded open set and $f : \overline{\Omega} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$ a completely continuous function. To each number $\varepsilon > 0$ we then have a linear subspace $\mathcal{B}_\varepsilon$ with $0 < \dim \mathcal{B}_\varepsilon < +\infty$ and $\Omega \cap \mathcal{B}_\varepsilon \neq \emptyset$ as well as a continuous mapping $f_\varepsilon : \overline{\Omega} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}_\varepsilon$ with the property*

$$\|f_\varepsilon(x) - f(x)\| \leq \varepsilon \quad \text{for all } x \in \overline{\Omega}.$$

Proof: With the functions $F_j(x)$, $x \in \overline{\Omega}$, $j = 1, \dots, N$ - defined in § 1, Proposition 3 - and the elements $w_1, \dots, w_N \in \mathcal{B}$ we choose

$$f_\varepsilon(x) := \sum_{j=1}^N F_j(x) w_j.$$

q.e.d.

Definition 3. Let the set $\Omega \subset \mathcal{B}$ be bounded and open. The function $f : \overline{\Omega} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$ may be completely continuous and its associate function $\varphi_f(x) = x - f(x)$ satisfies $0 \notin \varphi_f(\partial\Omega)$. Then the function $g : \Omega \rightarrow \mathcal{B}_g \subset \mathcal{B}$ is called an admissible approximation of f , if the following conditions are fulfilled:

- (a) The function g is continuous.
- (b) The linear subspace $\mathcal{B}_g$ satisfies $1 \leq \dim \mathcal{B}_g < +\infty$ and $\Omega \cap \mathcal{B}_g \neq \emptyset$.
- (c) We have the following inequality

$$\sup_{x \in \overline{\Omega}} \|g(x) - f(x)\| < \inf_{x \in \partial\Omega} \|\varphi_f(x)\|.$$

Proposition 9. The mapping $f : \overline{\Omega} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$ fulfills the assumptions of Definition 3, and $g : \overline{\Omega} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}_g$ as well as $h : \overline{\Omega} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}_h$ are two admissible approximations of f . Then we have

$$\delta_{\mathcal{B}}(\varphi_g, \Omega) = \delta_{\mathcal{B}}(\varphi_h, \Omega).$$

Proof: We set $\mathcal{B}^* := \mathcal{B}_g \oplus \mathcal{B}_h$. This implies

$$\delta_{\mathcal{B}}(\varphi_g, \Omega) := \delta_{\mathcal{B}_g}(\varphi_g, \Omega_{\mathcal{B}_g}) = \delta_{\mathcal{B}^*}(\varphi_g, \Omega_{\mathcal{B}^*}),$$

and furthermore

$$\delta_{\mathcal{B}}(\varphi_h, \Omega) = \delta_{\mathcal{B}^*}(\varphi_h, \Omega_{\mathcal{B}^*}).$$

We now consider the family of mappings

$$\chi_\lambda(x) = x - (\lambda g(x) + (1 - \lambda)h(x)), \quad x \in \overline{\Omega}, \quad \lambda \in [0, 1].$$

Setting $\eta := \inf_{x \in \partial\Omega} \|\varphi_f(x)\| > 0$ we can estimate as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} \|\chi_\lambda(x) - \varphi_f(x)\| &= \|\lambda(g(x) - f(x)) + (1 - \lambda)(h(x) - f(x))\| \\ &\leq \lambda\|g(x) - f(x)\| + (1 - \lambda)\|h(x) - f(x)\| \\ &< \eta \quad \text{for all } x \in \partial\Omega. \end{aligned}$$

Consequently, $\|\chi_\lambda(x)\| > 0$ for all $x \in \partial\Omega$ and all $\lambda \in [0, 1]$ holds true, and Proposition 2 yields $\delta_{\mathcal{B}^*}(\chi_\lambda, \Omega_{\mathcal{B}^*}) = \text{const}$ on $[0, 1]$. We then obtain

$$\delta_{\mathcal{B}}(\varphi_g, \Omega) = \delta_{\mathcal{B}^*}(\chi_1, \Omega_{\mathcal{B}^*}) = \delta_{\mathcal{B}^*}(\chi_0, \Omega_{\mathcal{B}^*}) = \delta_{\mathcal{B}}(\varphi_h, \Omega). \quad \text{q.e.d.}$$

Definition 4. The set $\Omega \subset \mathcal{B}$ is bounded and open, and we assume the function $f : \overline{\Omega} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$ to be completely continuous such that $\varphi(x) = x - f(x) \neq 0$ for all $x \in \partial\Omega$ holds true. Furthermore, let $g : \overline{\Omega} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}_g$ be an admissible approximation of f . Then we call

$$\delta_{\mathcal{B}}(\varphi_f, \Omega) := \delta_{\mathcal{B}}(\varphi_g, \Omega)$$

the Leray-Schauder degree of mapping for (φ_f, Ω) with respect to $x = 0$.

§3 Fundamental properties for the degree of mapping

At first, we collect our previous results: Let $\Omega \subset \mathcal{B}$ denote a bounded open set and $f : \overline{\Omega} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$ a completely continuous function, such that

$$\varphi_f(x) = x - f(x) \neq 0 \quad \text{for all } x \in \partial\Omega.$$

Then we have defined our degree of mapping for φ_f by the following chain of equations:

$$\delta_{\mathcal{B}}(\varphi_f, \Omega) = \delta_{\mathcal{B}}(\varphi_g, \Omega) = \delta_{\mathcal{B}_g}(\varphi_g, \Omega \cap \mathcal{B}_g) = d(\varphi_n, \Omega_n).$$

Here g denotes an admissible approximation, $n = \dim \mathcal{B}_g$, Ω_n is the image of $\Omega \cap \mathcal{B}_g$ with respect to an arbitrary coordinate mapping ψ^{-1} , and $\varphi_n = \psi^{-1} \circ \varphi_g \circ \psi|_{\overline{\Omega}_n}$.

Theorem 1. (Homotopy)

Let $\Omega \subset \mathcal{B}$ be a bounded open set, and let

$$f_\lambda : \overline{\Omega} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}, \lambda \in [a, b]$$

denote a family of mappings with the following properties:

- (a) For all $\lambda \in [a, b]$ the mapping $f_\lambda : \overline{\Omega} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$ is completely continuous.
- (b) To each number $\varepsilon > 0$ we have a quantity $\delta = \delta(\varepsilon) > 0$, such that

$$\|f_{\lambda_1}(x) - f_{\lambda_2}(x)\| \leq \varepsilon \quad \text{for all } \lambda_1, \lambda_2 \in [a, b] \quad \text{with } |\lambda_1 - \lambda_2| \leq \delta$$

holds true for all $x \in \overline{\Omega}$.

- (c) For all $x \in \partial\Omega$ and all $\lambda \in [a, b]$ we have $\varphi_{f_\lambda}(x) = x - f_\lambda(x) \neq 0$.

Then we have the identity $\delta_{\mathcal{B}}(\varphi_{f_\lambda}, \Omega) = \text{const}$, $\lambda \in [a, b]$.

Proof: Let $\lambda_0 \in [a, b]$ be chosen arbitrarily. Then we have a number $\varepsilon > 0$ satisfying $\|\varphi_{f_{\lambda_0}}(x)\| \geq \varepsilon$ for all $x \in \partial\Omega$. We construct an admissible approximation $g : \overline{\Omega} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}_g \subset \mathcal{B}$ of f_{λ_0} , such that

$$\|g(x) - f_{\lambda_0}(x)\| \leq \frac{\varepsilon}{4} \quad \text{for all } x \in \overline{\Omega}.$$

Therefore, we have a number $\delta = \delta(\varepsilon)$ with the following property: All $\lambda \in [a, b]$ with $|\lambda - \lambda_0| \leq \delta$ fulfill

$$\|g(x) - f_\lambda(x)\| \leq \|g(x) - f_{\lambda_0}(x)\| + \|f_{\lambda_0}(x) - f_\lambda(x)\| \leq \frac{\varepsilon}{2}, \quad x \in \overline{\Omega}.$$

On the other hand we have

$$\|\varphi_{f_\lambda}(x)\| \geq \|\varphi_{f_{\lambda_0}}(x)\| - \|\varphi_{f_\lambda}(x) - \varphi_{f_{\lambda_0}}(x)\| \geq \frac{3\varepsilon}{4}, \quad x \in \partial\Omega$$

for $|\lambda - \lambda_0| \leq \delta$. Consequently, g is an admissible approximation for all $\lambda \in [a, b]$ with $|\lambda - \lambda_0| \leq \delta$, and we see

$$\delta_{\mathcal{B}}(\varphi_{f_\lambda}, \Omega) = \delta_{\mathcal{B}}(g, \Omega) \quad \text{for all } \lambda : |\lambda - \lambda_0| \leq \delta.$$

A continuation argument finally yields $\delta_{\mathcal{B}}(\varphi_{f_\lambda}, \Omega) = \text{const}$ on $[a, b]$.

q.e.d.

Theorem 2. (Existence result)

Let the set $\Omega \subset \mathcal{B}$ be bounded and open. The mapping $f : \overline{\Omega} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$ may be completely continuous and satisfies

$$\varphi_f(x) = x - f(x) \neq 0 \quad \text{for all } x \in \partial\Omega.$$

Finally, let the assumption $\delta_{\mathcal{B}}(\varphi_f, \Omega) \neq 0$ hold true. Then the equation $\varphi_f(x) = 0$ possesses a solution $x \in \Omega$, which means the mapping $x \mapsto f(x)$ has a fixed point in the set Ω .

Proof: We consider a sequence of admissible approximations $g_n : \overline{\Omega} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}_{g_n}$ for f satisfying

$$\sup_{x \in \overline{\Omega}} \|g_n(x) - f(x)\| \leq \frac{1}{n}.$$

We then obtain

$$0 \neq \delta_{\mathcal{B}}(\varphi_f, \Omega) = \delta_{\mathcal{B}_{g_n}}(\varphi_{g_n}, \Omega \cap \mathcal{B}_{g_n}), \quad n \geq n_0.$$

According to Proposition 3 from §2 we have a sequence $x_n \in \Omega \cap \mathcal{B}_{g_n}$, $n = n_0, n_0 + 1, \dots$ with

$$0 = \varphi_{g_n}(x_n) = x_n - g_n(x_n).$$

This implies

$$\|x_n - f(x_n)\| = \|x_n - g_n(x_n)\| + \|g_n(x_n) - f(x_n)\| \leq \frac{1}{n}, \quad n \geq n_0,$$

and therefore

$$\inf_{x \in \overline{\Omega}} \|\varphi_f(x)\| = \inf_{x \in \overline{\Omega}} \|x - f(x)\| = 0.$$

Due to §2, Proposition 7 there exists a point $x_0 \in \Omega$ with $\varphi_f(x_0) = x_0 - f(x_0) = 0$. q.e.d.

Definition 1. *Let $\Omega \subset \mathcal{B}$ denote a bounded open set and $f : \overline{\Omega} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$ a completely continuous mapping with the associate mapping $\varphi_f(x) = x - f(x)$, $x \in \overline{\Omega}$. Furthermore, let the domain $G \subset \mathcal{B} \setminus \varphi_f(\partial\Omega)$ be given. Then we define*

$$\delta_{\mathcal{B}}(\varphi_f, \Omega, z) = \delta_{\mathcal{B}}(\varphi_f, \Omega, G) := \delta_{\mathcal{B}}(\varphi_{f-z}, \Omega)$$

for arbitrary points $z \in G$.

When we consider the family of mappings $f_t(x) = f(x) - z(t)$ with the continuous curve $z(t) : [0, 1] \rightarrow G$, Theorem 1 reveals the independence from the choice of the point $z \in G$. Now we could derive a product theorem as in the space $\mathbb{R}^n$, which we do not elaborate here. However, we shall generalize the index-sum formula (compare Theorem 1 from Chapter III, § 4) to completely continuous mappings between Banach spaces.

Proposition 1. *Let $\Omega \subset \mathcal{B}$ be a bounded open set, and the mapping $f : \overline{\Omega} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$ is completely continuous. Furthermore, let $\Omega_0 \subset \Omega$ denote an open subset satisfying $\varphi_f(x) \neq 0$ for all $x \in \overline{\Omega} \setminus \Omega_0$. Then we have*

$$\delta_{\mathcal{B}}(\varphi_f, \Omega) = \delta_{\mathcal{B}}(\varphi_f, \Omega_0).$$

Proof: We observe $\partial\Omega \subset \overline{\Omega} \setminus \Omega_0$ and $\partial\Omega_0 \subset \overline{\Omega} \setminus \Omega_0$, which implies

$$\varphi_f(x) \neq 0 \quad \text{for all } x \in \partial\Omega \cup \partial\Omega_0.$$

Proposition 7 from § 2 yields

$$\|\varphi_f(x)\| \geq \varepsilon > 0 \quad \text{for all } x \in \overline{\Omega} \setminus \Omega_0,$$

because $\overline{\Omega} \setminus \Omega_0$ is closed. Take with $g : \overline{\Omega} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}_g \subset \mathcal{B}$ an admissible approximation satisfying $\Omega_0 \cap \mathcal{B}_g \neq \emptyset$ and $\|g(x) - f(x)\| \leq \frac{\varepsilon}{2}$ for all $x \in \overline{\Omega}$. This implies

$$\|\varphi_g(x)\| \geq \|\varphi_f(x)\| - \|\varphi_f(x) - \varphi_g(x)\| \geq \frac{\varepsilon}{2} \quad \text{for all } x \in \overline{\Omega} \setminus \Omega_0.$$

Together with Proposition 5 from § 2 we obtain

$$\delta_{\mathcal{B}}(\varphi_f, \Omega) = \delta_{\mathcal{B}_g}(\varphi_g, \Omega \cap \mathcal{B}_g) = \delta_{\mathcal{B}_g}(\varphi_g, \Omega_0 \cap \mathcal{B}_g) = \delta_{\mathcal{B}}(\varphi_f, \Omega_0).$$

q.e.d.

Proposition 2. *Let the sets $\Omega_1, \Omega_2 \subset \mathcal{B}$ be bounded open and disjoint. Furthermore, we define $\Omega := \Omega_1 \dot{\cup} \Omega_2$. Then we have*

$$\delta_{\mathcal{B}}(\varphi_f, \Omega) = \delta_{\mathcal{B}}(\varphi_f, \Omega_1) + \delta_{\mathcal{B}}(\varphi_f, \Omega_2).$$

Proof: Take with $g : \overline{\Omega} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}_g \subset \mathcal{B}$ an admissible approximation of f satisfying $\Omega_i \cap \mathcal{B}_g \neq \emptyset$ for $i = 1, 2$. Then $g|_{\overline{\Omega}_i}$ are admissible approximations of $f|_{\overline{\Omega}_i}$, and Proposition 4 from § 2 yields

$$\begin{aligned} \delta_{\mathcal{B}}(\varphi_f, \Omega) &= \delta_{\mathcal{B}_g}(\varphi_g, \Omega \cap \mathcal{B}_g) \\ &= \delta_{\mathcal{B}_g}(\varphi_g, \Omega_1 \cap \mathcal{B}_g) + \delta_{\mathcal{B}_g}(\varphi_g, \Omega_2 \cap \mathcal{B}_g) \\ &= \delta_{\mathcal{B}}(\varphi_f, \Omega_1) + \delta_{\mathcal{B}}(\varphi_f, \Omega_2). \end{aligned}$$

q.e.d.

Definition 2. Let $U = U(z) \subset \mathcal{B}$ denote an open neighborhood of the point z and $f : \overline{U(z)} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$ a completely continuous mapping. The associate mapping may fulfill

$$\varphi_f(x) \neq 0 \quad \text{in} \quad \overline{U(z)} \setminus \{z\} \quad \text{and} \quad \varphi_f(z) = 0.$$

Then we define the index

$$i(\varphi_f, z) := \delta_{\mathcal{B}}(\varphi_f, K) \quad \text{with} \quad K := \{x \in \mathcal{B} : \|x - z\| < \varepsilon\} \subset \subset U(z).$$

Theorem 3. (Index-sum formula)

Let the mapping $f : \overline{\Omega} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$ be completely continuous. Furthermore, the equation $\varphi_f(x) = 0$ admits exactly p different solutions $z_1, \dots, z_p \in \Omega$. Then we have the identity

$$\delta_{\mathcal{B}}(\varphi_f, \Omega) = \sum_{\nu=1}^p i(\varphi_f, z_{\nu}).$$

Proof: Taking $\varepsilon > 0$ sufficiently small, we consider the mutually disjoint balls

$$K_{\nu} := \{x \in \Omega : \|x - z_{\nu}\| < \varepsilon\}, \quad \nu = 1, \dots, p.$$

We apply Proposition 1 and Proposition 2 to $\Omega_0 := \bigcup_{\nu=1}^p K_{\nu} \subset \Omega$ as follows:

$$\delta_{\mathcal{B}}(\varphi_f, \Omega) = \delta_{\mathcal{B}}(\varphi_f, \Omega_0) = \sum_{\nu=1}^p \delta_{\mathcal{B}}(\varphi_f, K_{\nu}) = \sum_{\nu=1}^p i(\varphi_f, z_{\nu}).$$

q.e.d.

We collect our arguments to the following

Theorem 4. (Leray, Schauder)

Let $\Omega \subset \mathcal{B}$ be a bounded open set in the Banach space $\mathcal{B}$, and

$$f_{\lambda} : \overline{\Omega} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}, a \leq \lambda \leq b$$

denotes a family of mappings with the following properties:

- (a) For all $\lambda \in [a, b]$ the functions $f_{\lambda} : \overline{\Omega} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$ are completely continuous.
- (b) To each number $\varepsilon > 0$ we have a quantity $\delta = \delta(\varepsilon) > 0$, such that

$$\|f_{\lambda_1}(x) - f_{\lambda_2}(x)\| \leq \varepsilon \quad \text{for all} \quad \lambda_1, \lambda_2 \in [a, b] \quad \text{with} \quad |\lambda_1 - \lambda_2| \leq \delta$$

holds true for all $x \in \overline{\Omega}$.

- (c) For all $x \in \partial\Omega$ and all $\lambda \in [a, b]$ we have $\varphi_{f_{\lambda}}(x) = x - f_{\lambda}(x) \neq 0$.
- (d) With a special $\lambda_0 \in [a, b]$ the equation

$$\varphi_{f_{\lambda_0}}(x) = x - f_{\lambda_0}(x) = 0, \quad x \in \Omega$$

has finitely many solutions $z_1, \dots, z_p$, $p \in \mathbb{N}$ satisfying

$$\sum_{\nu=1}^p i(\varphi_{f_{\lambda_0}}, z_{\nu}) \neq 0.$$

Then the equation $\varphi_{f_\lambda}(x) = 0$, $x \in \Omega$, possesses at least one solution for each $\lambda \in [a, b]$.

Remark: In Chapter XII we shall prove the existence of solutions for nonlinear elliptic systems with the aid of Theorem 4.

§4 Linear operators in Banach spaces

Let us consider two Banach spaces $\{\mathcal{B}_j, \|\cdot\|_j\}$ for $j = 1, 2$. Then we can define open sets in $\mathcal{B}_j$, $j = 1, 2$ with the aid of the respective norm $\|\cdot\|_j$. In the sequel we study linear continuous operators

$$T : \mathcal{B}_1 \rightarrow \mathcal{B}_2.$$

We call the operator T *linear* if

$$T(\alpha x + \beta y) = \alpha T(x) + \beta T(y) \quad \text{for all } x, y \in \mathcal{B}_1 \text{ and all } \alpha, \beta \in \mathbb{R} \quad (1)$$

is valid. The operator T is *continuous* if and only if T is bounded, or equivalently

$$\|T\| := \sup_{\substack{x \in \mathcal{B}_1 \\ x \neq 0}} \frac{\|Tx\|_2}{\|x\|_1} < +\infty. \quad (2)$$

At first, we note the following

Theorem 1. (Open mapping principle)

The linear continuous operator $T : \mathcal{B}_1 \rightarrow \mathcal{B}_2$ is assumed surjective. Then T is an open mapping, which means the image of each open set is open.

Proof: This is achieved by methods from set-theoretical topology. We refer the reader to [HS], pp. 39-41 (Satz 9.1) and pp. 21-22 (Lemma 4.1 and Satz 4.3).

Theorem 1 immediately implies

Theorem 2. (Inverse operator)

Let the linear continuous operator $T : \mathcal{B}_1 \rightarrow \mathcal{B}_2$ be bijective. Then the inverse operator $T^{-1} : \mathcal{B}_2 \rightarrow \mathcal{B}_1$ is continuous.

We endow the set $\mathcal{B} = \mathcal{B}_1 \times \mathcal{B}_2$ with the norm

$$\|(x, y)\| := \sqrt{\|x\|_1^2 + \|y\|_2^2}, \quad (x, y) \in \mathcal{B} = \mathcal{B}_1 \times \mathcal{B}_2$$

and obtain a Banach space. Therefore, open sets are defined in $\mathcal{B}$. We now define the graph of $T : \mathcal{B}_1 \rightarrow \mathcal{B}_2$ by

$$\text{graph}(T) := \left\{ (x, Tx) \in \mathcal{B}_1 \times \mathcal{B}_2 : x \in \mathcal{B}_1 \right\}. \quad (3)$$

Theorem 3. (Closed graph)

For a linear operator $T : \mathcal{B}_1 \rightarrow \mathcal{B}_2$ we have the equivalence: The operator T is continuous if and only if $\text{graph}(T)$ in $\mathcal{B}_1 \times \mathcal{B}_2$ is closed.

Proof:

‘ $\Rightarrow$ ’ We consider a sequence $\{x_n\}_{n=1,2,\dots} \subset \mathcal{B}_1$ with $x_n \rightarrow x \in \mathcal{B}_1$ for $n \rightarrow \infty$. Since the operator T is continuous, we infer

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} Tx_n = T(\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} x_n) = Tx$$

and consequently

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} (x_n, Tx_n) = (x, Tx) \in \text{graph}(T).$$

Therefore, the graph (T) is closed.

‘ $\Leftarrow$ ’ Let the graph $(T) \subset \mathcal{B}_1 \times \mathcal{B}_2$ now be closed. Then this graph represents a Banach space. The projection

$$\pi : \text{graph}(T) \rightarrow \mathcal{B}_1, \quad (x, Tx) \mapsto x$$

is bijective, linear and continuous. Theorem 2 implies that the mapping $\pi^{-1} : \mathcal{B}_1 \rightarrow \text{graph}(T)$ is continuous as well. The projection

$$\varrho : \mathcal{B}_1 \times \mathcal{B}_2 \rightarrow \mathcal{B}_2, \quad (x, y) \mapsto y$$

is evidently continuous, and we finally obtain the continuity of

$$T = \varrho \circ \pi^{-1} : \mathcal{B}_1 \rightarrow \mathcal{B}_2. \quad \text{q.e.d.}$$

We now choose $\mathcal{B}_1 = \mathcal{B}_2 = \mathcal{B}$ and consider linear continuous operators $T : \mathcal{B} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$. These are injective if and only if $\ker T := T^{-1}(0)$ consists only of $\{0\}$. With the aid of the Leray-Schauder degree of mapping we now shall prove a criterion for the surjectivity of T . In the sequel we denote the open balls in $\mathcal{B}$ by

$$\mathcal{B}_r := \{x \in \mathcal{B} : \|x\| < r\}, \quad 0 < r < +\infty.$$

Their boundaries are described by $\partial\mathcal{B}_r = \{x \in \mathcal{B} : \|x\| = r\}$.

Definition 1. The linear operator $K : \mathcal{B} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$ is called compact or alternatively completely continuous, if the condition that $K(\partial\mathcal{B}_r)$ is precompact holds true for a number $r \in (0, +\infty)$.

Remarks:

1. This definition is independent of the number $r \in (0, +\infty)$.
2. A compact operator is bounded and consequently continuous. Therefore, this definition for linear operators is equivalent to the Definition 4 from §1.

Definition 2. *With the completely continuous operator $K : \mathcal{B} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$ we associate the Fredholm operator*

$$Tx := x - Kx = (Id_{\mathcal{B}} - K)(x), \quad x \in \mathcal{B}. \quad (4)$$

Fundamentally important for the solution of linear operator equations in Banach spaces is the subsequent

Theorem 4. (F. Riesz)

Let $K : \mathcal{B} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$ be a completely continuous operator on the Banach space $\mathcal{B}$ with the associate Fredholm operator

$$Tx := (Id_{\mathcal{B}} - K)(x) = x - Kx, \quad x \in \mathcal{B}.$$

Furthermore, the implication

$$Tx = 0, \quad x \in \mathcal{B} \quad \Rightarrow \quad x = 0$$

holds true, which means the kernel of T consists only of the zero element.

Then the mapping $T : \mathcal{B} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$ is bijective; the inverse operator $T^{-1} : \mathcal{B} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$ for T exists and is bounded on $\mathcal{B}$. Especially, the operator equation

$$Tx = y, \quad x \in \mathcal{B},$$

possesses exactly one solution for all right-hand sides $y \in \mathcal{B}$.

Proof: Choosing $r \in (0, +\infty)$ arbitrarily, we study the operator $Tx = x - Kx$, $x \in \mathcal{B}_r$. According to the assumptions above, we have

$$Tx \neq 0 \quad \text{for all } x \in \partial\mathcal{B}_r.$$

Proposition 7 from § 2 gives us a number $\varepsilon > 0$, such that

$$\|Tx\| \geq \varepsilon r \quad \text{for all } x \in \partial\mathcal{B}_r \quad (5)$$

is correct. We prescribe $y \in \mathcal{B}$ and consider the family of operators

$$T_{\lambda}x := Tx - \lambda y, \quad x \in \mathcal{B}_r, \quad 0 \leq \lambda \leq 1. \quad (6)$$

Choosing r sufficiently large, we obtain

$$\|T_{\lambda}x\| \geq \|Tx\| - \|\lambda y\| \geq \varepsilon r - \|y\| > 0$$

for all $x \in \partial\mathcal{B}_r$ and all $\lambda \in [0, 1]$. At the initial value $\lambda = 0$ the equation $T_{\lambda}x = 0$, $x \in \mathcal{B}_r$ admits exactly one solution, namely the element $x = 0$ with the index $i(T, 0) \neq 0$. According to the Leray-Schauder theorem, our equation $T_{\lambda}x = 0$, $x \in \mathcal{B}_r$ possesses at least one solution for each $\lambda \in [0, 1]$. For the value $\lambda = 1$ especially, we find a solution $x \in \mathcal{B}_r$ satisfying

$$Tx = y.$$

Since the point y has been chosen arbitrarily, the mapping $T : \mathcal{B} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$ is surjective. The injectivity of T immediately follows from $\ker T = \{0\}$. Finally, the inequality

$$\|Tx\| \geq \varepsilon\|x\| \quad \text{for all } x \in \mathcal{B}$$

implies the boundedness of the operator T^{-1} , namely

$$\|T^{-1}y\| \leq \frac{1}{\varepsilon}\|y\| \quad \text{for all } y \in \mathcal{B}. \quad \text{q.e.d.}$$

We call the linear operator $F : \mathcal{B} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ a *linear functional* on the Banach space $\mathcal{B}$. Concluding this chapter we prove the well-known

Theorem 5. (Extension theorem of Hahn-Banach)

Let $\mathcal{L}$ be a subspace of the Banach space $\mathcal{B}$, and $f : \mathcal{L} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ denotes a linear continuous mapping with

$$\|f\| := \sup_{\substack{x \in \mathcal{L} \\ x \neq 0}} \frac{|f(x)|}{\|x\|}.$$

Then we have a continuous linear functional $F : \mathcal{B} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ satisfying $F(x) = f(x)$ for all $x \in \mathcal{L}$ and $\|F\| = \|f\|$.

Definition 3. Let $\mathcal{L} \subset \mathcal{B}$ denote a subspace of the Banach space $\mathcal{B}$. We call the function $p = p(x) : \mathcal{L} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ superlinear (on $\mathcal{L}$) if

$$p(\lambda x) = \lambda p(x) \quad \text{for all } x \in \mathcal{L} \quad \text{and all } \lambda \in [0, +\infty) \quad (7)$$

and

$$p(x + y) \leq p(x) + p(y) \quad \text{for all } x, y \in \mathcal{L} \quad (8)$$

holds true.

Proposition 1. With the assumptions of Theorem 5 the function

$$p(x) := \inf_{y \in \mathcal{L}} \left\{ \|f\| \|x - y\| + f(y) \right\}, \quad x \in \mathcal{B}, \quad (9)$$

is superlinear in $\mathcal{B}$, and we have

$$p(x) \leq \|f\| \|x\|, \quad x \in \mathcal{B}; \quad p(x) \leq f(x), \quad x \in \mathcal{L}. \quad (10)$$

Proof: At first, we note that

$$\begin{aligned} p(x) &:= \inf_{y \in \mathcal{L}} \left\{ \|f\| \|x - y\| + f(y) \right\} \\ &\geq \inf_{y \in \mathcal{L}} \left\{ f(y) + \|f\| \|y\| - \|f\| \|x\| \right\} \\ &\geq -\|f\| \|x\| > -\infty, \quad x \in \mathcal{B}. \end{aligned}$$

We now deduce (7): For $\lambda = 0$, we have

$$p(0x) = \inf_{y \in \mathcal{L}} \left\{ \|f\| \|y\| + f(y) \right\} = 0 = 0p(x) \quad \text{for all } x \in \mathcal{B}.$$

For $\lambda \in (0, +\infty)$, we calculate

$$\begin{aligned} p(\lambda x) &= \inf_{y \in \mathcal{L}} \left\{ \|f\| \|\lambda x - y\| + f(y) \right\} \\ &= \inf_{y \in \mathcal{L}} \left\{ \|f\| \|\lambda x - \lambda y\| + f(\lambda y) \right\} \\ &= \lambda \inf_{y \in \mathcal{L}} \left\{ \|f\| \|x - y\| + f(y) \right\} \\ &= \lambda p(x) \quad \text{for all } x \in \mathcal{B}. \end{aligned}$$

We now deduce (8): Let the elements $x, z \in \mathcal{B}$ be chosen arbitrarily. The number $\varepsilon > 0$ given, there exist elements $y_1, y_2 \in \mathcal{L}$ satisfying

$$\begin{aligned} p(x) &\geq \|f\| \|x - y_1\| + f(y_1) - \varepsilon, \\ p(z) &\geq \|f\| \|z - y_2\| + f(y_2) - \varepsilon. \end{aligned}$$

Therefore, we can estimate as follows

$$\begin{aligned} p(x + z) &= \inf_{y \in \mathcal{L}} \left\{ \|f\| \|x + z - y\| + f(y) \right\} \\ &\leq \|f\| \|x + z - (y_1 + y_2)\| + f(y_1 + y_2) \\ &\leq \|f\| \left\{ \|x - y_1\| + \|z - y_2\| \right\} + f(y_1 + y_2) \\ &= \left\{ \|f\| \|x - y_1\| + f(y_1) \right\} + \left\{ \|f\| \|z - y_2\| + f(y_2) \right\} \\ &\leq p(x) + p(z) + 2\varepsilon. \end{aligned}$$

The transition to the limit $\varepsilon \rightarrow 0$ yields the superlinearity of $p(x)$. We additionally show (10): We especially choose $y = 0$ in the definition of $p(x)$ and obtain

$$p(x) = \inf_{y \in \mathcal{L}} \left\{ \|f\| \|x - y\| + f(y) \right\} \leq \|f\| \|x\| + f(0) = \|f\| \|x\|, \quad x \in \mathcal{B}.$$

Correspondingly, the choice $y = x \in \mathcal{L}$ implies the inequality

$$p(x) = \inf_{y \in \mathcal{L}} \left\{ \|f\| \|x - y\| + f(y) \right\} \leq f(x), \quad x \in \mathcal{L}.$$

This completes the proof.

q.e.d.

We now consider the set of functions, which are superlinear in $\mathcal{L}$, namely

$$\mathcal{F} := \mathcal{S}(\mathcal{L}) := \left\{ p : \mathcal{L} \rightarrow \mathbb{R} : p \text{ is superlinear in } \mathcal{L} \right\}.$$

With respect to the relation

$$p, \tilde{p} \in \mathcal{S}(\mathcal{L}) : \quad p \leq \tilde{p} \quad \Leftrightarrow \quad p(x) \leq \tilde{p}(x) \quad \text{for all } x \in \mathcal{L} \quad (11)$$

this set is *partially ordered* in the following sense:

$$p \leq p; \quad p \leq \tilde{p}, \quad \tilde{p} \leq \hat{p} \Rightarrow p \leq \hat{p}; \quad p \leq \tilde{p}, \quad \tilde{p} \leq p \Rightarrow p = \tilde{p}. \quad (12)$$

A subset $\mathcal{E} \subset \mathcal{F}$ is called *totally ordered*, if each two elements $p, \tilde{p} \in \mathcal{E}$ satisfy at least one of the alternatives $p \leq \tilde{p}$ or $\tilde{p} \leq p$. The element $p_* \in \mathcal{F}$ is called a *lower bound* of $\mathcal{E}$ if

$$p_* \leq p \quad \text{for all } p \in \mathcal{E} \quad (13)$$

is correct.

Proposition 2. *Each totally ordered subset $\mathcal{E} \subset \mathcal{S}(\mathcal{L})$ possesses a lower bound $p_* = p_*(\mathcal{E}) \in \mathcal{S}(\mathcal{L})$.*

Proof: Let $\mathcal{E} = \{p_i\}_{i \in I} \subset \mathcal{S}(\mathcal{L})$ be a totally ordered subset. We choose

$$p_*(x) := \inf_{i \in I} p_i(x), \quad x \in \mathcal{L}$$

as a lower bound and show that p_* is a superlinear function. Here it suffices to prove the inequality (8). Let $x, y \in \mathcal{L}$ be chosen arbitrarily. For each number $\varepsilon > 0$ we then find an index $j \in I$ such that

$$p_*(x) \geq p_j(x) - \varepsilon.$$

Similarly we find an index $k \in I$ satisfying

$$p_*(y) \geq p_k(y) - \varepsilon.$$

Since we have alternatively the inequalities $p_j \geq p_k$ or $p_k \geq p_j$ in $\mathcal{L}$, both are even valid with the same index - say $j \in I$. Therefore, we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} p_*(x+y) &= \inf_{i \in I} p_i(x+y) \leq p_j(x+y) \\ &\leq p_j(x) + p_j(y) \leq p_*(x) + p_*(y) + 2\varepsilon. \end{aligned}$$

The transition to the limit $\varepsilon \rightarrow 0$ yields the statement above. q.e.d.

Definition 4. *In a partially ordered set $\mathcal{F}$ we call $p \in \mathcal{F}$ a *minimal element* of $\mathcal{F}$ if the implication*

$$\tilde{p} \in \mathcal{F} \quad \text{with} \quad \tilde{p} \leq p \quad \Rightarrow \quad \tilde{p} = p \quad (14)$$

is correct. Therefore, we don't have strictly smaller elements for p .

Proposition 3. $p \in \mathcal{S}(\mathcal{L})$ is a minimal element of $\mathcal{S}(\mathcal{L})$ if and only if $p : \mathcal{L} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ is linear.

Proof:

‘ $\Leftarrow$ ’ Let $p(x) : \mathcal{L} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ be linear. Furthermore, we choose $\tilde{p}(x) \in \mathcal{S}(\mathcal{L})$ with $\tilde{p} \leq p$, which implies $\tilde{p}(x) \leq p(x)$ for all $x \in \mathcal{L}$. We then infer $\tilde{p} = p$ immediately. If there existed a point $y \in \mathcal{L}$ with $\tilde{p}(y) < p(y)$, we could deduce

$$0 = \tilde{p}(y - y) \leq \tilde{p}(y) + \tilde{p}(-y) < p(y) + p(-y) = p(y - y) = 0.$$

‘ $\Rightarrow$ ’ The point $a \in \mathcal{L}$ being fixed, we consider the function

$$p_a(x) := \inf_{t \geq 0} \left\{ p(x + ta) - tp(a) \right\}, \quad x \in \mathcal{L}. \quad (15)$$

We easily see $p_a(x) \leq p(x)$, $x \in \mathcal{L}$. Furthermore, we calculate

$$\begin{aligned} p_a(\lambda x) &= \inf_{t \geq 0} \left\{ p(\lambda x + ta) - tp(a) \right\} \\ &= \inf_{t \geq 0} \left\{ p(\lambda x + \lambda ta) - \lambda tp(a) \right\} \\ &= \lambda \inf_{t \geq 0} \left\{ p(x + ta) - tp(a) \right\} \\ &= \lambda p_a(x), \quad x \in \mathcal{L} \end{aligned}$$

for $\lambda > 0$. In the case $\lambda = 0$ this identity is trivially fulfilled.

We now show that $p_a(x)$ also is subject to the inequality (8): Let the points $x, y \in \mathcal{L}$ be chosen. As in the proof of Proposition 1 we select values $t_1 \geq 0$ and $t_2 \geq 0$, where the infima $p_a(x)$ and $p_a(y)$, respectively, can be approximated up to the quantity $\varepsilon > 0$. This implies

$$\begin{aligned} p_a(x + y) &= \inf_{t \geq 0} \left\{ p(x + y + ta) - tp(a) \right\} \\ &\leq p(x + y + (t_1 + t_2)a) - (t_1 + t_2)p(a) \\ &\leq \left\{ p(x + t_1a) - t_1p(a) \right\} + \left\{ p(y + t_2a) - t_2p(a) \right\} \\ &\leq p_a(x) + p_a(y) + 2\varepsilon, \end{aligned}$$

and the passage to the limit $\varepsilon \rightarrow 0$ yields (8). Consequently, the function $p_a(x)$, $x \in \mathcal{L}$, is superlinear. Since $p(x)$ is a minimal element in $\mathcal{S}(\mathcal{L})$ we infer

$$p(x) \leq p_a(x) = \inf_{t \geq 0} \left\{ p(x + ta) - tp(a) \right\} \leq p(x + a) - p(a)$$

or equivalently

$$p(x) + p(a) \leq p(x + a) \leq p(x) + p(a) \quad \text{for all } x, a \in \mathcal{L}.$$

Therefore, $p : \mathcal{L} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ is linear.

q.e.d.

From set theory we need the following

Proposition 4. (Lemma of Zorn)

In the partially ordered set $\mathcal{F}$ we assume that each totally ordered subset $\mathcal{E} \subset \mathcal{F}$ possesses a lower bound. Then a minimal element exists in $\mathcal{F}$.

We now arrive at the

Proof of Theorem 5: With the assumptions of Theorem 5 we consider the superlinear function $p(x)$ from Proposition 1 and define the partially ordered set

$$\mathcal{F} := \left\{ \tilde{p} \in \mathcal{S}(\mathcal{B}) : \tilde{p} \leq p \right\}.$$

According to Proposition 2 each totally ordered subset $\mathcal{E} \subset \mathcal{F}$ possesses a lower bound. From Proposition 4 we infer the existence of a minimal element in $\mathcal{F}$, namely $F : \mathcal{B} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$. Due to Proposition 3 the latter represents a linear function. We note (10) and obtain the following inequalities for all $x \in \mathcal{B}$, namely

$$F(x) \leq p(x) \leq \|f\| \|x\|$$

and

$$-F(x) = F(-x) \leq \|f\| \|-x\| = \|f\| \|x\|.$$

This implies $|F(x)| \leq \|f\| \|x\|$ for all $x \in \mathcal{B}$ and consequently $\|F\| = \|f\|$.

All $x \in \mathcal{L}$ satisfy the inequality $F(x) \leq p(x) \leq f(x)$ and $f : \mathcal{L} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ is linear. Therefore, we infer

$$F(x) = f(x) \quad \text{for all } x \in \mathcal{L}$$

from Proposition 3.

q.e.d.

§5 Some historical notices to the Chapters III and VII

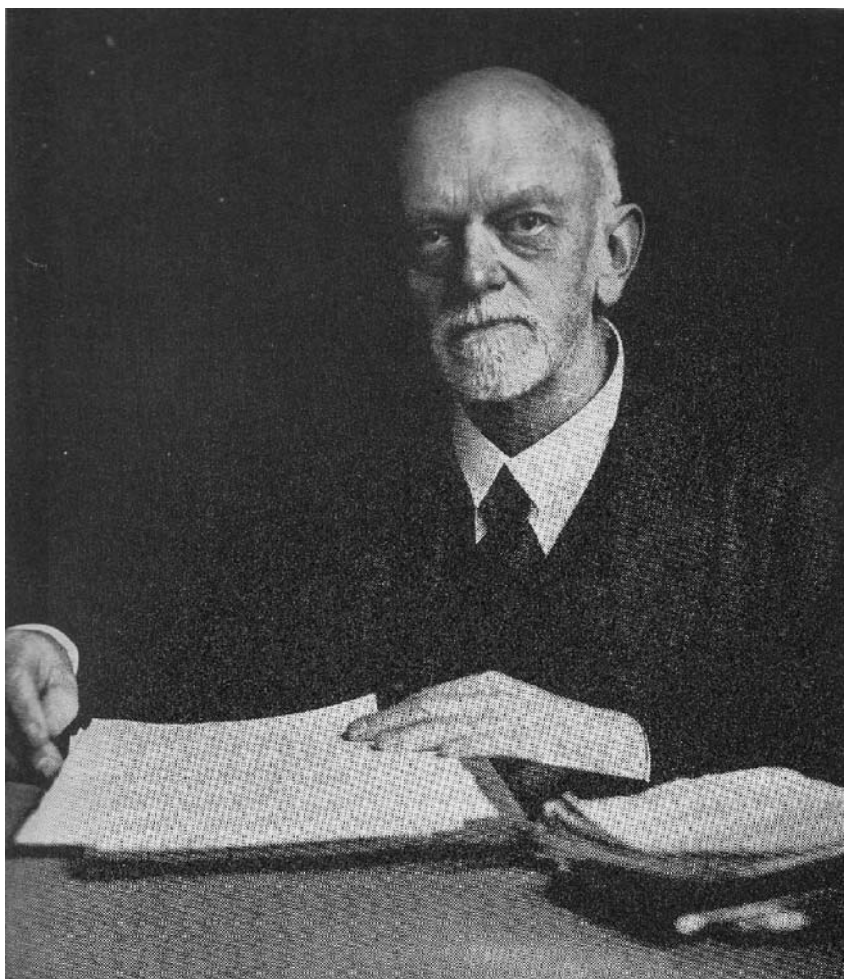
By L. Kronecker, H. Poincaré, and L. Brouwer about 1900, the degree of mapping in Euclidean spaces has been developed in the framework of combinatorial topology. Here we refer the reader to the textbook *Topologie* by P. Alexandroff and H. Hopf from 1935.

The analytical definition for the degree of mapping was invented by E. Heinz in 1959, utilizing A. Sard's lemma on the critical values of differentiable mappings from 1942. Our representation in Chapter III contains the Jordan-Brouwer theorem in $\mathbb{R}^n$, whose proof was given by L. Bers via the product formula. A beautiful approach to Jordan's curve theorem was already invented by E. Schmidt. We would like to recommend B. von Kérékjártó's monograph *Flächentopologie* from 1923 in this context.

The first definition for the degree of mapping in Banach spaces was given by J. Leray and J. Schauder in their joint paper on functional equations from

1934. They discovered that the existence question is independent of the answer to the uniqueness problem. Finally, we would like to mention S.Banach's influential book *Théorie des Opérations Linéaires* from 1932 in connection with §4 of Chapter VII.

PORTRAIT OF D. HILBERT (1862–1943);
taken from page 244 of the biography by *C. Reid: Hilbert*,
Springer-Verlag, Berlin... (1970).



VIII

Linear Operators in Hilbert Spaces

Motivated by the eigenvalue problems for ordinary and partial differential operators, we shall develop the spectral theory for linear operators in Hilbert spaces. Here we transform the unbounded differential operators into singular integral operators which are completely continuous. With his study of integral equations D. Hilbert, together with his students E. Schmidt, I. Schur, and H. Weyl, opened a new era for the Analysis.

§1 Various eigenvalue problems

At first, we consider the resolution of linear systems of equations: For the given matrix $A = (a_{ij})_{i,j=1,\dots,n} \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times n}$ we associate the mapping

$$x \mapsto Ax : \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$$

and the system of equations

$$\sum_{k=1}^n a_{ik}x_k = y_i, \quad i = 1, \dots, n, \quad \text{or equivalently} \quad Ax = y$$

with the right-hand side $y = (y_1, \dots, y_n)^t$. The system $Ax = y$ has a solution for all $y \in \mathbb{R}^n$ if and only if the homogeneous equation $Ax = 0$ possesses only the trivial solution $x = 0$ and we have $x = A^{-1}y$. We remark that the concept of determinants is not necessary in this context.

In Theorem 4 from Chapter VII, § 4 by F. Riesz, we have transferred this solvability theory to linear operators in Banach spaces: Let $\mathcal{B}$ be a real Banach space and $K : \mathcal{B} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$ a linear completely continuous operator with the associate operator $Tx := x - Kx$, $x \in \mathcal{B}$. If the implication

$$Tx = 0 \quad \Rightarrow \quad x = 0$$

holds true, the equation

$$Tx = y, \quad x \in \mathcal{B}$$

possesses exactly one solution for all $y \in \mathcal{B}$.

We now consider the *principal axes transformation of Hermitian matrices*:

Let $A = (a_{ik})_{i,k=1,\dots,n} \in \mathbb{C}^{n \times n}$ denote a Hermitian matrix, which means $a_{ik} = \overline{a_{ki}}$ for all $i, k = 1, \dots, n$. Then A possesses a complete orthonormal system of eigenvectors $\varphi_1, \dots, \varphi_n \in \mathbb{C}^n$ with the real eigenvalues $\lambda_1, \dots, \lambda_n \in \mathbb{R}$, more precisely

$$A\varphi_i = \lambda_i\varphi_i, \quad i = 1, \dots, n,$$

and we have

$$(\varphi_i, \varphi_k) = \delta_{ik}, \quad i, k = 1, \dots, n.$$

Here we have used the inner product $(x, y) := \overline{x^t} \cdot y$. By $\xi_i := (\varphi_i, x)$ we denote the i -th component of $x \in \mathbb{C}^n$ with respect to $(\varphi_1, \dots, \varphi_n)$ which implies

$$x = \sum_{i=1}^n \xi_i \varphi_i.$$

Then we note that

$$Ax = \sum_{i=1}^n \xi_i A\varphi_i = \sum_{i=1}^n \lambda_i \xi_i \varphi_i.$$

We define the diagonal matrix

$$A := \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_1 & 0 & \dots & 0 \\ 0 & \ddots & \ddots & \vdots \\ \vdots & \ddots & \ddots & 0 \\ 0 & \dots & 0 & \lambda_n \end{pmatrix} \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times n}$$

and the unitary matrix $U^{-1} := (\varphi_1, \dots, \varphi_n) \in \mathbb{C}^{n \times n}$. Now we obtain the representation $x = U^{-1}\xi$ with $\xi = (\xi_1, \dots, \xi_n)^t$ and consequently $\xi = Ux$. This implies the equation

$$U \circ A \circ U^{-1} \circ \xi = U \circ A \circ x = U \circ U^{-1} \circ A \circ \xi = A \circ \xi$$

and consequently the *unitary transformation*

$$A = U \circ A \circ U^{-1}.$$

Now we observe $U^{-1} = U^* = \overline{U}^t$, and we calculate the transformation of the associate Hermitian form

$$\begin{aligned}
 \sum_{i,k=1}^n a_{ik} \bar{x}_i x_k &= (x, Ax) = \left(\sum_{i=1}^n (\varphi_i, x) \varphi_i, \sum_{j=1}^n (\varphi_j, x) \lambda_j \varphi_j \right) \\
 &= \sum_{i,j=1}^n \overline{(\varphi_i, x)} (\varphi_j, x) \lambda_j \delta_{ij} \\
 &= \sum_{i=1}^n |(\varphi_i, x)|^2 \lambda_i = \sum_{i=1}^n \lambda_i |\xi_i|^2.
 \end{aligned}$$

In the present chapter we intend to deduce the corresponding theorems for operators in Hilbert spaces. Specializing them to integral operators we shall treat eigenvalue problems for ordinary and partial differential equations.

Example 1. Let the domain of definition

$$\mathcal{D} := \left\{ u = u(x) \in C^2[0, \pi] : u(0) = 0 = u(\pi) \right\}$$

and the differential operator

$$Lu(x) := -u''(x), \quad x \in [0, \pi], \quad \text{for } u \in \mathcal{D}$$

be given. Which numbers $\lambda \in \mathbb{R}$ admit a nontrivial solution of the eigenvalue problem

$$Lu(x) = \lambda u(x), \quad 0 \leq x \leq \pi, \quad u \in \mathcal{D}, \quad (1)$$

satisfying $u \in \mathcal{D}$ and $u \not\equiv 0$?

$\lambda = 0$: We have $u''(x) = 0$ for $x \in [0, \pi]$ and consequently $u(x) = ax + b$ with the constants $a, b \in \mathbb{R}$. The boundary conditions for u yield $0 = u(0) = b$ and $0 = u(\pi) = a\pi + b = a\pi$, and we obtain

$$u(x) \equiv 0, \quad x \in [0, \pi].$$

Therefore, $\lambda = 0$ is not an eigenvalue of (1).

$\lambda < 0$: Setting $\lambda = -k^2$ with $k \in (0, +\infty)$, we rewrite (1) into the form

$$u''(x) - k^2 u(x) = 0, \quad x \in [0, \pi].$$

Evidently, the functions $\{e^{kx}, e^{-kx}\}$ constitute a fundamental system of the differential equation. Taking $u(0) = 0$ into account, we infer

$$u(x) = Ae^{kx} + Be^{-kx} = A(e^{kx} - e^{-kx}) = 2A \sinh(kx).$$

Noting $u(\pi) = 0$, we finally obtain

$$u(x) \equiv 0, \quad x \in [0, \pi].$$

Therefore, negative eigenvalues $\lambda < 0$ of (1) do not exist.

$\lambda > 0$: We now consider $\lambda = k^2$ with a number $k \in (0, +\infty)$. Then (1) is written in the form

$$u''(x) + k^2 u(x) = 0, \quad x \in [0, \pi].$$

The fundamental system is given by $\{\cos(kx), \sin(kx)\}$ and the general solution by

$$u(x) = A \cos(kx) + B \sin(kx), \quad x \in [0, \pi].$$

From $0 = u(0) = A$ we infer $u(x) = B \sin(kx)$ for $x \in [0, \pi]$, and the boundary condition $0 = u(\pi) = B \sin(k\pi)$ implies $k \in \mathbb{N}$. In this way we obtain the eigenvalues $\lambda = k^2$ of (1) with the eigenfunctions

$$u_k(x) = \sin(kx), \quad x \in [0, \pi], \quad k = 1, 2, \dots$$

Example 2. Let the domain

$$G := \left\{ x = (x_1, \dots, x_n) \in \mathbb{R}^n : x_i \in (0, \pi), i = 1, \dots, n \right\} = (0, \pi)^n \subset \mathbb{R}^n$$

be given. On the domain of definition

$$\mathcal{D} := \left\{ u \in C^2(G) \cap C^0(\overline{G}) : u|_{\partial G} = 0 \right\}$$

we define the differential operator

$$Lu(x) := -\Delta u(x) = -\sum_{i=1}^n \frac{\partial^2}{\partial x_i^2} u(x), \quad x \in G.$$

We consider the eigenvalue problem

$$Lu(x) = \lambda u(x), \quad x \in G, \tag{2}$$

for $u \in \mathcal{D}$ and $\lambda \in \mathbb{R}$. In order to solve this problem we propose the *ansatz of separation*

$$u(x) = u(x_1, \dots, x_n) := u_1(x_1) \cdot u_2(x_2) \cdot \dots \cdot u_n(x_n), \quad x \in G.$$

The differential equation (2) becomes

$$-\sum_{i=1}^n u_1(x_1) \cdot \dots \cdot u_{i-1}(x_{i-1}) u_i''(x_i) u_{i+1}(x_{i+1}) \cdot \dots \cdot u_n(x_n) = \lambda u_1(x_1) \cdot \dots \cdot u_n(x_n)$$

and consequently

$$-\sum_{i=1}^n \frac{u_i''(x_i)}{u_i(x_i)} = \lambda, \quad x \in G.$$

We now choose $u_i(x_i) := \sin(k_i x_i)$ with $k_i \in \mathbb{N}$ for $i = 1, \dots, n$, and we obtain

$$-\sum_{i=1}^n \frac{u_i''(x_i)}{u_i(x_i)} = \sum_{i=1}^n k_i^2 = \lambda \in (0, \infty).$$

The solutions of the eigenvalue problem (2) appear as follows:

$$u(x_1, \dots, x_n) := \sin(k_1 x_1) \cdot \dots \cdot \sin(k_n x_n) \quad \text{and} \quad \lambda = k_1^2 + \dots + k_n^2$$

for $k_1, \dots, k_n \in \mathbb{N}$. Normalizing

$$u_{k_1, \dots, k_n}(x_1, \dots, x_n) := \left(\frac{2}{\pi}\right)^{\frac{n}{2}} \sin(k_1 x_1) \cdot \dots \cdot \sin(k_n x_n), \quad x \in G \quad (3)$$

and using the inner product

$$(u, v) := \int_G u(x_1, \dots, x_n) v(x_1, \dots, x_n) dx_1 \dots dx_n \quad u, v \in \mathcal{D},$$

we obtain the orthonormal system of functions

$$(u_{k_1 \dots k_n}, u_{l_1 \dots l_n}) = \delta_{k_1 l_1} \cdot \dots \cdot \delta_{k_n l_n} \quad \text{for} \quad k_1, \dots, k_n, l_1, \dots, l_n \in \mathbb{N}. \quad (4)$$

On account of

$$Lu_{k_1 \dots k_n} = (k_1^2 + \dots + k_n^2) u_{k_1 \dots k_n}$$

and

$$\|u_{k_1 \dots k_n}\|_{L^2(G)}^2 := (u_{k_1 \dots k_n}, u_{k_1 \dots k_n}) = 1$$

for all $k_1 \dots k_n \in \mathbb{N}$ we infer

$$\sup_{u \in \mathcal{D}, \|u\|=1} \|Lu\| \geq \sup_{k_1 \dots k_n \in \mathbb{N}} \|Lu_{k_1 \dots k_n}\| = \sup_{k_1 \dots k_n \in \mathbb{N}} (k_1^2 + \dots + k_n^2) = +\infty. \quad (5)$$

Consequently $L = -\Delta : L^2(G) \rightarrow L^2(G)$ represents an unbounded operator on the Hilbert space $L^2(G)$.

The following question is of central interest: Do the given functions

$$\{u_{k_1 \dots k_n}\}_{k_1 \dots k_n=1,2,\dots}$$

constitute a complete system? Can we expand an arbitrary function into such a series of functions?

We now consider the *Sturm-Liouville eigenvalue problem*:

Let the numbers $c_1, c_2, d_1, d_2 \in \mathbb{R}$ satisfying $c_1^2 + c_2^2 > 0$ and $d_1^2 + d_2^2 > 0$ be prescribed. We choose the linear space

$$\mathcal{D} := \left\{ f \in C^2([a, b], \mathbb{R}) : c_1 f(a) + c_2 f'(a) = 0 = d_1 f(b) + d_2 f'(b) \right\}$$

as our domain of definition, where the numbers $-\infty < a < b < +\infty$ are fixed. With the functions $p = p(x) \in C^1([a, b], (0, +\infty))$ and $q = q(x) \in C^0([a, b], \mathbb{R})$ we define the *Sturm-Liouville operator*

$$Lu(x) := -(p(x)u'(x))' + q(x)u(x), \quad x \in [a, b], \quad \text{for } u \in \mathcal{D}.$$

Proposition 1. *The operator $L : \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}^0([a, b], \mathbb{R})$ is linear and symmetric satisfying*

$$L(\alpha u + \beta v) = \alpha Lu + \beta Lv \quad \text{for all } u, v \in \mathcal{D}, \quad \alpha, \beta \in \mathbb{R}$$

and

$$\int_a^b u(x) (Lv(x)) dx = \int_a^b (Lu(x)) v(x) dx \quad \text{for all } u, v \in \mathcal{D}.$$

Proof: The linearity is evident, and we calculate for $u, v \in \mathcal{D}$ as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} vLu - uLv &= v(-(pu')' + qu) - u(-(pv')' + qv) \\ &= \frac{d}{dx} \left\{ p(x)(u(x)v'(x) - u'(x)v(x)) \right\}, \quad x \in [a, b]. \end{aligned} \quad (6)$$

This implies

$$\int_a^b (vLu - uLv) dx = \left[-p(x)(u(x), u'(x)) \cdot (-v'(x), v(x))^t \right]_a^b = 0,$$

since the vectors $(u(x), u'(x))$ and $(v(x), v'(x))$ are parallel for $x = a$ and $x = b$, respectively; here we take $u, v \in \mathcal{D}$ into account. q.e.d.

We now investigate the eigenvalue problem

$$Lu = \lambda u, \quad u \in \mathcal{D}. \quad (7)$$

Setting

$$(u, v) := \int_a^b u(x)v(x) dx \quad \text{for } u, v \in \mathcal{D},$$

we obtain an orthonormal system of eigenfunctions

$$u_k(x) \in \mathcal{D} \quad \text{with} \quad (u_k, u_l) = \delta_{kl}, \quad k, l \in \mathbb{N}$$

in § 8 satisfying

$$Lu_k = \lambda_k u_k, \quad k = 1, 2, \dots$$

On account of Example 1 we expect the asymptotic behavior

$$-\infty < \lambda_1 \leq \lambda_2 \leq \lambda_3 \leq \dots \rightarrow +\infty \quad (8)$$

for the eigenvalues. Consequently, the operator L is unbounded. We shall derive the expansion into the series

$$f(x) = \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} c_k u_k(x) \quad \text{with} \quad c_k = (u_k, f)$$

for all functions $f \in \mathcal{D}$. At first, we require the

Assumption 0: The equation $Lu = 0$ with $u \in \mathcal{D}$ admits only the trivial solution $u \equiv 0$.

The domain $\mathcal{D}$ is not complete with respect to the norm $\|u\| := \sqrt{(u, u)}$ for $u \in \mathcal{D}$, and the operator L is unbounded in general. Therefore, we cannot prove the existence of the inverse L^{-1} by the Theorem of F. Riesz. With the *Assumption 0* however, we shall construct the inverse with the aid of *Green's function for the Sturm-Liouville operator* $K = K(x, y)$. Having achieved this, we shall transform (7) equivalently into an eigenvalue problem for the bounded operator L^{-1} , namely

$$L^{-1}u = \frac{1}{\lambda}u, \quad u \in \mathcal{D}. \quad (9)$$

For the construction of the inverse we consider the ordinary differential equation

$$\begin{aligned} Lu(x) &= -(p(x)u'(x))' + q(x)u(x) \\ &= -p(x)u''(x) - p'(x)u'(x) + q(x)u(x) \\ &= f(x), \quad a \leq x \leq b. \end{aligned} \quad (10)$$

The homogeneous equation $Lu = 0$ possesses a fundamental system $\alpha = \alpha(x)$, $\beta = \beta(x)$ satisfying

$$L\alpha(x) \equiv 0 \equiv L\beta(x) \quad \text{in} \quad [a, b].$$

We construct a solution of (10) by the method *variation of the constants*

$$u(x) = A(x)\alpha(x) + B(x)\beta(x), \quad a \leq x \leq b, \quad (11)$$

under the subsidiary condition

$$A'(x)\alpha(x) + B'(x)\beta(x) = 0. \quad (12)$$

With the aid of (12) we calculate

$$u'(x) = A(x)\alpha'(x) + B(x)\beta'(x)$$

and

$$u''(x) = A(x)\alpha''(x) + B(x)\beta''(x) + A'(x)\alpha'(x) + B'(x)\beta'(x).$$

Together with the formula (11) we obtain

$$Lu(x) = A(x)L\alpha(x) + B(x)L\beta(x) - p(x)\left\{A'(x)\alpha'(x) + B'(x)\beta'(x)\right\} = f(x) \quad ,$$

and therefore

$$-p(x)\left\{A'(x)\alpha'(x) + B'(x)\beta'(x)\right\} = f(x), \quad a \leq x \leq b. \quad (13)$$

By the ansatz

$$A'(x) = \beta(x)k(x), \quad B'(x) = -\alpha(x)k(x), \quad a \leq x \leq b, \quad (14)$$

with a continuous function $k = k(x)$, $x \in [a, b]$, the relation (12) is fulfilled and (13) becomes

$$-p(x)\{\beta(x)\alpha'(x) - \alpha(x)\beta'(x)\}k(x) = f(x), \quad a \leq x \leq b. \quad (15)$$

Proposition 2. *The relation $p(x)\{\alpha(x)\beta'(x) - \alpha'(x)\beta(x)\} = \text{const}$ in $[a, b]$ holds true.*

Proof: Applying (6) to $u = \alpha(x)$ and $v = \beta(x)$ we infer

$$0 = \frac{d}{dx}\left\{p(x)(\alpha(x)\beta'(x) - \alpha'(x)\beta(x))\right\} \quad \text{in } [a, b].$$

q.e.d.

We now choose $\alpha = \alpha(x)$ and $\beta = \beta(x)$ to solve the homogeneous equation $Lu = 0$ satisfying

$$p(x)\left\{\alpha(x)\beta'(x) - \alpha'(x)\beta(x)\right\} \equiv 1 \quad \text{in } [a, b] \quad (16)$$

and

$$c_1\beta(a) + c_2\beta'(a) = 0 = d_1\alpha(b) + d_2\alpha'(b). \quad (17)$$

Here we solve the initial value problems

$$L\alpha = 0 \quad \text{in } [a, b], \quad \alpha(b) = d_2, \quad \alpha'(b) = -d_1$$

and

$$L\beta = 0 \quad \text{in } [a, b], \quad \beta(a) = \frac{1}{M}c_2, \quad \beta'(a) = -\frac{1}{M}c_1.$$

Thereby, we determine $M \neq 0$ such that

$$p(a)\left\{\alpha(a)\beta'(a) - \alpha'(a)\beta(a)\right\} = -\frac{1}{M}p(a)\left\{c_1\alpha(a) + c_2\alpha'(a)\right\} = 1$$

is fulfilled choosing

$$M = -p(a)\left\{c_1\alpha(a) + c_2\alpha'(a)\right\}.$$

The statement $M \neq 0$ is contained in the following

Proposition 3. *The functions $\{\alpha, \beta\}$ constitute a fundamental system.*

Proof: If the statement were violated, we have a number $\mu \neq 0$ with the property

$$\alpha(x) = \mu\beta(x), \quad a \leq x \leq b.$$

We deduce $\alpha \in \mathcal{D}$ from (17), and the *Assumption 0* yields a contradiction with $\alpha \equiv 0$. q.e.d.

The relations (15) and (16) imply

$$k(x) = f(x) \quad \text{in} \quad [a, b], \quad (18)$$

and (14) yields

$$A(x) = \int_a^x \beta(y)f(y) dy + \text{const}, \quad B(x) = \int_x^b \alpha(y)f(y) dy + \text{const}. \quad (19)$$

We summarize our considerations to the following

Theorem 1. *The Sturm-Liouville equation $Lu = f$ for $u \in \mathcal{D}$ with the right-hand side $f \in C^0([a, b])$ is solved by the function*

$$u(x) = \alpha(x) \int_a^x \beta(y)f(y) dy + \beta(x) \int_x^b \alpha(y)f(y) dy = \int_a^b K(x, y)f(y) dy. \quad (20)$$

With the aid of the fundamental system $\{\alpha, \beta\}$ of $Lu = 0$ satisfying (16) and (17), we here define the Green's function of the Sturm-Liouville operator as follows:

$$K(x, y) = \begin{cases} \alpha(x)\beta(y), & a \leq y \leq x \\ \beta(x)\alpha(y), & x \leq y \leq b. \end{cases} \quad (21)$$

Proof: The derivation above implies that the function $u(x)$ from (20) satisfies the differential equation $Lu = f$. Furthermore, we see

$$u(a) = \beta(a) \int_a^b \alpha(y)f(y) dy, \quad u'(a) = \beta'(a) \int_a^b \alpha(y)f(y) dy,$$

and (17) gives us

$$c_1 u(a) + c_2 u'(a) = (c_1 \beta(a) + c_2 \beta'(a)) \int_a^b \alpha(y)f(y) dy = 0.$$

In the same way we determine

$$u(b) = \alpha(b) \int_a^b \beta(y) f(y) dy, \quad u'(b) = \alpha'(b) \int_a^b \beta(y) f(y) dy$$

and

$$d_1 u(b) + d_2 u'(b) = (d_1 \alpha(b) + d_2 \alpha'(b)) \int_a^b \beta(y) f(y) dy = 0. \quad \text{q.e.d.}$$

Theorem 1 directly implies the following

Theorem 2. *With the Assumption 0, these subsequent statements are equivalent:*

- I. *The function $u \in \mathcal{D}$ with $u \not\equiv 0$ satisfies $Lu = \lambda u$.*
- II. *The function $u \in \mathcal{D}$ with $u \not\equiv 0$ satisfies $\int_a^b K(x, y) u(y) dy = \frac{1}{\lambda} u(x)$ for $a \leq x \leq b$.*

We shall now address the *eigenvalue problem of the n -dimensional oscillation equation* considered by H. von Helmholtz : Let $G \subset \mathbb{R}^n$ be a bounded Dirichlet domain, which means that all continuous functions $g = g(x) : \partial G \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ possess a solution of the Dirichlet problem

$$\begin{aligned} u &= u(x) \in C^2(G) \cap C^0(\overline{G}), \\ \Delta u(x) &= 0 \quad \text{in } G, \\ u(x) &= g(x) \quad \text{on } \partial G \end{aligned} \quad (22)$$

(compare Chapter V, §3). The further assumption will be eliminated by Proposition 1 in §9, namely that G satisfies the conditions of the Gaussian integral theorem from §5 in Chapter I. Then we can specify the *Green's function of the Laplace operator* for the domain G as follows:

$$H(x, y) = \begin{cases} -\frac{1}{2\pi} \log |y - x| + h(x, y), & n = 2 \\ \frac{1}{(n-2)\omega_n} \frac{1}{|y - x|^{n-2}} + h(x, y), & n \geq 3 \end{cases} \quad (23)$$

for $(x, y) \in G \otimes G := \{(\xi, \eta) \in G \times G : \xi \neq \eta\}$. Here we have $\Delta_y h(x, y) = 0$ in G and

$$h(x, y) = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{2\pi} \log |y - x|, & n = 2 \\ -\frac{1}{(n-2)\omega_n} \frac{1}{|y - x|^{n-2}}, & n \geq 3 \end{cases} \quad (24)$$

for $x \in G$ and $y \in \partial G$. Furthermore, ω_n denotes the area of the unit sphere in $\mathbb{R}^n$. According to Chapter V, § 1 and § 2 we can represent a solution of the problem

$$\begin{aligned} u &= u(x) \in C^2(G) \cap C^0(\overline{G}), \\ -\Delta u(x) &= f(x) \quad \text{in } G, \\ u(x) &= 0 \quad \text{on } \partial G \end{aligned} \tag{25}$$

in the following form

$$u(x) = \int_G H(x, y) f(y) dy, \quad x \in G. \tag{26}$$

For the deduction of (26) we consider the domain $G_\varepsilon := \{y \in G : |y - x| > \varepsilon\}$ with a small $\varepsilon > 0$. The Gaussian integral theorem implies

$$\begin{aligned} & \int_{G_\varepsilon} \left(H(x, y) \Delta u(y) - u(y) \Delta_y H(x, y) \right) dy \\ &= \int_{\partial G} \left(H(x, y) \frac{\partial u}{\partial \nu}(y) - u(y) \frac{\partial H}{\partial \nu}(x, y) \right) d\sigma(y) \\ &\quad - \int_{y: |y-x|=\varepsilon} \left(H(x, y) \frac{\partial u}{\partial \nu}(y) - u(y) \frac{\partial H}{\partial \nu}(x, y) \right) d\sigma(y). \end{aligned}$$

Observing $\varepsilon \downarrow 0$ we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} - \int_G H(x, y) f(y) dy &= \lim_{\varepsilon \downarrow 0} \int_{r=|y-x|=\varepsilon} u(y) \left(\frac{1}{(n-2)\omega_n} (2-n)r^{1-n} \right) d\sigma(y) \\ &= - \lim_{\varepsilon \downarrow 0} \left(\frac{1}{\varepsilon^{n-1}\omega_n} \int_{r=|y-x|=\varepsilon} u(y) d\sigma(y) \right) \\ &= -u(x) \quad \text{for all } x \in G \end{aligned}$$

in the case $n \geq 3$, and similarly in the case $n = 2$.

We now derive the *symmetry of Green's function*, namely

$$H(x, y) = H(y, x) \quad \text{for all } (x, y) \in G \otimes G. \tag{27}$$

Here we choose the points $x, y \in G$ satisfying $x \neq y$, and on the domain

$$G_\varepsilon := \left\{ z \in G : |z - x| > \varepsilon \text{ and } |z - y| > \varepsilon \right\}$$

we consider the functions $p(z) := H(x, z)$ and $q(z) := H(y, z)$, $z \in G_\varepsilon$. For $\varepsilon \downarrow 0$ the Gaussian integral theorem implies

$$\begin{aligned}
0 &= \lim_{\varepsilon \downarrow 0} \int_{G_\varepsilon} (q \Delta p - p \Delta q) dz = \lim_{\varepsilon \downarrow 0} \int_{\partial G_\varepsilon} \left(q \frac{\partial p}{\partial \nu} - p \frac{\partial q}{\partial \nu} \right) d\sigma(z) \\
&= - \lim_{\varepsilon \downarrow 0} \int_{|z-x|=\varepsilon} \left(q \frac{\partial p}{\partial \nu} - p \frac{\partial q}{\partial \nu} \right) d\sigma(z) - \lim_{\varepsilon \downarrow 0} \int_{|z-y|=\varepsilon} \left(q \frac{\partial p}{\partial \nu} - p \frac{\partial q}{\partial \nu} \right) d\sigma(z) \\
&= q(x) - p(y) = H(y, x) - H(x, y) \quad \text{for all } x, y \in G \text{ with } x \neq y.
\end{aligned}$$

We now show a *growth condition for Green's function* $H(x, y)$ as follows: With $\varepsilon > 0$ given we define the harmonic function

$$W_\varepsilon(x, y) := \begin{cases} -\frac{1}{2\pi}(1+\varepsilon) \log \frac{|y-x|}{d}, & n=2 \\ \frac{1+\varepsilon}{(n-2)\omega_n} |y-x|^{2-n}, & n \geq 3 \end{cases}$$

setting $d := \text{diam } G$. We consider the function $\Phi_\varepsilon(x, y) := W_\varepsilon(x, y) - H(x, y)$ and choose $\delta > 0$ so small that

$$\Phi_\varepsilon(x, y) \geq 0 \quad \text{for all } y : |y-x| = \delta \text{ and all } y \in \partial G$$

is satisfied. Applying the maximum principle to the harmonic function $\Phi_\varepsilon(x, \cdot)$ on the domain $G_\delta := \{y \in G : |x-y| > \delta\}$ we infer $\Phi_\varepsilon(x, y) \geq 0$ in G_δ and consequently

$$H(x, y) \leq W_\varepsilon(x, y) \quad \text{for all } \varepsilon > 0.$$

Therefore, we obtain

$$0 \leq H(x, y) \leq \begin{cases} -\frac{1}{2\pi} \log \frac{|y-x|}{d}, & n=2 \\ \frac{1}{(n-2)\omega_n} |y-x|^{2-n}, & n \geq 3 \end{cases}$$

for all $(x, y) \in G \otimes G$ and finally the growth condition

$$|H(x, y)| \leq \frac{\text{const}}{|x-y|^\alpha} \quad \text{for all } (x, y) \in G \otimes G \quad (28)$$

with $\alpha := n-2 < n$.

Definition 1. Let $G \subset \mathbb{R}^n$ denote a bounded domain where $n \in \mathbb{N}$ holds true, and let the number $\alpha \in [0, n)$ be chosen arbitrarily. A function $K = K(x, y) \in C^0(G \otimes G, \mathbb{C})$ is called a *singular kernel of the order α* - briefly $K \in \mathcal{S}_\alpha(G, \mathbb{C})$ - if we have a constant $c \in [0, +\infty)$ satisfying

$$|K(x, y)| \leq \frac{c}{|x-y|^\alpha} \quad \text{for all } (x, y) \in G \otimes G. \quad (29)$$

We name the kernel $K \in \mathcal{S}_\alpha(G, \mathbb{C})$ Hermitian, if

$$K(x, y) = \overline{K(y, x)} \quad \text{for all } (x, y) \in G \otimes G \quad (30)$$

is valid. The real kernels belong to the class $\mathcal{S}_\alpha(G) := \mathcal{S}_\alpha(G, \mathbb{R})$, and these kernels $K \in \mathcal{S}_\alpha(G)$ are Hermitian if and only if they are symmetric in the following sense:

$$K(x, y) = K(y, x) \quad \text{for all } (x, y) \in G \otimes G. \quad (31)$$

We summarize our considerations about the n -dimensional oscillation equation to the following

Theorem 3. Let $G \subset \mathbb{R}^n$, $n = 2, 3, \dots$ denote a Dirichlet domain satisfying the assumptions for the Gaussian integral theorem. Furthermore, we fix the domain of definition

$$\mathcal{D} := \left\{ u = u(x) \in C^2(G) \cap C^0(\overline{G}) : u(x) = 0 \text{ for all } x \in \partial G \right\}.$$

Then the following two statements are equivalent:

I. The function $u \in \mathcal{D}$ with $u \not\equiv 0$ solves the differential equation

$$-\Delta u(x) = \lambda u(x) \quad \text{in } G$$

for a number $\lambda \in \mathbb{R}$.

II. The function $u \in \mathcal{D}$ with $u \not\equiv 0$ solves the integral equation

$$\int_G H(x, y) u(y) dy = \frac{1}{\lambda} u(x) \quad \text{in } G$$

for a number $\lambda \in \mathbb{R} \setminus \{0\}$.

Here Green's function $H(x, y)$ of the Laplace operator for the domain G represents a symmetric real singular kernel of the regularity class $\mathcal{S}_{n-2}(G)$.

We finally consider *singular integral operators*: On the bounded domain $G \subset \mathbb{R}^n$ with $n \in \mathbb{N}$, the singular kernel $K = K(x, y) \in \mathcal{S}_\alpha(G, \mathbb{C})$ of the order $\alpha \in [0, n)$ is defined. On the domain of definition

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{D} &:= \left\{ u(x) : G \rightarrow \mathbb{C} \in C^0(G, \mathbb{C}) : \begin{array}{l} \text{There exists a number } c \in [0, +\infty) \\ \text{satisfying } |u(x)| \leq c \text{ for all } x \in G \end{array} \right\} \\ &=: C_b^0(G, \mathbb{C}) = C^0(G, \mathbb{C}) \cap L^\infty(G, \mathbb{C}) \end{aligned}$$

we consider the integral operator $\mathbb{K} : \mathcal{D} \rightarrow C^0(G, \mathbb{C})$ given by

$$\mathbb{K}u(x) := \int_G K(x, y) u(y) dy, \quad x \in G, \quad \text{with } u \in \mathcal{D}.$$

Evidently, we obtain with $\mathbb{K} : \mathcal{D} \rightarrow C^0(G, \mathbb{C})$ a linear operator.

Theorem 4. *Let the kernel $K = K(x, y) \in \mathcal{S}_\alpha(G, \mathbb{C})$ with $\alpha \in [0, n)$ be Hermitian. Then we have the following statements:*

- a) *If $u \in \mathcal{D}$ is an eigenfunction of the associate integral operator, more precisely $u \neq 0$ and $\mathbb{K}u = \lambda u$ with $\lambda \in \mathbb{C}$, we then infer $\lambda \in \mathbb{R}$.*
- b) *Given the two eigenfunctions $u_i \in \mathcal{D}$ with $\mathbb{K}u_i = \lambda_i u_i$ and $i = 1, 2$ for the eigenvalues $\lambda_1 \neq \lambda_2$, we infer $(u_1, u_2) = 0$. Here we used the inner product*

$$(u, v) := \int_G \overline{u(x)} v(x) dx \quad \text{for } u, v \in \mathcal{D}.$$

Proof:

- a) Let $u \in \mathcal{D} \setminus \{0\}$ be a solution of the problem $\mathbb{K}u = \lambda u$ with a number $\lambda \in \mathbb{C}$. This implies

$$\lambda u(x) = \int_G K(x, y) u(y) dy, \quad x \in G.$$

We multiply the equation by $\overline{u(x)}$ and afterwards integrate over the domain G with respect to x , and we obtain

$$\lambda(u, u) = \int_G \int_G K(x, y) \overline{u(x)} u(y) dx dy \in \mathbb{R}.$$

Since the inner product (u, u) is a real expression, the number λ has to be real.

- b) Let the eigenfunctions $u_i \in \mathcal{D}$ satisfying $\mathbb{K}u_i = \lambda_i u_i$ with $i = 1, 2$ and the eigenvalues $\lambda_1 \neq \lambda_2$ be given. On account of $\lambda_1, \lambda_2 \in \mathbb{R}$ we infer

$$\lambda_1(u_1, u_2) = (\lambda_1 u_1, u_2) = (\mathbb{K}u_1, u_2) = (u_1, \mathbb{K}u_2) = (u_1, \lambda_2 u_2) = \lambda_2(u_1, u_2)$$

or $(\lambda_1 - \lambda_2)(u_1, u_2) = 0$ and consequently $(u_1, u_2) = 0$. We namely deduce for all $u, v \in \mathcal{D}$:

$$\begin{aligned} (\mathbb{K}u, v) &= \int_G \left(\int_G K(x, y) u(y) dy \right) \overline{v(x)} dx = \int_G \int_G \overline{K(x, y) u(y)} v(x) dx dy \\ &= \int_G \int_G K(y, x) v(x) \overline{u(y)} dx dy = \int_G \overline{u(y)} \left(\int_G K(y, x) v(x) dx \right) dy \\ &= (u, \mathbb{K}v). \end{aligned}$$

q.e.d.

§2 Singular integral equations

In §1 we have equivalently transformed eigenvalue problems for differential equations into so-called *integral equations of the first kind*

$$\int_G K(x, y)u(y) dy = \mu u(x), \quad x \in G, \quad (1)$$

with the singular kernels $K = K(x, y)$. Parallel to the swinging equation we take a bounded Dirichlet domain $G \subset \mathbb{R}^n$ satisfying the assumptions of the Gaussian integral theorem with the associate Green's function $H = H(x, y) \in \mathcal{S}_{n-2}(G)$ for the Laplace operator. Especially for the unit ball $B := \{x \in \mathbb{R}^n : |x| < 1\}$ we obtain as Green's function in the case $n = 2$:

$$G(\zeta, z) := \frac{1}{2\pi} \log \left| \frac{1 - \bar{z}\zeta}{\zeta - z} \right|, \quad (\zeta, z) \in B \otimes B, \quad (2)$$

and in the case $n \geq 3$:

$$G(x, y) := \frac{1}{(n-2)\omega_n} \left\{ \frac{1}{|y-x|^{n-2}} - \frac{1}{|x|^{n-2} \left| y - \frac{x}{|x|^2} \right|^{n-2}} \right\}, \quad (x, y) \in B \otimes B. \quad (3)$$

We now consider the Dirichlet problem

$$\begin{aligned} u &= u(x) \in C^2(G) \cap C^0(\overline{G}), \\ \Delta u(x) + \sum_{i=1}^n b_i(x)u_{x_i}(x) + c(x)u(x) &= f(x), \quad x \in G, \\ u(x) &= 0, \quad x \in \partial G. \end{aligned} \quad (4)$$

Here we assume the functions $b_i(x)$, $i = 1, \dots, n$, $c(x)$ and $f(x)$ to be Hölder continuous in $\overline{G}$. We transfer the equation (4) into an integral equation as follows: With the representation

$$-\Delta u(x) = \sum_{i=1}^n b_i(x)u_{x_i}(x) + c(x)u(x) - f(x) =: g(x), \quad x \in G, \quad (5)$$

we deduce (similarly to the oscillation equation)

$$u(x) = \int_G H(x, y) \left\{ \sum_{i=1}^n b_i(y)u_{x_i}(y) + c(y)u(y) - f(y) \right\} dy$$

and

$$\begin{aligned} u(x) - \int_G \left\{ (H(x, y)c(y)) u(y) + \sum_{i=1}^n (H(x, y)b_i(y)) u_{x_i}(y) \right\} dy \\ = - \int_G H(x, y)f(y) dy \quad \text{for all } x \in G. \end{aligned} \quad (6)$$

We differentiate (6) with respect to x_j for $j = 1, \dots, n$ and obtain the additional n equations

$$\begin{aligned} u_{x_j}(x) - \int_G \left\{ (H_{x_j}(x, y)c(y)) u(y) + \sum_{i=1}^n (H_{x_j}(x, y)b_i(y)) u_{x_i}(y) \right\} dy \\ = - \int_G H_{x_j}(x, y)f(y) dy, \quad x \in G, \quad j = 1, \dots, n. \end{aligned} \quad (7)$$

Setting

$$\begin{aligned} K_{00}(x, y) &:= H(x, y)c(y), & K_{0i}(x, y) &:= H(x, y)b_i(y), \\ K_{j0}(x, y) &:= H_{x_j}(x, y)c(y), & K_{ji}(x, y) &:= H_{x_j}(x, y)b_i(y) \end{aligned}$$

for $i, j = 1, \dots, n$ and

$$f_0(x) := - \int_G H(x, y)f(y) dy, \quad f_j(x) := - \int_G H_{x_j}(x, y)f(y) dy$$

for $j = 1, \dots, n$, we arrive at the following

Theorem 1. *The solution $u = u(x)$ of (4) is transferred into the system of Fredholm's integral equations*

$$u_j(x) - \int_G \sum_{i=0}^n K_{ji}(x, y)u_i(y) dy = f_j(x), \quad x \in G, \quad j = 0, \dots, n \quad (8)$$

with the functions $u_0(x) := u(x)$ and $u_i(x) := u_{x_i}(x)$ for $i = 1, \dots, n$. Here the singular kernels $K_{ji}(x, y) \in \mathcal{S}_{n-1}(G)$ are real for $i, j = 0, \dots, n$. However, they are not symmetric in general.

Remark: In the special case $n = 2$, $G = B$, $b_1(x) \equiv 0 \equiv b_2(x)$ in B we can transfer the problem

$$\begin{aligned} u &= u(z) \in C^2(B) \cap C^0(\overline{B}), \\ \Delta u(z) + c(z)u(z) &= f(z), \quad z \in B, \\ u(z) &= 0, \quad z \in \partial B, \end{aligned} \quad (9)$$

into Fredholm's integral equation

$$u(z) - \int_B \frac{1}{2\pi} \log \left| \frac{1 - \bar{z}\zeta}{\zeta - z} \right| c(\zeta) u(\zeta) d\zeta = - \int_B \frac{1}{2\pi} \log \left| \frac{1 - \bar{z}\zeta}{\zeta - z} \right| f(\zeta) d\zeta, \quad z \in B. \quad (10)$$

Sometimes (10) is called an *integral equation of the second kind*. We remark that the integral kernel which appears is not symmetric in general.

For the L^p -spaces used in the following we refer the reader to Chapter II, § 7. On the bounded domain $G \subset \mathbb{R}^n$ we choose a singular kernel $K = K(x, y) \in \mathcal{S}_\alpha(G, \mathbb{C})$ with $\alpha \in [0, n)$. On the domain of definition

$$\mathcal{D} := \left\{ f : G \rightarrow \mathbb{C} \in C^0(G) : \sup_{x \in G} |f(x)| < +\infty \right\}$$

we consider the associate integral operator

$$\mathbb{K}f(x) := \int_G K(x, y) f(y) dy, \quad x \in G, \quad \text{for } f \in \mathcal{D}. \quad (11)$$

Choosing an exponent $p \in (1, \frac{n}{\alpha})$, we obtain a constant $C = C(c, \alpha, n, p) \in (0, +\infty)$ with the following property

$$\int_G |K(x, y)|^p dy \leq C \quad \text{for all } x \in G, \quad (12)$$

due to § 1, Definition 1. When $q \in (\frac{n}{n-\alpha}, +\infty)$ denotes the conjugate exponent to p satisfying $\frac{1}{p} + \frac{1}{q} = 1$, Hölder's inequality from Theorem 1 in Chapter II, § 7 yields the following estimate:

$$\begin{aligned} |\mathbb{K}f(x)| &\leq \int_G |K(x, y)| |f(y)| dy \\ &\leq \left(\int_G |K(x, y)|^p dy \right)^{\frac{1}{p}} \left(\int_G |f(y)|^q dy \right)^{\frac{1}{q}} \\ &\leq C^{\frac{1}{p}} \|f\|_{L^q(G)}, \quad x \in G \end{aligned} \quad (13)$$

for all $f \in \mathcal{D}$. Here the symbol

$$\|f\|_p = \|f\|_{L^p(G)} := \left(\int_G |f(x)|^p dx \right)^{\frac{1}{p}}, \quad 1 \leq p < +\infty$$

denotes the L^p -norm on the Banach space

$$L^p(G) := \left\{ f : G \rightarrow \mathbb{C} \text{ measurable} : \|f\|_{L^p(G)} < +\infty \right\}$$

(compare Chapter II, § 6 and § 7). Furthermore, we introduce the C^0 -norm

$$\|f\|_{C^0(G)} := \sup_{x \in G} |f(x)|, \quad f \in \mathcal{D},$$

and (13) yields the estimate

$$\|\mathbb{K}f\|_{C^0(G)} \leq C\|f\|_{L^q(G)} \quad \text{for all } f \in \mathcal{D} \quad (14)$$

with a constant $C \in (0, +\infty)$. Therefore, $\mathbb{K} : \mathcal{D} \rightarrow C^0(G)$ represents a bounded linear operator, where $\mathcal{D}$ is endowed with the $L^q(G)$ -Norm (see Chapter II, § 6, Definitions 6, 7 and Theorem 3). Parallel to Theorem 1 in Chapter II, § 8 we can now continue $\mathbb{K}$ to the operator

$$\mathbb{K} : L^q(G) \rightarrow C^0(G) \quad (15)$$

on the Banach space $L^q(G)$. The set $C_0^\infty(G) \subset \mathcal{D}$ is dense in the space $L^q(G)$ and for each $f \in L^q(G)$ we therefore have a sequence

$$\{f_j\}_{j=1,2,\dots} \subset C_0^\infty(G) \quad \text{satisfying} \quad \|f - f_j\|_{L^q(G)} \rightarrow 0 \quad (j \rightarrow \infty).$$

We then define

$$\mathbb{K}f := \lim_{j \rightarrow \infty} \mathbb{K}f_j \quad \text{in } C^0(G). \quad (16)$$

We summarize our considerations to the following

Theorem 2. *The integral operator $\mathbb{K} : \mathcal{D} \rightarrow C^0(G)$ with the singular kernel $K \in \mathcal{S}_\alpha(G)$ and $\alpha \in [0, n)$ can be uniquely continued to the bounded linear operator $\mathbb{K} : L^q(G) \rightarrow C^0(G)$ satisfying*

$$\|\mathbb{K}f\|_{C^0(G)} \leq C(q)\|f\|_{L^q(G)}, \quad f \in L^q(G) \quad (17)$$

for each $q \in (\frac{n}{n-\alpha}, +\infty)$, due to (16). Here we have chosen the constant $C = C(q) \in (0, +\infty)$ appropriately.

Remark: In the case $n \geq 3$, Green's function of the Laplace operator $H = H(x, y)$ belongs to the class $\mathcal{S}_{n-2}(G)$ which means $\alpha = n-2$ and $q \in (\frac{n}{2}, +\infty)$. Therefore, the associate singular integral operator

$$\mathbb{H} : L^q(G) \rightarrow C^0(G)$$

is even defined on the Hilbert space $L^2(G)$ for $n = 3$. In the case $n > 3$, Green's function $\mathbb{H}$ cannot be continued onto the Hilbert space $L^2(G)$.

For the orders $\alpha \in [0, n)$ and $\beta \in [0, n)$ let $K = K(x, y) \in \mathcal{S}_\alpha(G, \mathbb{C})$ and $L = L(y, z) \in \mathcal{S}_\beta(G, \mathbb{C})$ denote two singular kernels with the associate integral operators

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbb{K}f(x) &:= \int_G K(x, y)f(y) dy, \quad x \in G; \quad f \in \mathcal{D}, \\ \mathbb{L}f(y) &:= \int_G L(y, z)f(z) dz, \quad y \in G; \quad f \in \mathcal{D}. \end{aligned} \quad (18)$$

With the aid of Fubini's theorem from Chapter II, § 5 we now calculate for all $f \in \mathcal{D}$ and all $x \in G$ as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}
 \mathbb{K} \circ \mathbb{L}f(x) &= \mathbb{K} \left(\int_G L(y, z) f(z) dz \right) \Big|_x \\
 &= \int_G K(x, y) \left(\int_G L(y, z) f(z) dz \right) dy \\
 &= \int_G \int_G K(x, y) L(y, z) f(z) dz dy \\
 &= \int_G \left(\int_G K(x, y) L(y, z) dy \right) f(z) dz \\
 &= \int_G M(x, z) f(z) dz = \mathbb{M}f(x), \quad x \in G.
 \end{aligned} \tag{19}$$

Here we have as the product kernel

$$M(x, z) = \int_G K(x, y) L(y, z) dy, \quad (x, z) \in G \otimes G. \tag{20}$$

Proposition 1. *We have the regularity result $M = M(x, z) \in C^0(G \otimes G, \mathbb{C})$.*

Proof: We take the point $(x^0, z^0) \in G \otimes G$ such that $x^0, z^0 \in G$ and $x^0 \neq z^0$ holds true. Then we choose the number $0 < \delta < \frac{1}{4}|x^0 - z^0|$ sufficiently small and define the sets

$$B_\delta := \left\{ y \in G : |y - x^0| \leq 2\delta \text{ or } |y - z^0| \leq 2\delta \right\},$$

$$G_\delta := G \setminus B_\delta = \left\{ y \in G : |y - x^0| > 2\delta \text{ and } |y - z^0| > 2\delta \right\}.$$

Given the quantity $\varepsilon > 0$, we find a number $\delta = \delta(\varepsilon) > 0$ with the property

$$\int_{B_\delta} |K(x, y) L(y, z)| dy \leq \varepsilon \tag{21}$$

for all $x, z \in G$ with $|x - x^0| \leq \delta$ and $|z - z^0| \leq \delta$, taking $K \in \mathcal{S}_\alpha$ and $L \in \mathcal{S}_\beta$ into account. Furthermore, we have a number $\eta \in (0, \delta]$ such that

$$\left| K(x, y) L(y, z) - K(x^0, y) L(y, z^0) \right| \leq \varepsilon \tag{22}$$

holds true for all $y \in G_\delta$ and $x, z \in G$ with $|x - x^0| \leq \eta$ and $|z - z^0| \leq \eta$. Finally, we obtain the following estimate

$$\begin{aligned}
|M(x, z) - M(x^0, z^0)| &\leq \int_{G_\delta} |K(x, y)L(y, z) - K(x^0, y)L(y, z^0)| dy \\
&\quad + \int_{B_\delta} |K(x, y)L(y, z) - K(x^0, y)L(y, z^0)| dy \\
&\leq \varepsilon|G| + 2\varepsilon
\end{aligned}$$

for all $x, z \in G$ with $|x - x^0| \leq \eta$ and $|z - z^0| \leq \eta$. Therefore, the regularity result $M = M(x, z) \in C^0(G \otimes G)$ is correct. q.e.d.

Proposition 2. *If $\alpha + \beta < n$ holds true, we have $M \in \mathcal{S}_0(G, \mathbb{C})$.*

Proof: We have to prove only the boundedness of the kernel M . Without loss of generality, we can assume $\alpha > 0$ and $\beta > 0$. Taking $(x, z) \in G \otimes G$, we estimate with the aid of Hölder's inequality as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}
|M(x, z)| &\leq \int_G |K(x, y)||L(y, z)| dy \leq c_1 c_2 \int_G \frac{1}{|x - y|^\alpha} \frac{1}{|y - z|^\beta} dy \\
&\leq c_1 c_2 \left(\int_G \frac{1}{|x - y|^{\alpha+\beta}} dy \right)^{\frac{\alpha}{\alpha+\beta}} \left(\int_G \frac{1}{|y - z|^{\alpha+\beta}} dy \right)^{\frac{\beta}{\alpha+\beta}} \\
&\leq c_1 c_2 C \quad \text{for all } (x, z) \in G \otimes G.
\end{aligned}$$

Here we observe $C := \sup_{x \in G} \int_G \frac{1}{|x - y|^{\alpha+\beta}} dy < +\infty$, since $\alpha + \beta < n$ holds true. q.e.d.

Proposition 3. *In the case $\alpha + \beta > n$, we have the regularity result $M \in \mathcal{S}_{\alpha+\beta-n}(G, \mathbb{C})$.*

Proof: We set $R := \text{diam } G \in (0, +\infty)$, and for the points $x, z \in G$ satisfying $x \neq z$ we define the quantity $\delta := |x - z| \in (0, R)$. Then we calculate

$$\begin{aligned}
|M(x, z)| &\leq \int_G |K(x, y)||L(y, z)| dy \leq c \int_G \frac{1}{|x - y|^\alpha} \cdot \frac{1}{|y - z|^\beta} dy \\
&= c \int_{\substack{y \in G \\ |y-x| \leq \frac{1}{2}\delta}} \frac{1}{|x - y|^\alpha} \frac{1}{|y - z|^\beta} dy + c \int_{\substack{y \in G \\ \frac{1}{2}\delta \leq |y-x| \leq 2\delta}} \frac{1}{|x - y|^\alpha} \frac{1}{|y - z|^\beta} dy \\
&\quad + c \int_{\substack{y \in G \\ |y-x| \geq 2\delta}} \frac{1}{|x - y|^\alpha} \frac{1}{|y - z|^\beta} dy
\end{aligned}$$

with a constant $c \in (0, +\infty)$.

Taking the point $y \in G$ with $|y - x| \leq \frac{1}{2}\delta$, we estimate as follows:

$$|y - z| \geq |z - x| - |x - y| \geq \delta - \frac{1}{2}\delta = \frac{1}{2}\delta.$$

Taking the point $y \in G$ with $|y - x| \geq 2\delta$, we obtain

$$|y - z| \geq |y - x| - |x - z| = |y - x| - \delta \geq |y - x| - \frac{1}{2}|y - x| = \frac{1}{2}|y - x|.$$

Consequently, we see

$$\begin{aligned} |M(x, z)| &\leq \frac{c}{(\frac{1}{2}\delta)^\beta} \int_{y: |y-x| \leq \frac{1}{2}\delta} \frac{1}{|y-x|^\alpha} dy + \frac{c}{(\frac{1}{2}\delta)^\alpha} \int_{y: |y-x| \leq 2\delta} \frac{1}{|y-z|^\beta} dy \\ &\quad + \frac{c}{(\frac{1}{2})^\beta} \int_{y: |y-x| \geq 2\delta} \frac{1}{|y-x|^{\alpha+\beta}} dy \\ &\leq \frac{c}{(\frac{1}{2}\delta)^\beta} \int_{y: |y-x| \leq \frac{1}{2}\delta} \frac{1}{|y-x|^\alpha} dy + \frac{c}{(\frac{1}{2}\delta)^\alpha} \int_{y: |y-z| \leq 3\delta} \frac{1}{|y-z|^\beta} dy \\ &\quad + \frac{c}{(\frac{1}{2})^\beta} \int_{y: |y-x| \geq 2\delta} \frac{1}{|y-x|^{\alpha+\beta}} dy. \end{aligned} \tag{23}$$

We now substitute

$$y = x + \varrho\xi, \quad dy = \omega_n \varrho^{n-1} d\varrho, \quad \varrho \in (0, \frac{1}{2}\delta), \quad \xi \in S^{n-1},$$

and calculate

$$\begin{aligned} \int_{y: |y-x| \leq \frac{1}{2}\delta} \frac{1}{|y-x|^\alpha} dy &= \int_0^{\frac{1}{2}\delta} \varrho^{-\alpha} \varrho^{n-1} \omega_n d\varrho = \omega_n \int_0^{\frac{1}{2}\delta} \varrho^{n-\alpha-1} d\varrho \\ &= \frac{\omega_n}{n-\alpha} \left[\varrho^{n-\alpha} \right]_0^{\frac{1}{2}\delta} = \frac{\omega_n}{n-\alpha} \left(\frac{1}{2}\delta \right)^{n-\alpha}. \end{aligned} \tag{24}$$

Analogously, we get

$$\int_{y: |y-z| \leq 3\delta} \frac{1}{|y-z|^\beta} dy = \frac{\omega_n}{n-\beta} (3\delta)^{n-\beta}. \tag{25}$$

With the aid of the substitution above, we deduce

$$\begin{aligned}
\int_{y:|y-x|\geq 2\delta} \frac{1}{|y-x|^{\alpha+\beta}} dy &= \omega_n \int_{2\delta}^{+\infty} \varrho^{-\alpha-\beta} \varrho^{n-1} d\varrho \\
&= \omega_n \frac{1}{n-(\alpha+\beta)} \left[\varrho^{n-\alpha-\beta} \right]_{2\delta}^{+\infty} \\
&= \frac{\omega_n}{\alpha+\beta-n} (2\delta)^{n-\alpha-\beta}.
\end{aligned} \tag{26}$$

Combining (23), (24), (25), and (26) we finally obtain the estimate

$$\begin{aligned}
|M(x, z)| &\leq c \left\{ \left(\frac{1}{2} \right)^{n-\alpha-\beta} \frac{\omega_n}{n-\alpha} + 3^{n-\beta} \left(\frac{1}{2} \right)^{-\alpha} \frac{\omega_n}{n-\beta} + \frac{2^{n-\alpha}\omega_n}{\alpha+\beta-n} \right\} \delta^{n-\alpha-\beta} \\
&= \frac{C(n, \alpha, \beta)}{|x-z|^{\alpha+\beta-n}} \quad \text{for all } x, z \in G \text{ with } x \neq z.
\end{aligned} \tag{27}$$

Therefore, the statement $M \in \mathcal{S}_{\alpha+\beta-n}(G, \mathbb{C})$ follows.

q.e.d.

We summarize our arguments to the subsequent

Theorem 3. (I. Schur)

To the given orders $\alpha \in [0, n)$, $\beta \in [0, n)$ let $K = K(x, y) \in \mathcal{S}_\alpha(G, \mathbb{C})$, $L = L(y, z) \in \mathcal{S}_\beta(G, \mathbb{C})$ denote singular kernels with the associate integral operators $\mathbb{K}, \mathbb{L}$. Then the composition

$$\mathbb{K} \circ \mathbb{L} f(x) = \int_G M(x, z) f(z) dz, \quad x \in G, \quad f \in \mathcal{D}$$

represents a singular integral operator as well, where its product kernel

$$M(x, z) = \int_G K(x, y) L(y, z) dy, \quad (x, z) \in G \otimes G$$

satisfies the following regularity properties:

$$M = M(x, y) \in \begin{cases} \mathcal{S}_0(G, \mathbb{C}), & \text{if } \alpha + \beta < n \\ \mathcal{S}_{\alpha+\beta-n}(G, \mathbb{C}), & \text{if } \alpha + \beta > n \end{cases}.$$

Theorem 4. (Iterated kernels)

Let $K = K(x, y) \in \mathcal{S}_\alpha(G, \mathbb{C})$ denote a singular kernel of the order $0 < \alpha < n$ with the associate integral operator $\mathbb{K}$. Then we have a positive integer $k = k(K) \in \mathbb{N}$ and a kernel $L = L(x, y) \in \mathcal{S}_0(G, \mathbb{C})$ with the associate integral operator $\mathbb{L}$ such that

$$\mathbb{K}^k f = \mathbb{L} f \quad \text{for all } f \in \mathcal{D}.$$

Proof: We choose $\beta \in (\alpha, n)$ satisfying

$$\beta \neq \frac{m}{m+1}n \quad \text{for all } m \in \mathbb{N}.$$

This implies

$$\beta + m(\beta - n) \neq 0 \quad \text{for all } m \in \mathbb{N}.$$

With the aid of the theorem by I. Schur we now consider the iterated kernels:

$$\begin{aligned} K &\in \mathcal{S}_\alpha \subset \mathcal{S}_\beta, \quad K^2 = K \circ K \in \mathcal{S}_{\beta+\beta-n} = \mathcal{S}_{\beta+1(\beta-n)}, \\ K^3 &= K \circ K \circ K \in \mathcal{S}_{\beta+2(\beta-n)}, \quad \dots, \quad K^k = \underbrace{K \circ \dots \circ K}_k \in \mathcal{S}_{\beta+(k-1)(\beta-n)}. \end{aligned}$$

We now determine the number $k \in \mathbb{N}$ such that

$$\beta + (k-2)(\beta - n) > 0 \quad \text{and} \quad \beta + (k-1)(\beta - n) < 0$$

is satisfied, and we infer

$$\{\beta + (k-2)(\beta - n)\} + \beta = \beta + (k-1)(\beta - n) + n < n.$$

Theorem 3 finally yields $K^k \in \mathcal{S}_0(G, \mathbb{C})$. q.e.d.

An outlook on the treatment of the eigenvalue problem for the n-dimensional oscillation equation (Weyl's eigenvalue problem): Parallel to Theorem 3 from § 1 we use the domain of definition

$$\mathcal{D}_0 := \left\{ u = u(x) \in C^2(G) \cap C^0(\overline{G}) : u(x) = 0 \text{ on } \partial G \right\}$$

and consider the eigenvalue problem for the n-dimensional oscillation equation

$$-\Delta u(x) = \lambda u(x), \quad x \in G; \quad u \in \mathcal{D}_0 \setminus \{0\}, \quad \lambda \in \mathbb{R}. \quad (28)$$

In § 9 we show the property $\lambda > 0$. Then the differential equation (28) can be transferred into the singular integral equation

$$\mathbb{H}u(x) := \int_G H(x, y)u(y) dy = \frac{1}{\lambda}u(x), \quad x \in G, \quad (29)$$

with the singular kernel $H = H(x, y) \in \mathcal{S}_{n-2}(G)$ which is symmetric. According to Theorem 4 we now choose a number $k \in \mathbb{N}$ satisfying

$$\mathbb{H}^k u = \mathbb{K}u = \int_G K(x, y)u(y) dy, \quad u \in \mathcal{D}_0,$$

with a kernel $K = K(x, y) \in \mathcal{S}_0(G)$. The eigenvalue problem (29) is transferred into the equation

$$\mathbb{K}u = \mathbb{H}^k u = \frac{1}{\lambda^k} u(x), \quad x \in G. \quad (30)$$

Now we can continue the operator $\mathbb{K} : L^q(G) \rightarrow C^0(G)$ for each exponent $q > 1$, according to Theorem 2. With (30) we obtain an eigenvalue problem on the Hilbert space $L^2(G) \subset L^q(G)$, if $q \in (1, 2]$ holds true. Therefore, it suffices in the following considerations to investigate eigenvalue problems for operators in Hilbert spaces.

§3 The abstract Hilbert space

We now continue the considerations from §6 in Chapter II.

Postulate (A): $\mathcal{H}$ is a linear space. This means $\mathcal{H}$ is an additive Abelian group with 0 as its neutral element:

$$x, y \in \mathcal{H} \Rightarrow x + y \in \mathcal{H}, \quad x = 0 \in \mathcal{H}.$$

Furthermore, we have a scalar multiplication in $\mathcal{H}$: With the number $\lambda \in \mathbb{C}$ and the element $x \in \mathcal{H}$ the statement $\lambda x \in \mathcal{H}$ is correct, and the axioms for vector spaces are valid.

Postulate (B): In $\mathcal{H}$ we have defined the inner product

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{H} \times \mathcal{H} &\rightarrow \mathbb{C} \\ (x, y) &\mapsto (x, y)_{\mathcal{H}} \end{aligned}$$

with the following properties:

- (a) $(x, \alpha y)_{\mathcal{H}} = \alpha(x, y)_{\mathcal{H}}$ for all $x, y \in \mathcal{H}$ and $\alpha \in \mathbb{C}$
- (b) $(x, y)_{\mathcal{H}} = \overline{(y, x)_{\mathcal{H}}}$ for all $x, y \in \mathcal{H}$ (Hermitian character)
- (c) $(x_1 + x_2, y)_{\mathcal{H}} = (x_1, y)_{\mathcal{H}} + (x_2, y)_{\mathcal{H}}$ for all $x_1, x_2, y \in \mathcal{H}$
- (d) $(x, x)_{\mathcal{H}} \geq 0$ for all $x \in \mathcal{H}$ and $(x, x)_{\mathcal{H}} = 0 \Leftrightarrow x = 0$ (positive-definiteness)

Postulate (C): For each positive integer $n \in \mathbb{N}$ we have n linear independent elements $x_1, \dots, x_n \in \mathcal{H}$, which means

$$\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n \in \mathbb{C}, \quad \sum_{i=1}^n \alpha_i x_i = 0 \quad \Rightarrow \quad \alpha_1 = \dots = \alpha_n = 0.$$

Definition 1. If the set $\mathcal{H}'$ satisfies the Postulates (A), (B), and (C) then $\mathcal{H}'$ is named a pre-Hilbert-space.

Example 1. Let $G \subset \mathbb{R}^n$ denote a bounded open set and define

$$\mathcal{H}' := \left\{ f : G \rightarrow \mathbb{C} \in C^0(G) : \sup_{x \in G} |f(x)| < +\infty \right\}.$$

With the inner product

$$(f, g) := \int_G \overline{f(x)} g(x) dx, \quad f, g \in \mathcal{H}', \quad (1)$$

the vector space $\mathcal{H}'$ becomes a pre-Hilbert-space.

Theorem 1. *In pre-Hilbert-spaces $\mathcal{H}'$ we have the following calculus rules for the inner product $(\cdot, \cdot)$:*

a) *For all $x, y, y_1, y_2 \in \mathcal{H}'$, $\alpha \in \mathbb{C}$ we have*

$$(\alpha x, y) = \overline{\alpha}(x, y), \quad (x, y_1 + y_2) = (x, y_1) + (x, y_2).$$

Consequently, the bilinear form $(\cdot, \cdot)$ is antilinear in the first and linear in the second component.

b) *The Cauchy-Schwarz inequality is satisfied:*

$$|(x, y)| \leq \sqrt{(x, x)} \sqrt{(y, y)} \quad \text{for all } x, y \in \mathcal{H}'.$$

c) *Setting $\|x\| := \sqrt{(x, x)}$ with $x \in \mathcal{H}'$, the pre-Hilbert-space $\mathcal{H}'$ becomes a normed space. This means*

$$\|x\| = 0 \Leftrightarrow x = 0,$$

$$\|x + y\| \leq \|x\| + \|y\| \quad \text{for all } x, y \in \mathcal{H}',$$

$$\|\lambda x\| = |\lambda| \|x\| \quad \text{for all } x \in \mathcal{H}', \lambda \in \mathbb{C},$$

$$\|x - y\| \geq |\|x\| - \|y\|| \quad \text{for all } x, y \in \mathcal{H}'.$$

d) *The inner product is continuous on $\mathcal{H}'$ in the following sense: From the assumptions*

$$x_n \rightarrow x \ (n \rightarrow \infty) \quad \text{with } \{x_n\}_{n=1,2,\dots} \subset \mathcal{H}' \quad \text{and } x \in \mathcal{H}'$$

and

$$y_n \rightarrow y \ (n \rightarrow \infty) \quad \text{with } \{y_n\}_{n=1,2,\dots} \subset \mathcal{H}' \quad \text{and } y \in \mathcal{H}'$$

we infer

$$(x_n, y_n) \rightarrow (x, y) \ (n \rightarrow \infty).$$

Here the symbol $x_n \rightarrow x \ (n \rightarrow \infty)$ indicates that $\|x_n - x\| \rightarrow 0 \ (n \rightarrow \infty)$ is satisfied.

Proof:

a) We calculate

$$(\alpha x, y) = \overline{(y, \alpha x)} = \overline{\alpha(y, x)} = \overline{\alpha}(x, y)$$

and

$$\begin{aligned} (x, y_1 + y_2) &= \overline{(y_1 + y_2, x)} = \overline{(y_1, x) + (y_2, x)} \\ &= \overline{(y_1, x)} + \overline{(y_2, x)} = (x, y_1) + (x, y_2). \end{aligned}$$

b) and c) are contained in Chapter II, § 6 - more precisely in Theorem 1 with its proof and the Remark following Definition 1.

d) The subsequent estimate yields this statement:

$$\begin{aligned} |(x_n, y_n) - (x, y)| &\leq |(x_n, y_n) - (x_n, y)| + |(x_n, y) - (x, y)| \\ &= |(x_n, y_n - y)| + |(x_n - x, y)| \\ &\leq \|x_n\| \|y_n - y\| + \|x_n - x\| \|y\| \rightarrow 0 \quad (n \rightarrow \infty). \end{aligned}$$

q.e.d.

Postulate (D): $\mathcal{H}$ is complete. This means each sequence $\{x_n\}_{n=1,2,\dots} \subset \mathcal{H}$ satisfying $\|x_n - x_m\| \rightarrow 0$ ($n, m \rightarrow \infty$) possesses a limit element $x \in \mathcal{H}$ such that

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \|x_n - x\| = 0.$$

Definition 2. If $\mathcal{H}$ satisfies the Postulates (A), (B), (C), and (D) we name $\mathcal{H}$ a Hilbert space.

Remark: The Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}$ becomes a Banach space via the norm given in Theorem 1 c).

Definition 3. The Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}$ is separable, if the following Postulate (E) holds true additionally:

Postulate (E): There exists a sequence $\{x_n\}_{n=1,2,\dots} \subset \mathcal{H}$ which is dense in $\mathcal{H}$: This means for all $x \in \mathcal{H}$ and every $\varepsilon > 0$ we have an index $n \in \mathbb{N}$ satisfying $\|x - x_n\| < \varepsilon$.

Example 2. Hilbert's sequential space

We endow the set of sequences

$$l_2 := \left\{ x = (x_1, x_2, \dots) \in \mathbb{C} \times \mathbb{C} \times \dots : \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} |x_k|^2 < +\infty \right\}$$

with the inner product

$$(x, y) := \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \overline{x_k} y_k \in \mathbb{C}$$

and we obtain a separable Hilbert space.

Example 3. Let $G \subset \mathbb{R}^n$ be a bounded open set, and by

$$L^2(G) := \left\{ f : G \rightarrow \mathbb{C} \text{ measurable} : \int_G |f(x)|^2 dx < +\infty \right\}$$

we denote the Lebesgue space of the square-integrable functions with the inner product

$$(f, g) := \int_G \overline{f(x)} g(x) dx \quad \text{for } f, g \in L^2(G).$$

Then $\mathcal{H} = L^2(G)$ represents a separable Hilbert space. The pre-Hilbert-space $\mathcal{H}'$ described in Example 1 lies dense in $\mathcal{H}$ (compare Chapter II, § 7).

Parallel to the transition from rational numbers $\mathbb{Q}$ to real numbers $\mathbb{R}$ we prove the following result using the ideas of D. Hilbert, which were presented in his famous book on *The Foundations of Geometry*:

Theorem 2. (Hilbert's fundamental theorem)

Each pre-Hilbert-space $\mathcal{H}'$ can be completed to a Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}$ such that $\mathcal{H}'$ lies dense in $\mathcal{H}$. We name $\mathcal{H}$ the abstract completion of $\mathcal{H}'$. When $\mathcal{H}'$ satisfies the Postulate (E), then the abstract completion $\mathcal{H}$ is a separable Hilbert space.

Proof: Let $\mathcal{H}'$ be a pre-Hilbert-space. We then consider the Cauchy sequences $\{f'_n\}_{n=1,2,\dots} \subset \mathcal{H}'$ and $\{g'_n\}_{n=1,2,\dots} \subset \mathcal{H}'$. We call them equivalent if

$$f'_n - g'_n \rightarrow 0 \quad (n \rightarrow \infty)$$

is satisfied. Now we set

$$\mathcal{H} := \left\{ f = [f'_n]_{n=1,2,\dots} : \begin{array}{l} [f'_n] \text{ is the equivalence class} \\ \text{of the Cauchy sequences } \{f'_n\}_{n=1,2,\dots} \subset \mathcal{H}' \end{array} \right\}.$$

For $f = [f'_n]_n \in \mathcal{H}$ and $g = [g'_n]_n \in \mathcal{H}$ we evidently have the statement

$$[f'_n]_n = [g'_n]_n \quad \Leftrightarrow \quad \|f'_n - g'_n\| \rightarrow 0 \quad (n \rightarrow \infty).$$

To Postulate (A): On $\mathcal{H}$ we define a vector space structure as follows: For $\alpha, \beta \in \mathbb{C}$ and $f = [f'_n]_n \in \mathcal{H}$, $g = [g'_n]_n \in \mathcal{H}$ we set

$$\alpha f + \beta g := [\alpha f'_n + \beta g'_n]_n.$$

The null element is the equivalence class of all zero sequences in $\mathcal{H}'$:

$$0 = [f'_n]_n \quad \text{with} \quad \{f'_n\}_{n=1,2,\dots} \subset \mathcal{H}' \quad \text{and} \quad \|f'_n\| \rightarrow 0 \quad (n \rightarrow \infty).$$

To *Postulate (B)*: For the elements $f = [f'_n]_n \in \mathcal{H}$ and $g = [g'_n]_n \in \mathcal{H}$ we define the inner product

$$(f, g) := \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} (f'_n, g'_n).$$

On account of

$$\begin{aligned} |(f'_n, g'_n) - (f'_m, g'_m)| &\leq |(f'_n - f'_m, g'_n)| + |(f'_m, g'_n - g'_m)| \\ &\leq \|f'_n - f'_m\| \|g'_n\| + \|f'_m\| \|g'_n - g'_m\| \rightarrow 0 \quad (n, m \rightarrow \infty), \end{aligned}$$

the limit given above exists. One easily verifies that the so-defined inner product satisfies the Postulate (B).

To the *Postulates (C) and (E)*: Let $\tilde{\mathcal{H}}$ denote the set of all $f \in \mathcal{H}$ satisfying $f = [f', f', \dots]$ and $f' \in \mathcal{H}'$. Then the vector spaces $\mathcal{H}'$ and $\tilde{\mathcal{H}}$ are isomorphic, and consequently $\mathcal{H}'$ is embedded into $\mathcal{H}$. Now $\tilde{\mathcal{H}}$ is dense in $\mathcal{H}$: Taking $f = [f'_n]_n \in \mathcal{H}$ we set $\tilde{f}_m = [f'_m, f'_m, \dots] \in \tilde{\mathcal{H}}$ and see

$$\|f - \tilde{f}_m\| = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \|f'_n - f'_m\| \rightarrow 0 \quad (m \rightarrow \infty).$$

Evidently the Postulate (C) remains valid for $\mathcal{H}$. In the case that $\mathcal{H}'$ additionally satisfies the Postulate (E), this holds true for $\mathcal{H}$ as well.

To *Postulate (D)*: Let $\{f_n\}_{n=1,2,\dots} \subset \mathcal{H}$ with

$$\|f_n - f_m\| \rightarrow 0 \quad (n, m \rightarrow \infty)$$

be chosen. Since $\tilde{\mathcal{H}}$ lies dense in $\mathcal{H}$ we have a sequence $\{\tilde{f}_n\}_{n=1,2,\dots} \subset \tilde{\mathcal{H}}$ satisfying

$$\|f_n - \tilde{f}_n\| \leq \frac{1}{n}, \quad n = 1, 2, \dots$$

Here we have $\tilde{f}_n = [f'_n, f'_n, \dots]$ with $f'_n \in \mathcal{H}'$. We now set $f := [f'_n]_{n=1,2,\dots}$ and show that $f \in \mathcal{H}$ and $\|f - f_n\| \rightarrow 0 \quad (n \rightarrow \infty)$ are correct. At first, we estimate

$$\begin{aligned} \|f'_n - f'_m\| &= \|\tilde{f}_n - \tilde{f}_m\| \leq \|\tilde{f}_n - f_n\| + \|f_n - f_m\| + \|f_m - \tilde{f}_m\| \\ &\leq \frac{1}{n} + \|f_n - f_m\| + \frac{1}{m} \rightarrow 0 \quad (n, m \rightarrow \infty). \end{aligned}$$

Now we have

$$\|f - f_m\| \leq \|f - \tilde{f}_m\| + \|\tilde{f}_m - f_m\| \leq \|f - \tilde{f}_m\| + \frac{1}{m},$$

and note that $\tilde{f}_m = [f'_m, f'_m, \dots]$ and $f = [f'_1, f'_2, \dots]$. Then we infer

$$\|f - \tilde{f}_m\| = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \|f'_n - f'_m\| \leq \varepsilon_m$$

with the numbers $\varepsilon_m > 0$ and $m \in \mathbb{N}$ satisfying $\varepsilon_m \rightarrow 0$ ($m \rightarrow \infty$). We summarize our considerations to

$$\|f - f_m\| \leq \varepsilon_m + \frac{1}{m} \rightarrow 0 \quad (m \rightarrow \infty). \quad \text{q.e.d.}$$

Remark: We can complete the pre-Hilbert-space $\mathcal{H}'$ from the Example 1 abstractly to a Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}$ with the aid of Theorem 2. Alternatively, we can concretely complete $\mathcal{H}'$ to the Hilbert space

$$L^2(G, \mathbb{C}) := \left\{ f : G \rightarrow \mathbb{C} \text{ measurable} : \int_G |f(x)|^2 dx < +\infty \right\},$$

whose inner product is given in (1).

Definition 4. A sequence of elements $\{\varphi_1, \varphi_2, \dots\} \subset \mathcal{H}'$ in a pre-Hilbert-space $\mathcal{H}'$ is called orthonormal if and only if

$$(\varphi_i, \varphi_j) = \delta_{ij} \quad \text{for all } i, j \in \mathbb{N}$$

is correct. We name the orthonormal system $\{\varphi_k\}_{k=1,2,\dots}$ complete - briefly we speak of a c.o.n.s. - if each element $f \in \mathcal{H}'$ satisfies the completeness relation

$$\|f\|^2 = \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} |(\varphi_k, f)|^2. \quad (2)$$

This definition is justified by the following theorem, whose proof is contained in the Propositions 1, 2 and Theorem 5 from § 6 in Chapter II.

Theorem 3. Let $\{\varphi_k\}_{k=1,2,\dots} \subset \mathcal{H}'$ represent an orthonormal system. For all $f \in \mathcal{H}'$ we then have Bessel's inequality

$$\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} |(\varphi_k, f)|^2 \leq \|f\|^2. \quad (3)$$

An element $f \in \mathcal{H}'$ satisfies the equation

$$\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} |(\varphi_k, f)|^2 = \|f\|^2 \quad (4)$$

if and only if

$$\lim_{N \rightarrow \infty} \left\| f - \sum_{k=1}^N (\varphi_k, f) \varphi_k \right\| = 0 \quad (5)$$

holds true. The latter statement means that $f \in \mathcal{H}'$ can be represented by the Fourier series

$$\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} (\varphi_k, f) \varphi_k$$

converging with respect to the norm $\|\cdot\|$ in the Hilbert space.

Example 4. With the Fourier series and the spherical harmonic functions in § 4 and § 5 from Chapter V, respectively, we obtain two c.o.n.s. in the adequate Hilbert spaces.

Theorem 4. *An orthonormal system $\{\varphi_k\}_{k=1,2,\dots}$ in the pre-Hilbert-space $\mathcal{H}'$ is complete if and only if the relation $(\varphi_k, x) = 0$, $k = 1, 2, \dots$ with $x \in \mathcal{H}'$ implies the identity $x = 0$.*

Proof:

‘ $\Rightarrow$ ’ Let $x \in \mathcal{H}'$ and $(\varphi_k, x) = 0$ hold true for all $k \in \mathbb{N}$. Then the completeness relation yields

$$\|x\|^2 = \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} |(\varphi_k, x)|^2 = 0$$

as well as $\|x\| = 0$ and consequently $x = 0 \in \mathcal{H}'$.

‘ $\Leftarrow$ ’ Let $\{\varphi_k\}_{k=1,2,\dots}$ be an orthonormal system such that the statement $(\varphi_k, x) = 0$ for all $k \in \mathbb{N}$ implies $x = 0$. For arbitrary $y \in \mathcal{H}$ we set

$$x := y - \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} (\varphi_k, y) \varphi_k$$

and we calculate

$$(\varphi_l, x) = (\varphi_l, y) - \left(\varphi_l, \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} (\varphi_k, y) \varphi_k \right) = (\varphi_l, y) - (\varphi_l, y) = 0$$

for all $l \in \mathbb{N}$. This implies $x = 0$ and consequently

$$y = \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} (\varphi_k, y) \varphi_k.$$

Therefore, the system $\{\varphi_k\}_{k=1,2,\dots} \subset \mathcal{H}'$ is complete due to Theorem 3.
q.e.d.

Theorem 5. *Let $\mathcal{H}$ denote a separable Hilbert space.*

- Then there exists a c.o.n.s. $\{\varphi_k\}_{k=1,2,\dots} \subset \mathcal{H}$.*
- For two arbitrary elements $x, y \in \mathcal{H}$ we have the Parseval equation*

$$(x, y) = \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \overline{(\varphi_k, x)} (\varphi_k, y). \quad (6)$$

c) The Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}$ is isomorphic to the Hilbert sequential space l_2 via the mapping

$$\Phi : \mathcal{H} \rightarrow l_2, \quad x \mapsto (x_1, x_2, \dots) \quad \text{with} \quad x_k := (\varphi_k, x).$$

By the prescription

$$x = \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} x_k \varphi_k \quad \text{with} \quad (x_1, x_2, \dots) \in l_2$$

the mapping inverse to Φ is given.

Proof:

a) Since $\mathcal{H}$ is separable, we have a sequence $\{g_1, g_2, \dots\} \subset \mathcal{H}$ which is dense in $\mathcal{H}$. We eliminate the linear dependent functions from $\{g_1, g_2, \dots\}$, and construct a system of linear independent functions $\{f_1, f_2, \dots\}$ in $\mathcal{H}$ with the following property:

$$[g_1, \dots, g_n] \subset [f_1, \dots, f_p] \quad \text{for all} \quad p \geq n \geq 1, \quad (7)$$

denoting with $[g_1, \dots, g_n]$ and $[f_1, \dots, f_p]$ the $\mathbb{C}$ -linear spaces spanned by the elements $g_1, \dots, g_n$ and $f_1, \dots, f_p$, respectively; here $n, p \in \mathbb{N}$ holds true. Now we apply the *orthonormalizing procedure of E. Schmidt* to the system of functions $\{f_k\}_{k=1,2,\dots}$:

$$\begin{aligned} \varphi_1 &:= \frac{1}{\|f_1\|} f_1, & \varphi_2 &:= \frac{f_2 - (\varphi_1, f_2)\varphi_1}{\|f_2 - (\varphi_1, f_2)\varphi_1\|}, \quad \dots, \\ \varphi_n &:= \frac{f_n - \sum_{j=1}^{n-1} (\varphi_j, f_n)\varphi_j}{\left\| f_n - \sum_{j=1}^{n-1} (\varphi_j, f_n)\varphi_j \right\|}, & n &= 1, 2, \dots \end{aligned}$$

We evidently have $(\varphi_j, \varphi_k) = \delta_{jk}$ for $j, k = 1, 2, \dots$ and

$$[g_1, \dots, g_n] \subset [\varphi_1, \dots, \varphi_p] \quad \text{for all} \quad p \geq n \geq 1. \quad (8)$$

When $f \in \mathcal{H}$ and $\varepsilon > 0$ are given, we have an index $n \in \mathbb{N}$ satisfying $\|f - g_n\| \leq \varepsilon$. According to (8) we find $p \geq n$ numbers $c_1, \dots, c_p \in \mathbb{C}$ with

$$\left\| f - \sum_{k=1}^p c_k \varphi_k \right\| \leq \varepsilon.$$

Due to the minimal property of the Fourier coefficients (compare Chapter II, § 6, Corollary to Proposition 1) we can still choose n and p such that

$$\left\| f - \sum_{k=1}^p (\varphi_k, f) \varphi_k \right\| \leq \varepsilon \quad \text{for all } \varepsilon > 0.$$

Observing the limit process $\varepsilon \downarrow 0$ we deduce

$$f = \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} (\varphi_k, f) \varphi_k,$$

and $\{\varphi_k\}_{k=1,2,\dots}$ is a c.o.n.s.

b) For two elements $x, y \in \mathcal{H}$ with the representations

$$x = \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} (\varphi_k, x) \varphi_k, \quad y = \sum_{l=1}^{\infty} (\varphi_l, y) \varphi_l$$

we evaluate the inner product

$$\begin{aligned} (x, y) &= \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \left(\sum_{k=1}^n (\varphi_k, x) \varphi_k, \sum_{l=1}^n (\varphi_l, y) \varphi_l \right) \\ &= \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \sum_{k,l=1}^n \overline{(\varphi_k, x)} (\varphi_l, y) (\varphi_k, \varphi_l) \\ &= \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \sum_{k=1}^n \overline{(\varphi_k, x)} (\varphi_k, y) \\ &= \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \overline{(\varphi_k, x)} (\varphi_k, y). \end{aligned}$$

c) Here nothing has to be shown any more.

q.e.d.

Definition 5. We name $\mathcal{M} \subset \mathcal{H}$ a linear subspace of the Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}$, if for arbitrary elements $f, g \in \mathcal{M}$ and all numbers $\alpha, \beta \in \mathbb{C}$ we obtain the inclusion

$$\alpha f + \beta g \in \mathcal{M}.$$

A linear subspace $\mathcal{M} \subset \mathcal{H}$ is called closed, if each Cauchy sequence

$$\{f_n\}_{n=1,2,\dots} \subset \mathcal{M}$$

fulfills

$$f := \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} f_n \in \mathcal{M}.$$

With a linear subspace $\mathcal{M} \subset \mathcal{H}$ we denote by

$$\overline{\mathcal{M}} := \left\{ f \in \mathcal{H} : \begin{array}{l} \text{There exists a Cauchy sequence } \{f_n\}_{n=1,2,\dots} \subset \mathcal{M} \\ \text{satisfying } f = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} f_n \end{array} \right\}$$

the closure of $\mathcal{M}$.

Example 5. The space $C_0^\infty(G) =: \mathcal{M} \subset \mathcal{H} := L^2(G)$ is a nonclosed linear subspace, and we have $\overline{\mathcal{M}} = \mathcal{H}$.

Definition 6. We call $\mathcal{H}$ a unitary space, if the following Postulate (C') is satisfied in addition to the Postulates (A) and (B).

Postulate (C'): With an integer $n \in \mathbb{N}$ we have $\dim \mathcal{H} = n$.

Remarks:

1. In an n -dimensional unitary space $\mathcal{H}$ we have n linearly independent elements $\{f_1, \dots, f_n\}$, and each $g \in \mathcal{H}$ can be represented in the form

$$g = \sum_{k=1}^n c_k f_k \quad \text{with} \quad c_1, \dots, c_n \in \mathbb{C}.$$

2. A unitary space $\mathcal{H}$ possesses an orthonormal basis $\{\varphi_1, \dots, \varphi_n\}$ with $n = \dim \mathcal{H}$ satisfying

$$f = \sum_{k=1}^n (\varphi_k, f) \varphi_k \quad \text{for all} \quad f \in \mathcal{H}.$$

3. Each unitary space $\mathcal{H}$ endowed with the inner product

$$(x, y) := \sum_{k=1}^n \overline{x_k} y_k, \quad x = (x_1, \dots, x_n), \quad y = (y_1, \dots, y_n) \in \mathbb{C}^n$$

is isomorphic to $\mathbb{C}^n$, where $n = \dim \mathcal{H}$ holds true.

4. Each unitary space is complete.

Noticing the Definitions 5 and 6, we easily prove the following

Theorem 6. Let $\mathcal{H}$ denote a Hilbert space, and $\mathcal{M}$ is a closed linear subspace of $\mathcal{H}$. Then $\mathcal{M}$ represents either a Hilbert space or a unitary space. In the case that $\mathcal{H}$ is separable the same holds true for $\mathcal{M}$.

Definition 7. Let $\mathcal{M}$ be a linear subspace of $\mathcal{H}$. Then we define the orthogonal space of $\mathcal{M}$ in $\mathcal{H}$ setting

$$\mathcal{M}^\perp := \left\{ g \in \mathcal{H} : (g, f) = 0 \text{ for all } f \in \mathcal{M} \right\}.$$

Remark: On account of the continuity for the inner product, the orthogonal space $\mathcal{M}^\perp \subset \mathcal{H}$ is closed.

From Theorem 2 in Chapter II, §6 we now take over the proof of the following

Theorem 7. (Projection theorem)

Let $\mathcal{M}$ denote a closed linear subspace in $\mathcal{H}$. Then each element $x \in \mathcal{H}$ can be uniquely represented in the form $x = x_1 + x_2$ with $x_1 \in \mathcal{M}$ and $x_2 \in \mathcal{M}^\perp$. We then obtain the decomposition

$$\mathcal{H} = \mathcal{M} \oplus \mathcal{M}^\perp.$$

We still note the subsequent

Theorem 8. Let $\mathcal{M}$ be a linear subspace in a Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}$. Then $\mathcal{M}$ lies dense in $\mathcal{H}$ if and only if the following implication is correct:

$$\varphi \in \mathcal{H}: (f, \varphi) = 0 \text{ for all } f \in \mathcal{M} \quad \Rightarrow \quad \varphi = 0. \quad (9)$$

Proof: The projection theorem yields the orthogonal decomposition $\mathcal{H} = \overline{\mathcal{M}} \oplus \mathcal{M}^\perp$. Now the subspace $\mathcal{M}$ lies dense in $\mathcal{H}$ if the statement $\overline{\mathcal{M}} = \mathcal{H}$ and consequently $\mathcal{M}^\perp = \{0\}$ is correct. The latter statement coincides with the implication (9). q.e.d.

§4 Bounded linear operators in Hilbert spaces

We begin with the fundamental

Definition 1. On the Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}$ the mapping $A: \mathcal{H} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$ is a bounded linear functional, if the following conditions are fulfilled:

- a) $A(\alpha f + \beta g) = \alpha A f + \beta A g$ for all $f, g \in \mathcal{H}$ and $\alpha, \beta \in \mathbb{C}$,
- b) $|A f| \leq c \|f\|$ for all $f \in \mathcal{H}$, with a constant $c \in [0, +\infty)$.

According to Chapter II, § 6, Definitions 6 to 8 and Theorem 3 the following three statements are equivalent for a linear functional:

- (i) A is bounded,
- (ii) A is continuous at one point,
- (iii) A is continuous at all points of the Hilbert space.

We define the *norm of the bounded linear functional* A by

$$\|A\| := \sup_{x \in \mathcal{H}, \|x\| \leq 1} |A x| = \sup_{x \in \mathcal{H}, \|x\| = 1} |A x| < +\infty.$$

In Chapter II, § 6, Theorem 4 we have proved the following statement:

Theorem 1. (Representation theorem of Fréchet and Riesz)

Each bounded linear functional $A: \mathcal{H} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$ on the Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}$ can be represented in the form

$$A f = (g, f) \quad \text{for all } f \in \mathcal{H} \quad (1)$$

with a uniquely determined generating element $g \in \mathcal{H}$.

Definition 2. Let $\mathcal{D}$ denote a linear subspace of the Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}$. A linear operator T consists of a function $T : \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{H}$ with the following property

$$T(c_1 u_1 + c_2 u_2) = c_1 T(u_1) + c_2 T(u_2) \quad \text{for all } u_1, u_2 \in \mathcal{D} \text{ and } c_1, c_2 \in \mathbb{C}.$$

Definition 3. A linear operator $T : \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{H}$ is called bounded, if we have a number $c \in [0, +\infty)$ such that

$$\|Tu\| \leq c\|u\| \quad \text{for all } u \in \mathcal{D} \quad (2)$$

holds true. Then the norm of T is defined by

$$\|T\| := \sup_{u \in \mathcal{D}, u \neq 0} \frac{\|Tu\|}{\|u\|} = \sup_{u \in \mathcal{D}, \|u\| \leq 1} \|Tu\| = \sup_{u \in \mathcal{D}, \|u\|=1} \|Tu\|. \quad (3)$$

Remark: The Example 2 in § 1 contains an unbounded operator with $T := -\Delta$.

Definition 4. Let $\mathcal{D}_T, \mathcal{D}_{\tilde{T}}$ denote two linear subspaces of the Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}$. Then the mapping

$$\tilde{T} : \mathcal{D}_{\tilde{T}} \rightarrow \mathcal{H}$$

is called the extension of the bounded linear operator $T : \mathcal{D}_T \rightarrow \mathcal{H}$, if the following properties are satisfied

- a) $\mathcal{D}_T \subset \mathcal{D}_{\tilde{T}}$,
- b) $\tilde{T}u = Tu$ for all $u \in \mathcal{D}_T$.

We then write $T \subset \tilde{T}$.

For bounded operators it suffices to define them on dense subspaces of Hilbert spaces due to the following

Theorem 2. (Extension theorem)

Let $T : \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{H}$ denote a bounded linear operator, and the linear subspace $\mathcal{D} \subset \mathcal{H}$ lies dense in the Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}$. Then there exists a uniquely determined bounded extension $\tilde{T} \supset T$ satisfying $\mathcal{D}_{\tilde{T}} = \mathcal{H}$ and $\|\tilde{T}\| = \|T\|$.

Proof:

1. We define $\tilde{T} : \mathcal{H} \rightarrow \mathcal{H}$ as follows: Taking $f \in \mathcal{H}$ we have a sequence $\{f_n\}_{n=1,2,\dots} \subset \mathcal{D}_T$ satisfying $f_n \rightarrow f$ ($n \rightarrow \infty$) in $\mathcal{H}$. Now $\{Tf_n\}_{n=1,2,\dots}$ gives a Cauchy sequence in $\mathcal{H}$ on account of

$$\|Tf_n - Tf_m\| = \|T(f_n - f_m)\| \leq \|T\|\|f_n - f_m\| \rightarrow 0 \quad (n, m \rightarrow \infty).$$

Therefore the limit $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} Tf_n$ exists, and we set

$$\tilde{T}f := \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} Tf_n, \quad f \in \mathcal{H}.$$

This notion is uniquely determined: Taking namely a further sequence $\{f'_n\}_{n=1,2,\dots} \subset \mathcal{D}_T$ satisfying $f'_n \rightarrow f$ ($n \rightarrow \infty$) in $\mathcal{H}$, we observe

$$\|Tf_n - Tf'_n\| \leq \|T\| \|f_n - f'_n\| \leq \|T\| (\|f_n - f\| + \|f - f'_n\|) \rightarrow 0 \quad (n \rightarrow \infty).$$

Finally, we note that $\tilde{T}f = Tf$ for all $f \in \mathcal{D}_T$.

2. Now the relation

$$\|\tilde{T}\| := \sup_{f \in \mathcal{H}, \|f\| \leq 1} \|\tilde{T}f\| = \sup_{f \in \mathcal{D}_T, \|f\| \leq 1} \|\tilde{T}f\| = \sup_{f \in \mathcal{D}_T, \|f\| \leq 1} \|Tf\| = \|T\|$$

is correct. Furthermore, the operator $\tilde{T} : \mathcal{H} \rightarrow \mathcal{H}$ is linear: For two elements

$$f = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} f_n, \quad g = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} g_n \quad \text{from } \mathcal{H}$$

with $\{f_n\}_n \subset \mathcal{D}_T$ and $\{g_n\}_n \subset \mathcal{D}_T$ we have the equation

$$\begin{aligned} \tilde{T}(\alpha f + \beta g) &= \tilde{T}\left(\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} (\alpha f_n + \beta g_n)\right) = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} (\alpha Tf_n + \beta Tg_n) \\ &= \alpha \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} Tf_n + \beta \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} Tg_n = \alpha \tilde{T}f + \beta \tilde{T}g \end{aligned}$$

for arbitrary $\alpha, \beta \in \mathbb{C}$ on account of the continuity of $\tilde{T}$.

3. If $\hat{T}, \tilde{T} : \mathcal{H} \rightarrow \mathcal{H}$ are two extensions of $\mathcal{D}_T$ on $\mathcal{H}$, we have

$$(\tilde{T} - \hat{T})(f) = 0 \quad \text{for all } f \in \mathcal{D}_T.$$

Since $\mathcal{D}_T \subset \mathcal{H}$ lies dense and $(\tilde{T} - \hat{T}) : \mathcal{H} \rightarrow \mathcal{H}$ is continuous, we infer

$$(\tilde{T} - \hat{T})(f) = 0 \quad \text{for all } f \in \mathcal{H}$$

and consequently $\tilde{T} = \hat{T}$. q.e.d.

Theorem 3. Let $T : \mathcal{H} \rightarrow \mathcal{H}$ denote a bounded linear operator in the Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}$. Then we have a uniquely determined linear operator $T^* : \mathcal{H} \rightarrow \mathcal{H}$ such that

$$(Tf, g) = (f, T^*g) \quad \text{for all } f, g \in \mathcal{H} \quad (4)$$

is correct. Furthermore, we have

$$\|T^*\| = \|T\| \quad \text{and} \quad T^{**} = T,$$

which means that the operation $*$ is an involution.

Definition 5. The operator T^* is named the adjoint operator of T .

Definition 6. A bounded linear operator H is called Hermitian if $H^* = H$ holds true, which means

$$(Hx, y) = (x, Hy) \quad \text{for all } x, y \in \mathcal{H}.$$

Proof of Theorem 3:

-*Uniqueness:* Let T_1 and T_2 be two adjoint operators to T : Then (4) yields

$$(f, T_1 g) = (T f, g) = (f, T_2 g) \quad \text{for all } f, g \in \mathcal{H}$$

as well as $(f, (T_1 - T_2)g) = 0$ for all $f, g \in \mathcal{H}$, and consequently $T_1 = T_2$.

-*Existence:* For a fixed $g \in \mathcal{H}$ we consider the bounded linear functional

$$A_g(f) := (g, T f), \quad f \in \mathcal{H}.$$

This is bounded on account of

$$|A_g(f)| \leq \|g\| \|T f\| \leq (\|g\| \|T\|) \|f\| \quad \text{for all } f \in \mathcal{H}.$$

We apply the Representation theorem of Fréchet-Riesz: For each $g \in \mathcal{H}$ we have an element $g^* \in \mathcal{H}$ with the property

$$(g, T f) = A_g(f) = (g^*, f) \quad \text{for all } f \in \mathcal{H}.$$

We now set $T^* g := g^*$, and the so-defined mapping $T^* : \mathcal{H} \rightarrow \mathcal{H}$ has the property (4).

-*Linearity:* We take the elements $g_1, g_2 \in \mathcal{H}$ and the numbers $c_1, c_2 \in \mathbb{C}$. With the aid of (4) we then calculate

$$\begin{aligned} (T^*(c_1 g_1 + c_2 g_2), f) &= (c_1 g_1 + c_2 g_2, T f) \\ &= \bar{c}_1 (g_1, T f) + \bar{c}_2 (g_2, T f) \\ &= \bar{c}_1 (T^* g_1, f) + \bar{c}_2 (T^* g_2, f) \\ &= (c_1 T^* g_1 + c_2 T^* g_2, f) \quad \text{for all } f \in \mathcal{H}. \end{aligned}$$

-*Boundedness:* At first, we note that

$$(T f, g) = (f, T^* g) = (T^{**} f, g) \quad \text{for all } f, g \in \mathcal{H}.$$

Therefore, T is an involution. With the aid of (4) we obtain the following estimate

$$\|(f, T^* g)\| \leq \|T f\| \|g\| \leq \|T\| \|f\| \|g\| \quad \text{for all } f, g \in \mathcal{H}.$$

Inserting $f = T^* g$, we obtain

$$\|T^* g\|^2 \leq \|T\| \|T^* g\| \|g\|$$

and consequently

$$\|T^* g\| \leq \|T\| \|g\|,$$

which means

$$\|T^*\| \leq \|T\|.$$

Since T is an involution, we infer

$$\|T\| = \|T^{**}\| \leq \|T^*\|.$$

Consequently, the relation $\|T\| = \|T^*\|$ is correct.

q.e.d.

Example 1. Let the following cube in $\mathbb{R}^n$ be given, namely

$$Q := \left\{ x = (x_1, \dots, x_n) \in \mathbb{R}^n : |x_j| \leq R \text{ for } j = 1, \dots, n \right\}$$

whose sides have the length $2R \in (0, +\infty)$. Then we consider a *Hilbert-Schmidt integral kernel*

$$K = K(x, y) : Q \times Q \rightarrow \mathbb{C} \in L^2(Q \times Q, \mathbb{C}). \quad (5)$$

On account of

$$\int_{Q \times Q} |K(x, y)|^2 dx dy < \infty$$

we have a null-set $N \subset Q$ with the following property: For all $x \in Q \setminus N$ the function $y \mapsto K(x, y)$ is measurable on Q and $\int_Q |K(x, y)|^2 dy < \infty$ is satisfied.

Furthermore, we have

$$\int_Q \left(\int_Q |K(x, y)|^2 dy \right) dx = \int_{Q \times Q} |K(x, y)|^2 dx dy =: \|K\|^2 < \infty$$

due to the Fubini-Tonelli theorem. Taking $f \in L^2(Q, \mathbb{C})$ we define the *Hilbert-Schmidt operator*

$$\mathbb{K}f(x) = \begin{cases} \int_Q K(x, y)f(y) dy, & x \in Q \setminus N \\ 0, & x \in N \end{cases}. \quad (6)$$

The Hölder inequality yields

$$|\mathbb{K}f(x)|^2 \leq \left(\int_Q |K(x, y)|^2 dy \right) \|f\|^2$$

for all $x \in Q \setminus N$ and integration with respect to $x \in Q$ gives

$$\int_Q |\mathbb{K}f(x)|^2 dx \leq \left(\int_{Q \times Q} |K(x, y)|^2 dx dy \right) \|f\|^2 = \|K\|^2 \|f\|^2, \quad$$

and finally

$$\|\mathbb{K}f\| \leq \|K\| \|f\| \quad \text{for all } f \in L^2(Q, \mathbb{C}). \quad (7)$$

We therefore obtain the following

Theorem 4. *The Hilbert-Schmidt operator $\mathbb{K} : \mathcal{H} \rightarrow \mathcal{H}$ from (6) with the integral kernel (5) represents a bounded linear operator on the Hilbert space $\mathcal{H} = L^2(Q, \mathbb{C})$, and we have the estimate*

$$\|\mathbb{K}\| \leq \|K\|.$$

Remarks:

1. The singular kernels

$$K = K(x, y) \in \mathcal{S}_\alpha(G, \mathbb{C}) \quad \text{with} \quad \alpha \in [0, n)$$

generate special Hilbert-Schmidt operators. The statements from § 2, Theorem 3 and Theorem 4, valid for these special operators, will later be utilized to obtain regularity results concerning the solutions of the integral equation.

2. The kernel

$$K^*(x, y) := \overline{K(y, x)} \in L^2(Q \times Q, \mathbb{C})$$

generates the adjoint operator $\mathbb{K}^*$ belonging to the Hilbert-Schmidt operator $\mathbb{K}$.

3. The operator $\mathbb{K}$ is Hermitian if and only if the following identity is satisfied:

$$K(x, y) = \overline{K(y, x)} \quad \text{a. e. in} \quad Q \times Q.$$

We now shall investigate the inverse of a linear operator.

Definition 7. Let $T : \mathcal{D}_T \rightarrow \mathcal{H}$ denote a linear operator on the subset $\mathcal{D}_T \subset \mathcal{H}$ of the Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}$ with the range $\mathcal{W}_T := T(\mathcal{D}_T) \subset \mathcal{H}$. Furthermore, let the mapping

$$x \mapsto Tx, \quad x \in \mathcal{D}_T$$

be injective. Setting $f := T^{-1}g$ the inverse $T^{-1} : \mathcal{W}_T \rightarrow \mathcal{D}_T \subset \mathcal{H}$ of the operator T is then defined if $Tf = g$ holds true. We note that

$$\mathcal{D}_{T^{-1}} = \mathcal{W}_T, \quad \mathcal{W}_{T^{-1}} = \mathcal{D}_T.$$

We immediately obtain the following

Theorem 5. The operator $T^{-1} : \mathcal{W}_T \rightarrow \mathcal{D}_T$ is linear and does exist if and only if the equation

$$Tx = 0, \quad x \in \mathcal{D}_T$$

possesses only the trivial solution $x = 0$.

Theorem 6. (O. Toeplitz)

Let $T : \mathcal{H} \rightarrow \mathcal{H}$ denote a bounded linear operator in the Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}$. Then the operator T possesses a bounded inverse in $\mathcal{H}$ - namely $T^{-1} : \mathcal{H} \rightarrow \mathcal{H}$ - if and only if the following conditions are satisfied:

- a) For all $x \in \mathcal{H}$ we have $\|Tx\| \geq d\|x\|$ with a bound $d \in (0, +\infty)$.
- b) The homogeneous equation $T^*x = 0$ admits only the trivial solution $x = 0$.

Proof:

‘ $\Rightarrow$ ’ We assume that the bounded inverse $T^{-1} : \mathcal{H} \rightarrow \mathcal{H}$ exists. Then we have a number $c > 0$ satisfying

$$\|T^{-1}x\| \leq c\|x\| \quad \text{for all } x \in \mathcal{H}.$$

With $x := Tf$ we infer

$$\|Tf\| \geq \frac{1}{c}\|f\|.$$

Therefore the condition a) is fulfilled with $d := \frac{1}{c}$.

If $z \in \mathcal{H}$ is a solution of $T^*z = 0$ we deduce

$$(Tx, z) = (x, T^*z) = (x, 0) = 0 \quad \text{for all } x \in \mathcal{H}.$$

Inserting the element $x = T^{-1}z$, we obtain $z = 0$.

‘ $\Leftarrow$ ’ At first, we show that $\mathcal{W}_T \subset \mathcal{H}$ is closed: Let $\{y_n\}_{n=1,2,\dots} \subset \mathcal{W}_T$ denote an arbitrary sequence with $y_n \rightarrow y$ ($n \rightarrow \infty$) in $\mathcal{H}$. We set $y_n = Tx_n$, $n = 1, 2, \dots$, and with the aid of a) we get the inequality

$$\|x_n - x_m\| \leq \frac{1}{d}\|y_n - y_m\| \rightarrow 0 \quad (m, n \rightarrow \infty).$$

This implies $x_n \rightarrow x$ ($n \rightarrow \infty$), and the continuity of T yields

$$Tx = T\left(\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} x_n\right) = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} Tx_n = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} y_n = y \in \mathcal{W}_T.$$

Consequently, $\mathcal{W}_T$ is closed in $\mathcal{H}$, and we have the orthogonal decomposition

$$\mathcal{H} = \mathcal{W}_T \oplus \mathcal{W}_T^\perp.$$

Now we take $z \in \mathcal{W}_T^\perp$ and obtain

$$0 = (z, Tx) = (T^*z, x) \quad \text{for all } x \in \mathcal{H}$$

and finally $T^*z = 0$. The condition b) therefore yields $z = 0$ and consequently $\mathcal{H} = \mathcal{W}_T$, which means T is surjective. The injectivity of T follows immediately from a). Consequently, T^{-1} exists and is bounded due to a) with

$$\|T^{-1}\| \leq \frac{1}{d}. \quad \text{q.e.d.}$$

Remark: If $H : \mathcal{H} \rightarrow \mathcal{H}$ is a bounded Hermitian operator satisfying

$$\|Hx\| \geq d\|x\| \quad \text{for all } x \in \mathcal{H}$$

with the number $d \in (0, +\infty)$, then Theorem 6 implies the existence of the bounded inverse $H^{-1} : \mathcal{H} \rightarrow \mathcal{H}$.

Theorem 7. *Let $T : \mathcal{H} \rightarrow \mathcal{H}$ denote a bounded linear operator in the Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}$. Furthermore, let the bounded inverse $T^{-1} : \mathcal{H} \rightarrow \mathcal{H}$ be defined. Then the operator T^* possesses an inverse $(T^*)^{-1}$, which is defined and bounded in $\mathcal{H}$. Furthermore, we have $(T^{-1})^* = (T^*)^{-1}$.*

Proof: According to the assumptions we see

$$\|T^{-1}x\| \leq c\|x\| \quad \text{for all } x \in \mathcal{H}.$$

When we insert the element $x = T^{-1}y$ into the relation

$$(Tx, y) = (x, T^*y) \quad \text{for all } y \in \mathcal{H}$$

we obtain

$$\|y\|^2 \leq \|T^{-1}y\| \|T^*y\| \leq c\|y\| \|T^*y\|$$

and consequently

$$\|T^*y\| \geq \frac{1}{c}\|y\| \quad \text{for all } y \in \mathcal{H}.$$

Theorem 3 and the relation

$$(T^*)^*f = T^{**}f = Tf$$

imply, with $(T^*)^*f = 0$ then $f = 0$ holds true. Due to Theorem 6 the inverse

$$(T^*)^{-1} : \mathcal{H} \rightarrow \mathcal{H}$$

exists, and we have

$$\|(T^*)^{-1}\| \leq \|T^{-1}\|.$$

Let the elements $f, g \in \mathcal{H}$ be chosen arbitrarily. With $x = T^{-1}f$ and $y = (T^*)^{-1}g$ we then obtain the relation

$$(f, (T^*)^{-1}g) = (Tx, y) = (x, T^*y) = (T^{-1}f, g) = (f, (T^{-1})^*g).$$

Consequently, the identity $(T^*)^{-1} = (T^{-1})^*$ is correct. q.e.d.

In the Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}$ we consider a closed linear nonvoid subspace $\mathcal{M} \subset \mathcal{H}$, and the Projection theorem yields the decomposition $\mathcal{H} = \mathcal{M} \oplus \mathcal{M}^\perp$. Noting that

$$f = f_1 + f_2 \in \mathcal{H} \quad \text{with } f_1 \in \mathcal{M}, f_2 \in \mathcal{M}^\perp$$

holds true, the following definition for a projector P is sensible:

$$P : \mathcal{H} \rightarrow \mathcal{M} \quad \text{via } f = f_1 + f_2 \mapsto Pf := f_1.$$

We consider

$$\|Pf\|^2 = \|f_1\|^2 \leq \|f\|^2 \quad \text{for all } f \in \mathcal{H}$$

and

$$\|Pf\| = \|f\| \quad \text{for all } f \in \mathcal{M}.$$

The norm of the projector consequently satisfies

$$\|P\| = 1.$$

Furthermore, we observe

$$P^2f = P \circ Pf = Pf \quad \text{and consequently} \quad P^2 = P \quad \text{in } \mathcal{H},$$

and we conclude

$$\begin{aligned} (Pf, g) &= (f_1, g_1 + g_2) = (f_1, g_1) \\ &= (f_1 + f_2, g_1) = (f, Pg) \quad \text{for all } f, g \in \mathcal{H}, \end{aligned}$$

which means $P = P^*$.

Definition 8. A bounded linear operator $P : \mathcal{H} \rightarrow \mathcal{H}$ is a projection operator or a projector if the following holds true:

- a) P is Hermitian, which means $P = P^*$;
- b) $P^2 = P$.

Theorem 8. Let $P : \mathcal{H} \rightarrow \mathcal{H}$ denote a projector. Then the set

$$\mathcal{M} := \left\{ g \in \mathcal{H} : g = Pf \text{ with } f \in \mathcal{H} \right\}$$

is a closed linear subspace in $\mathcal{H}$. Furthermore, we have

$$f = Pf + (f - Pf) \in \mathcal{M} \oplus \mathcal{M}^\perp.$$

Proof:

1. We show that $\mathcal{M} = P(\mathcal{H})$ is closed: Let $\{g_n\}_{n=1,2,\dots} \subset \mathcal{M}$ be a sequence with $g_n \rightarrow g$ ($n \rightarrow \infty$) in $\mathcal{H}$. On account of $g_n = Pf_n$ with $f_n \in \mathcal{H}$ we infer

$$Pg_n = P^2f_n = Pf_n = g_n.$$

Since P is continuous, $Pg = g$ follows and consequently $g \in \mathcal{M}$.

2. We take $f \in \mathcal{H}$, set $f_1 := Pf$ and $f_2 := f - Pf$, and observe $f_1 \in \mathcal{M}$. Furthermore, all $h \in \mathcal{M}$ satisfy

$$(f_2, h) = (f - Pf, h) = (f - Pf, Ph) = (Pf - P^2f, h) = 0.$$

Consequently, $f_2 = f - Pf \in \mathcal{M}^\perp$ is correct.

q.e.d.

Remark: In the Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}$ let the linear subspace $\mathcal{M} \subset \mathcal{H}$ be given. The sequence $\{\varphi_j\}_{j=1,2,\dots}$ is assumed to constitute a c.o.n.s. in $\mathcal{M}$. Then we have

$$P_{\mathcal{M}}f = \sum_{j=1}^{j_0} (\varphi_j, f) \varphi_j, \quad f \in \mathcal{H}$$

with $j_0 \in \mathbb{N} \cup \{\infty\}$.

In Physics the energy of a system is measured with the aid of *bilinear forms*. Linear operators are then attributed to the latter.

Definition 9. A complex-valued function

$$B(\cdot, \cdot) : \mathcal{H} \times \mathcal{H} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$$

is named a bilinear form if

$$\begin{aligned} B(f, c_1 g_1 + c_2 g_2) &= c_1 B(f, g_1) + c_2 B(f, g_2) && \text{for all } f, g_1, g_2 \in \mathcal{H} \\ B(c_1 f_1 + c_2 f_2, g) &= \bar{c}_1 B(f_1, g) + \bar{c}_2 B(f_2, g) && \text{for all } f_1, f_2, g \in \mathcal{H} \end{aligned} \quad (8)$$

and all $c_1, c_2 \in \mathbb{C}$ holds true. The bilinear form is Hermitian if

$$B(f, g) = \overline{B(g, f)} \quad \text{for all } f, g \in \mathcal{H} \quad (9)$$

is correct, and we name B symmetric if

$$B(f, g) = B(g, f) \quad \text{for all } f, g \in \mathcal{H} \quad (10)$$

holds true. For real-valued bilinear forms the conditions (9) and (10) are equivalent. The bilinear form B is bounded if we have a constant $c \in [0, +\infty)$ with the property

$$|B(f, g)| \leq c \|f\| \|g\| \quad \text{for all } f, g \in \mathcal{H}. \quad (11)$$

A Hermitian bilinear form is strictly positive-definite if we have a constant $c \in (0, +\infty)$ such that

$$B(f, f) \geq c \|f\|^2 \quad \text{for all } f \in \mathcal{H} \quad (12)$$

is satisfied.

Remarks:

1. Alternatively, one calls (12) the *coercivity condition*.
2. For a given bounded linear operator $T : \mathcal{H} \rightarrow \mathcal{H}$, we obtain with

$$B(f, g) := (Tf, g), \quad f, g \in \mathcal{H}$$

a bilinear form. This is bounded on account of

$$|B(f, g)| \leq \|Tf\| \|g\| \leq \|T\| \|f\| \|g\|, \quad f, g \in \mathcal{H}.$$

If T is Hermitian, the bilinear form is Hermitian as well since we have

$$B(f, g) = (Tf, g) = (f, Tg) = \overline{(Tg, f)} = \overline{B(g, f)}, \quad f, g \in \mathcal{H}.$$

We now address the inverse question.

Theorem 9. (Representation theorem for bilinear forms)

For each bounded bilinear form $B = B(f, g)$ with $f, g \in \mathcal{H}$, there exists a uniquely determined bounded linear operator $T : \mathcal{H} \rightarrow \mathcal{H}$ satisfying

$$B(f, g) = (Tf, g) \quad \text{for all } f, g \in \mathcal{H}. \quad (13)$$

If B is Hermitian then T is Hermitian as well.

Proof: For a fixed element $f \in \mathcal{H}$ we obtain with

$$L_f(g) := B(f, g), \quad g \in \mathcal{H}$$

a bounded linear functional on $\mathcal{H}$. According to the representation theorem of Fréchet-Riesz we have an element $f^* \in \mathcal{H}$ with the property

$$(f^*, g) = B(f, g) = L_f(g) \quad \text{for all } g \in \mathcal{H}. \quad (14)$$

Now f^* is uniquely determined by f , and we set

$$Tf := f^*, \quad f \in \mathcal{H}.$$

1. The operator $T : \mathcal{H} \rightarrow \mathcal{H}$ is linear: We calculate

$$\begin{aligned} (T(c_1f_1 + c_2f_2), g) &= B(c_1f_1 + c_2f_2, g) = \bar{c}_1B(f_1, g) + \bar{c}_2B(f_2, g) \\ &= \bar{c}_1(Tf_1, g) + \bar{c}_2(Tf_2, g) = (c_1Tf_1 + c_2Tf_2, g) \end{aligned}$$

for all $f_1, f_2, g \in \mathcal{H}$ and all $c_1, c_2 \in \mathbb{C}$.

2. Since the bilinear form $B(f, g) = (Tf, g)$ is bounded, we have

$$|(Tf, g)| \leq c\|f\|\|g\| \quad \text{for all } f, g \in \mathcal{H}.$$

With $g = \frac{Tf}{\|Tf\|}$ we easily comprehend the inequality

$$\|Tf\| \leq c\|f\| \quad \text{for all } f \in \mathcal{H},$$

and we conclude

$$\|T\| \leq c < +\infty.$$

3. If B is Hermitian, we see

$$(Tf, g) = B(f, g) = \overline{B(g, f)} = \overline{(Tg, f)} = (f, Tg) \quad \text{for all } f, g \in \mathcal{H}.$$

Therefore T is Hermitian.

q.e.d.

Theorem 10. (Lax, Milgram)

Let $B : \mathcal{H} \times \mathcal{H} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$ denote a Hermitian bilinear form, which is bounded due to

$$|B(f, g)| \leq c^+ \|f\| \|g\| \quad \text{for all } f, g \in \mathcal{H} \quad (15)$$

and satisfies the following coercivity condition

$$B(f, f) \geq c^- \|f\|^2 \quad \text{for all } f \in \mathcal{H}. \quad (16)$$

Here the constants $0 < c^- \leq c^+ < +\infty$ have been chosen adequately. Then we have a bounded Hermitian operator $T : \mathcal{H} \rightarrow \mathcal{H}$ satisfying $\|T\| \leq c^+$ and

$$B(f, g) = (Tf, g) \quad \text{for all } f, g \in \mathcal{H}. \quad (17)$$

This operator possesses a bounded inverse $T^{-1} : \mathcal{H} \rightarrow \mathcal{H}$ which is Hermitian and subject to

$$\|T^{-1}\| \leq \frac{1}{c^-}.$$

Proof: Due to Theorem 9, we have a Hermitian operator $T : \mathcal{H} \rightarrow \mathcal{H}$ with $\|T\| \leq c^+$ and the property (17). Together with (16) we arrive at

$$c^- \|f\|^2 \leq B(f, f) = (Tf, f) \leq \|Tf\| \|f\| \quad \text{for all } f \in \mathcal{H}$$

and consequently

$$\|Tf\| \geq c^- \|f\| \quad \text{for all } f \in \mathcal{H}. \quad (18)$$

According to the Theorem of Toeplitz then T possesses a bounded inverse $T^{-1} : \mathcal{H} \rightarrow \mathcal{H}$, which is Hermitian due to Theorem 7. Finally, the relation (18) implies

$$\|T^{-1}\| \leq \frac{1}{c^-}. \quad \text{q.e.d.}$$

Remarks:

1. The Theorems 9 and 10 remain valid for real bilinear forms, if we replace 'Hermitian' with 'symmetric'.
2. Theorem 10 gives us the basic result for the weak solvability of elliptic differential equations.

§5 Unitary operators

Definition 1. Let $\mathcal{H}$ and $\mathcal{H}'$ denote two Hilbert spaces with the inner products (x, y) and $(x, y)'$. Then the linear operator $V : \mathcal{H} \rightarrow \mathcal{H}'$ is called isometric if the following holds true:

$$(Vf, Vg)' = (f, g) \quad \text{for all } f, g \in \mathcal{H}. \quad (1)$$

Remarks:

1. With the isometric operator $V : \mathcal{H} \rightarrow \mathcal{H}'$ we calculate

$$\begin{aligned}\|Vf - Vg\|'^2 &= \|V(f - g)\|'^2 = \left(V(f - g), V(f - g) \right)' \\ &= (f - g, f - g) = \|f - g\|^2 \quad \text{for all } f, g \in \mathcal{H}.\end{aligned}\tag{2}$$

Therefore the relation $f \neq g$ implies $Vf \neq Vg$, and consequently V is injective.

2. The operator V is bounded. Noting that

$$\|Vf\|' = \sqrt{(Vf, Vf)'} = \sqrt{(f, f)} = \|f\| \quad \text{for all } f \in \mathcal{H}$$

we infer

$$\|V\| = 1.\tag{3}$$

3. We have $\mathcal{D}_V = \mathcal{H}$ for the domain of definition of an isometric operator V , and the range $\mathcal{W}_V \subset \mathcal{H}'$ is closed. We take a sequence $g_n = Vf_n \in \mathcal{W}_V$, $n = 1, 2, \dots$ satisfying $g_n \rightarrow g$ ($n \rightarrow \infty$) and observe that $\{f_n\}_{n=1,2,\dots} \subset \mathcal{H}$ is a Cauchy sequence due to (2), namely

$$\|f_n - f_m\|^2 = \|g_n - g_m\|'^2 \rightarrow 0 \quad (n, m \rightarrow \infty).$$

This implies $f_n \rightarrow f \in \mathcal{H}$ ($n \rightarrow \infty$) and furthermore

$$g = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} g_n = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} Vf_n = V\left(\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} f_n\right) = Vf \in \mathcal{W}_V,$$

since V is continuous. Consequently, $\mathcal{W}_V \subset \mathcal{H}$ is closed.

4. In the case $\dim \mathcal{H} = \dim \mathcal{H}' < +\infty$, the injectivity implies the surjectivity. For infinite-dimensional Hilbert spaces $\mathcal{H}$ and $\mathcal{H}'$ this is not true, as illustrated by the following example:

Example 1. We consider the so-called *shift-operator* in Hilbert's sequential space $\mathcal{H} := l_2 =: \mathcal{H}'$:

$$\begin{aligned}V : \mathcal{H} &\rightarrow \mathcal{H}', \\ (x_1, x_2, \dots) &\mapsto (0, \dots, 0, x_1, x_2, \dots).\end{aligned}$$

Evidently, the operator V is isometric; however, it is not surjective.

Definition 2. An isometric operator $V : \mathcal{H} \rightarrow \mathcal{H}'$ is called unitary if $V : \mathcal{H} \rightarrow \mathcal{H}'$ is surjective, more precisely $V(\mathcal{H}) = \mathcal{H}'$.

Remark: For a unitary operator $U : \mathcal{H} \rightarrow \mathcal{H}'$ there exists its inverse $U^{-1} : \mathcal{H}' \rightarrow \mathcal{H}$, and we have the identity

$$(U^{-1}f, U^{-1}g) = (U \circ U^{-1}f, U \circ U^{-1}g)' = (f, g)' \quad \text{for all } f, g \in \mathcal{H}' \tag{4}$$

on account of (1). Therefore, the inverse U^{-1} is unitary as well.

Definition 3. Let $\mathcal{H}$ and $\mathcal{H}'$ denote two Hilbert spaces with the inner products (x, y) and $(x, y)'$. Furthermore, T and T' are two linear operators in $\mathcal{H}$ and $\mathcal{H}'$, respectively. Then the operators T and T' are named unitary equivalent, if there exists a unitary operator $U : \mathcal{H} \rightarrow \mathcal{H}'$ satisfying

$$T' = U \circ T \circ U^{-1}. \quad (5)$$

Theorem 1. A bounded linear operator $V : \mathcal{H} \rightarrow \mathcal{H}$ is unitary if and only if

$$V^* \circ V = V \circ V^* = \mathbb{E} \quad (6)$$

is correct. Here the symbol $\mathbb{E} : \mathcal{H} \rightarrow \mathcal{H}$ denotes the identity operator.

Proof:

‘ $\Rightarrow$ ’ At first, we remark that $V : \mathcal{H} \rightarrow \mathcal{H}$ is isometric if and only if

$$(V^* \circ Vf, g) = (Vf, Vg) = (f, g) = (\mathbb{E}f, g) \quad \text{for all } f, g \in \mathcal{H}$$

or equivalently

$$V^* \circ V = \mathbb{E}$$

is valid.

If V is unitary, we have the existence of $V^{-1} : \mathcal{H} \rightarrow \mathcal{H}$. From the last relation we infer $V^* = V^{-1}$ and therefore $V \circ V^* = \mathbb{E}$.

‘ $\Leftarrow$ ’ Now let the identity (6) be satisfied for $V : \mathcal{H} \rightarrow \mathcal{H}$. Then we infer $V^{-1} = V^*$. In particular, the operator V is surjective and isometric as well according to the following relation:

$$(f, g) = (V^* \circ Vf, g) = (Vf, Vg) \quad \text{for all } f, g \in \mathcal{H}.$$

q.e.d.

We now shall prove the Theorem of Fourier-Plancherel (compare Chapter VI, § 3, Theorem 1). At first, we present the transition from Fourier series to the Fourier integral: Taking $c > 0$ arbitrarily, the functions

$$\left\{ \frac{1}{\sqrt{2c}} e^{-\frac{\pi}{c} ikx} \right\}_{k \in \mathbb{Z}}$$

constitute a complete orthonormal system of functions on the interval $[-c, +c]$. For all

$$f \in L^2([-c, +c], \mathbb{R}) \cap C_0^0((-c, +c), \mathbb{R})$$

the completeness relation yields the following identity:

$$\begin{aligned}
\int_{-c}^{+c} |f(x)|^2 dx &= \sum_{k=-\infty}^{+\infty} \left| \int_{-c}^{+c} \frac{1}{\sqrt{2c}} e^{\frac{\pi}{c} i k x} f(x) dx \right|^2 \\
&= \sum_{k=-\infty}^{+\infty} \frac{1}{2c} \left| \int_{-c}^{+c} e^{\frac{\pi}{c} i k y} f(y) dy \right|^2.
\end{aligned}$$

We set

$$g(x) := \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{-c}^{+c} e^{ixy} f(y) dy, \quad x \in \mathbb{R},$$

and $x_k = \frac{\pi}{c}k$ for $k \in \mathbb{Z}$. Then we obtain $x_k - x_{k-1} = \frac{\pi}{c}$ and

$$\frac{1}{2c} \left| \int_{-c}^{+c} e^{\frac{\pi}{c} i k y} f(y) dy \right|^2 = \frac{1}{2c} \left| \sqrt{2\pi} g(x_k) \right|^2 = \frac{\pi}{c} |g(x_k)|^2 = |g(x_k)|^2 (x_k - x_{k-1})$$

for all $k \in \mathbb{Z}$. For all $c > 0$ the following identity holds true:

$$\int_{-c}^{+c} |f(x)|^2 dx = \sum_{k=-\infty}^{+\infty} |g(x_k)|^2 (x_k - x_{k-1}).$$

The transition to the limit $c \rightarrow +\infty$ yields

$$\int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} |f(x)|^2 dx = \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} |g(x)|^2 dx. \quad (7)$$

We expect the operator

$$Tf(x) := \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} e^{ixy} f(y) dy, \quad x \in \mathbb{R} \quad (8)$$

to be unitary on the space $L^2(\mathbb{R})$.

More generally, we define *Fourier's integral operator* on the Euclidean space $\mathbb{R}^n$ as follows:

$$Tf(x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}^n} \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} e^{i(x \cdot y)} f(y) dy, \quad x \in \mathbb{R}^n. \quad (9)$$

We shall prove that $T : L^2(\mathbb{R}^n) \rightarrow L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$ is unitary.

At first, we determine T from (8) explicitly for the *characteristic function*

$$\varphi_{a,b}(x) = \varphi(a, b, x) = \begin{cases} 1, & a \leq x \leq b \\ 0, & x < a \text{ or } x > b \end{cases}. \quad (10)$$

We calculate

$$T\varphi_{a,b}(0) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} e^{i0y} \varphi_{a,b}(y) dy = \frac{b-a}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \quad (11)$$

and for $x \neq 0$ we evaluate

$$\begin{aligned} T\varphi_{a,b}(x) &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} e^{ixy} \varphi_{a,b}(y) dy = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_a^b e^{ixy} dy \\ &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \left[\frac{e^{ixy}}{ix} \right]_{y=a}^{y=b} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \frac{e^{ibx} - e^{iax}}{ix}. \end{aligned} \quad (12)$$

Proposition 1. *For Cauchy's principal values*

$$\psi(h) = \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} \frac{e^{ihx} - 1}{x^2} dx := \lim_{\varepsilon \downarrow 0} \left\{ \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{-\varepsilon} \frac{e^{ihx} - 1}{x^2} dx + \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{+\varepsilon}^{+\infty} \frac{e^{ihx} - 1}{x^2} dx \right\}$$

we have

$$\psi(h) = -|h|, \quad h \in \mathbb{R}.$$

Proof: Taking an arbitrary $h \geq 0$, we consider the holomorphic function

$$\begin{aligned} f(z) &:= \frac{e^{ihz} - 1}{z^2} = \frac{1 + ihz + \frac{1}{2}(ihz)^2 + \dots - 1}{z^2} \\ &= \frac{ih}{z} + \dots, \quad z \in \mathbb{C} \setminus \{0\}. \end{aligned} \quad (13)$$

For $0 < \varepsilon < R < +\infty$ we utilize the domain

$$G_{\varepsilon,R} := \left\{ z \in \mathbb{C} : \varepsilon < |z| < R, \operatorname{Re} z > 0 \right\}$$

with the boundary in the positive orientation

$$[-R, -\varepsilon] \cup K_{\varepsilon} \cup [+ \varepsilon, +R] \cup K_R = \partial G_{\varepsilon,R}.$$

Here we have defined the semicircle

$$K_R : z = Re^{i\varphi}, \quad 0 \leq \varphi \leq \pi,$$

and the following semicircle

$$-K_\varepsilon : z = \varepsilon e^{i\varphi}, \quad 0 \leq \varphi \leq \pi$$

negatively run through. Since f is a holomorphic function in $\overline{G_{\varepsilon,R}}$, Cauchy's integral theorem yields the following identity:

$$\begin{aligned} 0 = \int_{\partial G_{\varepsilon,R}} f(z) dz &= \int_{-R}^{-\varepsilon} \frac{e^{ihx} - 1}{x^2} dx + \int_{+\varepsilon}^{+R} \frac{e^{ihx} - 1}{x^2} dx \\ &\quad + \int_{K_R} \frac{e^{ihz} - 1}{z^2} dz - \int_{-K_\varepsilon} \frac{e^{ihz} - 1}{z^2} dz \end{aligned} \quad (14)$$

for all $0 < \varepsilon < R < +\infty$. With the aid of (13) we now calculate

$$\begin{aligned} \lim_{\varepsilon \downarrow 0} \int_{-K_\varepsilon} \frac{e^{ihz} - 1}{z^2} dz &= \lim_{\varepsilon \downarrow 0} \int_{-K_\varepsilon} \left(\frac{ih}{z} + \dots \right) dz = \lim_{\varepsilon \downarrow 0} \int_{-K_\varepsilon} \frac{ih}{z} dz \\ &= \lim_{\varepsilon \downarrow 0} \int_0^\pi \frac{ih}{\varepsilon e^{i\varphi}} i\varepsilon e^{i\varphi} d\varphi = -h\pi. \end{aligned} \quad (15)$$

Futhermore, we deduce

$$\begin{aligned} \int_{K_R} \frac{e^{ihz} - 1}{z^2} dz &= \int_0^\pi \frac{\exp\{ih(\cos \varphi + i \sin \varphi)R\} - 1}{R^2 e^{2i\varphi}} iR e^{i\varphi} d\varphi \\ &= \frac{i}{R} \int_0^\pi e^{-i\varphi} \left\{ e^{ihR \cos \varphi} e^{-hR \sin \varphi} - 1 \right\} d\varphi \end{aligned}$$

and estimate for all $R > 0$ as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} \left| \int_{K_R} \frac{e^{ihz} - 1}{z^2} dz \right| &\leq \frac{1}{R} \int_0^\pi 1 \cdot \{1 \cdot e^{-hR \sin \varphi} + 1\} d\varphi \\ &\leq \frac{2\pi}{R} \rightarrow 0 \quad (R \rightarrow +\infty). \end{aligned}$$

This implies

$$\lim_{R \rightarrow +\infty} \int_{K_R} \frac{e^{ihz} - 1}{z^2} dz = 0 \quad \text{for all } h \geq 0. \quad (16)$$

In (14) we observe the transition $\varepsilon \downarrow 0$ and $R \uparrow +\infty$. With the aid of (15) and (16) we obtain the identity

$$0 = \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} \frac{e^{ihx} - 1}{x^2} dx + h\pi$$

and consequently

$$\psi(h) = -h \quad \text{for all } h \geq 0. \quad (17)$$

Via the substitution $y = -x$ we evaluate

$$\begin{aligned} \psi(-h) &= \lim_{\varepsilon \downarrow 0} \left\{ \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{-\varepsilon} \frac{e^{ih(-x)} - 1}{x^2} dx + \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{\varepsilon}^{+\infty} \frac{e^{ih(-x)} - 1}{x^2} dx \right\} \\ &= \lim_{\varepsilon \downarrow 0} \left\{ \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{\varepsilon}^{+\infty} \frac{e^{ihy} - 1}{y^2} dy + \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{-\varepsilon} \frac{e^{ihy} - 1}{y^2} dy \right\} \\ &= \psi(h) \quad \text{for all } h \in \mathbb{R}. \end{aligned}$$

Finally, we obtain the following identity from (17):

$$\psi(h) = -|h| \quad \text{for all } h \in \mathbb{R}. \quad \text{q.e.d.}$$

Proposition 2. *With respect to the inner product in $L^2(\mathbb{R}, \mathbb{C})$ we see*

$$(T\varphi_{a,b}, T\varphi_{c,d}) = \begin{cases} 0, & \text{if } -\infty < a < b \leq c < d < +\infty \\ b - a, & \text{if } -\infty < a = c < b = d < +\infty \end{cases}. \quad (18)$$

Proof: We utilize (12) and calculate

$$\begin{aligned} (T\varphi_{a,b}, T\varphi_{c,d}) &= \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} \frac{(e^{-ibx} - e^{-iax})(e^{idx} - e^{icx})}{x^2} dx \\ &= \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} \frac{e^{i(d-b)x} - e^{i(c-b)x} - e^{i(d-a)x} + e^{i(c-a)x}}{x^2} dx. \end{aligned}$$

If $-\infty < a < b \leq c < d < +\infty$ is fulfilled, Proposition 1 implies

$$\begin{aligned} (T\varphi_{a,b}, T\varphi_{c,d}) &= \frac{1}{2} \left\{ \psi(d-b) - \psi(c-b) - \psi(d-a) + \psi(c-a) \right\} \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \left\{ b - d + c - b + d - a + a - c \right\} = 0. \end{aligned}$$

If $-\infty < a = c < b = d < +\infty$ holds true, we obtain

$$\begin{aligned}
(T\varphi_{a,b}, T\varphi_{c,d}) &= \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} \frac{1 - e^{i(c-b)x} - e^{i(d-a)x} + 1}{x^2} dx \\
&= -\frac{1}{2} \left\{ \psi(c-b) + \psi(d-a) \right\} = -\frac{1}{2} \{c-b+a-d\} \\
&= -\frac{1}{2} \{2a-2b\} = b-a.
\end{aligned}$$

q.e.d.

Let the rectangle

$$Q := \left\{ x = (x_1, \dots, x_n) \in \mathbb{R}^n : a_\alpha \leq x_\alpha \leq b_\alpha \text{ for } \alpha = 1, \dots, n \right\}$$

in $\mathbb{R}^n$ be given. We decompose the interval $[a_\alpha, b_\alpha]$ into the parts

$$a_\alpha = x_\alpha^{(0)} < x_\alpha^{(1)} < \dots < x_\alpha^{(m_\alpha)} = b_\alpha \quad \text{for } \alpha = 1, \dots, n$$

and set

$$I_\alpha^{(k_\alpha)} = [x_\alpha^{(k_\alpha-1)}, x_\alpha^{(k_\alpha)}]$$

for $1 \leq k_\alpha \leq m_\alpha$ and $\alpha = 1, \dots, n$. Finally, we define the following rectangles for $k = (k_1, \dots, k_n) \in \mathbb{N}^n$ with $1 \leq k_\alpha \leq m_\alpha$:

$$I^{(k)} = I_1^{(k_1)} \times \dots \times I_n^{(k_n)} \subset \mathbb{R}^n.$$

We define the characteristic function of the set $I^{(k)}$ by

$$\varphi_{I^{(k)}}(x) = \begin{cases} 1, & x \in I^{(k)} \\ 0, & x \in \mathbb{R}^n \setminus I^{(k)} \end{cases}$$

and similarly

$$\varphi_{I_\alpha^{(k_\alpha)}}(x) = \begin{cases} 1, & x \in I_\alpha^{(k_\alpha)} \\ 0, & x \in \mathbb{R} \setminus I_\alpha^{(k_\alpha)} \end{cases} \quad \text{for } \alpha = 1, \dots, n.$$

Then we see

$$\varphi_{I^{(k)}}(x) = \varphi_{I_1^{(k_1)}}(x_1) \cdot \dots \cdot \varphi_{I_n^{(k_n)}}(x_n), \quad x \in \mathbb{R}^n. \quad (19)$$

Now we calculate

$$\begin{aligned}
T\varphi_{I^{(k)}}(x) &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}^n} \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} e^{i(x \cdot y)} \varphi_{I^{(k)}}(y) dy \\
&= \left(\int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} \frac{e^{ix_1 y_1}}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \varphi_{I_1^{(k_1)}}(y_1) dy_1 \right) \cdot \dots \cdot \left(\int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} \frac{e^{ix_n y_n}}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \varphi_{I_n^{(k_n)}}(y_n) dy_n \right) \quad (20) \\
&= T\varphi_{I_1^{(k_1)}}(x_1) \cdot \dots \cdot T\varphi_{I_n^{(k_n)}}(x_n).
\end{aligned}$$

For the admissible multi-indices $k = (k_1, \dots, k_n)$ and $l = (l_1, \dots, l_n)$ we deduce

$$\begin{aligned}
 & (T\varphi_{I^{(k)}}, T\varphi_{I^{(l)}}) \\
 &= \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \overline{\left(T\varphi_{I_1^{(k_1)}}(x_1) \cdot \dots \cdot T\varphi_{I_n^{(k_n)}}(x_n) \right)} \left(T\varphi_{I_1^{(l_1)}}(x_1) \cdot \dots \cdot T\varphi_{I_n^{(l_n)}}(x_n) \right) dx \\
 &= (T\varphi_{I_1^{(k_1)}}, T\varphi_{I_1^{(l_1)}}) \cdot \dots \cdot (T\varphi_{I_n^{(k_n)}}, T\varphi_{I_n^{(l_n)}}) \\
 &= |I_1^{(k_1)}| \cdot \dots \cdot |I_n^{(k_n)}| \delta_{k_1 l_1} \cdot \dots \cdot \delta_{k_n l_n} \\
 &= |I^{(k)}| \delta_{k_1 l_1} \cdot \dots \cdot \delta_{k_n l_n}
 \end{aligned}$$

and consequently

$$(T\varphi_{I^{(k)}}, T\varphi_{I^{(l)}}) = \begin{cases} |I^{(k)}|, & k = l \\ 0, & k \neq l \end{cases}. \quad (21)$$

Here we have set

$$|I_\alpha^{(k_\alpha)}| = x_\alpha^{(k_\alpha)} - x_\alpha^{(k_\alpha-1)} \quad \text{and} \quad |I^{(k)}| = |I_1^{(k_1)}| \cdot \dots \cdot |I_n^{(k_n)}|.$$

We summarize our considerations to the following

Proposition 3. *Let $\varphi_k := \varphi_{I^{(k)}}$ with $k = (k_1, \dots, k_n)$ and $1 \leq k_\alpha \leq m_\alpha$ for $\alpha = 1, \dots, n$ be chosen. Then we have the inclusion*

$$T\varphi_k \in L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$$

and furthermore the equation

$$(T\varphi_k, T\varphi_l) = (\varphi_k, \varphi_l) \quad \text{holds true for all admissible } k, l. \quad (22)$$

We now consider the linear subspace $\mathcal{D} \subset L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$ of the step functions in $\mathbb{R}^n$. They consist of all those functions f satisfying the following conditions:

1. Outside of a rectangle $Q \subset \mathbb{R}^n$ the relation $f(x) = 0$ is correct.
2. There exists a decomposition $Q = \bigcup_k I^{(k)}$ of the rectangle as above, and we have the representation

$$f(x) = \sum_k c_k \varphi_k$$

with the coefficients $c_k \in \mathbb{C}$ and the characteristic functions $\varphi_k := \varphi_{I^{(k)}}$.

Proposition 4. *For all step functions $f, g \in \mathcal{D}$ we have*

$$(Tf, Tg) = (f, g).$$

Proof: We choose a rectangle $Q \supset \text{supp}(f) \cup \text{supp}(g)$ and find a canonical decomposition of Q , such that

$$f = \sum_k c_k \varphi_k, \quad g = \sum_l d_l \varphi_l.$$

Therefore, we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} (Tf, Tg) &= \left(\sum_k c_k T\varphi_k, \sum_l d_l T\varphi_l \right) = \sum_{k,l} \overline{c_k} d_l (T\varphi_k, T\varphi_l) \\ &= \sum_{k,l} \overline{c_k} d_l (\varphi_k, \varphi_l) = (f, g). \end{aligned} \quad \text{q.e.d.}$$

We now consider the integral operator

$$Sf := \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi^n}} \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} e^{-i(x \cdot y)} f(y) dy, \quad f \in \mathcal{D},$$

and note that

$$Sf = \overline{T\overline{f}}, \quad f \in \mathcal{D}. \quad (23)$$

Since $T : \mathcal{D} \rightarrow L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$ represents a linear bounded operator, this is the case for S as well. Furthermore, the operator S is isometric on account of

$$(Sf, Sg) = (\overline{T\overline{f}}, \overline{T\overline{g}}) = \overline{(T\overline{f}, T\overline{g})} = \overline{(\overline{f}, \overline{g})} = (f, g)$$

for all $f, g \in \mathcal{D}$.

Intermediate statement: We have the identity

$$(Tf, g) = (f, Sg) \quad \text{for all } f, g \in \mathcal{D}.$$

Proof: We now calculate

$$\begin{aligned} (Tf, g) &= \int_Q \left(\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi^n}} \int_Q e^{-i(x \cdot y)} \overline{f}(y) dy \right) g(x) dx \\ &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi^n}} \int_{Q \times Q} e^{-i(x \cdot y)} \overline{f}(y) g(x) dy dx \\ &= \int_Q \overline{f}(y) \left(\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi^n}} \int_Q e^{-i(x \cdot y)} g(x) dx \right) dy \\ &= (f, Sg). \end{aligned}$$

We sum up our considerations to the following

Proposition 5. *Let $\mathcal{D}$ denote the set of all step functions in $\mathbb{R}^n$. Then the operators*

$$T, S : \mathcal{D} \rightarrow L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$$

are isometric, and S is adjoint to T which means

$$(Tf, Tg) = (f, g) = (Sf, Sg) \quad (24)$$

and

$$(Tf, g) = (f, Sg) \quad (25)$$

for all $f, g \in \mathcal{D}$.

Now the linear space $\mathcal{D} \subset L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$ lies dense, and consequently for each $f \in L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$ we have a sequence

$$\{f_k\}_{k=1,2,\dots} \subset \mathcal{D} \quad \text{with} \quad \|f_k - f\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)} \rightarrow 0 \quad (k \rightarrow \infty).$$

Therefore, we can uniquely extend the bounded operators T, S of $\mathcal{D}$ onto $L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$ as follows:

$$Tf := \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} Tf_k, \quad Sf := \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} Sf_k. \quad (26)$$

The relations (24) and (25) yield

$$S \circ T = T^* \circ T = \mathbb{E} = S^* \circ S = T \circ S \quad \text{on } \mathcal{D},$$

and we infer

$$S \circ T = \mathbb{E} = T \circ S \quad \text{on } L^2(\mathbb{R}^n). \quad (27)$$

Consequently $T : L^2(\mathbb{R}^n) \rightarrow L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$ gives us a unitary operator satisfying

$$T^* = S = T^{-1}.$$

From (26) we now shall derive a direct representation of T and S as follows: We choose

$$f \in L_0^2(\mathbb{R}^n) := \left\{ g \in L^2(\mathbb{R}^n) : \text{supp}(g) \subset \mathbb{R}^n \text{ is compact} \right\}.$$

For $f \in L_0^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$ we have a sequence $\{f_k\}_{k=1,2,\dots} \subset \mathcal{D}$ such that

$$\text{supp}(f), \text{supp}(f_k) \subset Q, \quad k = 1, 2, \dots$$

- where $Q \subset \mathbb{R}^n$ is a fixed rectangle - and

$$\|f - f_k\|_{L^2(Q)} \rightarrow 0 \quad (k \rightarrow \infty)$$

holds true. For all $x \in \mathbb{R}^n$ we obtain the estimate

$$\begin{aligned}
\left| Tf_k(x) - \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi^n}} \int_Q e^{i(x \cdot y)} f(y) dy \right| &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi^n}} \left| \int_Q e^{i(x \cdot y)} (f_k(y) - f(y)) dy \right| \\
&\leq \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi^n}} \int_Q |f_k(y) - f(y)| dy \\
&\leq \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi^n}} \sqrt{|Q|} \|f_k - f\|_{L^2(Q)} \rightarrow 0 \quad (k \rightarrow \infty)
\end{aligned} \tag{28}$$

and consequently

$$\left\| Tf_k(x) - \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi^n}} \int_Q e^{i(x \cdot y)} f(y) dy \right\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)} \rightarrow 0 \quad (k \rightarrow \infty). \tag{29}$$

Together with (26) we obtain

$$\begin{aligned}
&\left\| Tf(x) - \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi^n}} \int_Q e^{i(x \cdot y)} f(y) dy \right\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)} \\
&\leq \|Tf - Tf_k\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)} + \left\| Tf_k(x) - \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi^n}} \int_Q e^{i(x \cdot y)} f(y) dy \right\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)} \\
&\rightarrow 0 \quad (k \rightarrow \infty).
\end{aligned}$$

For all $f \in L_0^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$ therefore the relation

$$Tf(x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi^n}} \int_Q e^{i(x \cdot y)} f(y) dy \quad \text{a. e. in } \mathbb{R}^n \tag{30}$$

is correct. Taking $f \in L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$ arbitrarily, we choose a sequence of rectangles

$$Q_1 \subset Q_2 \subset \dots \quad \text{with} \quad \bigcup_{n=1}^{\infty} Q_k = \mathbb{R}^n$$

and set

$$f_k(x) = \begin{cases} f(x), & x \in Q_k \\ 0, & x \in \mathbb{R}^n \setminus Q_k \end{cases}.$$

Then the relation $\|f_k - f\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)} \rightarrow 0$ for $(k \rightarrow \infty)$ is valid, and (26) yields

$$Tf = \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} Tf_k = \text{l.i.m.} \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi^n}} \int_{Q_k} e^{i(x \cdot y)} f(y) dy, \tag{31}$$

$$Sf = \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} Sf_k = \text{l.i.m.} \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi^n}} \int_{Q_k} e^{-i(x \cdot y)} f(y) dy. \tag{32}$$

Here the symbol l.i.m. denotes the limit for $k \rightarrow \infty$ in the quadratic means, more precisely in the $L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$ -norm.

We summarize our considerations to the following

Theorem 2. (Fourier, Plancherel)

According to (31), the Fourier integral operator $T : L^2(\mathbb{R}^n) \rightarrow L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$ exists and is unitary. Additionally, the adjoint integral operator $S : L^2(\mathbb{R}^n) \rightarrow L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$ from (32) is unitary, and we have

$$S \circ T = T \circ S = \mathbb{E} \quad \text{on } L^2(\mathbb{R}^n).$$

§6 Completely continuous operators in Hilbert spaces

We owe the following notion of convergence to David Hilbert:

Definition 1. In the Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}$ a sequence $\{x_n\}_{n=1,2,\dots} \subset \mathcal{H}$ is called weakly convergent towards an element $x \in \mathcal{H}$, symbolically $x_n \rightharpoonup x$ ($n \rightarrow \infty$), if the relation

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} (x_n, y) = (x, y) \quad \text{for all } y \in \mathcal{H}$$

is satisfied.

Example 1. Let $\{\varphi_i\}_{i=1,2,\dots}$ denote an orthonormal system in the Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}$, and we observe

$$\|\varphi_i - \varphi_j\| = \sqrt{(\varphi_i - \varphi_j, \varphi_i - \varphi_j)} = \sqrt{(\varphi_i, \varphi_i) + (\varphi_j, \varphi_j)} = \sqrt{2}$$

for all $i, j \in \mathbb{N}$ with $i \neq j$. Consequently, $\{\varphi_i\}_{i=1,2,\dots}$ does not contain a subsequence which represents a Cauchy sequence with respect to the Hilbert space norm. According to Bessel's inequality, all $f \in \mathcal{H}$ are subject to the estimate

$$\sum_{i=1}^{\infty} |(\varphi_i, f)|^2 \leq \|f\|^2 < +\infty,$$

and we infer

$$\lim_{i \rightarrow \infty} (\varphi_i, f) = 0 = (0, f) \quad \text{for all } f \in \mathcal{H}.$$

We therefore obtain $\varphi_i \rightharpoonup 0$ ($i \rightarrow \infty$) and note that

$$\|0\| \leq \liminf_{i \rightarrow \infty} \|\varphi_i\| = 1.$$

Theorem 1. (Principle of uniform boundedness)

On the Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}$ let the sequence of bounded linear functionals $A_n : \mathcal{H} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$ with $n \in \mathbb{N}$ be given, such that each element $f \in \mathcal{H}$ possesses a constant $c_f \in [0, +\infty)$ with the property

$$|A_n f| \leq c_f, \quad n = 1, 2, \dots \quad (1)$$

Then we have a constant $\alpha \in [0, +\infty)$ satisfying

$$\|A_n\| \leq \alpha \quad \text{for all } n \in \mathbb{N}. \quad (2)$$

Proof:

1. Let $A : \mathcal{H} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$ denote a bounded linear functional such that

$$|Af| \leq c \quad \text{for all } f \in \mathcal{H} \quad \text{with} \quad \|f - f_0\| \leq \varepsilon.$$

Here we have chosen an element $f_0 \in \mathcal{H}$, a quantity $\varepsilon > 0$, and a constant $c \geq 0$. Then we have

$$\|A\| \leq \frac{2c}{\varepsilon}.$$

Setting $x := \frac{1}{\varepsilon}(f - f_0)$ we infer $\|x\| \leq 1$ and

$$|Ax| = \left| \frac{1}{\varepsilon}Af - \frac{1}{\varepsilon}Af_0 \right| \leq \frac{1}{\varepsilon}(|Af| + |Af_0|) \leq \frac{2c}{\varepsilon}$$

and finally $\|A\| \leq \frac{2c}{\varepsilon}$.

2. If the statement (2) does not hold true, part 1 of this proof together with the continuity of the functionals $\{A_n\}_n$ enables us to construct a sequence of balls

$$\Sigma_n := \left\{ f \in \mathcal{H} : \|f - f_n\| \leq \varepsilon_n \right\}, \quad n \in \mathbb{N}$$

satisfying $\Sigma_1 \supset \Sigma_2 \supset \dots$ with $\varepsilon_n \downarrow 0$ ($n \rightarrow \infty$) and an index-sequence $1 \leq n_1 < n_2 < \dots$ such that

$$|A_{n_j} x| \geq j \quad \text{for all } x \in \Sigma_j \quad \text{and} \quad j = 1, 2, \dots \quad (3)$$

is correct. Evidently, the relation (3) yields a contradiction to (1). q.e.d.

Theorem 2. (Weak convergence criterion)

Let the sequence $\{x_n\}_{n=1,2,\dots} \subset \mathcal{H}$ be given in a Hilbert space such that all elements $y \in \mathcal{H}$ possess the limit

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} (x_n, y).$$

Then the sequence $\{x_n\}_n$ is bounded in $\mathcal{H}$ and weakly convergent towards an element $x \in \mathcal{H}$, which means $x_n \rightharpoonup x$ ($n \rightarrow \infty$).

Proof: We consider the bounded linear functionals

$$A_n(y) := (x_n, y), \quad y \in \mathcal{H}$$

with the norms $\|A_n\| = \|x_n\|$ for $n = 1, 2, \dots$. Since the limits

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} A_n(y) =: A(y)$$

exist for all $y \in \mathcal{H}$ by assumption, Theorem 1 gives us a constant $c \in [0, +\infty)$ with $\|x_n\| = \|A_n\| \leq c$ for all $n \in \mathbb{N}$. This implies $\|A\| \leq c$, and due to the representation theorem of Fréchet-Riesz we have exactly one element $x \in \mathcal{H}$ satisfying

$$A(y) = (x, y), \quad y \in \mathcal{H}$$

for the bounded linear functional A . We obtain

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} (x_n, y) = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} A_n(y) = A(y) = (x, y) \quad \text{for all } y \in \mathcal{H}$$

which means $x_n \rightharpoonup x$ ($n \rightarrow \infty$). q.e.d.

Though it is not possible in general to select a subsequence convergent with respect to the norm out of a bounded sequence in a Hilbert space (compare the Example 1 above), we can prove the following fundamental result (compare Theorem 7 in Chapter II, § 8 for the special case $\mathcal{H} = L^2(X)$):

Theorem 3. (Hilbert's selection theorem)

Each bounded sequence $\{x_n\}_{n=1,2,\dots} \subset \mathcal{H}$ in a Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}$ contains a weakly convergent subsequence $\{x_{n_k}\}_{k=1,2,\dots}$.

Proof:

1. The sequence $\{x_n\}_{n=1,2,\dots}$ is bounded and we have a constant $c \in [0, +\infty)$, such that

$$\|x_n\| \leq c, \quad n = 1, 2, \dots \quad (4)$$

is correct. On account of

$$|(x_1, x_n)| \leq c\|x_1\| \quad \text{for all } n \in \mathbb{N}$$

we find a subsequence $\{x_n^{(1)}\}_n \subset \{x_n\}_n$, such that $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} (x_1, x_n^{(1)})$ exists.

Noting that

$$|(x_2, x_n^{(1)})| \leq c\|x_2\| \quad \text{for all } n \in \mathbb{N}$$

we select a further subsequence $\{x_n^{(2)}\}_n \subset \{x_n^{(1)}\}_n$ whose limit exists, namely $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} (x_2, x_n^{(2)})$. The continuation of this procedure gives us a chain of subsequences

$$\{x_n\}_n \supset \{x_n^{(1)}\}_n \supset \{x_n^{(2)}\}_n \supset \dots \supset \{x_n^{(k)}\}_n,$$

such that the limits

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} (x_i, x_n^{(k)})$$

exist for $i = 1, \dots, k$. With the aid of Cantor's diagonal procedure we get the sequence $x_k' := x_k^{(k)}$. Then the sequence $\{(x_i, x_k')\}_{k=1,2,\dots}$ is convergent for all $i \in \mathbb{N}$. Denoting the linear subspace of all finite linear combinations by $\mathcal{M}$, namely

$$x = \sum_{i=1}^{N(x)} \alpha_i x_i, \quad \alpha_i \in \mathbb{C}, \quad N(x) \in \mathbb{N},$$

the following limits exist:

$$\lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} (x, x_k') \quad \text{for all } x \in \mathcal{M}. \quad (5)$$

2. Now we make the transition to the linear closed subspace $\mathcal{M} \subset \overline{\mathcal{M}} \subset \mathcal{H}$, and the following limits exist as well:

$$\lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} (y, x_k') \quad \text{for all } y \in \overline{\mathcal{M}}. \quad (6)$$

Here we note that we can extend the bounded linear functional

$$A(y) := \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} (x_k', y) = \overline{\lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} (y, x_k')}, \quad y \in \mathcal{M}$$

continuously onto the closure $\overline{\mathcal{M}}$. Due to the Projection theorem each element $y \in \mathcal{H}$ can be represented in the form $y = y_1 + y_2$ with $y_1 \in \overline{\mathcal{M}}$ and $y_2 \in \overline{\mathcal{M}}^\perp$. This implies the existence of

$$\lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} (y, x_k') = \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} (y_1 + y_2, x_k') = \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} (y_1, x_k')$$

for all $y \in \mathcal{H}$. Consequently, the sequence $\{x_k'\}_{k=1,2,\dots}$ in the Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}$ converges weakly. q.e.d.

Remarks to the weak convergence:

1. If the sequence $x_n \rightarrow x$ ($n \rightarrow \infty$) converges strongly, which means

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \|x_n - x\| = 0,$$

then it converges weakly $x_n \rightharpoonup x$ ($n \rightarrow \infty$) as well. For arbitrary elements $y \in \mathcal{H}$ we namely deduce

$$|(x_n, y) - (x, y)| = |(x_n - x, y)| \leq \|x_n - x\| \|y\| \rightarrow 0 \quad (n \rightarrow \infty).$$

2. The norm is lower-semi-continuous with respect to weak convergence. This means

$$x_n \rightharpoonup x \quad (n \rightarrow \infty) \quad \Rightarrow \quad \liminf_{n \rightarrow \infty} \|x_n\| \geq \|x\|, \quad x_n, x \in \mathcal{H}$$

for a real Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}$. We namely observe

$$\begin{aligned}\|x_n\|^2 - \|x\|^2 &= (x_n, x_n) - (x, x) = (x_n - x, x_n + x) \\ &= (x_n - x, x_n - x) + 2(x - x_n, x), \quad n = 1, 2, \dots,\end{aligned}$$

and consequently

$$\liminf_{n \rightarrow \infty} \|x_n\|^2 - \|x\|^2 = \liminf_{n \rightarrow \infty} \|x_n - x\|^2 + 2 \liminf_{n \rightarrow \infty} (x - x_n, x) \geq 0 \quad ,$$

and finally

$$\liminf_{n \rightarrow \infty} \|x_n\| \geq \|x\|.$$

3. From $x_n \rightharpoonup x$ ($n \rightarrow \infty$) and $y_n \rightarrow y$ ($n \rightarrow \infty$) we infer $(x_n, y_n) \rightarrow (x, y)$ ($n \rightarrow \infty$). Here we utilize the estimate

$$\begin{aligned}|(x_n, y_n) - (x, y)| &= |(x_n, y_n) - (x_n, y) + (x_n, y) - (x, y)| \\ &\leq |(x_n, y_n - y)| + |(x_n - x, y)| \\ &\leq \|y_n - y\| \|x_n\| + |(x_n - x, y)| \rightarrow 0 \quad (n \rightarrow \infty).\end{aligned}$$

Definition 2. A subset $\Sigma \subset \mathcal{H}$ of a Hilbert space is named precompact, if each sequence $\{y_n\}_{n=1,2,\dots} \subset \Sigma$ contains a strongly convergent subsequence $\{y_{n_k}\}_{k=1,2,\dots} \subset \{y_n\}_n$, which means

$$\lim_{k,l \rightarrow \infty} \|y_{n_k} - y_{n_l}\| = 0.$$

Definition 3. A linear operator $K : \mathcal{H}_1 \rightarrow \mathcal{H}_2$ is called completely continuous or alternatively compact, if the following set

$$\Sigma := \left\{ y = Kx : x \in \mathcal{H}_1 \text{ with } \|x\|_1 \leq r \right\} \subset \mathcal{H}_2$$

is precompact, with a certain radius $r \in (0, +\infty)$ given. This means that each sequence $\{x_n\}_{n=1,2,\dots} \subset \mathcal{H}_1$ with $\|x_n\|_1 \leq r$ for $n \in \mathbb{N}$ contains a subsequence $\{x_{n_k}\}_{k=1,2,\dots}$ such that $\{Kx_{n_k}\}_{k=1,2,\dots} \subset \mathcal{H}_2$ converges strongly.

Remarks:

1. It suffices to choose $r = 1$ in Definition 3.
2. A completely continuous linear operator $K : \mathcal{H}_1 \rightarrow \mathcal{H}_2$ is bounded. If this were not the case, there would exist a sequence $\{x_n\}_{n=1,2,\dots} \subset \mathcal{H}_1$ with $\|x_n\|_1 = 1$ for all $n \in \mathbb{N}$ and $\|Kx_n\|_2 \rightarrow +\infty$ ($n \rightarrow \infty$). Therefore, we cannot select a convergent subsequence from $\{Kx_n\}_{n=1,2,\dots}$ in the Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}_2$. This yields a contradiction to Definition 3.

Theorem 4. Let $K : \mathcal{H}_1 \rightarrow \mathcal{H}_2$ denote a linear operator between the Hilbert spaces $\mathcal{H}_1$ and $\mathcal{H}_2$. The operator K is completely continuous if and only if for each weakly convergent sequence $x_n \rightharpoonup x$ ($n \rightarrow \infty$) in $\mathcal{H}_1$ the statement

$$Kx_n \rightarrow Kx \quad (n \rightarrow \infty) \quad \text{in } \mathcal{H}_2$$

follows. Consequently, the operator K is completely continuous if and only if each weakly convergent sequence in $\mathcal{H}_1$ is transferred into a strongly convergent sequence in $\mathcal{H}_2$.

Proof:

‘ $\Leftarrow$ ’ Let $\{x_n\}_{n=1,2,\dots} \subset \mathcal{H}_1$ be a sequence with $\|x_n\|_1 \leq 1, n \in \mathbb{N}$. According to Hilbert’s selection theorem we have a subsequence $\{x_{n_k}\}_{k=1,2,\dots} \subset \{x_n\}_n$ satisfying

$$x_{n_k} \rightharpoonup x \quad (k \rightarrow \infty) \quad \text{in } \mathcal{H}_1.$$

By assumption

$$y_{n_k} \rightarrow Kx \quad (k \rightarrow \infty)$$

is fulfilled for the subsequence $y_{n_k} := Kx_{n_k}, k = 1, 2, \dots$. Consequently, the operator $K : \mathcal{H}_1 \rightarrow \mathcal{H}_2$ is completely continuous.

‘ $\Rightarrow$ ’ Now let K be completely continuous, and $\{x_n\}_{n=1,2,\dots} \subset \mathcal{H}_1$ denotes a sequence satisfying $x_n \rightharpoonup x = 0 \quad (n \rightarrow \infty)$. We then have to prove: $Kx_n \rightarrow Kx = 0 \quad (n \rightarrow \infty)$ in $\mathcal{H}_2$. If the latter statement were false, there would exist a number $d > 0$ and a subsequence $\{x_n'\}_n \subset \{x_n\}_n$ satisfying

$$\|Kx_n'\| \geq d > 0 \quad \text{for all } n \in \mathbb{N}.$$

Since the operator K is completely continuous, we have a further subsequence

$$\{x_n''\}_n \subset \{x_n'\}_n \quad \text{with } Kx_n'' \rightarrow y \quad (n \rightarrow \infty).$$

Therefore, we obtain with the statement

$$0 < d^2 \leq (y, y) = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} (y, Kx_n'') = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} (K^*y, x_n'') = (K^*y, 0) = 0$$

a contradiction.

q.e.d.

Remarks about completely continuous operators:

1. If $K : \mathcal{H} \rightarrow \mathcal{H}$ is a bounded linear operator with a finite-dimensional range $\mathcal{W}_K := K(\mathcal{H})$, then K is completely continuous.
2. If $T_1 : \mathcal{H}_1 \rightarrow \mathcal{H}_2$ and $T_2 : \mathcal{H}_2 \rightarrow \mathcal{H}_3$ are two bounded linear operators, and T_1 or T_2 is completely continuous, then the operator

$$T := T_2 \circ T_1 : \mathcal{H}_1 \rightarrow \mathcal{H}_3$$

is completely continuous as well. If the operator T_1 is completely continuous for instance, then the weakly convergent sequence $x_n \rightharpoonup x \quad (n \rightarrow \infty)$ in $\mathcal{H}_1$ is transferred into the strongly convergent sequence $T_1x_n \rightarrow T_1x \quad (n \rightarrow \infty)$ in $\mathcal{H}_2$. Since T_2 is continuous, we infer

$$Tx_n = T_2 \circ T_1x_n \rightarrow T_2 \circ T_1x = Tx \quad (n \rightarrow \infty) \quad \text{in } \mathcal{H}_3.$$

3. The operator $K : \mathcal{H} \rightarrow \mathcal{H}$ is completely continuous on the Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}$ if and only if the adjoint operator $K^* : \mathcal{H} \rightarrow \mathcal{H}$ is completely continuous.
Proof: Let $K : \mathcal{H} \rightarrow \mathcal{H}$ be completely continuous, then the operator $K \circ K^*$ is completely continuous as well. From an arbitrary sequence

$$\{x_n\}_{n=1,2,\dots} \subset \mathcal{H} \quad \text{with} \quad \|x_n\| \leq 1, \quad n \in \mathbb{N}$$

we can extract a subsequence $\{x_{n_k}\}_{k=1,2,\dots}$ such that $\{K \circ K^* x_{n_k}\}_k$ converges strongly in $\mathcal{H}$. We infer

$$\begin{aligned} \|K^* x_{n_k} - K^* x_{n_l}\|^2 &= \|K^*(x_{n_k} - x_{n_l})\|^2 \\ &= (K^*(x_{n_k} - x_{n_l}), K^*(x_{n_k} - x_{n_l})) \\ &= (K \circ K^*(x_{n_k} - x_{n_l}), x_{n_k} - x_{n_l}) \\ &\leq \|K \circ K^*(x_{n_k} - x_{n_l})\| \|x_{n_k} - x_{n_l}\| \rightarrow 0 \quad (k, l \rightarrow \infty). \end{aligned}$$

Consequently, the sequence $\{K^* x_{n_k}\}_{k=1,2,\dots}$ converges in $\mathcal{H}$, and the operator K^* is completely continuous.

The inverse direction can be seen with the identity $K = (K^*)^*$.

4. Let $A : \mathcal{H} \rightarrow \mathcal{H}$ be a completely continuous Hermitian linear operator on the Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}$. Then the associate *bilinear form*

$$\alpha(x, y) := (Ax, y) = (x, Ay), \quad (x, y) \in \mathcal{H} \times \mathcal{H}$$

is continuous with respect to weak convergence. This means with $x_n \rightharpoonup x$ ($n \rightarrow \infty$) and $y_n \rightharpoonup y$ ($n \rightarrow \infty$) in $\mathcal{H}$ we have the limit relation

$$\alpha(x_n, y_n) \rightarrow \alpha(x, y) \quad (n \rightarrow \infty).$$

Proof: This follows immediately from Remark 3 concerning the weak convergence combined with Theorem 4.

Definition 4. Let $\mathcal{H}$ denote a separable Hilbert space with two c.o.n.s.

$$\varphi = \{\varphi_i\}_{i=1,2,\dots} \quad \text{and} \quad \psi = \{\psi_i\}_{i=1,2,\dots}.$$

The linear operator $T : \mathcal{H} \rightarrow \mathcal{H}$ has a finite square-norm if

$$N(T; \varphi, \psi) := \sqrt{\sum_{i,k=1}^{\infty} |(T\varphi_i, \psi_k)|^2} < +\infty$$

holds true.

Proposition 1. Let $T : \mathcal{H} \rightarrow \mathcal{H}$ denote a linear operator as in Definition 4 with $N(T; \varphi, \psi) < +\infty$. Then we have

$$\|T\| \leq N(T; \varphi, \psi) = \sqrt{\sum_{i=1}^{\infty} \|T\varphi_i\|^2}. \quad (7)$$

Proof: At first, we observe

$$N(T; \varphi, \psi)^2 = \sum_{i,k=1}^{\infty} |(T\varphi_i, \psi_k)|^2 = \sum_{i=1}^{\infty} \left(\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} |(T\varphi_i, \psi_k)|^2 \right) = \sum_{i=1}^{\infty} \|T\varphi_i\|^2.$$

With the series

$$f = \sum_{i=1}^{\infty} c_i \varphi_i \in \mathcal{H}$$

we calculate

$$Tf = \sum_{i=1}^{\infty} c_i T\varphi_i$$

and consequently

$$\|Tf\| \leq \sum_{i=1}^{\infty} |c_i| \|T\varphi_i\|.$$

This implies

$$\|Tf\| \leq \sqrt{\sum_{i=1}^{\infty} |c_i|^2} \sqrt{\sum_{i=1}^{\infty} \|T\varphi_i\|^2} = \|f\| N(T; \varphi, \psi) \quad \text{for all } f \in \mathcal{H}$$

and therefore $\|T\| \leq N(T; \varphi, \psi)$.

q.e.d.

Proposition 2. *We consider with*

$$\varphi = \{\varphi_i\}_{i=1,2,\dots}, \quad \varphi' = \{\varphi'_i\}_{i=1,2,\dots}, \quad \psi = \{\psi_i\}_{i=1,2,\dots}, \quad \psi' = \{\psi'_i\}_{i=1,2,\dots}$$

four complete orthonormal systems in $\mathcal{H}$. Then the identity $N(T; \varphi, \psi) = N(T; \varphi', \psi') =: N(T)$ holds true - defining the square-norm. Furthermore $N(T) = N(T^)$ is correct.*

Proof: We calculate as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} N(T; \varphi, \psi)^2 &= \sum_{i,k=1}^{\infty} |(T\varphi_i, \psi_k)|^2 = \sum_{i=1}^{\infty} \|T\varphi_i\|^2 \\ &= \sum_{i,k=1}^{\infty} |(\psi'_k, T\varphi_i)|^2 = \sum_{i,k=1}^{\infty} |(T^*\psi'_k, \varphi_i)|^2 \\ &= \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \|T^*\psi'_k\|^2 = \sum_{i,k=1}^{\infty} |(T^*\psi'_k, \varphi'_i)|^2 \\ &= \sum_{i,k=1}^{\infty} |(\psi'_k, T\varphi'_i)|^2 = \sum_{i,k=1}^{\infty} |(T\varphi'_i, \psi'_k)|^2 = N(T; \varphi', \psi'). \end{aligned}$$

From the identity above we also infer $N(T) = N(T^*)$. q.e.d.

Proposition 2 implies that the square-norm is independent of the chosen c.o.n.s.

Example 2. On the rectangle

$$Q := \left\{ x = (x_1, \dots, x_n) \in \mathbb{R}^n : a_i \leq x_i \leq b_i \text{ for } i = 1, \dots, n \right\}$$

let the kernel $K = K(x, y) : Q \times Q \rightarrow \mathbb{C} \in L^2(Q \times Q, \mathbb{C})$ with

$$\int_{Q \times Q} |K(x, y)|^2 dx dy < +\infty \quad (8)$$

be given. As in the Example 1 from § 4 we define the Hilbert-Schmidt operator

$$\mathbb{K}f(x) := \int_Q K(x, y)f(y) dy \quad \text{for almost all } x \in Q.$$

According to Theorem 4 from § 4, the linear operator $\mathbb{K} : L^2(Q) \rightarrow L^2(Q)$ is bounded by $\|\mathbb{K}\| \leq \|K\|_{L^2(Q \times Q)}$.

Statement: The Hilbert-Schmidt operator $\mathbb{K}$ has the finite square-norm

$$N(\mathbb{K}) = \sqrt{\int_{Q \times Q} |K(x, y)|^2 dx dy} < +\infty. \quad (9)$$

Proof: Let $\{\varphi_i(x)\}_{i=1,2,\dots}$ constitute a c.o.n.s. in $L^2(Q)$. Then we set

$$\psi_i(x) = \int_Q K(x, y)\varphi_i(y) dy = \mathbb{K}\varphi_i(x) \quad \text{a. e. in } Q \quad \text{for } i = 1, 2, \dots$$

We calculate

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{i=1}^{\infty} |\psi_i(x)|^2 &= \sum_{i=1}^{\infty} \left| \int_Q K(x, y)\varphi_i(y) dy \right|^2 \\ &= \sum_{i=1}^{\infty} \left| \overline{(K(x, \cdot), \varphi_i)} \right|^2 = \int_Q |K(x, y)|^2 dy, \end{aligned}$$

and Fubini's theorem yields

$$\begin{aligned} \int_{Q \times Q} |K(x, y)|^2 dx dy &= \int_Q \sum_{i=1}^{\infty} |\psi_i(x)|^2 dx = \sum_{i=1}^{\infty} \int_Q |\psi_i(x)|^2 dx \\ &= \sum_{i=1}^{\infty} \|\mathbb{K}\varphi_i\|^2 = N(\mathbb{K})^2. \end{aligned} \quad \text{q.e.d.}$$

Of central significance is the subsequent

Theorem 5. *On the separable Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}$ let $T : \mathcal{H} \rightarrow \mathcal{H}$ denote a linear operator with finite square-norm $N(T) < +\infty$. Then the operator $T : \mathcal{H} \rightarrow \mathcal{H}$ is completely continuous.*

Proof: Let the sequence $f_n \rightharpoonup f = 0$ ($n \rightarrow \infty$) be weakly convergent. If $\{\varphi_i\}_{i=1,2,\dots}$ represents a c.o.n.s. in $\mathcal{H}$, we have the expansion

$$f_n = \sum_{i=1}^{\infty} c_n^i \varphi_i$$

with

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} c_n^i = 0 \quad \text{for } i = 1, 2, \dots \quad (10)$$

and

$$\sum_{i=1}^{\infty} |c_n^i|^2 \leq M^2 \quad \text{for } n = 1, 2, \dots \quad (11)$$

According to Proposition 1 the operator $T : \mathcal{H} \rightarrow \mathcal{H}$ is continuous, and we infer

$$Tf_n = \sum_{i=1}^{\infty} c_n^i T\varphi_i$$

and furthermore

$$\begin{aligned} \|Tf_n\| &\leq \left\| \sum_{i=1}^N c_n^i T\varphi_i \right\| + \left\| \sum_{i=N+1}^{\infty} c_n^i T\varphi_i \right\| \\ &\leq \left\| \sum_{i=1}^N c_n^i T\varphi_i \right\| + \sqrt{\sum_{i=1}^{\infty} |c_n^i|^2} \sqrt{\sum_{i=N+1}^{\infty} \|T\varphi_i\|^2}. \end{aligned}$$

With the aid of (11) we obtain

$$\|Tf_n\| \leq \left\| \sum_{i=1}^N c_n^i T\varphi_i \right\| + M \sqrt{\sum_{i=N+1}^{\infty} \|T\varphi_i\|^2}, \quad n = 1, 2, \dots \quad (12)$$

Given the quantity $\varepsilon > 0$, we choose an integer $N = N(\varepsilon) \in \mathbb{N}$ so large that

$$M \sqrt{\sum_{i=N+1}^{\infty} \|T\varphi_i\|^2} \leq \varepsilon$$

is attained. Observing (10), we then can choose a number $n_0 = n_0(\varepsilon) \in \mathbb{N}$ such that

$$\left\| \sum_{i=1}^{N(\varepsilon)} c_n^i T \varphi_i \right\| \leq \varepsilon \quad \text{for all } n \geq n_0$$

is correct. Altogether, we obtain the estimate

$$\|Tf_n\| \leq 2\varepsilon \quad \text{for all } n \geq n_0$$

with the quantity $\varepsilon > 0$ given. Therefore, $Tf_n \rightarrow 0$ ($n \rightarrow \infty$) holds true. q.e.d.

Remark: According to Theorem 5, the Hilbert-Schmidt operators are completely continuous.

Definition 5. With the completely continuous operator $K : \mathcal{H} \rightarrow \mathcal{H}$ on the Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}$ we associate the so-called Fredholm operator $T := \mathbb{E} - K : \mathcal{H} \rightarrow \mathcal{H}$ by

$$Tx := \mathbb{E}x - Kx = x - Kx, \quad x \in \mathcal{H}.$$

Using the theorem of F. Riesz we now prove the important

Theorem 6. (Fredholm)

Let $K : \mathcal{H} \rightarrow \mathcal{H}$ denote a completely continuous linear operator on the Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}$ with the associate Fredholm operator $T := \mathbb{E} - K$. Then we have the following statements:

i) The null-spaces

$$\mathcal{N}_T := \left\{ x \in \mathcal{H} : Tx = 0 \right\}$$

of the operator T and

$$\mathcal{N}_{T^*} := \left\{ x \in \mathcal{H} : T^*x = 0 \right\}$$

of $T^* = \mathbb{E} - K^*$ fulfill the identity

$$\omega := \dim \mathcal{N}_T = \dim \mathcal{N}_{T^*} \in \mathbb{N}_0 = \mathbb{N} \cup \{0\}. \quad (13)$$

ii) The operator equation

$$x - Kx = Tx = y, \quad x \in \mathcal{H} \quad (14)$$

is solvable for the right-hand side $y \in \mathcal{H}$ if and only if $y \in \mathcal{N}_{T^*}^\perp$ is correct, which means

$$(y, z) = 0 \quad \text{for all } z \in \mathcal{N}_{T^*} \quad (15)$$

is satisfied.

iii) If $\omega = 0$ holds true, the bounded inverse operator $T^{-1} : \mathcal{H} \rightarrow \mathcal{H}$ exists.

Proof:

1. At first, we show $\dim \mathcal{N}_T < +\infty$. If this were violated, there would exist an orthonormal system $\{\varphi_i\}_{i=1,2,\dots}$ satisfying

$$0 = T\varphi_i = \varphi_i - K\varphi_i, \quad i = 1, 2, \dots$$

Since the operator K is completely continuous, we can select a subsequence $\{\varphi_{i_j}\}_{j=1,2,\dots} \subset \{\varphi_i\}_i$ such that $\varphi_{i_j} \rightarrow \varphi$ ($j \rightarrow \infty$) in $\mathcal{H}$. This contradicts the statement

$$\|\varphi_i - \varphi_j\| = \sqrt{2} \quad \text{for all } i, j \in \mathbb{N} \quad \text{with } i \neq j.$$

Therefore, we see $\dim \mathcal{N}_T \in \mathbb{N}_0$. With K the operator K^* is completely continuous as well, and we comprehend $\dim \mathcal{N}_{T^*} \in \mathbb{N}_0$.

We now decompose $\mathcal{H}$ into the closed linear subspaces

$$\mathcal{H} = \mathcal{N}_T^\perp \oplus \mathcal{N}_T. \quad (16)$$

Furthermore, we assume

$$\dim \mathcal{N}_T \leq \dim \mathcal{N}_{T^*}.$$

If this were not the case, we could replace T by T^* and T^* by $T^{**} = T$. Finally, we set

$$\mathcal{W}_T := T(\mathcal{H}) \quad \text{and} \quad \mathcal{W}_{T^*} := T^*(\mathcal{H}).$$

2. We now have $y \in \mathcal{W}_T^\perp$ if and only if

$$0 = (y, Tx) = (T^*y, x) \quad \text{for all } x \in \mathcal{H}$$

is correct, and therefore $T^*y = 0$ or equivalently $y \in \mathcal{N}_{T^*}$ holds true. This implies

$$\mathcal{N}_{T^*} = \mathcal{W}_T^\perp \quad \text{or equivalently} \quad \mathcal{W}_T = \mathcal{N}_{T^*}^\perp. \quad (17)$$

In particular, the range of T is closed in $\mathcal{H}$. We now consider the orthonormal basis

$$\{\varphi_1, \dots, \varphi_d\} \subset \mathcal{N}_T$$

in $\mathcal{N}_T$ and the orthonormal basis

$$\{\psi_1, \dots, \psi_{d^*}\} \subset \mathcal{N}_{T^*}$$

in $\mathcal{N}_{T^*}$ satisfying $0 \leq d \leq d^* < +\infty$. We modify the operator T and obtain a Fredholm operator

$$Sx := Tx - \sum_{i=1}^d (\varphi_i, x) \psi_i, \quad x \in \mathcal{H}. \quad (18)$$

On account of (16) and (17), the null-space of the operator S evidently satisfies

$$\mathcal{N}_S = \left\{ x \in \mathcal{H} : Sx = 0 \right\} = \{0\}.$$

Theorem 4 from Chapter VII, § 4 of F. Riesz implies that the mapping $S : \mathcal{H} \rightarrow \mathcal{H}$ is surjective. Consequently, $d^* = d$ and moreover $\dim \mathcal{N}_T = \dim \mathcal{N}_{T^*}$ is correct. Furthermore, the mapping $T : \mathcal{N}_T^\perp \rightarrow \mathcal{N}_{T^*}^\perp$ is invertible. In the special case

$$\omega = \dim \mathcal{N}_T = \dim \mathcal{N}_{T^*} = 0$$

the theorem of F. Riesz quoted above guarantees the existence of the bounded inverse operator on the entire Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}$.

q.e.d.

Remark: Theorem 6 is especially valid for linear operators $K : \mathcal{H} \rightarrow \mathcal{H}$ on the separable Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}$ with finite square-norm $N(K) < +\infty$. We can estimate the dimension of the null-space for the operator T due to

$$\dim \mathcal{N}_T \leq N(K)^2. \quad (19)$$

If $\{\varphi_1, \dots, \varphi_d\}$ namely denotes an orthonormal system in $\mathcal{N}_T$, we enlarge it to a c.o.n.s. $\{\varphi_i\}_{i=1,2,\dots}$ in $\mathcal{H}$ and obtain

$$\begin{aligned} N(K)^2 &= \sum_{i=1}^{\infty} \|K\varphi_i\|^2 \geq \sum_{i=1}^d \|K\varphi_i\|^2 \\ &= \sum_{i=1}^d \|\varphi_i\|^2 = d = \dim \mathcal{N}_T. \end{aligned}$$

We now collect our results for Hilbert-Schmidt operators in the following

Theorem 7. (D. Hilbert, E. Schmidt) *On the rectangle $Q = [a_1, b_1] \times \dots \times [a_n, b_n]$ let the integral kernel*

$$K = K(x, y) : Q \times Q \rightarrow \mathbb{C} \in L^2(Q \times Q)$$

be given. We consider the linear subspaces of $L^2(Q)$ satisfying

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{N} : \quad & \int_Q K(x, y) f(y) dy = f(x), \quad f \in L^2(Q), \\ \mathcal{N}^* : \quad & \int_Q K^*(x, y) \psi(y) dy = \psi(x), \quad \psi \in L^2(Q), \end{aligned}$$

with $K^(x, y) := \overline{K(y, x)}$ for $(x, y) \in Q \times Q$, and the following statement*

$$\dim \mathcal{N} = \dim \mathcal{N}^* \leq \int_{Q \times Q} |K(x, y)|^2 dx dy < +\infty \quad (20)$$

holds true. The right-hand side $f(x) \in L^2(Q)$ given, the integral equation

$$u(x) - \int_Q K(x, y)u(y) dy = f(x), \quad u \in L^2(Q),$$

can be solved if and only if

$$\int_Q \overline{f(x)} \psi(x) dx = 0 \quad \text{for all } \psi \in \mathcal{N}^*$$

is satisfied.

Proof: The Hilbert-Schmidt operator

$$\mathbb{K}f(x) := \int_Q K(x, y)f(y) dy, \quad f \in L^2(Q)$$

has the finite square-norm

$$N(\mathbb{K}) = \sqrt{\int_{Q \times Q} |K(x, y)|^2 dx dy} < +\infty.$$

Due to Theorem 5, the operator is completely continuous with the adjoint operator

$$\mathbb{K}^*f(x) := \int_Q K^*(x, y)f(y) dy, \quad f \in L^2(Q).$$

From Theorem 6 and the subsequent Remark we infer the statements given.

q.e.d.

In the bounded domain $G \subset \mathbb{R}^n$ we consider the weakly singular kernels

$$K = K(x, y) \in \mathcal{S}_\alpha(G, \mathbb{C})$$

from § 1, Definition 1 with $\alpha \in [0, n)$ and their associate integral operators

$$\mathbb{K}f(x) := \int_G K(x, y)f(y) dy, \quad x \in G, \quad (21)$$

$$\text{for } f \in \mathcal{D} := C^0(G, \mathbb{C}) \cap L^\infty(G, \mathbb{C}).$$

Proposition 3. *Let the kernel $K = K(x, y) \in \mathcal{S}_\alpha(G, \mathbb{C})$ with the properties*

$$\begin{aligned} \int_G |K(x, y)| dy &\leq M, & x \in G, \\ \int_G |K(x, y)| dx &\leq N, & y \in G, \end{aligned} \tag{22}$$

be given. Then the operator $\mathbb{K} : \mathcal{H} \rightarrow \mathcal{H}$ can be extended from $\mathcal{D}$ onto the Hilbert space $\mathcal{H} = L^2(G, \mathbb{C})$, and the following estimate holds true:

$$\|\mathbb{K}\| \leq \sqrt{MN}.$$

Proof: Taking arbitrary functions $f, g \in \mathcal{D}$ we estimate as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} |(g, \mathbb{K}f)| &= \left| \int_G \overline{g(x)} \left(\int_G K(x, y) f(y) dy \right) dx \right| \\ &\leq \int_{G \otimes G} |K(x, y)| |g(x)| |f(y)| dx dy \\ &= \int_{G \otimes G} \left(|K(x, y)|^{\frac{1}{2}} |g(x)| \right) \left(|K(x, y)|^{\frac{1}{2}} |f(y)| \right) dx dy \\ &\leq \left(\int_{G \otimes G} |K(x, y)| |g(x)|^2 dx dy \right)^{\frac{1}{2}} \left(\int_{G \otimes G} |K(x, y)| |f(y)|^2 dx dy \right)^{\frac{1}{2}} \\ &= \left(\int_G |g(x)|^2 \left(\int_G |K(x, y)| dy \right) dx \right)^{\frac{1}{2}} \left(\int_G |f(y)|^2 \left(\int_G |K(x, y)| dx \right) dy \right)^{\frac{1}{2}} \\ &\leq \sqrt{MN} \sqrt{\int_G |g(x)|^2 dx} \sqrt{\int_G |f(y)|^2 dy} = \sqrt{MN} \|g\| \|f\|. \end{aligned}$$

Consequently, the operator $\mathbb{K} : \mathcal{H} \rightarrow \mathcal{H}$ is defined with $\|\mathbb{K}\| \leq \sqrt{MN}$. q.e.d.

We define

$$\Theta(t) := \begin{cases} 0, & 0 \leq t \leq 1 \\ t - 1, & 1 \leq t \leq 2 \\ 1, & 2 \leq t \end{cases}.$$

With $K = K(x, y) \in \mathcal{S}_\alpha(G, \mathbb{C})$ and $\delta \in (0, \delta_0)$ we consider the continuous kernels

$$K_\delta(x, y) := K(x, y) \Theta\left(\frac{|x - y|}{\delta}\right), \quad (x, y) \in G \times G, \tag{23}$$

together with their associate integral operators $\mathbb{K}_\delta$. For all $\delta \in (0, \delta_0)$ the operator $\mathbb{K}_\delta : \mathcal{H} \rightarrow \mathcal{H}$ is completely continuous due to Theorem 5. With the aid of Proposition 3 we easily deduce the limit relation

$$\|\mathbb{K}_\delta - \mathbb{K}\| \rightarrow 0 \quad (\delta \rightarrow 0). \quad (24)$$

The complete continuity of $\mathbb{K}$ is inferred from the following

Proposition 4. *On the Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}$ let the sequence of completely continuous operators $A_j : \mathcal{H} \rightarrow \mathcal{H}$ for $j = 1, 2, \dots$ be given, converging due to $\|A_j - A\| \rightarrow 0$ ($j \rightarrow \infty$) towards the bounded linear operator $A : \mathcal{H} \rightarrow \mathcal{H}$. Then the limit operator $A : \mathcal{H} \rightarrow \mathcal{H}$ is completely continuous.*

Proof: Taking the sequence $\{x_k\}_{k=1,2,\dots} \subset \mathcal{H}$ with $\|x_k\| \leq 1$ for all $k \in \mathbb{N}$, we can select a subsequence $\{x_k^{(1)}\}_k \subset \{x_k\}_k$ such that $\{A_1 x_k^{(1)}\}_{k=1,2,\dots} \subset \mathcal{H}$ converges. Furthermore, we have a subsequence $\{x_k^{(2)}\}_k \subset \{x_k^{(1)}\}_k$ such that $\{A_2 x_k^{(2)}\}_k \subset \mathcal{H}$ converges. In this way we successively select subsequences

$$\{x_k^{(1)}\} \supset \{x_k^{(2)}\} \supset \dots$$

and go over to the diagonal sequence $x'_k := x_k^{(k)}$ for $k = 1, 2, \dots$. We then show the sequence $\{Ax'_k\}_{k=1,2,\dots}$ to be convergent in $\mathcal{H}$ as well: At first, we estimate

$$\begin{aligned} \|Ax'_k - Ax'_l\| &\leq \|Ax'_k - A_j x'_k\| + \|A_j x'_k - A_j x'_l\| + \|A_j x'_l - Ax'_l\| \\ &\leq \|A - A_j\| \|x'_k\| + \|A_j x'_k - A_j x'_l\| + \|A_j - A\| \|x'_l\|. \end{aligned} \quad (25)$$

With a given quantity $\varepsilon > 0$, we now choose an index $j \in \mathbb{N}$ so large that $\|A - A_j\| \leq \varepsilon$ is correct. Furthermore, we chose an integer $N = N(\varepsilon) \in \mathbb{N}$ satisfying

$$\|A_j x'_k - A_j x'_l\| \leq \varepsilon \quad \text{for all } k, l \geq N.$$

From the relation (25) we obtain the inequality

$$\|Ax'_k - Ax'_l\| \leq 2\varepsilon + \varepsilon = 3\varepsilon \quad \text{for all } k, l \geq N(\varepsilon).$$

Therefore, the sequence $\{Ax'_k\}_{k=1,2,\dots}$ converges in $\mathcal{H}$. q.e.d.

Theorem 8. (Weakly singular integral equations)

On the bounded domain $G \subset \mathbb{R}^n$ let the weakly singular kernel $K = K(x, y)$ of the class $\mathcal{S}_\alpha(G, \mathbb{C})$ with $\alpha \in [0, n)$ and the integral operator $\mathbb{K}$ be given. Then the null-spaces

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{N} : \quad &\int_G K(x, y) \varphi(y) dy = \varphi(x), \quad x \in G; \quad \varphi \in \mathcal{D} \\ \mathcal{N}^* : \quad &\int_G \overline{K(x, y)} \psi(x) dx = \psi(y), \quad y \in G; \quad \psi \in \mathcal{D} \end{aligned}$$

satisfy the identity $\dim \mathcal{N} = \dim \mathcal{N}^* < +\infty$. The integral equation

$$u(x) - \int_G K(x, y)u(y) dy = f(x), \quad x \in G; \quad u \in \mathcal{D}, \quad (26)$$

can be solved for the given right-hand side $f \in \mathcal{D}$ if and only if the following condition holds true:

$$\int_G \overline{\psi(x)} f(x) dx = 0 \quad \text{for all } \psi \in \mathcal{N}^*. \quad (27)$$

Proof: On account of Proposition 4 the integral operator $\mathbb{K} : \mathcal{H} \rightarrow \mathcal{H}$ is completely continuous, and Fredholm's Theorem 6 can be applied in the Hilbert space $\mathcal{H} = L^2(G, \mathbb{C})$. We still have to show that (26) is solvable in $\mathcal{D}$. Therefore, let $u \in \mathcal{H}$ be a solution of the integral equation

$$\mathbb{E}u - \mathbb{K}u = f \quad (28)$$

with the continuous right-hand side $f \in \mathcal{D}$. According to the Theorem of I. Schur on iterated kernels (compare § 2, Theorem 4) there exists an integer $k \in \mathbb{N}$, such that $\mathbb{K}^k = \mathbb{L}$ with a bounded kernel $L = L(x, y) \in \mathcal{S}_0(G, \mathbb{C})$ is correct. From Theorem 2 in § 2 the property $\mathbb{L}u \in \mathcal{D}$ is satisfied. Via (28) we now obtain the following identity:

$$\mathbb{E}u - \mathbb{L}u = \mathbb{E}u - \mathbb{K}^k u = (\mathbb{E} + \mathbb{K} + \dots + \mathbb{K}^{k-1})f =: g. \quad (29)$$

Due to § 2, Theorem 2 we have $\mathbb{E} + \mathbb{K} + \dots + \mathbb{K}^{k-1} : \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$ and consequently $g \in \mathcal{D}$. Finally, we obtain

$$u = g + \mathbb{L}u \in \mathcal{D}. \quad \text{q.e.d.}$$

§7 Spectral theory for completely continuous Hermitian operators

At first, we consider the following

Example 1. On the Hilbert space $\mathcal{H} = L^2((0, 1), \mathbb{C})$ with the inner product

$$(f, g) = \int_0^1 \overline{f(x)} g(x) dx, \quad f, g \in \mathcal{H}$$

we define the linear operator

$$Af(x) := xf(x), \quad x \in (0, 1); \quad f = f(x) \in \mathcal{H}.$$

On account of

$$\|Af\|^2 = \int_0^1 x^2 \overline{f(x)} f(x) dx \leq \int_0^1 |f(x)|^2 dx = \|f\|^2$$

the operator A is bounded by $\|A\| \leq 1$. Furthermore, the operator A is symmetric due to

$$(Af, g) = \int_0^1 x \overline{f(x)} g(x) dx = (f, Ag) \quad \text{for all } f, g \in \mathcal{H}.$$

We now claim that A does not possess eigenvalues. From the identity $Af = \lambda f$ we namely infer

$$(x - \lambda)f(x) = 0 \quad \text{a. e. in } (0, 1)$$

and consequently $f(x) = 0$ a. e. in $(0, 1)$ which implies $f = 0 \in \mathcal{H}$.

Theorem 1. *Let $A : \mathcal{H} \rightarrow \mathcal{H}$ denote a completely continuous Hermitian operator on the Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}$. Then we have an element $\varphi \in \mathcal{H}$ with $\|\varphi\| = 1$ and a number $\lambda \in \mathbb{R}$ with $|\lambda| = \|A\|$ such that*

$$A\varphi = \lambda\varphi.$$

Consequently, the numbers $\|A\|$ or $-\|A\|$ are eigenvalues of the operator A . Furthermore, we have the following estimate:

$$|(x, Ax)| \leq |\lambda|(x, x) \quad \text{for all } x \in \mathcal{H}. \quad (1)$$

Proof:

1. At first, we show

$$\|A\| = \sup_{x \in \mathcal{H}, \|x\|=1} |(Ax, x)|. \quad (2)$$

From the estimate

$$|(Ax, x)| \leq \|Ax\| \|x\| \leq \|A\| \|x\|^2 = \|A\|$$

for all $x \in \mathcal{H}$ with $\|x\| = 1$ we infer

$$\sup_{x \in \mathcal{H}, \|x\|=1} |(Ax, x)| \leq \|A\|.$$

In order to show the reverse inequality, we choose an arbitrary $\alpha \in [0, +\infty)$ satisfying

$$|(Ax, x)| \leq \alpha \|x\|^2 \quad \text{for all } x \in \mathcal{H}.$$

With arbitrary elements $f, g \in \mathcal{H}$ we calculate

$$(A(f+g), f+g) - (A(f-g), f-g) = 2\{(Af, g) + (Ag, f)\} = 4 \operatorname{Re}(Af, g)$$

and consequently

$$\begin{aligned} 4|\operatorname{Re}(Af, g)| &\leq |(A(f+g), f+g)| + |(A(f-g), f-g)| \\ &\leq \alpha\{\|f+g\|^2 + \|f-g\|^2\} = 2\alpha\{\|f\|^2 + \|g\|^2\}. \end{aligned}$$

We now replace

$$f = \sqrt{\frac{\|y\|}{\|x\|}} x, \quad g = e^{i\varphi} \sqrt{\frac{\|x\|}{\|y\|}} y$$

with a suitable angle $\varphi \in [0, 2\pi)$, such that the inequality

$$4|(Ax, y)| \leq 2\alpha \left\{ \frac{\|y\|}{\|x\|} \|x\|^2 + \frac{\|x\|}{\|y\|} \|y\|^2 \right\} = 4\alpha \|x\| \|y\|$$

follows and equivalently

$$|(Ax, y)| \leq \alpha \|x\| \|y\| \quad \text{for all } x, y \in \mathcal{H}.$$

Inserting the element $y = Ax$, we obtain

$$\|Ax\|^2 \leq \alpha \|x\| \|Ax\| \quad \text{or equivalently} \quad \|Ax\| \leq \alpha \|x\|$$

for all $x \in \mathcal{H}$, and therefore $\|A\| \leq \alpha$. Finally, we see

$$\sup_{x \in \mathcal{H}, \|x\|=1} |(Ax, x)| = \inf \left\{ \alpha \in [0, +\infty) : \begin{array}{l} |(Ax, x)| \leq \alpha \|x\|^2 \\ \text{for all } x \in \mathcal{H} \end{array} \right\} \geq \|A\|.$$

2. We now consider the variational problem

$$\|A\| = \sup_{x \in \mathcal{H} \setminus \{0\}} \frac{|(Ax, x)|}{\|x\|^2} = \sup_{x \in \mathcal{H}, \|x\|=1} |(Ax, x)|, \quad (3)$$

and without loss of generality we assume $A \neq 0$. Let $\{x_n\}_{n=1,2,\dots} \subset \mathcal{H}$ denote a sequence with $\|x_n\| = 1$ for all $n \in \mathbb{N}$ satisfying

$$|(Ax_n, x_n)| \rightarrow \|A\| \quad (n \rightarrow \infty).$$

Then we have a subsequence $\{x'_n\}_{n=1,2,\dots} \subset \{x_n\}_{n=1,2,\dots}$ and an element $x \in \mathcal{H}$ with $\|x\| \leq 1$, such that $x'_n \rightharpoonup x$ ($n \rightarrow \infty$) and

$$(Ax'_n, x'_n) \rightarrow \lambda \in \{-\|A\|, \|A\|\}$$

hold true. Since the bilinear form $(y, z) \mapsto (Ay, z)$ is weakly continuous, we infer

$$0 \neq \lambda = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} (Ax'_n, x'_n) = (Ax, x)$$

and therefore $x \neq 0$. Now the condition $\|x\| = 1$ holds true: If $\|x\| < 1$ were correct, we would obtain

$$\frac{|(Ax, x)|}{\|x\|^2} > \frac{|\lambda|}{1} = \|A\|$$

contradicting (3).

3. Without loss of generality we now assume $\lambda = +\|A\|$; and the element $x \in \mathcal{H}$ satisfying $\|x\| = 1$ may solve the variational problem (3) from part 2 of our proof. We therefore have

$$(Ax, x) = \lambda \|x\|^2.$$

Taking an arbitrary element $y \in \mathcal{H}$, there exists a quantity $\varepsilon_0 = \varepsilon_0(y) > 0$ such that all $\varepsilon \in (-\varepsilon_0, \varepsilon_0)$ fulfill

$$(A(x + \varepsilon y), x + \varepsilon y) \leq \lambda(x + \varepsilon y, x + \varepsilon y)$$

and consequently

$$(Ax, x) + \varepsilon\{(Ax, y) + (Ay, x)\} \leq \lambda\|x\|^2 + \varepsilon\lambda\{(x, y) + (y, x)\} + o(\varepsilon).$$

This implies

$$\varepsilon \operatorname{Re}(Ax - \lambda x, y) \leq o(\varepsilon),$$

and consequently $\operatorname{Re}(Ax - \lambda x, y) \leq o(1)$ for all $y \in \mathcal{H}$. Therefore, the relation

$$\operatorname{Re}(Ax - \lambda x, y) = 0 \quad \text{for all } y \in \mathcal{H}$$

has to be fulfilled and especially

$$Ax = \lambda x.$$

q.e.d.

Theorem 2. (Spectral theorem of F. Rellich)

Let the completely continuous Hermitian operator $A : \mathcal{H} \rightarrow \mathcal{H}$ be given on the Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}$ satisfying $A \neq 0$. Then we have a finite or countably infinite system of orthonormal elements $\{\varphi_i\}_{i=1,2,\dots}$ in $\mathcal{H}$ such that

- a) The elements φ_i are eigenfunctions to the eigenvalues $\lambda_i \in \mathbb{R}$ ordered as follows:

$$\|A\| = |\lambda_1| \geq |\lambda_2| \geq |\lambda_3| \geq \dots > 0,$$

more precisely

$$A\varphi_i = \lambda_i \varphi_i, \quad i = 1, 2, \dots$$

If the set $\{\varphi_i\}_i$ is infinite, we have the asymptotic behavior

$$\lim_{i \rightarrow \infty} \lambda_i = 0.$$

- b) For all $x \in \mathcal{H}$ we have the representations

$$Ax = \sum_{i=1,2,\dots} \lambda_i (\varphi_i, x) \varphi_i \quad \text{and} \quad (x, Ax) = \sum_{i=1,2,\dots} \lambda_i |(\varphi_i, x)|^2.$$

Remark: This theorem remains true for inseparable Hilbert spaces. If the system $\{\varphi_i\}_{i=1,\dots,N}$ is finite, the series above reduce to sums.

Proof of Theorem 2: On account of $\|A\| > 0$, Theorem 1 yields the existence of an element $\varphi_1 \in \mathcal{H}$ with $\|\varphi_1\| = 1$ satisfying

$$A\varphi_1 = \lambda_1\varphi_1, \quad \lambda_1 \in \{-\|A\|, +\|A\|\}.$$

Furthermore, we have

$$|(Ax, x)| \leq |\lambda_1|(x, x) \quad \text{for all } x \in \mathcal{H}.$$

We now assume that we have already found $m \geq 1$ orthonormal eigenelements $\varphi_1, \dots, \varphi_m$ with the associate eigenvalues $\lambda_1, \dots, \lambda_m \in \mathbb{R}$ satisfying the property a). Then we consider the completely continuous Hermitian operator

$$B_mx = Ax - \sum_{i=1}^m \lambda_i(\varphi_i, x)\varphi_i.$$

Case 1: We have $B_m = 0$. Then the following representation holds true:

$$Ax = \sum_{i=1}^m \lambda_i(\varphi_i, x)\varphi_i.$$

Case 2: We have $B_m \neq 0$. According to Theorem 1 we have an element $\varphi \in \mathcal{H}$ with $\|\varphi\| = 1$, such that $B_m\varphi = \lambda\varphi$ and consequently

$$A\varphi - \sum_{i=1}^m \lambda_i(\varphi_i, \varphi)\varphi_i = \lambda\varphi$$

is satisfied with $|\lambda| = \|B_m\| > 0$. Multiplication by φ_k with $k \in \{1, \dots, m\}$ from the left yields

$$\begin{aligned} \lambda(\varphi_k, \varphi) &= (\varphi_k, A\varphi) - \lambda_k(\varphi_k, \varphi) = (A\varphi_k, \varphi) - \lambda_k(\varphi_k, \varphi) \\ &= \lambda_k(\varphi_k, \varphi) - \lambda_k(\varphi_k, \varphi) = 0, \quad k = 1, \dots, m. \end{aligned}$$

Therefore, the system $\{\varphi_1, \dots, \varphi_m, \varphi\}$ is orthonormal as well; we set $\varphi_{m+1} := \varphi$ and $\lambda_{m+1} := \lambda \neq 0$. Now we deduce $|\lambda_{m+1}| \leq |\lambda_m|$: By construction the following estimate

$$|(x, B_mx)| \leq |\lambda_m|(x, x) \quad \text{for all } x \in \mathcal{H}$$

holds true, and for $x = \varphi_{m+1}$ we obtain

$$|\lambda_m| \geq |(\varphi_{m+1}, B_m\varphi_{m+1})| = |(\varphi_{m+1}, \lambda_{m+1}\varphi_{m+1})| = |\lambda_{m+1}|.$$

We now assume that the procedure above does not end. Since the elements $\{\varphi_i\}_i$ are orthonormal, we infer $\varphi_i \rightarrow 0$ ($i \rightarrow \infty$) and the complete continuity of the operator A yields

$$|\lambda_i| = \|A\varphi_i\| \rightarrow 0 \quad (i \rightarrow \infty).$$

On account of $\|B_m\| = |\lambda_{m+1}|$ we obtain the statement

$$\left\| A - \sum_{i=1}^m \lambda_i(\varphi_i, \cdot)\varphi_i \right\| = |\lambda_{m+1}| \rightarrow 0 \quad (m \rightarrow \infty) \quad (4)$$

and consequently

$$Ax = \sum_{i=1}^{\infty} \lambda_i(\varphi_i, x)\varphi_i, \quad x \in \mathcal{H}.$$

Therefore, all $y = Ax$ with $x \in \mathcal{H}$ can be represented in the form

$$y = \sum_{i=1}^{\infty} (\varphi_i, y)\varphi_i,$$

which means the system $\{\varphi_i\}_{i=1,2,\dots}$ is complete in $\overline{\mathcal{W}_A} = \overline{A(\mathcal{H})}$.

q.e.d.

Theorem 3. *The Hermitian operator $A : \mathcal{H} \rightarrow \mathcal{H}$ with finite square-norm $N(A) < +\infty$ satisfying $A \neq 0$ is defined on the separable Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}$. The operator A may possess a countably infinite system of orthonormal eigenelements $\{\varphi_i\}_{i=1,2,\dots}$ and associate eigenvalues $\{\lambda_i\}_{i=1,2,\dots}$ with the properties a) and b) from Theorem 2. We set*

$$A_n f := Af - \sum_{i=1}^n \lambda_i(\varphi_i, f)\varphi_i, \quad n = 1, 2, \dots$$

Then the sequence of square-norms

$$N(A_n)^2 = \sum_{i=n+1}^{\infty} \lambda_i^2, \quad n = 1, 2, \dots$$

is a zero sequence.

Proof: Noting that $N(A) < +\infty$, the operator $A : \mathcal{H} \rightarrow \mathcal{H}$ is completely continuous and Theorem 2 gives us the representation

$$y = \sum_{i=1}^{\infty} (\varphi_i, y)\varphi_i \quad \text{for all } y \in \mathcal{W}_A.$$

We observe the decomposition $\mathcal{H} = \overline{\mathcal{W}_A} \oplus \mathcal{N}_A$. The relation $y \in \mathcal{N}_A$ or equivalently $Ay = 0$ holds true if and only if

$$0 = (Ay, x) = (y, Ax) \quad \text{for all } x \in \mathcal{H}$$

is satisfied, which means $\mathcal{N}_A = \mathcal{W}_A^\perp$.

Let now $\{\psi_i\}_{i=1,2,\dots}$ represent a c.o.n.s. in $\mathcal{N}_A$. Then the set $\{\varphi_i\}_i \cup \{\psi_i\}_i$ constitutes a c.o.n.s. in $\mathcal{H}$. This allows us to evaluate

$$N(A)^2 = \sum_{i=1}^{\infty} \|A\varphi_i\|^2 + \sum_{i=1}^{\infty} \|A\psi_i\|^2 = \sum_{i=1}^{\infty} \lambda_i^2 < +\infty$$

and finally

$$N(A_n)^2 = \sum_{i=1}^{\infty} \|A_n\varphi_i\|^2 + \sum_{i=1}^{\infty} \|A_n\psi_i\|^2 = \sum_{i=n+1}^{\infty} \lambda_i^2 \rightarrow 0 \quad (n \rightarrow \infty). \quad \text{q.e.d.}$$

We specialize the Theorems 2 and 3 to Hilbert-Schmidt operators and immediately obtain the following

Theorem 4. (Spectral theorem of D. Hilbert and E. Schmidt)

On the rectangle $Q \subset \mathbb{R}^n$ with $n \in \mathbb{N}$ let the integral kernel $K = K(x, y) : Q \times Q \rightarrow \mathbb{C} \in L^2(Q \times Q)$ be given satisfying

$$\int_{Q \times Q} |K(x, y)|^2 dx dy > 0$$

and

$$\overline{K(y, x)} = K(x, y) \quad \text{for almost all } (x, y) \in Q \times Q. \quad (5)$$

Then we have a finite or countably infinite system of eigenfunctions

$$\{\varphi_i(x)\}_{i=1,2,\dots} \subset L^2(Q, \mathbb{C})$$

with the associate eigenvalues $\{\lambda_i\}_{i=1,2,\dots} \subset \mathbb{R}$, such that the following integral-eigenvalue-equation

$$\int_Q K(x, y) \varphi_i(y) dy = \lambda_i \varphi_i(x) \quad \text{for almost all } x \in Q \quad (6)$$

is satisfied with $i = 1, 2, \dots$. The eigenvalues have the properties

$$|\lambda_1| \geq |\lambda_2| \geq \dots > 0 \quad \text{and} \quad \lim_{i \rightarrow \infty} \lambda_i = 0. \quad (7)$$

Furthermore, we have the eigenvalue expansions

$$\int_{Q \times Q} |K(x, y)|^2 dx dy = \sum_{i=1}^{\infty} \lambda_i^2 < +\infty \quad (8)$$

and

$$\int_{Q \times Q} \left| K(x, y) - \sum_{i=1}^n \lambda_i \varphi_i(x) \overline{\varphi_i(y)} \right|^2 dx dy = \sum_{i=n+1}^{\infty} \lambda_i^2 \rightarrow 0 \quad (n \rightarrow \infty). \quad (9)$$

§8 The Sturm-Liouville eigenvalue problem

We need the following result:

Theorem 1. (Eigenvalue problem for weakly singular integral operators)

Let the weakly singular kernel $K = K(x, y) \in \mathcal{S}_\alpha(G, \mathbb{C})$ with $\alpha \in [0, n)$ be given on the bounded domain $G \subset \mathbb{R}^n$, and we have $K(x, y) \not\equiv 0$ and

$$K(x, y) = \overline{K(y, x)} \quad \text{for all } (x, y) \in G \otimes G.$$

We denote the associate integral operator by $\mathbb{K}$, and define as our domain of definition

$$\mathcal{D} := \left\{ f \in C^0(G, \mathbb{C}) : \sup_{x \in G} |f(x)| < +\infty \right\}.$$

Statements: Then we have a finite or countably infinite orthonormal system of eigenfunctions $\{\varphi_i\}_{i \in I} \subset \mathcal{D}$ with their eigenvalues $\lambda_i \in \mathbb{R} \setminus \{0\}$ for $i \in I$ satisfying

$$\int_G K(x, y) \varphi_i(y) dy = \lambda_i \varphi_i(x), \quad x \in G, \quad i \in I. \quad (1)$$

If $I = \{1, 2, \dots\}$ is countably infinite, we have

$$\lim_{i \rightarrow \infty} \lambda_i = 0, \quad (2)$$

and each function $g = \mathbb{K}f$ with $f \in \mathcal{D}$ can be approximated in the square-mean due to

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \int_G \left| g(x) - \sum_{i=1}^n g_i \varphi_i(x) \right|^2 dx = 0. \quad (3)$$

Here we have set

$$g_i := \int_G \overline{\varphi_i(x)} g(x) dx, \quad i \in I \quad (4)$$

for the Fourier coefficients. When we additionally assume $\alpha \in [0, \frac{n}{2})$, the function $g = \mathbb{K}f$ with $f \in \mathcal{D}$ can be expanded into the following uniformly convergent series:

$$g(x) = \sum_{i=1}^{\infty} g_i \varphi_i(x), \quad x \in G. \quad (5)$$

Proof: As it has been elaborated in the proof of Theorem 8 from §6, the operator $\mathbb{K} : \mathcal{H} \rightarrow \mathcal{H}$ is completely continuous on the Hilbert space $\mathcal{H} = L^2(G, \mathbb{C})$. Furthermore, we have the regularity result

$$\mathbb{E}u - \mathbb{K}u = v \quad \text{with } u \in \mathcal{H} \text{ and } v \in \mathcal{D} \quad \Rightarrow \quad u \in \mathcal{D}. \quad (6)$$

Due to Rellich's spectral theorem from §7, Theorem 2 the operator $\mathbb{K}$ possesses a finite or countably infinite system of orthonormal eigenfunctions $\{\varphi_i\}_{i=1,2,\dots} \subset \mathcal{H}$. Then we have the identities

$$\int_G K(x, y) \varphi_i(y) dy = \lambda_i \varphi_i(x), \quad x \in G$$

for all $i = 1, 2, \dots$ with $|\lambda_1| \geq |\lambda_2| \geq \dots > 0$ and $\lambda_i \rightarrow 0$ ($i \rightarrow \infty$), in the case that infinitely many eigenfunctions exist. According to the regularity result (6) we see $\varphi_i \in \mathcal{D}$ for $i = 1, 2, \dots$. Furthermore, the function $g = \mathbb{K}f$ with an arbitrary element $f \in \mathcal{D}$ satisfies the following identity in the Hilbert space:

$$\begin{aligned} g = \mathbb{K}f &= \sum_{i=1,2,\dots} \lambda_i (\varphi_i, f) \varphi_i = \sum_{i=1,2,\dots} (\mathbb{K}\varphi_i, f) \varphi_i \\ &= \sum_{i=1,2,\dots} (\varphi_i, \mathbb{K}f) \varphi_i = \sum_{i=1,2,\dots} (\varphi_i, g) \varphi_i \end{aligned}$$

or equivalently (3), with the Fourier coefficients g_i defined in (4). When we additionally assume $\alpha \in [0, \frac{n}{2})$, the linear operator $\mathbb{K} : L^2(G) \rightarrow C^0(G)$ is bounded by

$$\|\mathbb{K}f\|_{C^0(G)} \leq C \|f\|_{L^2(G)} \quad \text{for all } f \in \mathcal{D}$$

due to Theorem 2 from §2. Therefore, the series

$$\sum_{i=1,2,\dots} (\varphi_i, f) \varphi_i$$

convergent in the Hilbert space $\mathcal{H} = L^2(G, \mathbb{C})$ is transferred by the operator $\mathbb{K}$ into the uniformly convergent series

$$\sum_{i=1,2,\dots} \lambda_i (\varphi_i, f) \varphi_i = \mathbb{K} \left(\sum_{i=1,2,\dots} (\varphi_i, f) \varphi_i \right) = g.$$

q.e.d.

Theorem 2. (Expansion theorem for kernels)

Let $K = K(x, y) : G \times G \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$ denote a Hermitian integral kernel of the class $\mathcal{S}_0(G, \mathbb{C})$, which is continuous on $G \times G$. For the associate integral operator $\mathbb{K}$ we assume

$$(f, \mathbb{K}f) \geq 0 \quad \text{for all } f \in \mathcal{D}. \quad (7)$$

Then we have a representation by the uniformly convergent series in each compact set $\Gamma \subset G$ as follows:

$$K(x, y) = \sum_{i=1}^{\infty} \lambda_i \varphi_i(x) \overline{\varphi_i(y)}, \quad (x, y) \in \Gamma \times \Gamma. \quad (8)$$

Proof:

1. We show at first that

$$K(x, x) \geq 0 \quad \text{for all } x \in G \quad (9)$$

is fulfilled. Here we utilize the function $\varphi = \varphi(y) : \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow [0, +\infty) \in C^0(\mathbb{R}^n)$ satisfying

$$\varphi(y) = 0, \quad |y| \geq 1, \quad \text{and} \quad \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \varphi(y) dy = 1.$$

The quantity $\delta > 0$ given arbitrarily, we consider the approximate point distributions about $x \in G$, namely

$$f_\delta(y) := \frac{1}{\delta^n} \varphi\left(\frac{1}{\delta}(y - x)\right), \quad y \in \mathbb{R}^n.$$

We insert the function $f_\delta \in \mathcal{D}$ into (7) and obtain

$$\begin{aligned} 0 \leq (f_\delta, \mathbb{K} f_\delta) &= \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} f_\delta(y) K(y, z) f_\delta(z) dy dz \\ &= \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} K(x, x) f_\delta(y) f_\delta(z) dy dz \\ &\quad + \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} (K(y, z) - K(x, x)) f_\delta(y) f_\delta(z) dy dz \\ &= K(x, x) + \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} (K(y, z) - K(x, x)) f_\delta(y) f_\delta(z) dy dz. \end{aligned}$$

Since the second term on the right-hand side vanishes for $\delta \rightarrow 0$, we infer (9).

2. We now show the validity of

$$0 \leq \sum_{i=1}^{\infty} \lambda_i |\varphi_i(x)|^2 \leq K(x, x) < +\infty \quad \text{for all } x \in G. \quad (10)$$

We define the integral kernel

$$K_N(x, y) := K(x, y) - \sum_{i=1}^N \lambda_i \varphi_i(x) \overline{\varphi_i(y)}$$

with the associate integral operator $\mathbb{K}_N$. The latter satisfies

$$(f, \mathbb{K}_N f) = \sum_{i=N+1}^{\infty} \lambda_i |(\varphi_i, f)|^2 \geq 0 \quad \text{for all } f \in \mathcal{D}.$$

From part 1 of our proof we obtain $K_N(x, x) \geq 0$ for all $x \in G$ or equivalently

$$K(x, x) \geq \sum_{i=1}^N \lambda_i \varphi_i(x) \overline{\varphi_i(x)}, \quad x \in G$$

for all $N \in \mathbb{N}$. This implies (10).

3. Let the point $x \in G$ be chosen as fixed. For an arbitrary quantity $\varepsilon > 0$ we then can estimate

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{i=N+1}^{\infty} |\lambda_i \varphi_i(x) \overline{\varphi_i(y)}| &\leq \sqrt{\sum_{i=N+1}^{\infty} \lambda_i |\varphi_i(x)|^2} \sqrt{\sum_{i=N+1}^{\infty} \lambda_i |\varphi_i(y)|^2} \\ &\leq \varepsilon \sqrt{K(y, y)} \leq \varepsilon \cdot \text{const}, \quad y \in G, \end{aligned}$$

for all $N \geq N_0(\varepsilon)$. Therefore, we have the following statement for each fixed $x \in G$:

$$\text{The series } \Phi(y) := \sum_{i=1}^{\infty} \lambda_i \varphi_i(x) \overline{\varphi_i(y)} \text{ converges uniformly in } G. \quad (11)$$

4. According to Theorem 4 from § 7 we have the relation

$$K(x, y) = \sum_{i=1}^{\infty} \lambda_i \varphi_i(x) \overline{\varphi_i(y)} \quad (12)$$

in the $L^2(G \times G, \mathbb{C})$ -sense. Choosing the point $x \in G$ and the function $f \in C_0^0(G)$ arbitrarily, we obtain the following identity via (11) and (12):

$$\begin{aligned} \int_G K(x, y) f(y) dy &= \lim_{N \rightarrow \infty} \int_G \left(\sum_{i=1}^N \lambda_i \varphi_i(x) \overline{\varphi_i(y)} \right) f(y) dy \\ &= \int_G \left(\sum_{i=1}^{\infty} \lambda_i \varphi_i(x) \overline{\varphi_i(y)} \right) f(y) dy. \end{aligned}$$

This implies

$$\int_G \left(K(x, y) - \sum_{i=1}^{\infty} \lambda_i \varphi_i(x) \overline{\varphi_i(y)} \right) f(y) dy = 0 \quad \text{for all } f \in C_0^0(G).$$

Since $K \in C^0(G \times G)$ holds true, and the series in the integrand is continuous with respect to $y \in G$, we deduce the pointwise identity

$$K(x, y) = \sum_{i=1}^{\infty} \lambda_i \varphi_i(x) \overline{\varphi_i(y)} \quad \text{for all } x, y \in G. \quad (13)$$

5. Especially for $x = y$ we infer the following identity from (13):

$$K(x, x) = \sum_{i=1}^{\infty} \lambda_i |\varphi_i(x)|^2, \quad x \in G.$$

According to Dini's theorem the series converges uniformly on each compact set $F \subset G$. Finally, we obtain the following inequality for arbitrary $\varepsilon > 0$ and suitable $N \geq N_0(\varepsilon)$, namely

$$\left| \sum_{i=N+1}^{\infty} \lambda_i \varphi_i(x) \overline{\varphi_i(y)} \right| \leq \sqrt{\sum_{i=N+1}^{\infty} \lambda_i |\varphi_i(x)|^2} \sqrt{\sum_{i=N+1}^{\infty} \lambda_i |\varphi_i(y)|^2} \leq \varepsilon^2$$

for all $(x, y) \in F \times F$.

q.e.d.

Theorem 3. (The Sturm-Liouville eigenvalue problem)

We prescribe $a, b \in \mathbb{R}$ with $a < b$ and the coefficient functions

$$p = p(x) \in C^1([a, b], (0, +\infty)), \quad q = q(x) \in C^0([a, b], \mathbb{R}),$$

and consider the Sturm-Liouville operator $\mathbb{L} : C^2([a, b], \mathbb{C}) \rightarrow C^0([a, b], \mathbb{C})$ defined by

$$\mathbb{L}u(x) := -(p(x)u'(x))' + q(x)u(x), \quad x \in [a, b].$$

Furthermore, we use the real boundary operators $\mathbb{B}_j : C^2([a, b], \mathbb{C}) \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$ for $j = 1, 2$ defined by

$$\mathbb{B}_1 u := c_1 u(a) + c_2 u'(a) \quad \text{with} \quad c_1^2 + c_2^2 > 0$$

and

$$\mathbb{B}_2 u := d_1 u(b) + d_2 u'(b) \quad \text{with} \quad d_1^2 + d_2^2 > 0.$$

Finally, we fix the domain of definition

$$\mathcal{D} := \left\{ u \in C^2([a, b], \mathbb{C}) : \mathbb{B}_1 u = 0 = \mathbb{B}_2 u \right\}.$$

Statements: Then we have a sequence $\{\lambda_i\}_{i=1,2,\dots} \subset \mathbb{R}$ of eigenvalues satisfying

$$-\infty < \lambda_1 \leq \lambda_2 \leq \dots \quad \text{and} \quad \lim_{i \rightarrow \infty} \lambda_i = +\infty$$

and the associate eigenfunctions $\{\varphi_i\}_{i=1,2,\dots} \subset \mathcal{D}$ with the following properties:

a) We have

$$\mathbb{L}\varphi_i = \lambda_i \varphi_i, \quad \int_a^b \overline{\varphi_i(x)} \varphi_j(x) dx = \delta_{ij} \quad \text{for all } i, j \in \mathbb{N},$$

and the identity

$$\sum_{i=1}^{\infty} \left| \int_a^b \overline{\varphi_i(x)} f(x) dx \right|^2 = \int_a^b |f(x)|^2 dx \quad \text{for all } f \in \mathcal{D}$$

is satisfied.

- b) Each function $g \in \mathcal{D}$ can be expanded into the uniformly convergent series on the interval $[a, b]$ as follows:

$$g(x) = \sum_{i=1}^{\infty} g_i \varphi_i(x), \quad x \in [a, b], \quad \text{with } g_i := \int_a^b \overline{\varphi_i(x)} g(x) dx, \quad i \in \mathbb{N}.$$

- c) If the property $\lambda_i \neq 0$ for all $i \in \mathbb{N}$ is satisfied, the following series

$$\sum_{i=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{\lambda_i} \varphi_i(x) \overline{\varphi_i(y)}, \quad (x, y) \in [a, b] \times [a, b]$$

converges uniformly towards the Green function K of $\mathbb{L}$ under the boundary conditions $\mathbb{B}_1 = 0 = \mathbb{B}_2$.

Proof: We continue our considerations from § 1 concerning the Sturm-Liouville eigenvalue problem.

1. All eigenvalues of $\mathbb{L}$ are real. Since the coefficient functions p and q are real, we obtain the following statement from Proposition 1 in § 1 via separation into the real and imaginary part:

$$\int_a^b \overline{\mathbb{L}u(x)} v(x) dx = \int_a^b u(x) \overline{\mathbb{L}v(x)} dx \quad \text{for all } u, v \in \mathcal{D}. \quad (14)$$

We calculate

$$\begin{aligned} \overline{\lambda_i} \int_a^b |\varphi_i(x)|^2 dx &= \int_a^b \overline{\lambda_i \varphi_i(x)} \varphi_i(x) dx = \int_a^b \overline{\mathbb{L} \varphi_i} \varphi_i dx \\ &= \int_a^b \overline{\varphi_i} \mathbb{L} \varphi_i dx = \int_a^b \overline{\varphi_i} \lambda_i \varphi_i dx \\ &= \lambda_i \int_a^b |\varphi_i(x)|^2 dx, \quad i=1, 2, \dots \end{aligned}$$

This implies

$$\lambda_i = \overline{\lambda_i} \quad \text{for all } i \in \mathbb{N}.$$

2. We now prove that the sequence of eigenvalues is bounded from below. Here we consider the class of admissible functions

$$\mathcal{D}_0 := \left\{ u = u(x) \in C^2([a, b], \mathbb{C}) : u(a) = 0 = u(b) \right\}.$$

If $u \in \mathcal{D}_0$ is a solution of $\mathbb{L}u = \lambda u$, we infer

$$\lambda \geq q_* := \inf_{a \leq x \leq b} q(x). \quad (15)$$

With the aid of partial integration, we evaluate

$$\begin{aligned} \lambda \int_a^b |u(x)|^2 dx &= \lambda \int_a^b \overline{u(x)} u(x) dx = \int_a^b \overline{\mathbb{L}u(x)} u(x) dx \\ &= \int_a^b \left\{ p(x) |u'(x)|^2 + q(x) |u(x)|^2 \right\} dx \\ &\geq q_* \int_a^b |u(x)|^2 dx. \end{aligned}$$

We now show indirectly that the operator $\mathbb{L}$ on $\mathcal{D}$ possesses at most two eigenvalues smaller than q_* . On the contrary, we assume that we had three eigenfunctions $\varphi_1, \varphi_2, \varphi_3 \in \mathcal{D}$ satisfying

$$\mathbb{L}\varphi_i = \lambda_i \varphi_i, \quad i = 1, 2, 3 \quad \text{and} \quad \lambda_1 \leq \lambda_2 \leq \lambda_3 < q_*.$$

Then we can find numbers $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \alpha_3 \in \mathbb{C}$ with $|\alpha_1|^2 + |\alpha_2|^2 + |\alpha_3|^2 = 1$ such that

$$v := \sum_{i=1}^3 \alpha_i \varphi_i \in \mathcal{D}_0$$

is correct. On account of (15) we see

$$\begin{aligned} q_* \int_a^b |v(x)|^2 dx &\leq \int_a^b \overline{\mathbb{L}v(x)} v(x) dx = \int_a^b \overline{\left(\sum_{i=1}^3 \lambda_i \alpha_i \varphi_i \right)} \left(\sum_{j=1}^3 \alpha_j \varphi_j \right) dx \\ &= \int_a^b \sum_{i=1}^3 \lambda_i |\alpha_i|^2 |\varphi_i(x)|^2 dx \leq \lambda_3 \int_a^b \sum_{i=1}^3 |\alpha_i|^2 |\varphi_i(x)|^2 dx \\ &= \lambda_3 \int_a^b |v(x)|^2 dx. \end{aligned}$$

We obtain $\lambda_3 \geq q_*$ in contradiction to $\lambda_3 < q_*$.

3. We name $\lambda_1 \in \mathbb{R}$ the least eigenvalue of $\mathbb{L}$ on $\mathcal{D}$, existing due to part 2 of our proof. Then we obtain in

$$\tilde{\mathbb{L}} := \mathbb{L} - \lambda_1 \mathbb{E} + \mathbb{E}$$

a Sturm-Liouville operator with the eigenvalues $\tilde{\lambda}_k \geq 1$, $k = 1, 2, \dots$. Due to Theorem 1 in §1 the operator $\mathbb{L}$ on $\mathcal{D}$ possesses a symmetric Green's function $K = K(x, y), (x, y) \in [a, b] \times [a, b]$ of the class $C^0([a, b] \times [a, b], \mathbb{R})$. We now take Theorem 2 from §1 into account and utilize Theorem 1 for the given integral equation. Then we obtain a sequence of eigenfunctions $\{\varphi_i\}_{i=1,2,\dots} \subset \mathcal{D}$ satisfying

$$\mathbb{L}\varphi_i = \lambda_i \varphi_i, \quad i \in \mathbb{N}, \quad \text{and} \quad \lambda_1 \leq \lambda_2 \leq \dots \rightarrow +\infty.$$

From Theorems 1 and 2 we immediately infer all the statements above.
q.e.d.

§9 Weyl's eigenvalue problem for the Laplace operator

We need the following generalization of the Gaussian integral theorem, which does not require regularity assumptions for the boundary of the domain with vanishing boundary values:

Proposition 1. (Giesecke, Heinz)

- I. Let the bounded domain $G \subset \mathbb{R}^n$ be given, in which $N \in \mathbb{N}_0$ mutually disjoint balls

$$K_j := \left\{ x \in \mathbb{R}^n : |x - x^{(j)}| \leq r_j \right\}, \quad j = 1, 2, \dots, N$$

with their radii $r_j > 0$ and their centers $x^{(j)}$ are contained. We set

$$G' := G \setminus \{x^{(1)}, \dots, x^{(N)}\} \quad \text{and} \quad G'' := G \setminus \bigcup_{j=1}^N K_j.$$

The topological closure of the set G'' is denoted by $\overline{G''}$.

- II. For the two functions $u, v \in C^2(G') \cap C^0(\overline{G''})$ we assume

$$u|_{\partial G} = 0 = v|_{\partial G}; \quad \int_{G''} \left\{ |\Delta u(x)| + |\Delta v(x)| \right\} dx < +\infty.$$

Statement: Then the following identity

$$\int_{G''} (v \Delta u + \nabla v \cdot \nabla u) dx = - \sum_{j=1}^N \int_{|x-x^{(j)}|=r_j} v \frac{\partial u}{\partial \nu_j} d\Omega_j \quad (1)$$

holds true. Here the symbol ν_j denotes the exterior normal to K_j and $d\Omega_j$ the surface element on the spheres $\{x : |x - x^{(j)}| = r_j\} = \partial K_j$ for $j = 1, \dots, N$.

From Proposition 1 we immediately infer the subsequent

Proposition 2. *With the assumptions from Proposition 1 we have Green's identity*

$$\int_{G''} (v \Delta u - u \Delta v) dx = - \sum_{j=1}^N \int_{|x-x^{(j)}|=r_j} \left(v \frac{\partial u}{\partial \nu_j} - u \frac{\partial v}{\partial \nu_j} \right) d\Omega_j. \quad (2)$$

Proof of Proposition 1:

1. At first, we assume that $v \in C_0^0(G)$ is satisfied in addition to the assumptions above, and we consider the vector-field $f = v \nabla u$. Then the Gaussian integral theorem yields the identity

$$\int_{G''} (v \Delta u + \nabla v \cdot \nabla u) dx = - \sum_{j=1}^N \int_{|x-x^{(j)}|=r_j} v \frac{\partial u}{\partial \nu_j} d\Omega_j. \quad (3)$$

We approximate an arbitrary function $v \in C^2(G') \cap C^0(\overline{G''})$ by a sequence $\{v_k\}_{k=1,2,\dots}$ as follows: Let $\{w_k(t)\}_{k=1,2,\dots} \subset C^\infty(\mathbb{R}, [0, 1])$ denote a sequence of functions with the properties

$$w_k(t) = \begin{cases} 1, & |t| \geq \frac{1}{k} \\ 0, & |t| \leq \frac{1}{2k} \end{cases}, \quad k = 1, 2, \dots$$

The functions

$$\varphi_k(t) := \int_0^t w_k(s) ds, \quad t \in \mathbb{R}$$

then satisfy

$$\varphi_k(0) = 0, \quad \varphi'_k(t) = w_k(t), \quad k = 1, 2, \dots,$$

and we estimate

$$|\varphi_k(t) - t| = \left| \int_0^t (w_k(s) - 1) ds \right| \leq \frac{2}{k}, \quad k = 1, 2, \dots$$

Now we define the sequence

$$v_k(x) := \varphi_k(v(x)), \quad x \in \overline{G''}, \quad k = 1, 2, \dots \quad (4)$$

and consider the relation

$$|v_k(x) - v(x)| = |\varphi_k(v(x)) - v(x)| \leq \frac{2}{k} \rightarrow 0 \quad (k \rightarrow \infty)$$

for all $x \in G''$, which implies

$$v_k(x) \rightarrow v(x) \quad (k \rightarrow \infty) \quad \text{uniformly in } \overline{G''}. \quad (5)$$

2. We now prove that

$$E := \left\{ x \in G'' : v(x) = 0, \nabla v(x) \neq 0 \right\}$$

represents a Lebesgue null-set: Here we choose the point $z \in E$ arbitrarily. Taking the quantity $\varepsilon > 0$ sufficiently small, the set

$$E \cap \{x \in G'' : |x - z| < \varepsilon\}$$

constitutes a graph, and is consequently a Lebesgue null-set due to the theorem on implicit functions. We exhaust the set G'' with the aid of the cube decomposition. For each point $z \in E$ we consider a sufficiently small cube $z \in W \subset G''$ such that $W \cap E$ is a Lebesgue null-set. Now the set E consists of a countable union of those sets $W \cap E$, and the σ -additivity of the Lebesgue measure yields the statement above.

3. For all points $x \in G'' \setminus E$ we deduce

$$\nabla v_k(x) = \varphi'_k(v(x)) \nabla v(x) = w_k(v(x)) \nabla v(x) \rightarrow \nabla v(x) \quad (k \rightarrow \infty),$$

which holds true a. e. in G'' due to part 2 of our proof. We insert $v = v_k$ into (3) and obtain

$$\int_{G''} (v_k \Delta u + \nabla v_k \cdot \nabla u) dx = - \sum_{j=1}^N \int_{|x-x^{(j)}|=r_j} v_k \frac{\partial u}{\partial \nu_j} d\Omega_j, \quad k \in \mathbb{N}.$$

Then we observe the passage to the limit $k \rightarrow \infty$ and see

$$\begin{aligned} \int_{G''} v(x) \Delta u(x) dx + \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} \int_{G''} (\nabla v_k(x) \cdot \nabla u(x)) dx \\ = - \sum_{j=1}^N \int_{|x-x^{(j)}|=r_j} v(x) \frac{\partial u(x)}{\partial \nu_j} d\Omega_j. \end{aligned} \quad (6)$$

Inserting $v(x) = u(x)$ into (6) and noting that

$$\nabla v_k(x) = w_k(u(x)) \nabla u(x),$$

we see

$$\begin{aligned} \int_{G''} u(x) \Delta u(x) dx + \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} \int_{G''} w_k(u(x)) |\nabla u(x)|^2 dx \\ = - \sum_{j=1}^N \int_{|x-x^{(j)}|=r_j} u(x) \frac{\partial u(x)}{\partial \nu_j} d\Omega_j. \end{aligned} \quad (7)$$

Fatou's theorem now yields

$$\int_{G''} |\nabla u(x)|^2 dx < +\infty \quad \text{and} \quad \int_{G''} |\nabla v(x)|^2 dx < +\infty. \quad (8)$$

On account of

$$\begin{aligned} |\nabla v_k(x) \cdot \nabla u(x)| &= |w_k(v(x))| |\nabla v(x) \cdot \nabla u(x)| \\ &\leq \frac{1}{2} (|\nabla u(x)|^2 + |\nabla v(x)|^2), \quad x \in G'', \end{aligned}$$

we have an integrable majorant for the limit in (6). By Lebesgue's convergence theorem the identity (1) follows.

q.e.d.

We now continue the considerations from § 1 concerning the eigenvalue problem of the n -dimensional oscillation equation: Let $G \subset \mathbb{R}^n$ denote a bounded Dirichlet domain. On the linear space

$$\mathcal{E} := \left\{ u = u(x) \in C^2(G) \cap C^0(\overline{G}) : u|_{\partial G} = 0 \right\}$$

we consider *Weyl's eigenvalue problem*

$$-\Delta u(x) = \lambda u(x), \quad x \in G, \quad \text{with} \quad u \in \mathcal{E} \setminus \{0\} \quad \text{and} \quad \lambda \in \mathbb{R}. \quad (9)$$

Proposition 3. *All eigenvalues λ of (9) have the property $\lambda > 0$.*

Proof: With $u \in \mathcal{E} \setminus \{0\}$ we consider a solution of (9) belonging to the eigenvalue $\lambda \in \mathbb{R}$. Then we infer

$$\int_G |\Delta u(x)| dx = |\lambda| \int_G |u(x)| dx < +\infty.$$

We apply Proposition 1 with $v = u$ and obtain

$$\int_G |\nabla u(x)|^2 dx = - \int_G u(x) \Delta u(x) dx = \lambda \int_G |u(x)|^2 dx$$

or equivalently

$$\lambda = \frac{\int_G |\nabla u(x)|^2 dx}{\int_G |u(x)|^2 dx} > 0.$$

q.e.d.

Remark: The *Rayleigh quotient* appears in the last formula.

We do not mention the case $n = 2$ separately, and utilize Green's function in the dimensions $n = 3, 4, \dots$ as follows:

$$H(x, y) = \frac{1}{(n-2)\omega_n} \frac{1}{|y-x|^{n-2}} + h(x, y), \quad (x, y) \in G \otimes G. \quad (10)$$

A solution u of (9) evidently belongs to the space

$$\mathcal{D} := \left\{ u = u(x) \in C^0(G) : \sup_{x \in G} |u(x)| < +\infty \right\} = C^0(G) \cap L^\infty(G)$$

and satisfies the integral-equation-problem

$$u(x) = \lambda \int_G H(x, y) u(y) dy, \quad x \in G, \quad \text{with } u \in \mathcal{D} \setminus \{0\} \quad \text{and } \lambda \in \mathbb{R}. \quad (11)$$

We deduce the latter statements as in §1 (compare Theorem 3 there), using the Propositions 1 and 2 above. We have shown already the symmetry of Green's function and have controlled the growth condition:

$$\begin{aligned} H &= H(x, y) \in \mathcal{S}_{n-2}(G), \\ 0 &\leq H(x, y) = H(y, x), \quad (x, y) \in G \otimes G. \end{aligned} \quad (12)$$

We now shall prove that a solution u of (11) solves (9) as well.

Proposition 4. *Let the function $u = u(x) \in \mathcal{D}$ be given, and the parameter integral*

$$v(x) := \int_G H(x, y) u(y) dy, \quad x \in G$$

be defined. Then we have the properties $v \in C^0(\overline{G})$ and $v|_{\partial G} = 0$.

Proof: With the aid of the function

$$\Theta(t) = \begin{cases} 0, & 0 \leq t \leq 1 \\ t-1, & 1 \leq t \leq 2 \\ 1, & 2 \leq t \end{cases}$$

we define the continuous integral kernel

$$\begin{aligned} H_\delta(x, y) &:= H(x, y) \Theta\left(\frac{|x-y|}{\delta}\right) \\ &= \Theta\left(\frac{|x-y|}{\delta}\right) \left(\frac{1}{(n-2)\omega_n} |y-x|^{2-n} + h(x, y) \right), \quad \delta > 0. \end{aligned}$$

For all $\delta > 0$ the parameter integral

$$v_\delta(x) := \int_G H_\delta(x, y) u(y) dy, \quad x \in \overline{G},$$

is continuous on $\overline{G}$, and we observe $v_\delta|_{\partial G} = 0$. Furthermore, we have the following inequality for all $x \in G$:

$$\begin{aligned} |v_\delta(x) - v(x)| &\leq \int_G \left| \Theta\left(\frac{|x-y|}{\delta}\right) - 1 \right| |H(x, y)| |u(y)| dy \\ &\leq \int_{y: |y-x| \leq 2\delta} \frac{c}{|y-x|^{n-2}} dy \leq \gamma(\delta) \rightarrow 0 \quad (\delta \downarrow 0). \end{aligned} \quad (13)$$

This implies

$$v_\delta(x) \rightarrow v(x) \quad (\delta \downarrow 0) \quad \text{uniformly in } G$$

and therefore: $v \in C^0(\overline{G})$, $v|_{\partial G} = 0$.

q.e.d.

Proposition 5. *Given a solution u of (11), we infer $u \in C^2(G)$ and the eigenvalue equation*

$$-\Delta u(x) = \lambda u(x), \quad x \in G.$$

Proof: We take an arbitrary point $z \in G$, and then choose a quantity $\varepsilon > 0$ so small that the inclusion

$$K_\varepsilon(z) := \left\{ x \in \mathbb{R}^n : |x - z| \leq \varepsilon \right\} \subset G$$

is valid. From the integral equation (11) we infer

$$\begin{aligned} u(x) &= \lambda \int_{K_\varepsilon(z)} \frac{1}{(n-2)\omega_n} \frac{1}{|y-x|^{n-2}} u(y) dy \\ &\quad + \lambda \int_{G \setminus K_\varepsilon(z)} \frac{1}{(n-2)\omega_n} \frac{1}{|y-x|^{n-2}} u(y) dy + \int_G h(x, y) u(y) dy \\ &= \lambda \int_{K_\varepsilon(z)} \frac{1}{(n-2)\omega_n} \frac{1}{|y-x|^{n-2}} u(y) dy + \psi_{z, \varepsilon}(x), \quad x \in K_\varepsilon^\circ(z). \end{aligned} \quad (14)$$

Here the function $\psi_{z, \varepsilon}(x)$ is harmonic in $K_\varepsilon^\circ(z)$. We can differentiate the relation (14) once (but not twice!) and obtain via the Gaussian integral theorem the relation

$$\begin{aligned}
\nabla u(x) &= \lambda \int_{K_\varepsilon(z)} \frac{1}{(n-2)\omega_n} \left(\nabla_x \frac{1}{|y-x|^{n-2}} \right) u(y) dy + \nabla \psi_{z,\varepsilon}(x) \\
&= -\lambda \int_{K_\varepsilon(z)} \frac{1}{(n-2)\omega_n} \left(\nabla_y \frac{1}{|y-x|^{n-2}} \right) u(y) dy + \nabla \psi_{z,\varepsilon}(x) \\
&= -\lambda \int_{K_\varepsilon(z)} \frac{1}{(n-2)\omega_n} \nabla_y \left(\frac{u(y)}{|y-x|^{n-2}} \right) dy \\
&\quad + \lambda \int_{K_\varepsilon(z)} \frac{1}{(n-2)\omega_n} \frac{\nabla u(y)}{|y-x|^{n-2}} u(y) dy + \nabla \psi_{z,\varepsilon}(x) \\
&= -\lambda \int_{\partial K_\varepsilon(z)} \frac{1}{(n-2)\omega_n} \frac{u(y)}{|y-x|^{n-2}} \nu(y) d\Omega(y) \\
&\quad + \lambda \int_{K_\varepsilon(z)} \frac{1}{(n-2)\omega_n} \frac{\nabla u(y)}{|y-x|^{n-2}} dy + \nabla \psi_{z,\varepsilon}(x)
\end{aligned} \tag{15}$$

for all $x \in K_\varepsilon(z)^\circ$. Here the symbol $\nu(y)$ denotes the exterior normal to the ball $K_\varepsilon(z)$ and $d\Omega(y)$ the surface element on the sphere $\partial K_\varepsilon(z)$. From (15) we infer the statement

$$u \in C^2(G), \tag{16}$$

since the point $z \in G$ could be chosen arbitrarily. We differentiate (15) once more, choose $x = z$, and evaluate the limit $\varepsilon \downarrow 0$. Then we obtain

$$\begin{aligned}
\Delta u(z) &= \lim_{\varepsilon \downarrow 0} \left\{ -\lambda \int_{\partial K_\varepsilon(z)} \frac{1}{(n-2)\omega_n} \left(\nabla_x \frac{u(y)}{|y-x|^{n-2}} \right) \Big|_{x=z} \nu(y) d\Omega(y) \right\} \\
&\quad + \lim_{\varepsilon \downarrow 0} \left\{ \lambda \int_{K_\varepsilon(z)} \frac{1}{(n-2)\omega_n} \left(\nabla_x \frac{\nabla u(y)}{|y-x|^{n-2}} \right) \Big|_{x=z} dy \right\} \\
&= -\lambda u(z) + 0 = -\lambda u(z) \quad \text{for all } z \in G.
\end{aligned} \tag{17}$$

q.e.d.

We summarize our considerations to the following

Proposition 6. *The function u solves the eigenvalue problem (9) if and only if the function u solves the eigenvalue problem (11).*

Theorem 1. (H. Weyl)

On each bounded Dirichlet domain $G \subset \mathbb{R}^n$ with $n = 2, 3, \dots$, the Laplace operator possesses a c.o.n.s. of eigenfunctions $\varphi_k \in \mathcal{E}$, $k = 1, 2, \dots$. This means

$$-\Delta \varphi_k(x) = \lambda_k \varphi_k(x), \quad x \in G, \quad k = 1, 2, \dots, \tag{18}$$

and the eigenvalues have the properties

$$0 < \lambda_1 \leq \lambda_2 \leq \lambda_3 \leq \dots \rightarrow +\infty. \tag{19}$$

Proof: Equivalently to (9) we consider the integral eigenvalue problem (11)

$$\int_G H(x, y) u(y) dy = \mu u(x), \quad x \in G, \quad \mu = \frac{1}{\lambda}$$

with the symmetric weakly singular kernel $H(x, y)$ from (12). The statements of the theorem can now be inferred from § 8, Theorem 1. q.e.d.

Remarks:

1. In the spaces $\mathbb{R}^2$ and $\mathbb{R}^3$, we can even uniformly expand each function $f \in \mathcal{E}$ into the series of eigenfunctions for the Laplace operator.
2. The least eigenvalue λ_1 for the Laplacian on the bounded domain $G \subset \mathbb{R}^n$ satisfies

$$\lambda_1(G) = \inf_{\varphi \in W_0^{1,2}(G) \cap G^0(\overline{G}), \varphi \neq 0} \frac{\int_G |\nabla \varphi(x)|^2 dx}{\int_G |\varphi(x)|^2 dx}. \quad (20)$$

Here we refer the reader to the Sobolev spaces in § 1 and § 2 of Chapter X. From the relation (20) we immediately infer the *monotonicity property of the least eigenvalue*:

$$G \subset G_* \quad \Rightarrow \quad \lambda_1(G) \geq \lambda_1(G_*). \quad (21)$$

With the aid of a regularity theorem for weak solutions of the Laplace equation one proves the *strict monotonicity property*:

$$G \subset \subset G_* \quad \Rightarrow \quad \lambda_1(G) > \lambda_1(G_*). \quad (22)$$

In this context we refer the reader to [CH], Band II, Kapitel VI.

3. Comparing sufficiently regular domains $G \subset \mathbb{R}^n$ with the ball of the same volume $K \subset \mathbb{R}^n$ - which means $|K| = |G|$ - we have the estimate

$$\lambda_1(G) \geq \lambda_1(K). \quad (23)$$

Here, the equality is attained only in the case that G is already a ball in $\mathbb{R}^n$. This *Theorem of Faber and Krahn* rests on the isoperimetric inequality in $\mathbb{R}^n$ and had already been conjectured by Rayleigh in his book *Theory of the Sound*. In the case $n = 2$ we recommend the study of the following paper:

E. Krahn: *Über eine von Rayleigh formulierte Minimaleigenschaft des Kreises*. Mathematische Annalen, Bd. 94 (1924), S. 97-100.

4. If the function $\varphi \in \mathcal{E}$ is a solution of (9) for the eigenvalue $\lambda \in \mathbb{R}$, we infer

$$\lambda = \lambda_1 \quad \Leftrightarrow \quad \varphi(x) \neq 0 \quad \text{for all } x \in G. \quad (24)$$

Therefore, the eigenfunction to the least eigenvalue λ_1 has no zeroes in G .

5. About the eigenfunctions for the higher eigenvalues and their nodal domains almost no results are available (compare [CH]).
6. Endowing the domain $G \subset \mathbb{R}^n$ with the elliptic Riemannian metric

$$ds^2 = \sum_{i,j=1}^n g_{ij}(x) dx_i dx_j,$$

we propose the integral equation method in order to treat the eigenvalue problem of the Laplace-Beltrami operator

$$\Delta = \frac{1}{\sqrt{g(x)}} \sum_{i=1}^n \frac{\partial}{\partial x_i} \left(\sqrt{g(x)} \sum_{j=1}^n g^{ij}(x) \frac{\partial}{\partial x_j} \right) \quad (25)$$

with $((g^{kl})_{kl} = (g_{ij})_{ij}^{-1}$ and $g = \det(g_{ij})$). In this context we need the generalized Green's function for elliptic operators in divergence form which is weakly singular again. Here we refer the reader to our approach in Chapter X, § 9 and § 10 or to the following original paper:

M. Grüter, K. O. Widman: *The Green function for uniformly elliptic equations*. Manuscripta mathematica, Bd. 37 (1982), S. 303-342.

7. Theorems of Faber-Krahn type are valid even for the operators (25). Here we recommend the monographs

G. Polya: *Isoperimetric inequalities*, Princeton University Press, 1944 and

C. Bandle: *Isoperimetric inequalities in Mathematical Physics*, Pitman, 1984.

8. The spectral theory for unbounded operators is presented e.g. in Kapitel IV: *Selbstadjungierte Operatoren im Hilbertraum* of the monograph

H. Triebel: *Höhere Analysis*. Verlag der Wissenschaften, Berlin, 1972.

A simple proof of the spectral theorem for selfadjoint operators has been discovered by

H. Leinfelder: *A geometric proof of the spectral theorem for unbounded selfadjoint operators*. Mathematische Annalen, Bd. 242 (1979), S. 85-96.

§10 Some historical notices to Chapter VIII

The investigation of eigenvalue problems for ordinary differential operators started in 1837; then C.F. Sturm invented his well-known comparison theorem, essential for the stability question of geodesics. C.G. Jacobi (1804–1851) created the general stability theory for one-dimensional variational problems.

In order to study the stability question for parametric minimal surfaces, H.A. Schwarz investigated eigenvalue problems for the two-dimensional Laplacian already in the Festschrift from 1885, dedicated to his academic teacher Karl Weierstrass.

D. Hilbert created the theory of integral equations in the years 1904–1910, solving linear systems of infinitely many equations. This theory may be seen as one of Hilbert's greatest achievements, and it was substantially further developed by his students H. Weyl and E. Schmidt.

We have presented H. Weyl's approach to the eigenvalue problem of the n -dimensional Laplacian via the integral equation method in this chapter. In his famous textbook together with Hilbert, R. Courant solved eigenvalue problems for partial differential equations alternatively by direct variational methods. His student F. Rellich then created a spectral theory for abstract operators in Hilbert spaces, as well as K. Friedrichs.

In the meantime, physicists became intensively interested in eigenvalue problems for partial differential equations; these are situated in the center of *Quantum Mechanics* – evolving in the 1930s. Their source of information were mainly the textbooks *Methoden der Mathematischen Physik I, II* by R. Courant and D. Hilbert.

PORTRAIT OF R. COURANT (1888–1972);
taken from page 240 of the biography by *C. Reid: Hilbert*, Springer-Verlag, Berlin... (1970).



IX

Linear Elliptic Differential Equations

At first, we transform boundary value problems for elliptic differential equations with two independent variables into a Riemann-Hilbert boundary value problem in § 1. The latter can be solved by the integral equation method due to I. N. Vekua in § 2 and § 3. Then, we derive potential-theoretic estimates for the solution of Poisson's equation in § 4. For use in Chapter XII we prove corresponding inequalities for solutions of the inhomogeneous Cauchy-Riemann equation. For elliptic differential equations in n variables we solve the Dirichlet problem by the continuity method in the classical function space $C^{2+\alpha}(\overline{\Omega})$; see § 5 and § 6. The necessary Schauder estimates are completely derived in the last paragraph.

§1 The differential equation

$$\Delta\phi + p(x, y)\phi_x + q(x, y)\phi_y = r(x, y)$$

In the simply connected domain $\Omega \subset \mathbb{C}$ we take the bounded coefficient functions

$$p = p(x, y), \quad q = q(x, y), \quad r = r(x, y) \in C^0(\Omega, \mathbb{R}),$$

and consider the differential operator

$$\mathcal{L} := \Delta + p(x, y)\frac{\partial}{\partial x} + q(x, y)\frac{\partial}{\partial y}. \quad (1)$$

We define the complex-valued function

$$a = a(z) := -\frac{1}{4}(p(x, y) + iq(x, y)), \quad z = x + iy \in \Omega, \quad (2)$$

and remark that

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial z} = \frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{\partial}{\partial x} - i\frac{\partial}{\partial y}\right), \quad \frac{\partial}{\partial \bar{z}} = \frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{\partial}{\partial x} + i\frac{\partial}{\partial y}\right).$$

With arbitrary functions $\phi = \phi(x, y) \in C^2(\Omega, \mathbb{R})$ we calculate

$$\begin{aligned}
 \frac{1}{4}\mathcal{L}\phi(x, y) &= \frac{1}{4}(\Delta\phi(x, y) + p\phi_x + q\phi_y) \\
 &= \phi_{z\bar{z}} + \frac{1}{2}\operatorname{Re}\left\{(p+iq)\frac{1}{2}(\phi_x - i\phi_y)\right\} \\
 &= \phi_{z\bar{z}} - 2\operatorname{Re}\{a(z)\phi_z(z)\} \\
 &= \phi_{z\bar{z}} - a\phi_z - \bar{a}\phi_{\bar{z}} \quad \text{in } \Omega.
 \end{aligned} \tag{3}$$

Here we denote the real and imaginary parts of a complex number z by $\operatorname{Re}z$ and $\operatorname{Im}z$, respectively. Now we consider solutions

$$f_* = f_*(z) \in C^1(\Omega, \mathbb{C} \setminus \{0\})$$

of the differential equation

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial \bar{z}} f_*(z) - a(z)f_*(z) = 0 \quad \text{in } \Omega. \tag{4}$$

These appear in the form

$$f_*(z) = F_*(z) \exp \left\{ \frac{-1}{\pi} \iint_{\Omega} \frac{a(\zeta)}{\zeta - z} d\xi d\eta \right\}, \quad z \in \Omega, \tag{5}$$

with an arbitrary holomorphic function $F_* : \Omega \rightarrow \mathbb{C} \setminus \{0\}$. Furthermore, we have utilized *Cauchy's integral operator*

$$T_{\Omega}[a](z) := \frac{-1}{\pi} \iint_{\Omega} \frac{a(\zeta)}{\zeta - z} d\xi d\eta, \quad z \in \Omega \quad (\zeta = \xi + i\eta) \tag{6}$$

from § 5 in Chapter IV. We now consider the *associate gradient function*

$$f(z) := \frac{2i}{f_*(z)} \phi_z(z), \quad z \in \Omega. \tag{7}$$

With the coefficient function

$$b(z) := -\frac{1}{f_*(z)} \frac{\partial}{\partial z} \bar{f}_*(z) = -\overline{\left(\frac{1}{\bar{f}_*} \frac{\partial}{\partial \bar{z}} f_*(z) \right)}, \quad z \in \Omega, \tag{8}$$

we calculate

$$\begin{aligned}
 \frac{\partial}{\partial \bar{z}} f(z) - b(z)\bar{f}(z) &= \frac{\partial}{\partial \bar{z}} \left(\frac{2i}{f_*(z)} \phi_z(z) \right) + \frac{1}{f_*(z)} \left(\frac{\partial}{\partial z} \bar{f}_*(z) \right) \frac{-2i}{\bar{f}_*(z)} \phi_{\bar{z}}(z) \\
 &= \frac{2i}{f_*} \phi_{z\bar{z}} - \frac{2i}{f_*^2} \left(\frac{\partial}{\partial \bar{z}} f_* \right) \phi_z - \frac{2i}{f_*} \left(\frac{1}{\bar{f}_*} \frac{\partial}{\partial z} \bar{f}_* \right) \phi_{\bar{z}} \\
 &= \frac{2i}{f_*} \left\{ \phi_{z\bar{z}} - a\phi_z - \bar{a}\phi_{\bar{z}} \right\} \\
 &= \frac{i}{2f_*(z)} \mathcal{L}\phi(x, y), \quad z = x + iy \in \Omega.
 \end{aligned} \tag{9}$$

Theorem 1. a) If the function $\phi = \phi(x, y) \in C^2(\Omega)$ satisfies $\mathcal{L}\phi(x, y) = r(x, y)$ in Ω , then its associate gradient function (7) fulfills the following differential equation:

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial \bar{z}} f(z) - b(z)\bar{f}(z) = \frac{i}{2f_*(z)}r(z) =: c(z), \quad z \in \Omega. \quad (10)$$

b) On the other hand, if we start with a solution $f \in C^1(\Omega, \mathbb{C})$ of the equation (10) in the simply connected domain $\Omega \subset \mathbb{C}$, then the real contour integral

$$\phi(x, y) := 2\operatorname{Re} \int_{z_0}^z \frac{1}{2i} f_*(\zeta) f(\zeta) d\zeta, \quad z \in \Omega \quad (11)$$

gives us a solution of the differential equation $\mathcal{L}\phi(x, y) = r(x, y)$ in Ω . Here, the point $z_0 \in \Omega$ is chosen arbitrarily.

Proof: a) This follows from the identity (9).

b) At first, we infer the following differential equation from (8):

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial \bar{z}} f_*(z) + \overline{b(z)} \overline{f_*(z)} = 0, \quad z \in \Omega.$$

Furthermore, the contour integral from (11) is independent of the path chosen: With $G \subset \subset \Omega$ taking an arbitrary normal domain, the Gaussian integral theorem in the complex form yields

$$\begin{aligned} \operatorname{Re} \int_{\partial G} \frac{1}{2i} f_*(\zeta) f(\zeta) d\zeta &= \operatorname{Re} \iint_G \left(f_*(z) f(z) \right)_{\bar{z}} dx dy \\ &= \operatorname{Re} \iint_G \left\{ \left(\frac{\partial}{\partial \bar{z}} f_* \right) f + \left(\frac{\partial}{\partial \bar{z}} f \right) f_* \right\} dx dy \\ &= \operatorname{Re} \iint_G \left\{ -\overline{b(z)} \overline{f_*} f + b(z) \bar{f} f_* + \frac{i}{2} r(z) \right\} dx dy = 0. \end{aligned}$$

Furthermore, we have

$$\phi(z) = \frac{1}{2i} \int_{z_0}^z \left\{ f_*(\zeta) f(\zeta) d\zeta - \overline{f_*(\zeta)} \overline{f(\zeta)} d\bar{\zeta} \right\}, \quad z \in \Omega,$$

which implies

$$\phi_z(z) = \frac{1}{2i} f_*(z) f(z), \quad z \in \Omega. \quad (12)$$

We infer the validity of $\mathcal{L}\phi = r(x, y)$ in Ω from the identity (9).

q.e.d.

Theorem 2. (P. Hartman, A. Wintner)

Let the nonconstant function $\phi = \phi(x, y) \in C^2(\Omega)$ satisfy the homogeneous elliptic differential equation

$$\mathcal{L}\phi(x, y) = 0, \quad (x, y) \in \Omega. \quad (13)$$

Then the gradient of ϕ has, at most, isolated zeros in Ω , and at each zero $z_0 \in \Omega$ we have the asymptotic expansion

$$\phi_z(z_0 + \zeta) = c\zeta^n + o(|\zeta|^n), \quad \zeta \rightarrow 0. \quad (14)$$

Here we used the numbers $n \in \mathbb{N}$, $c = c_1 + ic_2 \in \mathbb{C} \setminus \{0\}$; the symbol $o(|\zeta|^n)$ denotes a function $\psi = \psi(\zeta) : \mathbb{C} \setminus \{0\} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$ with the property

$$\lim_{\substack{\zeta \rightarrow 0 \\ \neq}} \frac{|\psi(\zeta)|}{|\zeta|^n} = 0.$$

Furthermore, the function ϕ reveals the behavior of a saddle point near z_0 , namely

$$\phi(z_0 + re^{i\varphi}) = \phi(z_0) + \frac{2}{n+1} r^{n+1} \left(c_1 \cos(n+1)\varphi - c_2 \sin(n+1)\varphi \right) + o(r^{n+1}) \quad (15)$$

with $r \rightarrow 0+$. Consequently, the function ϕ does not attain a local minimum nor a local maximum at the point z_0 .

Proof: The identity (12) implies

$$\phi_z(z) = \frac{1}{2i} f_*(z) f(z), \quad z \in \Omega.$$

Here, the function f_* is defined by (5) and the function f satisfies the differential equation

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial \bar{z}} f(z) = b(z) \bar{f}(z), \quad z \in \Omega. \quad (16)$$

Consequently, the function f is pseudoholomorphic (compare Chapter IV, § 6), and we obtain the following expansion near a zero z_0 of ϕ_z :

$$\phi_z(z_0 + \zeta) = c\zeta^n + o(|\zeta|^n), \quad \zeta \rightarrow 0.$$

Here we have chosen the numbers $c = c_1 + ic_2 \in \mathbb{C} \setminus \{0\}$ and $n \in \mathbb{N}$. Furthermore, we have

$$\begin{aligned}
 \phi(z_0 + re^{i\varphi}) - \phi(z_0) &= \int_0^r \frac{d}{d\varrho} \phi(z_0 + \varrho e^{i\varphi}) d\varrho \\
 &= \int_0^r \frac{d}{d\varrho} \phi(x_0 + \varrho \cos \varphi, y_0 + \varrho \sin \varphi) d\varrho \\
 &= \int_0^r \left\{ \phi_x(\dots) \cos \varphi + \phi_y(\dots) \sin \varphi \right\} d\varrho \\
 &= 2 \int_0^r \operatorname{Re} \left\{ \phi_z(z_0 + \varrho e^{i\varphi}) e^{i\varphi} \right\} d\varrho.
 \end{aligned}$$

When we insert the asymptotic expansion (14) of ϕ_z , we finally obtain

$$\begin{aligned}
 \phi(z_0 + re^{i\varphi}) - \phi(z_0) &= 2 \int_0^r \operatorname{Re} \left\{ c\varrho^n e^{i(n+1)\varphi} \right\} d\varrho + o(r^{n+1}) \\
 &= 2 \operatorname{Re} \left\{ (c_1 + ic_2)(\cos(n+1)\varphi + i \sin(n+1)\varphi) \right\} \frac{r^{n+1}}{n+1} + o(r^{n+1}) \\
 &= \frac{2}{n+1} \left\{ c_1 \cos(n+1)\varphi - c_2 \sin(n+1)\varphi \right\} r^{n+1} + o(r^{n+1})
 \end{aligned}$$

with $r \rightarrow 0+$.

q.e.d.

Let $\Omega \subset \mathbb{C}$ be a simply connected bounded domain, whose boundary consists of a regular C^2 -curve in the following sense:

$$\partial\Omega : z = \zeta(t) : [0, T] \rightarrow \partial\Omega \in C_T^2(\mathbb{R}, \mathbb{C}) \quad \text{with} \quad |\zeta'(t)| \equiv 1, \quad 0 \leq t \leq T. \quad (17)$$

Here $\zeta'(t)$, $0 \leq t \leq T$ gives us the tangential vector-field to $\partial\Omega$, and we abbreviate

$$C_T^2(\mathbb{R}, \mathbb{C}) := \left\{ g \in C^2(\mathbb{R}, \mathbb{C}) : g \text{ is periodic with the period } T \right\}.$$

Furthermore, the vector-field $\nu(t) := -i\zeta'(t)$, $0 \leq t \leq T$ represents the exterior normal to $\partial\Omega$. Now, we prescribe the continuous unit vector-field

$$\gamma(t) = \alpha(t) + i\beta(t) \in C_T^0(\mathbb{R}, \mathbb{R}^2) \quad \text{with} \quad |\gamma(t)| \equiv 1, \quad t \in \mathbb{R}$$

on the boundary $\partial\Omega$ and the function $\chi = \chi(t) \in C_T^0(\mathbb{R}, \mathbb{R})$.

Then we consider the following *boundary value problem of Poincaré*

$$\begin{aligned}
 \phi &= \phi(x, y) \in C^2(\Omega) \cap C^1(\overline{\Omega}), \\
 \mathcal{L}\phi(x, y) &= r(x, y) \quad \text{in } \Omega, \\
 \phi_x(\zeta(t))\alpha(t) + \phi_y(\zeta(t))\beta(t) &= \chi(t), \quad 0 \leq t \leq T.
 \end{aligned} \tag{18}$$

Remarks:

1. In the special case $\gamma(t) = \nu(t)$, $0 \leq t \leq T$, the condition reduces to *Neumann's boundary condition*

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial \nu} \phi(\zeta(t)) = \chi(t), \quad 0 \leq t \leq T. \quad (19)$$

2. In the special case $\gamma(t) = \zeta'(t)$, $0 \leq t \leq T$, the condition reduces to *Dirichlet's boundary condition*

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t} \phi(\zeta(t)) = \chi(t), \quad 0 \leq t \leq T,$$

and consequently

$$\phi(\zeta(t)) = \phi(\zeta(0)) + \int_0^t \chi(\tau) d\tau, \quad 0 \leq t \leq T.$$

Here we additionally require

$$\int_0^T \chi(\tau) d\tau = 0. \quad (20)$$

The associate gradient function $f(z) = \frac{2i}{f_*(z)} \phi_z(z)$, $z \in \overline{\Omega}$ satisfies

$$\begin{aligned} \chi(t) &= \phi_x(\zeta(t))\alpha(t) + \phi_y(\zeta(t))\beta(t) \\ &= 2\operatorname{Re}\{\phi_z(\zeta(t))\gamma(t)\} \\ &= \operatorname{Re}\{-if_*(z)\gamma(z)f(z)\}\big|_{z=\zeta(t)}, \quad 0 \leq t \leq T. \end{aligned}$$

Introducing the function

$$g(z) := \overline{if_*(z)\gamma(z)}, \quad z \in \partial\Omega, \quad (21)$$

we find the following boundary condition for f :

$$\operatorname{Re}\{\overline{g(\zeta(t))}f(\zeta(t))\} = \chi(t), \quad 0 \leq t \leq T. \quad (22)$$

Together with Theorem 1 we arrive at the following

Theorem 3. *a) If the function ϕ solves the general boundary value problem (18), then the associate gradient function*

$$f = f(z) := \frac{2i}{f_*(z)} \phi_z(z) \in C^1(\Omega) \cap C^0(\overline{\Omega})$$

yields a solution of the Riemann-Hilbert boundary value problem (10), (22).

b) If the complex-valued function $f = f(z) \in C^1(\Omega) \cap C^0(\overline{\Omega})$ solves the Riemann-Hilbert boundary value problem (10), (22), then we obtain a solution of the general boundary value problem (18) by the real contour integral (11).

Now, the Riemann-Hilbert boundary value problem

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\partial}{\partial \bar{z}} f(z) - b(z) \overline{f(z)} &= c(z), & z \in \Omega, \\ \operatorname{Re}\{\bar{g}(z)f(z)\} &= \chi(z), & z \in \partial\Omega, \end{aligned} \quad (23)$$

is invariant with respect to conformal mappings. Applying the Riemann mapping theorem (compare Chapter IV, § 7 and § 8), we shall assume Ω to be the unit disc in the sequel.

§2 The Schwarzian integral formula

On the unit disc $B := \{z = x + iy \in \mathbb{C} : |z| < 1\}$ with the boundary $\partial B = \{e^{i\varphi} : 0 \leq \varphi \leq 2\pi\}$ and the exterior domain $A := \{z \in \mathbb{C} : |z| > 1\}$ we shall solve boundary value problems for holomorphic functions. We begin with the important

Theorem 1. (Plemelj)

Let $F : \partial B \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$ be a Hölder continuous function; that means $\varphi \mapsto F(e^{i\varphi})$ defines a 2π -periodic Hölder continuous function. Then the Cauchy principal values

$$H(z) := \lim_{\varepsilon \rightarrow 0+} \frac{1}{2\pi i} \oint_{\substack{\zeta \in \partial B \\ |\zeta - z| \geq \varepsilon}} \frac{F(\zeta)}{\zeta - z} d\zeta, \quad z \in \partial B$$

represent a continuous function. Furthermore, the function

$$G(z) := \frac{1}{2\pi i} \oint_{\zeta \in \partial B} \frac{F(\zeta)}{\zeta - z} d\zeta, \quad z \in B \cup A$$

reveals the following boundary behavior at the circle line ∂B :

$$\lim_{\substack{z \rightarrow z_0 \\ z \in B}} G(z) = H(z_0) + \frac{1}{2}F(z_0) \quad \text{for all } z_0 \in \partial B \quad (1)$$

and

$$\lim_{\substack{z \rightarrow z_0 \\ z \in A}} G(z) = H(z_0) - \frac{1}{2}F(z_0) \quad \text{for all } z_0 \in \partial B. \quad (2)$$

Remark: The function G can be continuously extended within the disc B and from the exterior A onto the circle line ∂B . However, there G has a jump of the size $F(z_0)$, $z_0 \in \partial B$.

Proof: We show continuity of the Cauchy principal values by arguments from Proposition 3 in Chapter IV, § 4. For a fixed point $z_0 \in \partial B$ we define $\Gamma_\varepsilon := \{z \in \partial B : |z - z_0| > \varepsilon\}$, $S_\varepsilon^- := \{z \in B : |z - z_0| = \varepsilon\}$, and $S_\varepsilon^+ := \{z \in A : |z - z_0| = \varepsilon\}$. Taking an arbitrary point $z \in B \setminus \{0\}$ we deduce

$$\begin{aligned} G(z) &= \frac{1}{2\pi i} \oint_{\partial B} \frac{F(\zeta) - F\left(\frac{z}{|z|}\right)}{\zeta - z} d\zeta + F\left(\frac{z}{|z|}\right) \frac{1}{2\pi i} \oint_{\partial B} \frac{1}{\zeta - z} d\zeta \\ &= \frac{1}{2\pi i} \oint_{\partial B} \frac{F(\zeta) - F\left(\frac{z}{|z|}\right)}{\zeta - z} d\zeta + F\left(\frac{z}{|z|}\right) \frac{1}{2\pi i} \left\{ \int_{\Gamma_\varepsilon} \frac{1}{\zeta - z} d\zeta + \int_{S_\varepsilon^+} \frac{1}{\zeta - z} d\zeta \right\} \end{aligned}$$

for all sufficiently small $\varepsilon > 0$. With $z_0 \in \partial B$ we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} \lim_{\substack{z \rightarrow z_0 \\ z \in B}} G(z) &= \frac{1}{2\pi i} \oint_{\partial B} \frac{F(\zeta) - F(z_0)}{\zeta - z_0} d\zeta \\ &\quad + F(z_0) \frac{1}{2\pi i} \left\{ \int_{\Gamma_\varepsilon} \frac{1}{\zeta - z_0} d\zeta + \int_{S_\varepsilon^+} \frac{1}{\zeta - z_0} d\zeta \right\} \end{aligned}$$

for all $\varepsilon > 0$. The passage to the limit $\varepsilon \rightarrow 0+$ yields

$$\begin{aligned} \lim_{\substack{z \rightarrow z_0 \\ z \in B}} G(z) &= \lim_{\varepsilon \rightarrow 0+} \frac{1}{2\pi i} \left\{ \int_{\Gamma_\varepsilon} \frac{F(\zeta) - F(z_0)}{\zeta - z_0} d\zeta + F(z_0) \int_{\Gamma_\varepsilon} \frac{1}{\zeta - z_0} d\zeta \right\} + \frac{1}{2} F(z_0) \\ &= \lim_{\varepsilon \rightarrow 0+} \left\{ \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{\Gamma_\varepsilon} \frac{F(\zeta)}{\zeta - z_0} d\zeta \right\} + \frac{1}{2} F(z_0) \\ &= H(z_0) + \frac{1}{2} F(z_0), \end{aligned}$$

and we attain (1). By similar calculations we obtain (2), substituting the integrals on S_ε^+ by the corresponding integrals on S_ε^- . q.e.d.

Theorem 2. (Schwarzian integral formula)

Let us consider the Hölder continuous, real-valued function $\phi : \partial B \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$, and let the Schwarzian integral be defined as follows:

$$F(z) := \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_0^{2\pi} \frac{e^{i\varphi} + z}{e^{i\varphi} - z} \phi(e^{i\varphi}) d\varphi, \quad |z| < 1. \quad (3)$$

Then the holomorphic function F can be continuously extended onto the closed unit disc $\overline{B}$. Furthermore, its real part

$$\operatorname{Re} F(z) : \overline{B} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$$

takes on the boundary values ϕ ; more precisely

$$\lim_{\substack{z \rightarrow z_0 \\ z \in B}} \operatorname{Re} F(z) = \phi(z_0) \quad \text{for all } z_0 \in \partial B. \quad (4)$$

Proof:

1. We extend F to the function

$$F(z) := \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_0^{2\pi} \frac{e^{i\varphi} + z}{e^{i\varphi} - z} \phi(e^{i\varphi}) d\varphi, \quad z \in B \cup A,$$

and obtain the *reflection condition*

$$\begin{aligned} \overline{F(z)} &= \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_0^{2\pi} \frac{e^{-i\varphi} + \overline{z}}{e^{-i\varphi} - \overline{z}} \phi(e^{i\varphi}) d\varphi = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_0^{2\pi} \frac{\frac{1}{\overline{z}} + e^{i\varphi}}{\frac{1}{\overline{z}} - e^{i\varphi}} \phi(e^{i\varphi}) d\varphi \\ &= -\frac{1}{2\pi} \int_0^{2\pi} \frac{e^{i\varphi} + \frac{1}{\overline{z}}}{e^{i\varphi} - \frac{1}{\overline{z}}} \phi(e^{i\varphi}) d\varphi = -F\left(\frac{1}{\overline{z}}\right), \quad z \in (B \setminus \{0\}) \cup A. \end{aligned}$$

2. Furthermore, we have the following identity for all $z \in B \cup A$:

$$F(z) = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_0^{2\pi} \frac{e^{i\varphi} + z}{e^{i\varphi} - z} \phi(e^{i\varphi}) d\varphi = \frac{1}{2\pi i} \oint_{\partial B} \frac{\zeta + z}{\zeta - z} \phi(\zeta) \frac{d\zeta}{\zeta}.$$

We observe

$$\frac{z + \zeta}{\zeta(\zeta - z)} = \frac{z - \zeta + 2\zeta}{\zeta(\zeta - z)} = -\frac{1}{\zeta} + \frac{2}{\zeta - z}$$

and calculate

$$\begin{aligned} F(z) &= \frac{1}{2\pi i} \oint_{\partial B} \left(-\frac{1}{\zeta} + \frac{2}{\zeta - z} \right) \phi(\zeta) d\zeta \\ &= -\frac{1}{2\pi i} \oint_{\partial B} \phi(\zeta) \frac{d\zeta}{\zeta} + \frac{1}{\pi i} \oint_{\partial B} \frac{\phi(\zeta)}{\zeta - z} d\zeta \\ &= -\frac{1}{2\pi} \int_0^{2\pi} \phi(e^{i\varphi}) d\varphi + \frac{1}{\pi i} \oint_{\partial B} \frac{\phi(\zeta)}{\zeta - z} d\zeta, \quad z \in B \cup A. \end{aligned}$$

According to the Theorem of Plemelj, the function F can be continuously extended to ∂B , and we see

$$\begin{aligned}\lim_{\substack{z \rightarrow z_0 \\ z \in B}} F(z) &= -\frac{1}{2\pi} \int_0^{2\pi} \phi(e^{i\varphi}) d\varphi + \frac{1}{\pi i} \oint_{\partial B} \frac{\phi(\zeta)}{\zeta - z_0} d\zeta + \phi(z_0), \quad z_0 \in \partial B, \\ \lim_{\substack{z \rightarrow z_0 \\ z \in A}} F(z) &= -\frac{1}{2\pi} \int_0^{2\pi} \phi(e^{i\varphi}) d\varphi + \frac{1}{\pi i} \oint_{\partial B} \frac{\phi(\zeta)}{\zeta - z_0} d\zeta - \phi(z_0), \quad z_0 \in \partial B.\end{aligned}\tag{5}$$

By the integrals $\oint_{\partial B} \dots$ given here, we comprehend the Cauchy principal values according to Theorem 1. Finally, we obtain the following identity for all $z_0 \in \partial B$:

$$\lim_{\substack{z \rightarrow z_0 \\ z \in B}} \operatorname{Re} F(z) = \frac{1}{2} \lim_{\substack{z \rightarrow z_0 \\ z \in B}} [F(z) + \overline{F(z)}] = \frac{1}{2} \lim_{\substack{z \rightarrow z_0 \\ z \in B}} \left[F(z) - F\left(\frac{1}{\bar{z}}\right) \right] = \phi(z_0).$$

q.e.d.

§3 The Riemann-Hilbert boundary value problem

We now consider the following *Riemann-Hilbert boundary value problem*: For the Hölder continuous coefficient function $b = b(z) \in C^0(\overline{B}, \mathbb{C})$ being given, let the function

$$f = f(z) = u(x, y) + iv(x, y) \in C^1(B, \mathbb{C}) \cap C^0(\overline{B}, \mathbb{C})$$

satisfy the homogeneous differential equation

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial \bar{z}} f(z) - b(z) \bar{f}(z) = 0, \quad z \in B.\tag{1}$$

Furthermore, let us take the Hölder continuous directional function

$$a = a(z) = \alpha(x, y) + i\beta(x, y) : \partial B \rightarrow \partial B$$

satisfying

$$\alpha^2(z) + \beta^2(z) = 1 \quad \text{for all } z \in \partial B.$$

The *index* $n \in \mathbb{Z}$ of the *Riemann-Hilbert problem* indicates how often the directional vector-field a winds about the origin 0. Therefore, we assume the representation

$$a(z) = z^n e^{i\phi(z)}, \quad z \in \partial B,\tag{2}$$

with a Hölder continuous function $\phi : \partial B \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$. Furthermore, we prescribe the Hölder continuous function $\chi : \partial B \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ and require the *Riemann-Hilbert boundary condition*

$$\alpha(z)u(z) + \beta(z)v(z) = \operatorname{Re}\left(\overline{a(z)}f(z)\right) = \chi(z), \quad z \in \partial B. \quad (3)$$

We now solve the Riemann-Hilbert boundary value problem (1), (3) for the indices $n \geq -1$ by the integral equation method of I. N. Vekua. Particularly important is the case $n = -1$: According to §1, Theorem 3 we can then solve a mixed boundary value problem for linear elliptic differential equations, especially under Dirichlet and Neumann boundary conditions. We owe to G. Hellwig the fundamental observation: *The solution space for the Riemann-Hilbert problem is interrelated with this index and integral conditions on the right-hand side have to be assumed.*

Based on Theorem 2 from §2, we consider the following function which is continuous on $\overline{B}$ and holomorphic in B :

$$\phi(z) + i\psi(z) = F(z) := \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_0^{2\pi} \frac{e^{i\varphi} + z}{e^{i\varphi} - z} \phi(e^{i\varphi}) d\varphi, \quad |z| < 1. \quad (4)$$

We note that

$$\lim_{\substack{z \in B \\ z \rightarrow z_0}} \phi(z) = \phi(z_0) \quad \text{for all } z_0 \in \partial B. \quad (5)$$

We multiply (3) by $e^{\psi(z)}$, $z \in \partial B$ and equivalently obtain

$$\begin{aligned} \eta(z) &:= e^{\psi(z)}\chi(z) = \operatorname{Re}\left(e^{\psi(z)}e^{-i\phi(z)}\frac{f(z)}{z^n}\right) \\ &= \operatorname{Re}\left(\frac{e^{-iF(z)}f(z)}{z^n}\right) \quad \text{for all } z \in \partial B. \end{aligned} \quad (6)$$

Multiplication of the differential equation (1) by the holomorphic function

$$e^{-iF(z)} = e^{\psi(z)}e^{-i\phi(z)} \neq 0, \quad z \in \overline{B}$$

yields the equivalent differential equation

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial \bar{z}}\left(e^{-iF(z)}f(z)\right) - b(z)e^{-2i\phi(z)}\overline{\left(e^{-iF(z)}f(z)\right)} = 0, \quad z \in B. \quad (7)$$

By the transition $f(z) \mapsto e^{-iF(z)}f(z)$ we obtain the *canonical Riemann-Hilbert boundary condition* from (6):

$$\operatorname{Re}\left(\frac{f(z)}{z^n}\right) = \chi(z), \quad z \in \partial B. \quad (8)$$

Therefore, we have to solve the boundary value problem (1) and (8), which we shall transform into an integral equation problem. We obtain the following *Riemann-Hilbert boundary value problem in the normal form*:

$$\begin{aligned}
f &= f(z) \in C^1(B, \mathbb{C}) \cap C^0(\overline{B}, \mathbb{C}), \\
\frac{\partial}{\partial \bar{z}} f(z) - b(z) \bar{f}(z) &= 0 \quad \text{in } B, \\
\operatorname{Re} \left(\frac{f(z)}{z^n} \right) &= \chi(z) \quad \text{on } \partial B.
\end{aligned} \tag{9}$$

We denote by

$$T_B[g](z) := -\frac{1}{\pi} \iint_B \frac{g(\zeta)}{\zeta - z} d\xi d\eta, \quad z \in B \quad (\zeta = \xi + i\eta)$$

Cauchy's integral operator. For $n = 0, 1, 2, \dots$ we consider the *Riemann-Hilbert operator of order n*

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathbb{V}_n g(z) &:= -\frac{1}{\pi} \iint_B \frac{g(\zeta)}{\zeta - z} d\xi d\eta - \frac{z^{2n+1}}{\pi} \iint_B \frac{\bar{g}(\zeta)}{1 - z\bar{\zeta}} d\xi d\eta \\
&= T_B[g](z) - z^{2n} \left(-\frac{1}{\pi} \iint_B \frac{g(\zeta)}{\zeta - \frac{1}{\bar{z}}} d\xi d\eta \right) \\
&= T_B[g](z) - z^{2n} \left\{ \overline{T_B[g] \left(\frac{1}{\bar{z}} \right)} \right\}, \quad z \in B.
\end{aligned} \tag{10}$$

The substitution

$$\zeta = \frac{1}{\bar{\gamma}}, \quad \gamma = \alpha + i\beta \in A := \overline{\mathbb{C}} \setminus \overline{B}, \quad d\xi d\eta = \frac{1}{|\gamma|^4} d\alpha d\beta$$

yields

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathbb{V}_n g(z) &= T_B[g](z) - \frac{z^{2n+1}}{\pi} \iint_A \frac{\overline{g\left(\frac{1}{\bar{\gamma}}\right)}}{\left(1 - z\frac{1}{\bar{\gamma}}\right) \gamma \bar{\gamma}^2} d\alpha d\beta \\
&= T_B[g](z) - \frac{z^{2n+1}}{\pi} \iint_A \frac{\overline{g\left(\frac{1}{\bar{\zeta}}\right)} \frac{1}{\zeta \bar{\zeta}^2}}{\zeta - z} d\xi d\eta \\
&= T_B[g](z) + z^{2n+1} T_A[\tilde{g}](z), \quad z \in B,
\end{aligned} \tag{11}$$

with

$$\tilde{g}(\zeta) := \frac{1}{\zeta \bar{\zeta}^2} \overline{g\left(\frac{1}{\bar{\zeta}}\right)}, \quad \zeta \in A. \tag{12}$$

We note that

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{\partial}{\partial \bar{z}} \mathbb{V}_n g(z) &= g(z) \quad \text{in } B, \\
\operatorname{Re} \left(\frac{\mathbb{V}_n g(z)}{z^n} \right) &= 0 \quad \text{on } \partial B,
\end{aligned} \tag{13}$$

which follows from (10) immediately. The following Riemann-Hilbert problem

$$\begin{aligned} f &= f(z) \in C^1(B, \mathbb{C}) \cap C^0(\overline{B}, \mathbb{C}), \\ \frac{\partial}{\partial \bar{z}} f(z) &= 0 \quad \text{in } B, \\ \operatorname{Re} \left(\frac{f(z)}{z^n} \right) &= \chi(z) \quad \text{on } \partial B \end{aligned} \quad (14)$$

can be solved explicitly with the aid of the Schwarzian integral:

$$\Phi(z) = \frac{z^n}{2\pi i} \int_{\partial B} \chi(\zeta) \frac{\zeta + z}{\zeta - z} \frac{d\zeta}{\zeta} + i\gamma z^n + \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} \left\{ \alpha_k (z^k - z^{2n-k}) + i\beta_k (z^k + z^{2n-k}) \right\}. \quad (15)$$

Here we have used $2n + 1$ real constants $\alpha_0, \dots, \alpha_{n-1}, \beta_0, \dots, \beta_{n-1}, \gamma$. We can transfer the boundary value problem (9) equivalently into the integral equation

$$f(z) - \mathbb{V}_n[b\bar{f}](z) = \Phi(z), \quad z \in B, \quad (16)$$

with the right-hand side $\Phi(z)$ from (15). The linear integral operator $f \mapsto \mathbb{V}_n[b\bar{f}]$ is completely continuous on the Hilbert space $\mathcal{H} = L^2(B, \mathbb{C})$ since the kernel appearing is weakly singular. Applying Theorem 8 from §6 in Chapter VIII we comprehend: A solution $f \in \mathcal{H}$ of the integral equation (16) belongs to the class $\mathcal{D} := C^0(B, \mathbb{C}) \cap L^\infty(B, \mathbb{C})$.

We need the following

Proposition 1. (Vekua)

Let $n \in \{0, 1, 2, \dots\}$ be given, and $f \in \mathcal{H}$ may solve the integral equation $f - \mathbb{V}_n[b\bar{f}] = 0$. Then we have $f = 0$.

Proof: Let f be a solution of the integral equation $f - \mathbb{V}_n[b\bar{f}] = 0$. This implies

$$f(z) + \frac{1}{\pi} \iint_B \frac{b(\zeta)\bar{f}(\zeta)}{\zeta - z} d\xi d\eta = -\frac{z^{2n+1}}{\pi} \iint_B \frac{\overline{b(\zeta)}f(\zeta)}{1 - z\bar{\zeta}} d\xi d\eta, \quad z \in B. \quad (17)$$

The right-hand side of (17) is holomorphic in B and continuous on $\overline{B}$. The integral on the left-hand side is continuous in the entire Gaussian plane $\mathbb{C}$, vanishes at ∞ , and is holomorphic in the exterior domain $A = \overline{\mathbb{C}} \setminus \overline{B}$. We take $z \in \partial B$, multiply both sides of (17) by

$$\frac{1}{2\pi i} \frac{dz}{z - t}, \quad t \in B,$$

and integrate along ∂B . The Cauchy integral theorem and Cauchy's integral formula yield

$$\frac{1}{2\pi i} \oint_{\partial B} \frac{f(z)}{z-t} dz = -\frac{t^{2n+1}}{\pi} \iint_B \frac{\overline{b(\zeta)}f(\zeta)}{1-t\overline{\zeta}} d\xi d\eta. \quad (18)$$

We now develop both sides into powers of t about the point 0 and see

$$\oint_{\partial B} f(z) e^{-ik\theta} d\theta = 0 \quad \text{for } k = 0, 1, \dots, 2n \quad (19)$$

with $z = e^{i\theta}$. The similarity principle of Bers and Vekua gives us the following representation

$$f(z) = \psi(z) e^{p(z)}, \quad z \in B. \quad (20)$$

Here the function ψ is holomorphic in B , and we define

$$p(z) = -\frac{1}{\pi} \iint_B \left\{ \frac{g(\zeta)}{\zeta - z} - \frac{z \overline{g(\zeta)}}{1 - \overline{\zeta} z} \right\} d\xi d\eta, \quad g = b \frac{\overline{f}}{f}. \quad (21)$$

On account of the equation $\operatorname{Im} p(z) = 0$ on ∂B and (20), we deduce the boundary condition

$$\operatorname{Re} \left(\frac{\psi(z)}{z^n} \right) = 0 \quad \text{on } \partial B \quad (22)$$

for the holomorphic function ψ . This implies

$$\psi(z) = \sum_{k=0}^{2n} c_k z^k, \quad (23)$$

where the complex constants $c_0, c_1, \dots, c_{2n}$ satisfy the following conditions:

$$c_{2n-k} = -\overline{c}_k, \quad k = 0, 1, \dots, n. \quad (24)$$

Therefore, we find that

$$f(z) = \left(\sum_{k=0}^{2n} c_k z^k \right) e^{p(z)}, \quad z \in \overline{B}. \quad (25)$$

Inserting (25) into (19), we infer

$$\sum_{k=0}^{2n} c_k \int_{\partial B} z^k z^{-l} e^{p(z)} d\theta = 0, \quad l = 0, 1, \dots, 2n, \quad (26)$$

and consequently $c_k = 0$ for $k = 0, 1, 2, \dots, 2n$. Here we use that the Gram determinant for the system of linear independent functions

$$z^k e^{\frac{1}{2}p(z)}, \quad k = 0, 1, 2, \dots, 2n$$

satisfying $\operatorname{Im} p(z) = 0$ on ∂B is different from zero. We consequently obtain $f = 0$ from the representation (25).

q.e.d.

Theorem 1. *Given the indices $n = 0, 1, 2, 3, \dots$, the Riemann-Hilbert boundary value problem (9) possesses a $(1+2n)$ -dimensional space of solutions.*

Proof: We use the integral equation (16) and Proposition 1. With the aid of Theorem 8 from §6 in Chapter VIII, we can solve the integral equation for all right-hand sides Φ in (15) within the class of continuous functions. Therefore, we obtain a $(2n+1)$ -dimensional solution space of (9). q.e.d.

We shall now solve the Riemann-Hilbert problem (9) for the index $n = -1$. Taking a solution f of (9) we make a transition to the continuous function

$$g(z) := zf(z), \quad z \in \overline{B}. \quad (27)$$

The latter solves the following Riemann-Hilbert problem for the index 0:

$$\begin{aligned} 0 &= \frac{\partial}{\partial \bar{z}} [zf(z)] - b(z) \frac{z}{\bar{z}} [\overline{zf(z)}] = \frac{\partial}{\partial \bar{z}} g(z) - c(z) \overline{g(z)} \quad \text{in } \dot{B}, \\ \chi(z) &= \operatorname{Re} g(z) \quad \text{on } \partial B. \end{aligned} \quad (28)$$

Here we abbreviate $\dot{B} := B \setminus \{0\}$ and set

$$c(z) := \frac{z}{\bar{z}} b(z), \quad z \in \dot{B}.$$

The function $g(z) = zf(z)$, $z \in \overline{B}$ consequently fulfills the integral equation

$$zf(z) - \mathbb{V}_0[c\bar{z}\bar{f}](z) = \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{\partial B} \chi(\zeta) \frac{\zeta + z}{\zeta - z} \frac{d\zeta}{\zeta} + i\gamma$$

or equivalently

$$zf(z) - \mathbb{V}_0[zb\bar{f}](z) = \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{\partial B} \frac{\chi(\zeta)}{\zeta} d\zeta + \frac{z}{\pi i} \int_{\partial B} \frac{\chi(\zeta)}{\zeta(\zeta - z)} d\zeta + i\gamma, \quad z \in \overline{B}, \quad (29)$$

with $\gamma \in \mathbb{R}$. We now develop

$$\mathbb{V}_0[zg] \Big|_z = -\frac{1}{\pi} \iint_B g(\zeta) d\xi d\eta + z\mathbb{W}[g] \Big|_z, \quad z \in \overline{B}, \quad (30)$$

and define

$$\mathbb{W}[g] \Big|_z := -\frac{1}{\pi} \iint_B \left\{ \frac{g(\zeta)}{\zeta - z} + \frac{\bar{\zeta} \overline{g(\zeta)}}{1 - z\bar{\zeta}} \right\} d\xi d\eta, \quad z \in \overline{B}.$$

In this context we note that

$$\begin{aligned}
& -\frac{1}{\pi} \iint_B g(\zeta) d\xi d\eta - \frac{z}{\pi} \iint_B \left\{ \frac{g(\zeta)}{\zeta - z} + \frac{\overline{\zeta} \overline{g(\zeta)}}{1 - z\overline{\zeta}} \right\} d\xi d\eta \\
& = -\frac{1}{\pi} \iint_B \left\{ \frac{\zeta g(\zeta)}{\zeta - z} + \frac{z\overline{\zeta} \overline{g(\zeta)}}{1 - z\overline{\zeta}} \right\} d\xi d\eta.
\end{aligned}$$

When we insert (30) into (29), the following integral equation is revealed:

$$\begin{aligned}
f(z) - \mathbb{W}[b\overline{f}](z) &= \frac{1}{\pi i} \int_{\partial B} \frac{\chi(\zeta)}{\zeta(\zeta - z)} d\zeta \\
&+ \frac{1}{z} \left\{ i\gamma + \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{\partial B} \frac{\chi(\zeta)}{\zeta} d\zeta - \frac{1}{\pi} \iint_B b(\zeta) \overline{f(\zeta)} d\xi d\eta \right\}. \quad (31)
\end{aligned}$$

In order to obtain a continuous solution of (31), the condition

$$0 = i\gamma + \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{\partial B} \frac{\chi(\zeta)}{\zeta} d\zeta - \frac{1}{\pi} \iint_B b(\zeta) \overline{f(\zeta)} d\xi d\eta \quad (32)$$

has to be fulfilled. Then we have to solve the following integral equation

$$f(z) - \mathbb{W}[b\overline{f}](z) = \frac{1}{\pi i} \int_{\partial B} \frac{\chi(\zeta)}{\zeta(\zeta - z)} d\zeta, \quad z \in \overline{B}. \quad (33)$$

We now consider the integral operator

$$\mathbb{W}[g](z) = -\frac{1}{\pi} \iint_B \left\{ \frac{g(\zeta)}{\zeta - z} + \frac{\overline{g(\zeta)}}{\frac{1}{\zeta} - z} \right\} d\xi d\eta, \quad z \in \overline{B}.$$

With the aid of the substitution

$$\zeta = \frac{1}{\gamma}, \quad \gamma = \alpha + i\beta \in A, \quad d\xi d\eta = \frac{1}{|\gamma|^4} d\alpha d\beta$$

we obtain

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathbb{W}[g](z) &= T_B[g](z) - \frac{1}{\pi} \iint_A \frac{g\left(\frac{1}{\gamma}\right)}{\gamma - z} \frac{1}{\gamma} \frac{1}{\gamma\overline{\gamma}^2} d\alpha d\beta \\
&= T_B[g](z) - \frac{1}{\pi} \iint_A \frac{g\left(\frac{1}{\zeta}\right) \frac{1}{\zeta\overline{\zeta}^2} \frac{1}{\zeta}}{\zeta - z} d\xi d\eta \\
&= T_B[g](z) + T_A\left[\frac{\tilde{g}}{z}\right](z), \quad z \in \overline{B},
\end{aligned} \quad (34)$$

setting

$$\tilde{g}(\zeta) := \frac{1}{\zeta\overline{\zeta}^2} g\left(\frac{1}{\zeta}\right), \quad \zeta \in A. \quad (35)$$

Proposition 2. (Vekua) *Let the function $f \in \mathcal{H}$ be a solution of $f - \mathbb{W}[\overline{bf}] = 0$. Then we have $f = 0$.*

Proof: We define the kernel function

$$K(z, \zeta) := \frac{\overline{\zeta}}{1 - z\overline{\zeta}} \quad \text{for } z, \zeta \in B \quad (36)$$

and calculate

$$K^*(z, \zeta) := \overline{K(\zeta, z)} = \left(\frac{\overline{z}}{1 - \zeta\overline{z}} \right) = \frac{z}{1 - z\overline{\zeta}}. \quad (37)$$

We deduce for arbitrary functions $f, g \in C^0(\overline{B}, \mathbb{C})$:

$$\begin{aligned} & \iint_B \left\{ f(z) \mathbb{W}[g](z) + g(z) \mathbb{V}_0[f](z) \right\} dz \\ &= -\frac{1}{\pi} \iint_B \iint_B \left\{ f(z) \frac{g(\zeta)}{\zeta - z} + g(z) \frac{f(\zeta)}{\zeta - z} \right\} dz d\zeta \\ & \quad - \frac{1}{\pi} \iint_B \iint_B \left\{ f(z) K(z, \zeta) \overline{g(\zeta)} + g(z) \overline{K(\zeta, z)} \overline{f(\zeta)} \right\} dz d\zeta \\ &= -\frac{2}{\pi} \operatorname{Re} \left(\iint_B \iint_B f(z) K(z, \zeta) \overline{g(\zeta)} dz d\zeta \right). \end{aligned} \quad (38)$$

Here we naturally comprehend $dz = dx dy$ and $d\zeta = d\xi d\eta$. By substitution of the functions $f \mapsto b\overline{g}$ and $g \mapsto \overline{bf}$ into the commutator relation (38), we obtain the following identity for arbitrary functions $f, g \in C^0(\overline{B}, \mathbb{C})$:

$$\operatorname{Im} \iint_B \left\{ b(z) \overline{g}(z) \left(f(z) - \mathbb{W}[\overline{bf}](z) \right) + \overline{b(z) f(z)} \left(g(z) - \mathbb{V}_0[b\overline{g}](z) \right) \right\} dx dy = 0. \quad (39)$$

If the function $f \in C^0(\overline{B}, \mathbb{C})$ is a solution of the integral equation $f - \mathbb{W}[\overline{bf}] = 0$, we infer

$$\operatorname{Im} \iint_B \overline{b(z) f(z)} \left(g(z) - \mathbb{V}_0[b\overline{g}](z) \right) dx dy = 0 \quad \text{for all } g \in C^0(\overline{B}, \mathbb{C}). \quad (40)$$

With the aid of Theorem 1, we now determine the solution $g \in C^0(\overline{B}, \mathbb{C})$ of the integral equation for the given right-hand side $ib(z)f(z)$ as follows:

$$g(z) - \mathbb{V}_0[b\overline{g}](z) = ib(z)f(z), \quad z \in \overline{B}.$$

We insert into (40) and arrive at

$$0 = \operatorname{Im} \left\{ i \iint_B |b(z)|^2 |f(z)|^2 dx dy \right\} = \iint_B |b(z)|^2 |f(z)|^2 dx dy. \quad (41)$$

This implies $\overline{b(z)f(z)} \equiv 0$ and consequently

$$f(z) = \mathbb{W}[\overline{bf}](z) \equiv 0 \quad \text{in } B. \quad \text{q.e.d.}$$

Theorem 2. *For the index $n = -1$, the Riemann-Hilbert boundary value problem (9) has a solution if and only if the condition (32) is satisfied.*

Proof: We use Theorem 8 from § 6 in Chapter VIII again together with Proposition 2.

q.e.d.

Remark: For the indices $n = -2, -3, \dots$ as well, we can solve the Riemann-Hilbert problem if and only if $(-n)$ suitable integral conditions are posed. In this context, we refer the reader to the monograph of I. N. Vekua [V], especially Chapter IV, § 7, part 3.

§4 Potential-theoretic estimates

We now refer the reader to the results of Chapter V, § 1 and § 2 about Poisson's differential equation. For the unit ball $B := \{x \in \mathbb{R}^n : |x| < 1\}$ we can explicitly give Green's function as follows:

$$\phi(y; x) = \frac{1}{2\pi} \log \left| \frac{y - x}{1 - \overline{x}y} \right|, \quad y \in \overline{B}, \quad x \in B, \quad \text{if } n = 2 \quad (1)$$

and

$$\phi(y; x) = \frac{1}{(2-n)\omega_n} \left(\frac{1}{|y-x|^{n-2}} - \frac{1}{(1-2(x \cdot y) + |x|^2|y|^2)^{\frac{n-2}{2}}} \right), \quad (2)$$

$$y \in \overline{B}, \quad x \in B, \quad \text{if } n \geq 3.$$

The Poisson integral formula from Theorem 2 in Chapter V, § 2 is our starting point: A solution u of the problem

$$\begin{aligned} u &= u(x) = u(x_1, \dots, x_n) \in C^2(B) \cap C^0(\overline{B}), \\ \Delta u(x) &= f(x), \quad x \in B, \end{aligned} \quad (3)$$

with the right-hand side

$$f = f(x) \in C^0(\overline{B}) \quad (4)$$

satisfies Poisson's integral representation

$$u(x) = \frac{1}{\omega_n} \int_{|y|=1} \frac{|y|^2 - |x|^2}{|y-x|^n} u(y) d\sigma(y) + \int_{|y|\leq 1} \phi(y; x) f(y) dy, \quad x \in B. \quad (5)$$

Question I: For which right-hand sides $f : \overline{B} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ and for which boundary values $u : \partial B \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ can we solve the Dirichlet problem of Poisson's equation?

Question II: Under which conditions can the second derivatives $u_{x_i x_j}(x)$, $x \in B$ be extended continuously onto the closure $\overline{B}$ with $i, j = 1, \dots, n$?

If the function u possesses zero boundary values on ∂B , we only have to consider the singular integral defined on B in (5).

Definition 1. Let $\Omega \subset \mathbb{R}^n$ be a domain, and the parameter $\alpha \in (0, 1)$ is regularly used in the following. Then the continuous function $f : \Omega \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ belongs to the regularity class $C^\alpha(\overline{\Omega})$, if we have a Hölder constant $b \in (0, +\infty)$ satisfying

$$|f(x) - f(y)| \leq b|x - y|^\alpha \quad \text{for all } x, y \in \Omega. \quad (6)$$

Proposition 1. (E. Hopf)

For the dimensions $n = 2, 3, \dots$ let $\Omega \subset \mathbb{R}^n$ be a bounded domain, and we set

$$\Omega \otimes \Omega := \{(x, y) \in \Omega \times \Omega : x \neq y\}.$$

Let the symmetric kernel function

$$\phi(y; x) = \phi(x; y) : \Omega \otimes \Omega \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$$

be given with the growth conditions

$$|\phi(y; x)| \leq \begin{cases} a \log |y - x|, & \text{if } n = 2 \\ a|y - x|^{2-n}, & \text{if } n \geq 3 \end{cases}, \quad (7)$$

and

$$\begin{aligned} |\phi_{x_i}(y; x)| &\leq a|y - x|^{1-n}, \\ |\phi_{x_i x_j}(y; x)| &\leq a|y - x|^{-n}, \quad i, j = 1, \dots, n. \end{aligned} \quad (8)$$

Here $a \in (0, +\infty)$ denotes a constant. Furthermore, the functions

$$\Phi_i(x) := \int_{\Omega} \phi_{x_i}(y; x) dy, \quad x \in \Omega, \quad \text{with } i = 1, \dots, n$$

belong to the class $C^1(\Omega)$. Finally, we consider the following parameter integral associated with the function $f \in C^\alpha(\overline{\Omega})$, namely

$$F(x) := \int_{\Omega} \phi(y; x) f(y) dy, \quad x \in \Omega. \quad (9)$$

Then $F(x) \in C^2(\Omega)$ holds true, and we calculate their derivatives in the form

$$F_{x_i}(x) = \int_{\Omega} \phi_{x_i}(y; x) f(y) dy, \quad x \in \Omega, \quad (10)$$

and

$$F_{x_i x_j}(x) = \int_{\Omega} \phi_{x_i x_j}(y; x) (f(y) - f(x)) dy + f(x) \Phi_{ix_j}(x), \quad x \in \Omega. \quad (11)$$

Proof: The integral (9) converges absolutely due to (7). On account of (8), we can form the difference quotient of $F(x)$ and have a convergent majorizing function. We deduce the identity

$$F_{x_i}(x) = \int_{\Omega} \phi_{x_i}(y; x) f(y) dy, \quad x \in \Omega, \quad \text{for } i = 1, \dots, n$$

by the convergence theorem for improper Riemannian integrals. We are not allowed to directly differentiate this integral once more, since it does not remain absolutely convergent. Therefore, we consider the rearrangement

$$F_{x_i}(x) = \int_{\Omega} \phi_{x_i}(y; x) (f(y) - f(x_0)) dy + f(x_0) \Phi_i(x), \quad x \in \Omega,$$

with the point $x_0 \in \Omega$ being fixed. Now, the difference quotient converges again

$$F_{x_i x_j}(x_0) = \int_{\Omega} \phi_{x_i x_j}(y; x_0) (f(y) - f(x_0)) dy + f(x_0) \Phi_{ix_j}(x_0)$$

for all $x_0 \in \Omega$, since the integral possesses the convergent majorizing function $|y - x_0|^{-n+\alpha}$.

q.e.d.

A very important tool in Potential Theory is the intricate

Proposition 2. (Hopf's estimates)

Let $\Omega \subset \mathbb{R}^n$ be a bounded convex domain, on which the singular kernel

$$K(x, y) : \Omega \otimes \Omega \rightarrow \mathbb{R} \in C^1(\Omega \otimes \Omega)$$

is defined with the growth conditions

$$|K(x, y)| \leq \frac{a}{|x - y|^n},$$

$$\sum_{i=1}^n |K_{x_i}(x, y)| \leq \frac{a}{|x - y|^{n+1}} \quad \text{for } (x, y) \in \Omega \otimes \Omega. \quad (12)$$

Furthermore, let the function $f = f(x) \in C^\alpha(\overline{\Omega})$ be given satisfying

$$|f(x'') - f(x')| \leq b|x'' - x'|^\alpha \quad \text{for all } x', x'' \in \Omega. \quad (13)$$

Here the quantities $a, b \in (0, +\infty)$ and $\alpha \in (0, 1)$ are fixed constants.

Then the parameter integral

$$F(x) := \int_{\Omega} K(x, y)(f(y) - f(x)) dy, \quad x \in \Omega,$$

fulfills the following estimates

$$|F(x)| \leq M_0(\alpha, n, \text{diam}(\Omega))ab, \quad x \in \Omega, \quad (14)$$

and

$$\left| (F(x'') - F(x')) + (f(x'') - f(x')) \cdot \int_{\substack{y \in \Omega \\ |y - x'| \geq 3|x'' - x'|}} K(x', y) dy \right| \leq M_1(\alpha, n)ab|x'' - x'|^\alpha \quad (15)$$

for all $x', x'' \in \Omega$.

Proof:

1. Choosing $x \in \Omega$ we have

$$\begin{aligned} |F(x)| &\leq \int_{\Omega} |K(x, y)| |f(y) - f(x)| dy \\ &\leq ab \int_{\Omega} |y - x|^{-n+\alpha} dy \\ &\leq M_0(\alpha, n, \text{diam}(\Omega))ab. \end{aligned}$$

2. We set $\delta := |x'' - x'|$, choose arbitrary points $x', x'' \in \Omega$, and calculate

$$\begin{aligned}
& F(x'') - F(x') \\
&= \int_{\Omega} K(x'', y)(f(y) - f(x'')) dy - \int_{\Omega} K(x', y)(f(y) - f(x')) dy \\
&= \int_{|y-x'|\leq 3\delta} K(x'', y)(f(y) - f(x'')) dy - \int_{|y-x'|\leq 3\delta} K(x', y)(f(y) - f(x')) dy \\
&\quad + \int_{|y-x'|\geq 3\delta} K(x'', y)(f(y) - f(x'')) dy - \int_{|y-x'|\geq 3\delta} K(x', y)(f(y) - f(x')) dy \\
&= \int_{|y-x'|\leq 3\delta} K(x'', y)(f(y) - f(x'')) dy - \int_{|y-x'|\leq 3\delta} K(x', y)(f(y) - f(x')) dy \\
&\quad + \int_{|y-x'|\geq 3\delta} (K(x'', y) - K(x', y))(f(y) - f(x'')) dy \\
&\quad + (f(x') - f(x'')) \int_{|y-x'|\geq 3\delta} K(x', y) dy \\
&=: I_1 + I_2 + I_3 + (f(x') - f(x'')) \int_{|y-x'|\geq 3\delta} K(x', y) dy.
\end{aligned} \tag{16}$$

This implies

$$\left| (F(x'') - F(x')) + (f(x'') - f(x')) \int_{|y-x'|\geq 3\delta} K(x', y) dy \right| \leq |I_1| + |I_2| + |I_3|. \tag{17}$$

3. Due to (12) we can estimate I_1 as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}
|I_1| &\leq \int_{|y-x'|\leq 3\delta} \frac{a}{|y-x''|^n} b |y-x''|^\alpha dy \leq ab \int_{|y-x''|\leq 4\delta} |y-x''|^{\alpha-n} dy \\
&= ab \int_0^{4\delta} r^{\alpha-n} r^{n-1} \omega_n dr = ab \omega_n \int_0^{4\delta} r^{\alpha-1} dr = \omega_n \frac{ab}{\alpha} [r^\alpha]_0^{4\delta} \\
&= \frac{ab \omega_n}{\alpha} (4\delta)^\alpha = \frac{4^\alpha ab \omega_n}{\alpha} |x'' - x'|^\alpha.
\end{aligned} \tag{18}$$

Correspondingly, we deduce

$$|I_2| \leq \frac{3^\alpha ab \omega_n}{\alpha} |x'' - x'|^\alpha. \tag{19}$$

4. The mean value theorem of differential calculus implies

$$K(x'', y) - K(x', y) = \sum_{i=1}^n K_{x_i}(\zeta, y)(x''_i - x'_i),$$

with an intermediate point $\zeta = x' + t(x'' - x') \in \Omega$ and a parameter $t \in (0, 1)$. From $|y - x'| \geq 3\delta$ we infer $|y - x''| \geq 2\delta$ and therefore

$$|y - \zeta| \geq |y - x''| - |x'' - \zeta| \geq |y - x''| - |x'' - x'| \geq \frac{1}{2}|y - x''|.$$

Noting (12), for all $y \in \Omega$ with $|y - x'| \geq 3\delta$ we obtain the following inequality:

$$\begin{aligned} |K(x'', y) - K(x', y)| &\leq |x'' - x'| \sum_{i=1}^n |K_{x_i}(\zeta, y)| \\ &\leq a\delta \frac{1}{|y - \zeta|^{n+1}} \\ &\leq a\delta 2^{n+1} \frac{1}{|y - x''|^{n+1}}. \end{aligned} \tag{20}$$

Inserting into I_3 we get

$$\begin{aligned} |I_3| &\leq \int_{|y-x'| \geq 3\delta} |K(x'', y) - K(x', y)| |f(y) - f(x'')| dy \\ &\leq 2^{n+1} ab \delta \int_{|y-x'| \geq 3\delta} |y - x''|^{-n-1+\alpha} dy \\ &\leq 2^{n+1} ab \delta \int_{|y-x''| \geq 2\delta} |y - x''|^{-n-1+\alpha} dy \\ &\leq 2^{n+1} ab \delta \int_{2\delta}^{+\infty} r^{-n-1+\alpha} \omega_n r^{n-1} dr \\ &= 2^{n+1} \omega_n ab \delta \int_{2\delta}^{+\infty} r^{\alpha-2} dr \\ &= 2^{n+1} \omega_n ab \delta [r^{\alpha-1}]_{2\delta}^{+\infty} \frac{1}{\alpha-1} \\ &= \frac{2^{n+1}}{1-\alpha} \omega_n ab \delta (2\delta)^{\alpha-1} = \frac{2^{n+\alpha}}{1-\alpha} \omega_n ab \delta^\alpha \end{aligned}$$

and consequently

$$|I_3| \leq \frac{2^{n+\alpha}}{1-\alpha} \omega_n ab |x'' - x'|^\alpha. \tag{21}$$

5. From (17)-(19) and (21) we now obtain a constant $M_1 = M_1(\alpha, n)$, such that the estimate (15) is valid. q.e.d.

For the function $f \in C^\alpha(\overline{\Omega})$ given in the domain $\Omega \subset \mathbb{R}^n$ we define the quantities

$$\begin{aligned} \|f\|_0^\Omega &:= \sup_{x \in \Omega} |f(x)|, \\ \|f\|_{0,\alpha}^\Omega &:= \sup_{\substack{x', x'' \in \Omega \\ x' \neq x''}} \frac{|f(x') - f(x'')|}{|x' - x''|^\alpha}, \\ \|f\|_\alpha^\Omega &:= \|f\|_0^\Omega + \|f\|_{0,\alpha}^\Omega. \end{aligned} \tag{22}$$

By the norm (22) the set $C^\alpha(\overline{\Omega})$ becomes a Banach space. Furthermore, we easily show the following inequality for two functions $f, g \in C^\alpha(\overline{\Omega})$, namely

$$\|fg\|_\alpha^\Omega \leq \|f\|_\alpha^\Omega \|g\|_\alpha^\Omega.$$

In the function space

$$C^{2+\alpha}(\overline{\Omega}) := \left\{ u \in C^2(\overline{\Omega}) : u_{x_i x_j} \in C^\alpha(\overline{\Omega}) \text{ für } i, j = 1, \dots, n \right\}$$

we define the following quantities

$$\begin{aligned} \|u\|_0^\Omega &:= \sup_{x \in \Omega} |u(x)|, \\ \|u\|_1^\Omega &:= \sup_{x \in \Omega} \sum_{i=1}^n |u_{x_i}(x)|, \\ \|u\|_2^\Omega &:= \sup_{x \in \Omega} \sum_{i,j=1}^n |u_{x_i x_j}(x)|, \\ \|u\|_{2+\alpha}^\Omega &:= \|u\|_0^\Omega + \|u\|_1^\Omega + \|u\|_2^\Omega + \|u\|_{2,\alpha}^\Omega. \end{aligned} \tag{23}$$

Here, we have abbreviated

$$\|u\|_{2,\alpha}^\Omega := \sup_{\substack{x', x'' \in \Omega \\ x' \neq x''}} \sum_{i,j=1}^n \frac{|u_{x_i x_j}(x') - u_{x_i x_j}(x'')|}{|x' - x''|^\alpha}.$$

With the aid of the norm (23) the set $C^{2+\alpha}(\overline{\Omega})$ becomes a Banach space. By the symbol

$$C_*^{2+\alpha}(\overline{\Omega}) := \left\{ u \in C^{2+\alpha}(\overline{\Omega}) : u|_{\partial\Omega} = 0 \right\}$$

we denote the closed subspace of $C^{2+\alpha}(\overline{\Omega})$, consisting of the functions with zero boundary values. We now prove the following

Theorem 1. *Let the function $f \in C^\alpha(\overline{B})$ be given. Then the parameter integral*

$$u(x) := \int_{|y|<1} \phi(y; x) f(y) dy, \quad x \in B,$$

belongs to the class $C_^{2+\alpha}(\overline{B})$ and satisfies Poisson's differential equation $\Delta u = f$ in $\overline{B}$. Furthermore, we have the estimate*

$$\|u\|_{2+\alpha}^B \leq C(\alpha, n) \|f\|_\alpha^B \quad (24)$$

with a constant $C(\alpha, n) \in (0, +\infty)$.

Proof:

1. From the representation

$$\phi(y; x) = \frac{-1}{(n-2)\omega_n} \left\{ \frac{1}{|x-y|^{n-2}} - \frac{1}{|y|^{n-2}} \frac{1}{\left|x - \frac{y}{|y|^2}\right|^{n-2}} \right\}, \quad x, y \in B,$$

of Green's function one easily derives

$$\sum_{i=1}^n |\phi_{x_i}(y; x)| \leq \frac{a(n)}{|x-y|^{n-1}}, \quad (25)$$

$$\sum_{i,j=1}^n |\phi_{x_i x_j}(y; x)| \leq \frac{a(n)}{|x-y|^n}, \quad (26)$$

$$\sum_{i,j,k=1}^n |\phi_{x_i x_j x_k}(y; x)| \leq \frac{a(n)}{|x-y|^{n+1}} \quad (27)$$

for all $x, y \in B$ with $x \neq y$; here $a = a(n) \in (0, +\infty)$ is a constant.

2. We consider the function $w(x) := \frac{|x|^2-1}{2n}$, $x \in \overline{B}$, of class $C_*^{2+\alpha}(\overline{B})$, satisfying the differential equation

$$\Delta w(x) = \sum_{i=1}^n w_{x_i x_i}(x) = \frac{1}{2n} \sum_{i=1}^n 2 = 1, \quad x \in \overline{B}.$$

The Poisson integral representation yields

$$\int_B \phi(y; x) dy = \frac{|x|^2-1}{2n}, \quad x \in \overline{B}, \quad (28)$$

with the nonpositive Green's function $\phi(y; x)$. For all $x \in B$ we estimate as follows:

$$|u(x)| = \left| \int_{|y|<1} \phi(y; x) f(y) dy \right| \leq \|f\|_0^B \left| \int_B \phi(y; x) dy \right| \leq \frac{1-|x|^2}{2n} \|f\|_0^B.$$

This implies

$$u(x) = 0 \quad \text{for all } x \in \partial B \quad (29)$$

and

$$\|u\|_0^B \leq \frac{1}{2n} \|f\|_0^B. \quad (30)$$

Noting (25) we can differentiate (28) and obtain the functions

$$\Phi_i(x) := \int_B \phi_{x_i}(y; x) dy = \frac{1}{n} x_i, \quad x \in \overline{B}, \quad \text{for } i = 1, \dots, n \quad (31)$$

of class $C^1(\overline{B})$ with

$$\Phi_{ix_j}(x) = \frac{1}{n} \delta_{ij}, \quad x \in \overline{B}, \quad \text{for } i, j = 1, \dots, n. \quad (32)$$

3. On account of (25) we have

$$u_{x_i}(x) = \int_B \phi_{x_i}(y; x) f(y) dy, \quad x \in B, \quad \text{for } i = 1, \dots, n. \quad (33)$$

This implies the estimate

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{i=1}^n |u_{x_i}(x)| &\leq \|f\|_0^B \int_B \sum_{i=1}^n |\phi_{x_i}(y; x)| dy \\ &\leq \|f\|_0^B \int_B \frac{a(n)}{|y-x|^{n-1}} dy, \quad x \in B, \end{aligned}$$

and consequently

$$\|u\|_1^B \leq c_1(n) \|f\|_0^B. \quad (34)$$

Proposition 1 yields the representation

$$u_{x_i x_j}(x) = \int_B \phi_{x_i x_j}(y; x) (f(y) - f(x)) dy + f(x) \Phi_{ix_j}(x), \quad x \in B \quad (35)$$

for $i, j = 1, \dots, n$. With the aid of (32) we deduce the differential equation

$$\begin{aligned} \Delta u(x) &= \int_B \Delta_x \phi(y; x) (f(y) - f(x)) dy + f(x) \sum_{i=1}^n \phi_{ix_i}(x) \\ &= f(x) \sum_{i=1}^n \frac{1}{n} = f(x), \quad x \in B. \end{aligned} \quad (36)$$

Here we have utilized $\Delta_x \phi(y; x) = 0$. For all $x \in B$ we infer the following estimate from (26):

$$\begin{aligned}
\sum_{i,j=1}^n |u_{x_i x_j}(x)| &\leq \int_B \sum_{i,j=1}^n |\phi_{x_i x_j}(y; x)| |f(y) - f(x)| dy + \|f\|_0^B \\
&\leq \|f\|_{0,\alpha}^B \int_B \frac{a}{|y-x|^n} |y-x|^\alpha dy + \|f\|_0^B \leq c_2(n, \alpha) \|f\|_\alpha^B
\end{aligned}$$

and consequently

$$\|u\|_2^B \leq c_2(n, \alpha) \|f\|_\alpha^B. \quad (37)$$

4. We still have to estimate $\|u\|_{2,\alpha}^B$. The indices $i, j \in \{1, \dots, n\}$ being fixed, we consider the kernel

$$K(x, y) := \phi_{x_i x_j}(y; x) : B \otimes B \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$$

and utilize Hopf's estimate for the function

$$F(x) := \int_B K(x, y) (f(y) - f(x)) dy, \quad x \in B.$$

With the aid of the Gaussian integral theorem we show the uniform boundedness of the Cauchy principal values

$$\left| \int_{y \in B: |y-x| \geq \delta} K(x, y) dy \right| = \left| \int_{\substack{y \in B \\ |y-x| \geq \delta}} \phi_{x_i x_j}(y; x) dy \right| \leq c_3(n), \quad x \in B \quad (38)$$

for $\delta > 0$. For all $x', x'' \in B$ we obtain the estimate

$$\begin{aligned}
& \left| F(x'') - F(x') - (f(x'') - f(x')) \int_{\substack{y \in B \\ |y-x'| \geq 3|x''-x'|}} K(x', y) dy \right| \\
& \leq \left| (F(x'') - F(x')) + (f(x'') - f(x')) \int_{\substack{y \in B \\ |y-x'| \geq 3|x''-x'|}} K(x', y) dy \right| \\
& \leq M_1(\alpha, n) a \|f\|_{0,\alpha}^B |x'' - x'|^\alpha
\end{aligned}$$

and consequently

$$|F(x'') - F(x')| \leq \left\{ c_3(n) + a M_1(\alpha, n) \right\} \|f\|_{0,\alpha}^B |x'' - x'|^\alpha.$$

Therefore, we see

$$\frac{|F(x'') - F(x')|}{|x'' - x'|^\alpha} \leq \tilde{c}_3(n, \alpha) \|f\|_{0,\alpha}^B, \quad x', x'' \in B, \quad x' \neq x''. \quad (39)$$

Taking (35) and (32) into account we deduce

$$\|u\|_{2,\alpha}^B \leq c_4(n, \alpha) \|f\|_{0,\alpha}^B. \quad (40)$$

5. Finally, we infer from (30), (34), (37) and (40) a constant $C(n, \alpha)$, such that

$$\|u\|_{2+\alpha}^B \leq C(n, \alpha) \|f\|_{\alpha}^B$$

is valid.

q.e.d.

For later use in Chapter XII, finally we derive a potential-theoretic estimate of the solutions for the inhomogeneous Cauchy-Riemann equation. The Hölder norms defined in (22) and (23) are naturally transferred to complex-valued functions

$$w = f(z) : B \rightarrow \mathbb{C} \quad (41)$$

on the unit disc $B := \{z = x + iy \in \mathbb{C} : |z| < 1\}$. We consider functions $f \in C^{\alpha}(\overline{B}, \mathbb{C})$ and define the *Riemann-Hilbert operator*

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbb{V}f(z) := & -\frac{1}{\pi} \left\{ \iint_B \frac{f(\zeta)}{\zeta - z} d\xi d\eta + \iint_B \frac{\overline{zf(\zeta)}}{1 - z\overline{\zeta}} d\xi d\eta \right. \\ & \left. - \iint_B \frac{1}{2|\zeta|^2} (\overline{\zeta}f(\zeta) - \zeta\overline{f(\zeta)}) d\xi d\eta \right\}, \quad z \in B, \end{aligned} \quad (42)$$

with $\zeta = \xi + i\eta \in B$.

Theorem 2. *Assuming $f = f(z) \in C^{\alpha}(\overline{B}, \mathbb{C})$ the function $g(z) := \mathbb{V}f(z)$, $z \in B$ solves the uniquely determined Riemann-Hilbert boundary value problem*

$$\begin{aligned} g &= g(z) \in C^1(B, \mathbb{C}) \cap C^0(\overline{B}, \mathbb{C}), \\ \frac{\partial}{\partial \overline{z}} g(z) &= f(z), \quad z \in B, \\ \operatorname{Re} g(z) &= 0, \quad z \in \partial B, \\ \operatorname{Im} g(0) &= 0. \end{aligned} \quad (43)$$

Furthermore, we have $g \in C^{1+\alpha}(\overline{B}, \mathbb{C})$, and there exists a constant $C(\alpha) \in (0, +\infty)$ satisfying

$$\|g\|_{C^{1+\alpha}(\overline{B}, \mathbb{C})} \leq C(\alpha) \|f\|_{C^{\alpha}(\overline{B}, \mathbb{C})}. \quad (44)$$

Proof: By (10) from § 3 one easily realizes that the function $g(z) = \mathbb{V}f(z)$, $z \in B$ solves the boundary value problem (43). Applying the maximum principle for harmonic functions on the real part of the difference of two solutions, we directly see the unique solvability of the problem (43). With the right-hand side $f(z) \equiv 1$, $z \in B$ especially, this boundary value problem yields the solution $g(z) = \overline{z} - z$, $z \in B$. Corresponding to the formula (28) we obtain the identity

$$-\frac{1}{\pi} \left\{ \iint_B \frac{1}{\zeta - z} d\xi d\eta + \iint_B \frac{z}{1 - z\bar{\zeta}} d\xi d\eta - \frac{1}{2} \iint_B \left(\frac{1}{\zeta} - \frac{1}{\bar{\zeta}} \right) d\xi d\eta \right\} = \bar{z} - z \quad (45)$$

for $z \in B$. With the aid of Proposition 3 and Proposition 4 from §5 in Chapter IV we can differentiate the function $g(z) = \mathbb{V}f(z)$ with respect to z and $\bar{z}$. Parallel to the proof of Theorem 1 we attain the a-priori-inequality (44) via the Hopf estimate.

q.e.d.

As a corollary we obtain the

Theorem 3. (Privalov)

To the boundary function $\phi(z) : \partial B \rightarrow \mathbb{R} \in C^{1+\alpha}(\partial B)$ we consider the Schwarzian integral

$$F(z) := \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_0^{2\pi} \frac{e^{i\varphi} + z}{e^{i\varphi} - z} \phi(e^{i\varphi}) d\varphi, \quad |z| < 1.$$

Then we have a constant $\widehat{C}(\alpha) \in (0, +\infty)$ satisfying

$$\|F\|_{C^{1+\alpha}(\overline{B})} \leq \widehat{C}(\alpha) \|\phi\|_{C^{1+\alpha}(\partial B)}. \quad (46)$$

Proof: We compare $F(z)$ with the function

$$G(z) \Big|_{z=re^{i\varphi}} := r^{1+\alpha} \psi(\varphi), \quad 0 \leq r \leq 1, \quad 0 \leq \varphi \leq 2\pi,$$

setting $\psi(\varphi) := \phi(e^{i\varphi})$, $0 \leq \varphi \leq 2\pi$. For all $z \in B \setminus \{0\}$ we calculate

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\partial}{\partial \bar{z}} G(z) \Big|_{z=re^{i\varphi}} &= \frac{1}{2} \left\{ \left(\frac{\partial}{\partial x} + i \frac{\partial}{\partial y} \right) G(z) \right\} \Big|_{z=re^{i\varphi}} \\ &= \frac{e^{i\varphi}}{2} \left(\frac{\partial}{\partial r} + \frac{i}{r} \frac{\partial}{\partial \varphi} \right) G(re^{i\varphi}) \\ &= \frac{e^{i\varphi}}{2} ((1+\alpha)r^\alpha \psi(\varphi) + ir^\alpha \psi'(\varphi)) =: f(z) \Big|_{z=re^{i\varphi}}. \end{aligned}$$

We note that

$$\|f\|_{C^\alpha(\overline{B})} \leq \widetilde{C}(\alpha) \|\phi\|_{C^{1+\alpha}(\partial B)}. \quad (47)$$

Using Theorem 2 from §2, the function $g(z) := G(z) - F(z)$, $z \in B$ solves the boundary value problem (43), and Theorem 2 yields

$$\|G - F\|_{C^{1+\alpha}(\overline{B})} \leq C(\alpha) \|f\|_{C^\alpha(\overline{B})} \leq C(\alpha) \widetilde{C}(\alpha) \|\phi\|_{C^{1+\alpha}(\partial B)}. \quad (48)$$

We finally obtain (46).

q.e.d.

Without requiring boundary conditions, we supplement the following

Theorem 4. *Considering the Cauchy integral operator*

$$T_B[f](z) := -\frac{1}{\pi} \iint_B \frac{f(\zeta)}{\zeta - z} d\xi d\eta, \quad z \in B,$$

we have the estimate

$$\|T_B[f]\|_{C^{1+\alpha}(\overline{B})} \leq C(\alpha) \|f\|_{C^\alpha(\overline{B})}$$

for all $f \in C^\alpha(\overline{B})$ with a constant $C(\alpha) \in (0, \infty)$.

Proof: We remark

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial z} T_B[f](z) = \Pi_B[f](z) := \lim_{\varepsilon \rightarrow 0+} \left\{ -\frac{1}{\pi} \iint_{\substack{\zeta \in B \\ |\zeta - z| > \varepsilon}} \frac{f(\zeta)}{(\zeta - z)^2} d\xi d\eta \right\}, \quad z \in B.$$

Then, we apply the Hopf estimates from Proposition 2 to the Vekua integral operator $\Pi_B[f]$. q.e.d.

§5 Schauder's continuity method

We now follow the arguments in Chapter VI, §1 and define the differential operator

$$\mathcal{L}(u) := \sum_{i,j=1}^n a_{ij}(x) \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x_i \partial x_j} + \sum_{i=1}^n b_i(x) \frac{\partial u}{\partial x_i} + c(x)u(x) = f(x), \quad x \in \Omega.$$

Assumption C₁: The solution $u(x)$ of $\mathcal{L}(u) = f$ belongs to the class $C^{2+\alpha}(\overline{\Omega})$. Furthermore, we have $u(x) = 0$ on $\partial\Omega$.

Assumption C₂: The coefficients $a_{ij}(x)$, $b_i(x)$, $c(x)$ with $i, j = 1, \dots, n$ belong to the regularity class $C^\alpha(\overline{\Omega})$. Furthermore, the matrix $(a_{ij}(x))_{i,j=1,\dots,n}$ is real, symmetric and positive-definite for all points $x \in \overline{\Omega}$.

Assumption C₃: For each point $\xi \in \partial\Omega$ there exists a positive number $\varrho = \varrho(\xi)$ and a function

$$G(x) \in C^{2+\alpha}(\{x \in \mathbb{R}^n : |x - \xi| < \varrho\}, \mathbb{R})$$

satisfying

$$\sum_{i=1}^n G_{x_i}(x)^2 > 0 \quad \text{for } |x - \xi| < \varrho, \quad G(\xi) = 0,$$

such that

$$\Omega \cap \left\{ x \in \mathbb{R}^n : |x - \xi| < \varrho \right\} = \left\{ x \in \mathbb{R}^n : |x - \xi| < \varrho, G(x) < 0 \right\}$$

is valid; this means $\partial\Omega \in C^{2+\alpha}$. Furthermore, $\Omega \subset \mathbb{R}^n$ is a bounded domain.

Assumption C₄: We have $c(x) \leq 0$ for all $x \in \Omega$.

We need the following profound result, which we shall prove in § 7.

Theorem 1. (Schauder's estimates)

Let the assumptions C_1, C_2, C_3 be satisfied. Furthermore, we have

$$\sum_{i,j=1}^n \|a_{ij}\|_{\alpha}^{\Omega} + \sum_{i=1}^n \|b_i\|_{\alpha}^{\Omega} + \|c\|_{\alpha}^{\Omega} \leq H$$

and

$$m^2 \sum_{i=1}^n \lambda_i^2 \leq \sum_{i,j=1}^n a_{ij}(x) \lambda_i \lambda_j \leq M^2 \sum_{i=1}^n \lambda_i^2$$

for all $\lambda = (\lambda_1, \dots, \lambda_n) \in \mathbb{R}^n$, $x \in \overline{\Omega}$ with the constants $H > 0$ and $0 < m \leq M < +\infty$.

Then we can determine a number $\theta = \theta(\alpha, n, m, M, H, \Omega)$ such that

$$\|u\|_1^{\Omega} + \|u\|_2^{\Omega} + \|u\|_{2,\alpha}^{\Omega} \leq \theta (\|u\|_0^{\Omega} + \|f\|_0^{\Omega} + \|f\|_{0,\alpha}^{\Omega}) \quad (1)$$

holds true.

Generalizing Theorem 1 from § 4 we obtain as a corollary the following

Theorem 2. *In addition to the assumptions of Theorem 1 let the condition C_4 be required.*

Then we have a fixed positive number $\theta = \theta(\alpha, n, m, M, H, \Omega)$ such that the following a priori estimate

$$\|u\|_{2+\alpha}^{\Omega} \leq \theta \|f\|_{\alpha}^{\Omega} \quad (2)$$

for all solutions $u \in C^{2+\alpha}(\overline{\Omega})$ of the Dirichlet problem

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{L}(u) &= f && \text{in } \Omega, \\ u &= 0 && \text{on } \partial\Omega \end{aligned} \quad (3)$$

holds true.

Proof: Theorem 1 from § 1 in Chapter VI yields

$$\|u\|_0^{\Omega} \leq \gamma \|f\|_0^{\Omega}$$

with a constant $\gamma = \gamma(\Omega, m, M)$. We combine this inequality with the Schauder estimate and obtain (2).

q.e.d.

We additionally need the following

Assumption C_0 : For all $f \in C^\alpha(\overline{\Omega})$ the partial differential equation $\Delta u = f$ possesses a solution in the regularity class $u \in C_*^{2+\alpha}(\overline{\Omega})$.

Remark: According to Theorem 1 from § 4, the condition (C_0) is satisfied for the unit ball $\Omega = B$. Later we shall show the implication $(C_3) \Rightarrow (C_0)$ and eliminate this assumption.

Theorem 3. (Continuity method)

We require the assumptions C_0 , C_2 , C_3 , C_4 and consider the differential operator $\mathcal{L}$ on the domain Ω .

Then the boundary value problem

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{L}(u) &= f & \text{in } \Omega, \\ u &= 0 & \text{on } \partial\Omega \end{aligned} \tag{4}$$

has exactly one solution $u \in C_*^{2+\alpha}(\overline{\Omega})$ for each right-hand side $f \in C^\alpha(\overline{\Omega})$.

Proof: We take $0 \leq \tau \leq 1$ and define the family of differential operators

$$\mathcal{L}_\tau(u) := \sum_{i,j=1}^n a_{ij}(x, \tau) \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x_i \partial x_j} + \sum_{i=1}^n b_i(x, \tau) \frac{\partial u}{\partial x_i} + c(x, \tau)u$$

with the coefficients

$$\begin{aligned} a_{ij}(x, \tau) &:= \tau a_{ij}(x) + (1 - \tau) \delta_{ij}, & i, j = 1, \dots, n, \\ b_i(x, \tau) &:= \tau b_i(x), & i = 1, \dots, n, \\ c(x, \tau) &:= \tau c(x). \end{aligned}$$

This means, briefly, $\mathcal{L}_\tau = (1 - \tau)\Delta + \tau\mathcal{L}$. According to Theorem 2 we have the following a priori estimate

$$\|u\|_{2+\alpha} \leq \theta \|f\|_\alpha, \quad \tau \in [0, 1], \tag{5}$$

for all solutions of the Dirichlet problem $\mathcal{L}_\tau(u) = f$ in B and $u \in C_*^{2+\alpha}(\overline{\Omega})$. Here we abbreviate $\|u\|_{2+\alpha} := \|u\|_{2+\alpha}^\Omega$ and $\|f\|_\alpha := \|f\|_\alpha^\Omega$ for the fixed domain Ω . We now start with a solution $u = u_{\tau_0} \in C_*^{2+\alpha}(\overline{\Omega})$ of the problem $\mathcal{L}_{\tau_0}(u) = f$ for an arbitrary $\tau_0 \in [0, 1]$. Due to (C_0) , this is possible for $\tau_0 = 0$, and we consider

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{L}_\tau(u) = f &\iff \mathcal{L}_{\tau_0}(u) = \mathcal{M}_\tau(u) + f \\ \text{with } \mathcal{M}_\tau &= (\mathcal{L}_{\tau_0} - \mathcal{L}_\tau)(u) = (\tau - \tau_0)(\Delta - \mathcal{L})(u). \end{aligned} \tag{6}$$

We set $u_0 \equiv 0$ and successively define the approximating sequence $\{u_k\}_{k=0,1,\dots}$ by the prescription

$$\mathcal{L}_{\tau_0}(u_k) = \mathcal{M}_{\tau}(u_{k-1}) + f, \quad k = 1, 2, \dots \quad (7)$$

We start with the statement

$$A_{\tau_0} : \begin{cases} \text{For each } f \in C^\alpha(\overline{\Omega}) \text{ the differential equation} \\ \mathcal{L}_{\tau_0}(u) = f \text{ has a solution } u_{\tau_0} \in C_*^{2+\alpha}(\overline{\Omega}) \end{cases}. \quad (8)$$

Then we shall investigate the convergence of the sequence

$$\{u_k\}_{k=0,1,\dots} \subset C_*^{2+\alpha}(\overline{\Omega})$$

with respect to the $\|\cdot\|_{2+\alpha}$ -norm. Taking an arbitrary $u \in C_*^{2+\alpha}(\overline{\Omega})$ we infer

$$\|\mathcal{M}_{\tau}(u)\|_{\alpha} = |\tau - \tau_0| \|(\Delta - \mathcal{L})u\|_{\alpha} \leq |\tau - \tau_0| \eta(H) \|u\|_{2+\alpha} \quad (9)$$

with a constant $\eta = \eta(H)$. From (7) we deduce

$$\mathcal{L}_{\tau_0}(u_k - u_{k-1}) = \mathcal{M}_{\tau}(u_{k-1} - u_{k-2}), \quad k = 2, 3, \dots \quad (10)$$

The Schauder estimate (5) together with (9) yields the inequality

$$\begin{aligned} \|u_k - u_{k-1}\|_{2+\alpha} &\leq \theta \|\mathcal{M}_{\tau}(u_{k-1} - u_{k-2})\|_{\alpha} \\ &\leq |\tau - \tau_0| \theta \eta(H) \|u_{k-1} - u_{k-2}\|_{2+\alpha}, \quad k = 2, 3, \dots \end{aligned} \quad (11)$$

Choosing $|\tau - \tau_0| \leq \frac{1}{2\theta\eta(H)}$, we deduce

$$\|u_k - u_{k-1}\|_{2+\alpha} \leq \frac{1}{2} \|u_{k-1} - u_{k-2}\|_{2+\alpha}, \quad k = 2, 3, \dots,$$

and

$$\|u_k - u_{k-1}\|_{2+\alpha} \leq \frac{\|u_1\|_{2+\alpha}}{2^{k-1}}, \quad k = 2, 3, \dots$$

This implies

$$\sum_{k=1}^{+\infty} \|u_k - u_{k-1}\|_{2+\alpha} < +\infty.$$

Therefore, the series $\sum_{k=1}^{+\infty} (u_k - u_{k-1})$ converges in the Banach space $C_*^{2+\alpha}(\overline{\Omega})$.

For all τ satisfying $|\tau - \tau_0| \leq \frac{1}{2\theta\eta(H)}$ we have a function $u_{\tau} \in C_*^{2+\alpha}(\overline{\Omega})$ such that $\mathcal{L}_{\tau_0}(u_{\tau}) = \mathcal{M}_{\tau}(u_{\tau}) + f$ holds true, and finally

$$\mathcal{L}_{\tau}(u_{\tau}) = f.$$

Consequently, the statement (A_{τ}) is valid for all $|\tau - \tau_0| \leq \frac{1}{2\theta\eta(H)}$. By the usual continuation process we attain the statement (A_1) after finitely many steps.

q.e.d.

The following profound result will be proved in § 7 as well:

Theorem 4. (Interior Schauder estimates)

The coefficients of the differential operator $\mathcal{L}$ defined on the bounded domain $\Omega \subset \mathbb{R}^n$ satisfy the assumption C_2 . Furthermore, we require the inequalities

$$\sum_{i,j=1}^n \|a_{ij}\|_{\alpha}^{\Omega} + \sum_{i=1}^n \|b_i\|_{\alpha}^{\Omega} + \|c\|_{\alpha}^{\Omega} \leq H$$

and

$$m^2 \sum_{i=1}^n \lambda_i^2 \leq \sum_{i,j=1}^n a_{ij}(x) \lambda_i \lambda_j \leq M^2 \sum_{i=1}^n \lambda_i^2$$

for all $\lambda \in \mathbb{R}^n$ and all $x \in \overline{\Omega}$; with the given constants $H > 0$ and $0 < m \leq M < +\infty$. The function $u = u(x) \in C^{2+\alpha}(\Omega) \cap C^0(\overline{\Omega})$ solves the differential equation

$$\mathcal{L}(u) = f \quad \text{in } \Omega$$

with the right-hand side $f \in C^{\alpha}(\overline{\Omega})$. Finally, we consider the set

$$\Omega_d := \left\{ x \in \Omega : \text{dist}(x, \partial\Omega) > d \right\},$$

where we choose $d > 0$ sufficiently small.

Then we have an a-priori-bound $\kappa = \kappa(\alpha, n, m, M, H, d) > 0$, such that

$$\|u\|_1^{\Omega_d} + \|u\|_2^{\Omega_d} + \|u\|_{2,\alpha}^{\Omega_d} \leq \kappa (\|u\|_0^{\Omega} + \|f\|_0^{\Omega} + \|f\|_{0,\alpha}^{\Omega}) \quad (12)$$

is satisfied.

Remark: The abbreviation $u \in C^{2+\alpha}(\Omega)$ means that the statement $u \in C^{2+\alpha}(\Theta)$ is fulfilled for each compact subset $\Theta \subset \Omega$.

Theorem 5. With the assumptions C_0, C_2, C_3, C_4 we consider the differential operator $\mathcal{L}$ on the domain Ω . Consequently, for all $f \in C^{\alpha}(\overline{\Omega})$ and all continuous functions $g : \partial\Omega \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ the Dirichlet problem

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{L}(u) &= f && \text{in } \Omega, \\ u &= g && \text{on } \partial\Omega \end{aligned} \quad (13)$$

has exactly one solution in the regularity class $C^{2+\alpha}(\Omega) \cap C^0(\overline{\Omega})$.

Proof: We construct a sequence of polynomials $\{g_n\}_{n=1,2,\dots}$, which converge on the boundary $\partial\Omega$ uniformly towards $g(x)$. For each index $n = 1, 2, \dots$ we now solve the problem

$$\begin{aligned} u_n &\in C^{2+\alpha}(\overline{\Omega}), \\ \mathcal{L}(u_n) &= f && \text{in } \Omega, \\ u_n &= g_n && \text{on } \partial\Omega. \end{aligned} \quad (14)$$

With the aid of Theorem 3 we construct a sequence

$$\{v_n\}_{n=1,2,\dots} \subset C_*^{2+\alpha}(\overline{\Omega})$$

satisfying

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{L}(v_n) &= f - \mathcal{L}(g_n) =: f_n \in C^\alpha(\overline{\Omega}) \quad \text{in } \Omega, \\ v_n &= 0 \quad \text{on } \partial\Omega. \end{aligned} \tag{15}$$

Evidently, the functions $u_n := v_n + g_n$ solve the boundary value problems (14) for $n = 1, 2, \dots$. On account of $\mathcal{L}(u_m - u_n) = 0$ in Ω and (C₄) the maximum principle yields

$$\begin{aligned} \|u_n - u_m\|_0^\Omega &\leq \max_{x \in \partial\Omega} |g_n(x) - g_m(x)| \rightarrow 0 \quad (m, n \rightarrow \infty) \\ \|u_n\|_0^\Omega &\leq \text{const}, \quad n = 1, 2, \dots \end{aligned} \tag{16}$$

Choosing $d > 0$ sufficiently small, we obtain the following inequality by the interior Schauder estimate:

$$\begin{aligned} \|u_n - u_m\|_1^{\Omega_d} + \|u_n - u_m\|_2^{\Omega_d} + \|u_n - u_m\|_{2,\alpha}^{\Omega_d} \\ \leq \kappa(d) \|u_n - u_m\|_0^\Omega \rightarrow 0 \quad (m, n \rightarrow \infty). \end{aligned}$$

Setting

$$u(x) := \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} u_n(x), \quad x \in \overline{\Omega},$$

we deduce $u_n \rightarrow u$ ($n \rightarrow \infty$) in $C^{2+\alpha}(\Theta)$ for each compact subset $\Theta \subset \Omega$. Therefore, the function u belongs to the class $C^0(\overline{\Omega}) \cap C^{2+\alpha}(\Omega)$ and represents the unique solution of (13).

q.e.d.

§6 Existence and regularity theorems

At first, we shall eliminate the assumption C₀.

Definition 1. Two bounded domains $\Omega_1, \Omega_2 \subset \mathbb{R}^n$ are $C^{2+\alpha}$ -diffeomorphic, if we have a one-to-one mapping

$$y = y(x) : \overline{\Omega}_1 \rightarrow \overline{\Omega}_2 \in C^{2+\alpha}(\overline{\Omega}_1)$$

with the inverse mapping

$$x = x(y) : \overline{\Omega}_2 \rightarrow \overline{\Omega}_1 \in C^{2+\alpha}(\overline{\Omega}_2)$$

satisfying $\frac{\partial(y_1, \dots, y_n)}{\partial(x_1, \dots, x_n)} \neq 0$ in $\overline{\Omega}_1$. When the set Ω is $C^{2+\alpha}$ -diffeomorphic to the unit ball $B \subset \mathbb{R}^n$, we speak of a $C^{2+\alpha}$ -ball.

We need the following

Theorem 1. (Reconstruction)

In the $C^{2+\alpha}$ -ball $\Omega \subset \mathbb{R}^n$ the coefficients of the differential operator $\mathcal{L}$ fulfill the assumptions C_2 and C_4 .

For all right-hand sides $f \in C^\alpha(\overline{\Omega})$ and all boundary values $g \in C^0(\partial\Omega)$, then there exists a solution $u = u(x)$ of the regularity class $C^{2+\alpha}(\Omega) \cap C^0(\overline{\Omega})$ for the Dirichlet problem

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{L}(u) &= f & \text{in } \Omega, \\ u &= g & \text{on } \partial\Omega. \end{aligned} \tag{1}$$

At a boundary point $\xi \in \partial\Omega$ we define the set $\Omega(\xi, \varrho) := \{x \in \Omega : |x - \xi| < \varrho\}$ with $\varrho > 0$ and additionally require the boundary condition

$$g(x) = 0 \quad \text{for all } x \in \partial\Omega \cap \partial\Omega(\xi, \varrho). \tag{2}$$

In this situation we have

$$u \in C^{2+\alpha}(\overline{\Omega(\xi, r)}) \tag{3}$$

for all sufficiently small $0 < r < \varrho$.

Proof:

1. Since the set Ω is $C^{2+\alpha}$ -diffeomorphic to B , there exists a $C^{2+\alpha}$ -diffeomorphism

$$y = (y_1(x), \dots, y_n(x)) \in C^{2+\alpha}(\overline{\Omega})$$

of $\overline{\Omega}$ onto $\overline{B}$ with the inverse mapping

$$x = (x_1(y), \dots, x_n(y)) \in C^{2+\alpha}(\overline{B}).$$

We define $u(x) = \tilde{u}(y(x))$, $x \in \overline{\Omega}$ and deduce

$$\begin{aligned} u_{x_i} &= \sum_{k=1}^n \tilde{u}_{y_k} \frac{\partial y_k}{\partial x_i}, \\ u_{x_i x_j} &= \sum_{k,l=1}^n \tilde{u}_{y_k y_l} \frac{\partial y_k}{\partial x_i} \frac{\partial y_l}{\partial x_j} + \sum_{k=1}^n \tilde{u}_{y_k} \frac{\partial^2 y_k}{\partial x_i \partial x_j}. \end{aligned}$$

For all $y \in \overline{B}$ we obtain

$$\begin{aligned}
 \mathcal{L}(u)|_{x=x(y)} &= \left\{ \sum_{i,j=1}^n a_{ij} u_{x_i x_j} + \sum_{i=1}^n b_i u_{x_i} + cu \right\} \Big|_{x=x(y)} \\
 &= \sum_{k,l=1}^n \left(\sum_{i,j=1}^n a_{ij} \frac{\partial y_k}{\partial x_i} \frac{\partial y_l}{\partial x_j} \right) \Big|_{x=x(y)} \tilde{u}_{y_k y_l} \\
 &\quad + \sum_{k=1}^n \left(\sum_{i,j=1}^n a_{ij} \frac{\partial^2 y_k}{\partial x_i \partial x_j} + \sum_{i=1}^n b_i \frac{\partial y_k}{\partial x_i} \right) \Big|_{x=x(y)} \tilde{u}_{y_k} \quad (4) \\
 &\quad + c|_{x=x(y)} \tilde{u}(y) \\
 &=: \sum_{k,l=1}^n \tilde{a}_{kl}(y) \tilde{u}_{y_k y_l} + \sum_{k=1}^n \tilde{b}_k(y) \tilde{u}_{y_k} + \tilde{c}(y) \tilde{u}.
 \end{aligned}$$

Due to Theorem 1 from § 4 the set B satisfies the assumption C_0 , and we can solve the Dirichlet problem (1) in B with the aid of Theorem 5 from § 5. On account of the behavior for the coefficients in (4) with respect to the given transformations, namely

$$\begin{aligned}
 \tilde{a}_{kl}(y), \tilde{b}_k(y) &\in C^\alpha(\overline{B}), \quad k, l = 1, \dots, n, \\
 0 \geq \tilde{c}(y) &\in C^\alpha(\overline{B}),
 \end{aligned} \quad (5)$$

we can solve the Dirichlet problem (1) on the domain Ω as well.

2. We control the construction in the proof of Theorem 5 from § 5 as follows: With the additional assumption (2) we approximate the function g uniformly on $\partial\Omega$ by a sequence $\{g_k\}_{k=1,2,\dots}$ of polynomials. We use the mollifier

$$\Theta(t) := \begin{cases} 0, & 0 \leq t \leq \frac{1}{2} \\ 1, & 1 \leq t < +\infty \end{cases} \in C^\infty(\mathbb{R})$$

and consider the functions

$$\tilde{g}_k(x) := g_k(x) \Theta\left(\frac{|x - \xi|}{\varrho}\right), \quad x \in \mathbb{R}^n, \quad k = 1, 2, \dots$$

We observe the uniform convergence $\tilde{g}_k(x) \rightarrow g(x)$ ($k \rightarrow \infty$) on $\partial\Omega$ and the fact that

$$\tilde{g}_k(x) = 0 \quad \text{for all } x \in \mathbb{R}^n \quad \text{with } |x - \xi| \leq \frac{1}{2}\varrho. \quad (6)$$

Following the proof of Theorem 5 in § 5 we obtain the solutions

$$\begin{aligned}
 u_k &\in C^{2+\alpha}(\overline{\Omega}), \\
 \mathcal{L}(u_k) &= f \quad \text{in } \Omega, \\
 u_k &= \tilde{g}_k \quad \text{on } \partial\Omega.
 \end{aligned} \quad (7)$$

We utilize an interpolation of the Schauder estimates from the Theorems 1 and 4 in § 5 (compare § 7) and obtain the following estimate for arbitrary $0 < r < \frac{1}{2}\varrho$

$$\begin{aligned} \|u_k - u_l\|_1^{\Omega(\xi, r)} + \|u_k - u_l\|_2^{\Omega(\xi, r)} + \|u_k - u_l\|_{2, \alpha}^{\Omega(\xi, r)} \\ \leq \vartheta \|u_k - u_l\|_0^{\Omega(\xi, \frac{1}{2}\varrho)} \leq \vartheta \|u_k - u_l\|_0^{\Omega} \quad (8) \\ \leq \vartheta \sup_{x \in \partial\Omega} |\tilde{g}_k(x) - \tilde{g}_l(x)| \rightarrow 0 \quad (k, l \rightarrow \infty). \end{aligned}$$

This implies

$$u(x) := \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} u_k(x) \in C^{2+\alpha}(\Omega) \cap C^0(\overline{\Omega}) \cap C^{2+\alpha}(\overline{\Omega(\xi, r)})$$

for all $0 < r < \frac{1}{2}\varrho$, and the function u evidently solves the boundary value problem (1).

q.e.d.

Proposition 1. *Let the function $G = G(x) \in C^{2+\alpha}(\{x \in \mathbb{R}^n : |x - \xi| < \varrho\})$ with $\varrho > 0$ be given, which satisfies $G(\xi) = 0$ and*

$$\nabla G(x) \neq 0 \quad \text{for all } x \quad \text{with } |x - \xi| < \varrho.$$

Then we have a $C^{2+\alpha}$ -ball

$$D \subset \left\{ x \in \mathbb{R}^n : |x - \xi| < \varrho, G(x) < 0 \right\},$$

whose boundary fulfills

$$\partial D \cap \{x \in \mathbb{R}^n : |x - \xi| < \varrho'\} = \{x \in \mathbb{R}^n : |x - \xi| < \varrho', G(x) = 0\} \quad (9)$$

for a number $0 < \varrho' < \varrho$.

Proof: Exercise.

Theorem 2. (Existence theorem for linear elliptic equations)

With the assumptions C_2, C_3, C_4 let the differential operator $\mathcal{L}$ be defined on the domain Ω . Furthermore, we take the functions $f \in C^\alpha(\overline{\Omega})$ and $g : \partial\Omega \rightarrow \mathbb{R} \in C^0(\partial\Omega)$ arbitrarily.

Then the Dirichlet problem

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{L}(u) &= f && \text{in } \Omega, \\ u &= g && \text{on } \partial\Omega \end{aligned} \quad (10)$$

possesses exactly one solution in the regularity class $C^{2+\alpha}(\Omega) \cap C^0(\overline{\Omega})$.

Proof: We only have to eliminate the assumption C_0 in Theorem 5 from §5. With $f \in C^\alpha(\overline{\Omega})$, we consider the following function in the dimensions $n \geq 3$

$$v(x) := \frac{1}{(2-n)\omega_n} \int_{\Omega} \frac{f(y)}{|y-x|^{n-2}} dy, \quad x \in \Omega. \quad (11)$$

We derive

$$\begin{aligned} v &\in C^2(\Omega) \cap C^0(\overline{\Omega}), \\ \Delta v(x) &= f(x) \quad \text{in } \Omega. \end{aligned} \quad (12)$$

Following Chapter V, §3 we solve the boundary value problem by Perron's method

$$\begin{aligned} w &\in C^2(\Omega) \cap C^0(\overline{\Omega}), \\ \Delta w &= 0 \quad \text{in } \Omega, \\ w &= -v \quad \text{on } \partial\Omega. \end{aligned} \quad (13)$$

Then the function $u(x) := v(x) + w(x)$, $x \in \overline{\Omega}$ represents a solution of the boundary value problem

$$\begin{aligned} \Delta u(x) &= f(x) \quad \text{in } \Omega, \\ u &= 0 \quad \text{on } \partial\Omega. \end{aligned} \quad (14)$$

With the aid of Theorem 1 we locally reconstruct the solution u in the interior and at the boundary via Proposition 1 as well. Then we obtain $u \in C^{2+\alpha}(\overline{\Omega})$. In this context we refer the reader to the subsequent proofs of Theorem 3 and Theorem 4.

q.e.d.

Theorem 3. (Inner regularity)

Let the differential operator $\mathcal{L}$ be defined on the domain $\Omega \subset \mathbb{R}^n$ with the assumption C_2 , and let the right-hand side $f \in C^\alpha(\Omega)$ be given.

Then a solution $u \in C^2(\Omega)$ of the differential equation

$$\mathcal{L}(u) = f \quad \text{in } \Omega \quad (15)$$

belongs to the regularity class $C^{2+\alpha}(\Omega)$.

Proof: On account of (15) the function $u \in C^2(\Omega)$ satisfies the differential equation

$$\tilde{\mathcal{L}}(u) = \tilde{f} \quad \text{in } \Omega$$

abbreviating

$$\begin{aligned} \tilde{\mathcal{L}}(u) &:= \sum_{i,j=1}^n a_{ij}(x) \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x_i \partial x_j} + \sum_{i=1}^n b_i(x) \frac{\partial u}{\partial x_i}, \\ \tilde{f} &:= f - cu \in C^\alpha(\Omega). \end{aligned}$$

Since the operator $\tilde{\mathcal{L}}$ satisfies the assumption C_4 , we can reconstruct the solution with the aid of Theorem 1 as follows: We take $\xi \in \Omega$, choose $\varrho > 0$ sufficiently small, and consider the set $D := \{x \in \mathbb{R}^n : |x - \xi| < \varrho\} \subset \subset \Omega$. There exists a solution $v \in C^{2+\alpha}(D) \cap C^0(\overline{D})$ of the problem

$$\begin{aligned} \tilde{\mathcal{L}}(v) &= \tilde{f} && \text{in } D, \\ v &= u && \text{on } \partial D. \end{aligned} \tag{16}$$

The maximum principle implies $u(x) \equiv v(x)$ in D , and consequently $u \in C^{2+\alpha}(D)$.

q.e.d.

With the assumption C_3 we comprehend the set $\partial\Omega$ as an $(n-1)$ -dimensional manifold of regularity class $C^{2+\alpha}$. Therefore, we naturally define boundary functions

$$g : \partial\Omega \rightarrow \mathbb{R} \in C^{2+\alpha}(\partial\Omega).$$

We easily show the following

Proposition 2. *Let the function $g : \partial\Omega \rightarrow \mathbb{R} \in C^{2+\alpha}(\partial\Omega)$ be prescribed. For each $\xi \in \partial\Omega$ and each sufficiently small $\varepsilon > 0$, then there exists a function*

$$h = h(x_1, \dots, x_n) \in C^{2+\alpha}(\{x \in \mathbb{R}^n : |x - \xi| \leq \varepsilon\})$$

satisfying $h = g$ on $\partial\Omega \cap \{x \in \mathbb{R}^n : |x - \xi| \leq \varepsilon\}$.

Theorem 4. (Boundary regularity)

With the assumptions C_2 and C_3 , let the differential operator $\mathcal{L}$ be defined on the domain $\Omega \subset \mathbb{R}^n$. For the boundary distribution $g \in C^{2+\alpha}(\partial\Omega)$ and the right-hand side $f \in C^\alpha(\overline{\Omega})$ let the solution u of the following Dirichlet problem be given:

$$\begin{aligned} u &\in C^2(\Omega) \cap C^0(\overline{\Omega}), \\ \mathcal{L}(u) &= f && \text{in } \Omega, \\ u &= g && \text{on } \partial\Omega. \end{aligned} \tag{17}$$

Then we have $u = u(x) \in C^{2+\alpha}(\overline{\Omega})$.

Proof:

1. We choose the point $\xi = (\xi_1, \dots, \xi_n) \in \partial\Omega$ arbitrarily. Furthermore, we consider the function $w(x) := e^{-\mu(x_1 - \xi_1)^2} > 0$ in $\mathbb{R}^n$ with the parameter $\mu > 0$ to be fixed later. On account of

$$\begin{aligned} w_{x_1} &= -2\mu(x_1 - \xi_1)e^{-\mu(x_1 - \xi_1)^2}, \\ w_{x_1 x_1} &= \{4\mu^2(x_1 - \xi_1)^2 - 2\mu\}e^{-\mu(x_1 - \xi_1)^2} \end{aligned}$$

we obtain

$$\mathcal{L}w|_{x=\xi} = -2\mu a_{11}(\xi) + c(\xi) < 0$$

taking $\mu > 0$ sufficiently large. Now we choose $\varrho > 0$ sufficiently small and observe

$$\mathcal{L}w(x) \leq 0, \quad w(x) > 0 \quad \text{for all } x \in \overline{\Omega} \quad \text{with } |x - \xi| \leq \varrho. \quad (18)$$

By the product device $u(x) = w(x)v(x)$ presented in § 1 from Chapter VI, we find that the differential operator relevant for v satisfies the assumption C_4 . Consequently, we additionally require the assumption (C_4) in the sequel.

2. Due to Proposition 2 we can locally extend $g : \partial\Omega \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ about the point ξ to a function

$$h \in C^{2+\alpha}(\{x \in \mathbb{R}^n : |x - \xi| \leq \varrho\}).$$

Now we choose a $C^{2+\alpha}$ -ball D described in Proposition 1, such that

$$D \subset \{x \in \mathbb{R}^n : |x - \xi| \leq \varrho\} \cap \Omega$$

holds true. The function $v(x) := u(x) - h(x) \in C^{2+\alpha}(D) \cap C^0(\overline{D})$ satisfies the problem

$$\mathcal{L}v(x) = \mathcal{L}u(x) - \mathcal{L}h(x) = f(x) - \mathcal{L}h(x), \quad x \in D. \quad (19)$$

Here the right-hand side of (19) belongs to the class $C^\alpha(\overline{D})$. Furthermore, $v(x) = 0$ for all $x \in \partial\Omega(\xi, \varrho') \cap \partial\Omega$ holds true with a sufficiently small $\varrho' > 0$. In this context we defined

$$\Omega(\xi, \varrho') := \{x \in \Omega : |x - \xi| < \varrho'\}.$$

Reconstructing the solution v on $\overline{D}$ with the aid of Theorem 1 as in the proof of Theorem 3, we obtain

$$v \in C^{2+\alpha}(\overline{\Omega(\xi, \varrho'')}) \quad (20)$$

for a parameter $0 < \varrho'' < \varrho' < \varrho$. The point $\xi \in \partial\Omega$ chosen arbitrarily, we finally see

$$u \in C^{2+\alpha}(\overline{\Omega}).$$

q.e.d.

Remark: Since the proof of Theorem 4 is of a local nature as described in Theorem 1, we could prove a local regularity result as well.

We now attain the goal of our theory, namely

Theorem 5. (Fundamental theorem for elliptic differential operators)

With the assumptions C_2 and C_3 let the differential operator $\mathcal{L}$ be defined on the domain Ω , and we require the condition:

The homogeneous problem $\mathcal{L}(u) = 0$ in Ω , $u = 0$ on $\partial\Omega$, $u \in C^2(\overline{\Omega})$ (21)
admits only the trivial solution $u \equiv 0$.

For all functions $f \in C^\alpha(\overline{\Omega})$ and $g \in C^{2+\alpha}(\partial\Omega)$ given, then the boundary value problem

$$\begin{aligned} u &\in C^{2+\alpha}(\overline{\Omega}), \\ \mathcal{L}(u) &= f \quad \text{in } \Omega, \\ u &= g \quad \text{on } \partial\Omega \end{aligned} \quad (22)$$

possesses exactly one solution.

Proof: We consider the reduced differential operator

$$\mathcal{L}_0(u) := \sum_{i,j=1}^n a_{ij}(x) \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x_i \partial x_j} + \sum_{i=1}^n b_i(x) \frac{\partial u}{\partial x_i}$$

and solve the following Dirichlet problem with the aid of Theorems 2 and 4:

$$\begin{aligned} u_0 &\in C^{2+\alpha}(\overline{\Omega}), \\ \mathcal{L}_0(u_0) &= 0 \quad \text{in } \Omega, \\ u_0 &= g \quad \text{on } \partial\Omega. \end{aligned} \quad (23)$$

The right-hand side $f \in C^\alpha(\overline{\Omega})$ given, we solve the problem (22) by the ansatz

$$u = u_0 + u_1, \quad u_1 \in C_*^{2+\alpha}(\overline{\Omega}). \quad (24)$$

For the function u_1 we find the condition

$$\begin{aligned} f &= \mathcal{L}(u) = \mathcal{L}(u_0 + u_1) = \mathcal{L}_0(u_0 + u_1) + c(u_0 + u_1) \\ &= \mathcal{L}_0(u_0) + \mathcal{L}_0(u_1) + cu_0 + cu_1 = \mathcal{L}_0(u_1) + cu_0 + cu_1 \end{aligned}$$

or equivalently

$$u_1 + \mathcal{L}_0^{-1}(cu_1) = \mathcal{L}_0^{-1}(f) - \mathcal{L}_0^{-1}(cu_0) = \tilde{f} \in C_*^{2+\alpha}(\overline{\Omega}). \quad (25)$$

We consider the Banach space

$$\mathcal{B} := \left\{ u : \overline{\Omega} \rightarrow \mathbb{R} \in C^2(\overline{\Omega}) : u = 0 \text{ on } \partial\Omega \right\}$$

with the norm

$$\|u\| := \|u\|_0^\Omega + \|u\|_1^\Omega + \|u\|_2^\Omega, \quad u \in \mathcal{B}.$$

Now we introduce the linear operator

$$K(u) := -\mathcal{L}_0^{-1}[c(x)u(x)], \quad u \in \mathcal{B}. \quad (26)$$

The Schauder estimate yields

$$\begin{aligned} \|K(u)\| &\leq \|K(u)\|_{2+\alpha}^\Omega = \|\mathcal{L}_0^{-1}[c(x)u(x)]\|_{2+\alpha}^\Omega \leq \vartheta \|cu\|_\alpha^\Omega \\ &\leq \vartheta \|c\|_\alpha^\Omega \|u\| = \tilde{\vartheta} \|u\|, \quad u \in \mathcal{B}. \end{aligned} \quad (27)$$

Consequently, the linear operator K is bounded on the Banach space $\mathcal{B}$ and even is completely continuous, due to the theorem of Arzelà-Ascoli. On account of (21) the homogeneous equation

$$u + \mathcal{L}_0^{-1}(cu) = 0, \quad u \in \mathcal{B}, \quad (28)$$

admits only the trivial solution $u \equiv 0$. We apply the Theorem of F. Riesz from Chapter VII, § 4 and obtain exactly one solution of the operator equation

$$u - K(u) = \tilde{f}, \quad u \in \mathcal{B}, \quad (29)$$

for each right-hand side $\tilde{f} \in \mathcal{B}$. With the aid of Theorem 4 we obtain the desired function

$$u_1 \in C_*^{2+\alpha}(\overline{\Omega})$$

satisfying (25). Therefore, the function $u = u_0 + u_1$ solves the Dirichlet problem (22). q.e.d.

§7 The Schauder estimates

For $\xi \in \mathbb{R}^n$ and $R > 0$ given, we consider the set

$$B = B(\xi, R) := \left\{ x = (x_1, \dots, x_n) \in \mathbb{R}^n : |x - \xi| < R, x_n > 0 \right\}.$$

With $x = (x_1, \dots, x_n)$ we set $x^* = (x_1, \dots, x_{n-1}, -x_n)$. We abbreviate

$$E := \left\{ x \in \mathbb{R}^n : x_n = 0 \right\},$$

and for $n \geq 3$ we define Green's function on the half-space $x_n > 0$

$$\phi(x, y) := \frac{1}{(n-2)\omega_n} \left(\frac{1}{|y-x|^{n-2}} - \frac{1}{|y-x^*|^{n-2}} \right).$$

Evidently, we have $\phi(x, y) = 0$ for all $y \in E$. We now define the class of functions

$$C_*^{2+\alpha}(\overline{B}) := \left\{ u \in C^{2+\alpha}(\overline{B(\xi, R)}) : u(x) = 0 \text{ for all } x \in \partial B(\xi, R) \cap E \right\}.$$

Proposition 1. *Let the function $u \in C_*^{2+\alpha}(\overline{B})$ be given, then we have the following identity for all $x \in B$:*

$$u(x) = \int_{\substack{|y-\xi|=R \\ y_n \geq 0}} \left(\phi(x, y) \frac{\partial u}{\partial \nu}(y) - u(y) \frac{\partial \phi(x, y)}{\partial \nu} \right) d\sigma(y) - \int_{\substack{|y-\xi| \leq R \\ y_n \geq 0}} \phi(x, y) \Delta u(y) dy.$$

Proof: At first, the Gaussian integral theorem yields

$$\begin{aligned} & \int_{\substack{B(\xi, R) \\ |y-x| > \varepsilon}} \left(\phi(x, y) \Delta u(y) - u(y) \Delta_y \phi(x, y) \right) d\sigma(y) \\ &= \int_{\partial B} \left(\phi(x, y) \frac{\partial u}{\partial \nu} - u(y) \frac{\partial \phi}{\partial \nu} \right) d\sigma(y) \\ &+ \int_{|y-x|=\varepsilon} \left(\phi(x, y) \frac{\partial u}{\partial \nu} - u(y) \frac{\partial \phi}{\partial \nu} \right) d\sigma(y) \end{aligned}$$

for all $\varepsilon > 0$ and $x \in B$. We note that $u \in C_*^{2+\alpha}(\overline{B})$ and consider the limit process $\varepsilon \downarrow 0$

$$u(x) = \int_{\substack{|y-\xi|=R \\ y_n \geq 0}} \left(\phi \frac{\partial u}{\partial \nu} - u \frac{\partial \phi}{\partial \nu} \right) d\sigma(y) - \int_{\substack{|y-\xi| < R \\ y_n > 0}} \phi(x, y) \Delta u(y) dy. \quad \text{q.e.d.}$$

Remarks:

1. It is important that u vanishes on a plane portion of the boundary. A contraction with $\xi \in E$ and $R \downarrow 0$ transfers this part into itself. Very important in the sequel are half-balls.
2. With Green's function for the half-ball $B = B(\xi, R)$ and $\xi \in E$ at our disposal, we could directly derive potential-theoretic estimates extending to the boundary $\partial B \cap E$ as in § 4.
3. In order to construct Green's function for the half-ball, we have to solve the Dirichlet problem for the ball by Poisson's integral formula. However, we do not yet know of the latter solution whether their derivatives are continuous in $\overline{B}$.

Proposition 2. *The function $u \in C_*^{2+\alpha}(\overline{B})$ may satisfy Poisson's differential equation $\Delta u = f$ in B with $f \in C^\alpha(\overline{B})$. Then, we have the following equations for $x \in B$ and $i, j = 1, \dots, n$:*

$$\begin{aligned} u_{x_i x_j}(x) &= \int_{\substack{|y-\xi|=R \\ y_n \geq 0}} \left(\phi_{x_i x_j}(x, y) \frac{\partial u}{\partial \nu}(y) - u(y) \frac{\partial \phi_{x_i x_j}(x, y)}{\partial \nu} \right) d\sigma(y) \\ &- f(x) \psi_{x_i x_j}(x, R) - \int_B \phi_{x_i x_j}(x, y) (f(y) - f(x)) dy. \end{aligned}$$

Here, we define

$$\psi(x, R) := \int_{\substack{|y-\xi|=R \\ y_n \geq 0}} \left(\phi(x, y) \frac{\partial(\frac{1}{2}y_n^2)}{\partial\nu} - \frac{1}{2}y_n^2 \frac{\partial\phi}{\partial\nu}(x, y) \right) d\sigma(y) - \frac{1}{2}x_n^2.$$

Proof: From the integral representation of Proposition 1 we can easily differentiate the surface integral twice. The questionable volume integral

$$F(x) = \int_B \phi(x, y) f(y) dy, \quad x \in B,$$

can be directly differentiated only once:

$$F_{x_i}(x) = \int_B \phi_{x_i}(x, y) f(y) dy, \quad x \in B \quad \text{for } i = 1, \dots, n.$$

We apply Proposition 1 and insert the function $u(x) := \frac{1}{2}x_n^2$ with $u(x) = 0$ for $x \in E$ and $\Delta u(x) = 1$ in $\mathbb{R}^n$. This implies

$$\begin{aligned} \int_B \phi(x, y) dy &= \int_{\substack{|y-\xi|=R \\ y_n \geq 0}} \left(\phi(x, y) \frac{\partial(\frac{1}{2}y_n^2)}{\partial\nu} - \frac{1}{2}y_n^2 \frac{\partial\phi}{\partial\nu}(x, y) \right) d\sigma(y) - \frac{1}{2}x_n^2 \\ &= \psi(x, R), \quad x \in B. \end{aligned}$$

Therefore, the function

$$\Phi_i(x) := \int_B \phi_{x_i}(x, y) dy = \psi_{x_i}(x, R), \quad x \in B,$$

belongs to the class $C^1(B)$, and Proposition 1 from § 4 due to E. Hopf yields

$$F_{x_i x_j}(x) = \int_B \phi_{x_i x_j}(x, y) (f(y) - f(x)) dy + f(x) \psi_{x_i x_j}(x, R), \quad x \in B$$

for $i, j = 1, \dots, n$.

q.e.d.

Proposition 3. *The function $u = u(x) \in C_*^{2+\alpha}(\overline{B(\xi, 1)})$ may satisfy the partial differential equation $\Delta u(x) = f(x)$ in $B(\xi, 1)$ with the right-hand side $f \in C^\alpha(\overline{B})$. Then, we have a constant $C = C(n, \alpha)$, such that the inequality*

$$\|u\|_2^{B(\xi, \frac{1}{2})} + \|u\|_{2, \alpha}^{B(\xi, \frac{1}{2})} \leq C(\alpha, n) \left(\|u\|_0^{B(\xi, 1)} + \|u\|_1^{B(\xi, 1)} + \|f\|_0^{B(\xi, 1)} + \|f\|_{0, \alpha}^{B(\xi, 1)} \right)$$

holds true.

Proof: The indices $i, j \in \{1, \dots, n\}$ being fixed, we consider the functions

$$g(x) := \int_{\substack{|y-\xi|=1 \\ y_n \geq 0}} \left(\phi_{x_i x_j}(x, y) \frac{\partial u}{\partial \nu}(y) - u(y) \frac{\partial \phi_{x_i x_j}}{\partial \nu}(x, y) \right) d\sigma(y),$$

$$h(x) := f(x) \psi_{x_i x_j}(x, 1),$$

$$F(x) := \int_{B(\xi, 1)} \phi_{x_i x_j}(x, y) (f(y) - f(x)) dy, \quad x \in B(\xi, 1).$$

The Proposition 2 yields

$$u_{x_i x_j}(x) = g(x) - h(x) - F(x), \quad x \in B(\xi, 1). \quad (1)$$

At first, we deduce

$$\|g\|_0^{B(\xi, \frac{1}{2})} + \|g\|_{0, \alpha}^{B(\xi, \frac{1}{2})} \leq C_1(\alpha, n) \left(\|u\|_0^{B(\xi, 1)} + \|u\|_1^{B(\xi, 1)} \right). \quad (2)$$

Furthermore, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \|h\|_0^{B(\xi, \frac{1}{2})} + \|h\|_{0, \alpha}^{B(\xi, \frac{1}{2})} &= \|h\|_{\alpha}^{B(\xi, \frac{1}{2})} = \|f \cdot \psi_{x_i x_j}(\cdot, 1)\|_{\alpha}^{B(\xi, \frac{1}{2})} \\ &\leq \|\psi_{x_i x_j}(\cdot, 1)\|_{\alpha}^{B(\xi, \frac{1}{2})} \|f\|_{\alpha}^{B(\xi, \frac{1}{2})} \\ &\leq C_2(\alpha, n) \left(\|f\|_0^{B(\xi, 1)} + \|f\|_{0, \alpha}^{B(\xi, 1)} \right). \end{aligned} \quad (3)$$

We utilize Proposition 2 from §4 in order to estimate $F(x)$ and obtain

$$|F(x)| \leq C_3(\alpha, n) \|f\|_{0, \alpha}^{B(\xi, 1)}, \quad x \in B(\xi, 1). \quad (4)$$

Furthermore, the estimate of E.Hopf yields

$$\begin{aligned} &\left| F(x'') - F(x') + (f(x'') - f(x')) \int_{\substack{y \in B(\xi, 1) \\ |y-x'| \geq 3|x''-x'|}} \phi_{x_i x_j}(x', y) dy \right| \\ &\leq C_4(\alpha, n) \|f\|_{0, \alpha}^{B(\xi, 1)} |x'' - x'|^{\alpha} \quad \text{for all } x', x'' \in B(\xi, 1). \end{aligned} \quad (5)$$

With the aid of the Gaussian integral theorem we show the uniform boundedness of the Cauchy principal values:

$$\left| \int_{\substack{y \in B(\xi, 1) \\ |y-x'| \geq \delta}} \phi_{x_i x_j}(x', y) dy \right| \leq C_5 \quad \text{for all } x' \in B(\xi, \frac{1}{2}) \text{ and } \delta > 0. \quad (6)$$

Together with (5) we see

$$|F(x'') - F(x')| \leq \{C_4(\alpha, n) + C_5\} \|f\|_{0,\alpha}^{B(\xi,1)} |x'' - x'|^\alpha$$

$$\text{for all } x \in B\left(\xi, \frac{1}{2}\right) \text{ and } x'' \in B(\xi, 1). \quad (7)$$

The inequalities (4) and (7) now imply

$$\|F\|_0^{B(\xi, \frac{1}{2})} + \|F\|_{0,\alpha}^{B(\xi, \frac{1}{2})} \leq \{C_3(\alpha, n) + C_4(\alpha, n) + C_5\} \|f\|_{0,\alpha}^{B(\xi,1)}. \quad (8)$$

From (1)-(3) and (8) we obtain the inequality

$$\begin{aligned} & \|u_{x_i x_j}\|_0^{B(\xi, \frac{1}{2})} + \|u_{x_i x_j}\|_{0,\alpha}^{B(\xi, \frac{1}{2})} \\ & \leq \tilde{C}(\alpha, n) \left\{ \|u\|_0^{B(\xi,1)} + \|u\|_1^{B(\xi,1)} + \|f\|_0^{B(\xi,1)} + \|f\|_{0,\alpha}^{B(\xi,1)} \right\} \end{aligned}$$

for $i, j = 1, \dots, n$, which gives us the desired estimate. q.e.d.

By means of a scaling argument we now show the following

Theorem 1. *Let $u = u(x) \in C_*^{2+\alpha}(\overline{B(\xi, R)})$ with $\xi \in \mathbb{R}^n$ and $R > 0$ be a solution of Poisson's equation $\Delta u(x) = f(x)$, $x \in B(\xi, R)$. Then, we have the estimates*

$$\|u\|_2^{B(\xi, \frac{1}{2}R)} \leq C(\alpha, n) \left(\frac{\|u\|_0^{B(\xi, R)}}{R^2} + \frac{\|u\|_1^{B(\xi, R)}}{R} + \frac{\|f\|_0^{B(\xi, R)}}{1} + R^\alpha \|f\|_{0,\alpha}^{B(\xi, R)} \right)$$

and

$$\|u\|_{2,\alpha}^{B(\xi, \frac{1}{2}R)} \leq C(\alpha, n) \left(\frac{\|u\|_0^{B(\xi, R)}}{R^{2+\alpha}} + \frac{\|u\|_1^{B(\xi, R)}}{R^{1+\alpha}} + \frac{\|f\|_0^{B(\xi, R)}}{R^\alpha} + \|f\|_{0,\alpha}^{B(\xi, R)} \right).$$

Proof: We apply Proposition 3 to the function $v(y) := u(Ry)$, $y \in B(\frac{\xi}{R}, 1)$, of class $C_*^{2+\alpha}(\overline{B(\frac{\xi}{R}, 1)})$ and obtain

$$\begin{aligned} & \|v\|_2^{B(\frac{\xi}{R}, \frac{1}{2})} + \|v\|_{2,\alpha}^{B(\frac{\xi}{R}, \frac{1}{2})} \\ & \leq C(\alpha, n) \left\{ \|v\|_0^{B(\frac{\xi}{R}, 1)} + \|v\|_1^{B(\frac{\xi}{R}, 1)} + \|g\|_0^{B(\frac{\xi}{R}, 1)} + \|g\|_{0,\alpha}^{B(\frac{\xi}{R}, 1)} \right\}. \end{aligned} \quad (9)$$

Furthermore, we calculate

$$\begin{aligned} v_{y_i}(y) &= R u_{x_i}(Ry), & i &= 1, \dots, n, \\ v_{y_i y_k}(y) &= R^2 u_{x_i x_k}(Ry), & i, k &= 1, \dots, n, \\ \Delta v(y) &= R^2 f(Ry) =: g(y), & y &\in B\left(\frac{\xi}{R}, 1\right) \end{aligned}$$

and note that

$$\|v\|_l^{B(\frac{\xi}{R}, 1)} = R^l \|u\|_l^{B(\xi, R)}, \quad \|v\|_l^{B(\frac{\xi}{R}, \frac{1}{2})} = R^l \|u\|_l^{B(\xi, \frac{R}{2})}, \quad l = 0, 1, 2.$$

Finally, we use the identities

$$\begin{aligned} \|v\|_{2, \alpha}^{B(\frac{\xi}{R}, \frac{1}{2})} &= R^{2+\alpha} \|u\|_{2, \alpha}^{B(\xi, \frac{R}{2})}, \\ \|g\|_0^{B(\frac{\xi}{R}, 1)} &= R^2 \|f\|_0^{B(\xi, R)}, \\ \|g\|_{0, \alpha}^{B(\frac{\xi}{R}, 1)} &= R^{2+\alpha} \|f\|_{0, \alpha}^{B(\xi, R)}. \end{aligned}$$

From (9) we infer the inequality

$$\begin{aligned} &R^2 \|u\|_2^{B(\xi, \frac{R}{2})} + R^{2+\alpha} \|u\|_{2, \alpha}^{B(\xi, \frac{R}{2})} \\ &\leq C(\alpha, n) \left\{ \|u\|_0^{B(\xi, R)} + R \|u\|_1^{B(\xi, R)} + R^2 \|f\|_0^{B(\xi, R)} + R^{2+\alpha} \|f\|_{0, \alpha}^{B(\xi, R)} \right\}. \end{aligned}$$

This relation implies the estimates stated above. q.e.d.

We now present the transition to elliptic differential operators with constant coefficients and prove the preparatory

Proposition 4. *Let $A = (a_{ij})_{i,j=1,\dots,n}$ be a real, symmetric, positive-definite matrix satisfying*

$$m^2 \sum_{i=1}^n \xi_i^2 \leq \sum_{i,j=1}^n a_{ij} \xi_i \xi_j \leq M^2 \sum_{i=1}^n \xi_i^2 \quad \text{for all } \xi = (\xi_1, \dots, \xi_n) \in \mathbb{R}^n$$

with the constants $0 < m \leq M < +\infty$.

Then we have a real matrix $T = (t_{ij})_{i,j=1,\dots,n}$ with the entries $t_{nj} = 0$ for $j = 1, \dots, n-1$ and $t_{nn} > 0$, such that

$$T \circ A \circ T^* = E$$

holds true. Furthermore, the following dilation estimates

$$M^{-1}|x| \leq |Tx| \leq m^{-1}|x|, \quad x \in \mathbb{R}^n$$

and

$$m|y| \leq |T^{-1}y| \leq M|y|, \quad y \in \mathbb{R}^n$$

are valid.

Proof: Since A is a real, symmetric matrix, there exists an orthogonal matrix B with $B \circ B^* = E = B^* \circ B$, such that

$$B \circ A \circ B^* = A =: \text{diag}(\lambda_1, \dots, \lambda_n)$$

is transformed into a diagonal matrix with the eigenvalues $\lambda_i \in [m^2, M^2]$ for $i = 1, \dots, n$. We multiply this equation from the left- and the right-hand side by the matrix

$$\Lambda^{-1/2} := \text{diag}(\lambda_1^{-1/2}, \dots, \lambda_n^{-1/2}).$$

With $C := \Lambda^{-1/2} \circ B$ we obtain the identity

$$E = \Lambda^{-1/2} \circ B \circ A \circ B^* \circ (\Lambda^{-1/2})^* = C \circ A \circ C^*.$$

The multiplication of this equation by an arbitrary orthogonal matrix D yields the following identity with $T := D \circ C$:

$$E = D \circ C \circ A \circ C^* \circ D^* = T \circ A \circ T^*.$$

We now choose D in such a way that the conditions $t_{nj} = 0$ ($j = 1, \dots, n-1$) and $t_{nn} > 0$ are fulfilled. We remark the relation

$$T = D \circ \Lambda^{-1/2} \circ B$$

with the orthogonal matrices B and D , and the diagonal matrix $\Lambda^{-1/2}$ with the elements $\lambda_i^{-1/2} \in [M^{-1}, m^{-1}]$ for $i = 1, \dots, n$. This representation gives us the estimate

$$M^{-1}|x| \leq |Tx| \leq m^{-1}|x|, \quad x \in \mathbb{R}^n.$$

Setting $x = T^{-1}y$ we obtain the second dilation estimate

$$M^{-1}|T^{-1}y| \leq |y| \leq m^{-1}|T^{-1}y|, \quad y \in \mathbb{R}^n. \quad \text{q.e.d.}$$

Theorem 2. *The real, symmetric matrix $A = (a_{ij})_{i,j=1,\dots,n}$ may satisfy the condition*

$$m^2 \sum_{i=1}^n \xi_i^2 \leq \sum_{i,j=1}^n a_{ij} \xi_i \xi_j \leq M^2 \sum_{i=1}^n \xi_i^2, \quad \xi \in \mathbb{R}^n,$$

with the constants $0 < m \leq M < +\infty$. The function $u = u(x) \in C_*^{2+\alpha}(\overline{B(\xi, R)})$ may solve the partial differential equation

$$L(u)|_x := \sum_{i,j=1}^n a_{ij} \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x_i \partial x_j}(x) = f(x), \quad x \in B(\xi, R).$$

Then, we have a constant $C = C(\alpha, n, m, M) \in (0, +\infty)$, such that the relations

$$\|u\|_2^{B(\xi, \frac{m}{M} \frac{R}{2})} \leq C \left(\|f\|_0^{B(\xi, R)} + R^\alpha \|f\|_{0,\alpha}^{B(\xi, R)} + \frac{\|u\|_0^{B(\xi, R)}}{R^2} + \frac{\|u\|_1^{B(\xi, R)}}{R} \right)$$

and

$$\|u\|_{2,\alpha}^{B(\xi, \frac{m}{M} \frac{R}{2})} \leq C \left(\frac{\|f\|_0^{B(\xi, R)}}{R^\alpha} + \|f\|_{0,\alpha}^{B(\xi, R)} + \frac{\|u\|_0^{B(\xi, R)}}{R^{2+\alpha}} + \frac{\|u\|_1^{B(\xi, R)}}{R^{1+\alpha}} \right)$$

hold true.

Proof: The matrix A given, we use the transformation $y = Tx$ according to Proposition 4. On account of $y_n = t_{nn}x_n$ we have

$$T: \begin{cases} \{x \in \mathbb{R}^n : x_n = 0\} \leftrightarrow \{y \in \mathbb{R}^n : y_n = 0\}, \\ \{x \in \mathbb{R}^n : x_n > 0\} \leftrightarrow \{y \in \mathbb{R}^n : y_n > 0\}. \end{cases}$$

Furthermore, the following inclusions are valid

$$T\left(B\left(\xi, \frac{m}{2M}R\right)\right) \subset B\left(T\xi, \frac{R}{2M}\right), \quad (10)$$

$$B\left(T\xi, \frac{R}{M}\right) \subset T(B(\xi, R)). \quad (11)$$

Starting with $y \in T(B(\xi, \frac{m}{2M}R))$, we see

$$|T^{-1}(y - T\xi)| = |T^{-1}y - \xi| < \frac{m}{2M}R.$$

Proposition 4 then implies

$$m|y - T\xi| \leq |T^{-1}(y - T\xi)| < \frac{m}{2M}R \quad \text{or equivalently} \quad |y - T\xi| < \frac{R}{2M}.$$

This means $y \in B(T\xi, \frac{R}{2M})$, and (10) is proved.

Starting with $y \in B(T\xi, \frac{R}{M})$, that means $|y - T\xi| < \frac{R}{M}$, Proposition 4 yields the inequality

$$|T^{-1}y - \xi| = |T^{-1}(y - T\xi)| \leq M|y - T\xi| < R.$$

Therefore, $T^{-1}y \in B(\xi, R)$ and $y \in T(B(\xi, R))$ hold true. Now (11) is proved as well.

We consider the function $v(y) := u(T^{-1}y)$ of class $C_*^{2+\alpha}(T(\overline{B(\xi, R)}))$ and consequently $u(x) = v(Tx)$ of class $C_*^{2+\alpha}(B(\xi, R))$. Noting that

$$u_{x_i} = \sum_{k=1}^n v_{y_k} t_{ki}, \quad u_{x_i x_j} = \sum_{k,l=1}^n v_{y_k y_l} t_{ki} t_{lj} \quad \text{for } i, j = 1, \dots, n$$

we deduce

$$\begin{aligned} L(u)|_x &= \sum_{i,j=1}^n a_{ij} \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x_i \partial x_j}(x) = \sum_{k,l=1}^n \left(\sum_{i,j=1}^n a_{ij} t_{ki} t_{lj} \right) v_{y_k y_l} \Big|_{Tx} \\ &= \sum_{k,l=1}^n \delta_{kl} v_{y_k y_l} \Big|_{Tx} = \sum_{k=1}^n v_{y_k y_k} \Big|_{Tx} = \Delta v(Tx) \end{aligned}$$

for all $x \in B(\xi, R)$. Consequently, we obtain

$$\Delta v(y) = g(y), \quad y \in T(B(\xi, R)), \quad \text{with } g(y) := f(T^{-1}y). \quad (12)$$

Due to the formula (11), we can apply Theorem 1 to the function v in the ball $B(T\xi, \frac{R}{M})$: There exists a constant $\tilde{C} = \tilde{C}(\alpha, n)$, such that

$$\begin{aligned} \|v\|_2^{B(T\xi, \frac{R}{M})} &\leq \tilde{C} \left(\frac{M^2}{R^2} \|v\|_0^{B(T\xi, \frac{R}{M})} + \frac{M}{R} \|v\|_1^{B(T\xi, \frac{R}{M})} \right. \\ &\quad \left. + \|g\|_0^{B(T\xi, \frac{R}{M})} + \frac{R^\alpha}{M^\alpha} \|g\|_{0,\alpha}^{B(T\xi, \frac{R}{M})} \right). \end{aligned}$$

We note (10) and deduce

$$\|u\|_2^{B(\xi, \frac{m}{2M}R)} \leq \mu(m, M) \|v\|_2^{B(T\xi, \frac{R}{2M})}.$$

Finally, we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} \|u\|_2^{B(\xi, \frac{m}{2M}R)} &\leq \mu(m, M) \tilde{C} \left\{ \frac{M^2}{R^2} \|u\|_0^{B(\xi, R)} + \frac{M}{R} \mu_1(m, M) \|u\|_1^{B(\xi, R)} \right. \\ &\quad \left. + \|f\|_0^{B(\xi, R)} + \frac{R^\alpha}{M^\alpha} \mu_2(m, M) \|f\|_{0,\alpha}^{B(\xi, R)} \right\} \\ &\leq C(\alpha, n, m, M) \left\{ \frac{\|u\|_0^{B(\xi, R)}}{R^2} + \frac{\|u\|_1^{B(\xi, R)}}{R} \right. \\ &\quad \left. + \|f\|_0^{B(\xi, R)} + R^\alpha \|f\|_{0,\alpha}^{B(\xi, R)} \right\}, \end{aligned}$$

taking (11) into account. Analogously, we estimate the quantity $\|u\|_{2,\alpha}^{B(\xi, \frac{m}{2M}R)}$.
q.e.d.

For the functions $u \in C_*^{2+\alpha}(\overline{B(\xi, R)})$ we now introduce the following weighted norms, abbreviating $d(x) := R - |x - \xi|$:

$$\begin{aligned} A_0 &:= \sup_{x \in B} |u(x)|, \\ A_1 &:= \sup_{x \in B} \left\{ d(x) \sum_{i=1}^n |u_{x_i}(x)| \right\}, \\ A_2 &:= \sup_{x \in B} \left\{ d(x)^2 \sum_{i,j=1}^n |u_{x_i x_j}(x)| \right\}, \\ A_{2,\alpha} &:= \sup_{\substack{x', x'' \in B \\ x' \neq x''}} \left\{ (\min[d(x'), d(x'')])^{2+\alpha} \sum_{i,j=1}^n \frac{|u_{x_i x_j}(x') - u_{x_i x_j}(x'')|}{|x' - x''|^\alpha} \right\}. \end{aligned} \tag{13}$$

Proposition 5. (Norm-interpolation)

Given the functions $u = u(x) \in C_*^{2+\alpha}(\overline{B(\xi, R)})$, we have the following estimate:

$$A_1 \leq \frac{2n}{\kappa} A_0 + \frac{n\kappa}{(1-\kappa)^2} A_2 \quad \text{for all } \kappa \in (0, 1). \tag{14}$$

Proof: We assume $A_1 > 0$ and choose a point $x' = (x'_1, \dots, x'_n) \in \overline{B}$ satisfying

$$A_1 = d(x') \sum_{i=1}^n |u_{x_i}(x')| \quad \text{and} \quad d(x') > 0.$$

For an arbitrary index $j \in \{1, \dots, n\}$ we define $x'' = (x''_1, \dots, x''_n)$ by $x''_i := x'_i$ for $i \neq j$ and $x''_j := x'_j + \kappa d(x')$, with an arbitrary $\kappa \in (0, 1)$. We remark that $x'' \in \overline{B}$ holds true. The mean value theorem of differential calculus gives us a value $\tilde{\kappa} \in (0, \kappa)$ with the adjoint point $\tilde{x} = (\tilde{x}_1, \dots, \tilde{x}_n)$ satisfying $\tilde{x}_i = x'_i$, $i \neq j$ and $\tilde{x}_j = x'_j + \tilde{\kappa} d(x')$, such that the relation

$$u_{x_j}(\tilde{x}) = \frac{u(x'') - u(x')}{\kappa d(x')}$$

holds true. This implies

$$|u_{x_j}(\tilde{x})| \leq \frac{2A_0}{\kappa d(x')}. \quad (15)$$

Furthermore, we calculate

$$u_{x_j}(\tilde{x}) - u_{x_j}(x') = \int_{x'_j}^{\tilde{x}_j} u_{x_j x_j}(x'_1, \dots, x'_{j-1}, t, x'_{j+1}, \dots, x'_n) dt.$$

For $x = (x'_1, \dots, x'_{j-1}, t, x'_{j+1}, \dots, x'_n)$ and $x'_j \leq t \leq \tilde{x}_j$ we infer

$$d(x) = R - |x - \xi| \geq R - |x' - \xi| - |x - x'| \geq d(x')(1 - \kappa)$$

and consequently

$$|u_{x_j x_j}(x)| \leq \frac{A_2}{d(x)^2} \leq \frac{A_2}{(1 - \kappa)^2 d(x')^2}.$$

We then obtain

$$|u_{x_j}(\tilde{x}) - u_{x_j}(x')| \leq \frac{A_2 \kappa d(x')}{(1 - \kappa)^2 (d(x'))^2} = \frac{\kappa A_2}{(1 - \kappa)^2 d(x')}. \quad (16)$$

The relations (15) and (16) imply

$$|u_{x_j}(x')| \leq |u_{x_j}(\tilde{x}) - u_{x_j}(x')| + |u_{x_j}(\tilde{x})| \leq \frac{\kappa A_2}{(1 - \kappa)^2 d(x')} + \frac{2A_0}{\kappa d(x')}$$

and

$$d(x') |u_{x_j}(x')| \leq \frac{\kappa A_2}{(1 - \kappa)^2} + \frac{2A_0}{\kappa} \quad \text{for } j = 1, \dots, n.$$

We summarize and get

$$A_1 = d(x') \sum_{i=1}^n |u_{x_j}(x')| \leq \frac{2nA_0}{\kappa} + \frac{n\kappa A_2}{(1-\kappa)^2} \quad ,$$

the parameter $\kappa \in (0, 1)$ being arbitrarily chosen. q.e.d.

We now consider general elliptic differential operators

$$\mathcal{L}(u) := \sum_{i,j=1}^n a_{ij}(x) \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x_i \partial x_j} + \sum_{i=1}^n b_i(x) \frac{\partial u}{\partial x_i} + c(x)u, \quad x \in \overline{B(\xi, R)}, \quad (17)$$

and require the following conditions on the coefficients:

Assumption D: For $i, j = 1, \dots, n$ let the coefficients

$$a_{ij}(x), b_i(x), c(x) \in C^\alpha(\overline{B(\xi, R)})$$

with the bound P be given:

$$\sum_{i,j=1}^n \|a_{ij}\|_\alpha^{B(\xi, R)} + \sum_{i=1}^n \|b_i\|_\alpha^{B(\xi, R)} + \|c\|_\alpha^{B(\xi, R)} + R \leq P.$$

With the ellipticity constants $0 < m \leq M < +\infty$, we have the following inequalities for all $x \in B(\xi, R)$ and $\lambda \in \mathbb{R}^n$:

$$m^2 \sum_{i=1}^n \lambda_i^2 \leq \sum_{i,j=1}^n a_{ij}(x) \lambda_i \lambda_j \leq M^2 \sum_{i=1}^n \lambda_i^2.$$

Proposition 6. *Let the assumption D be fulfilled. The function $u \in C_*^{2+\alpha}(\overline{B})$ may satisfy the differential equation*

$$\mathcal{L}(u) = f \quad \text{in } B \quad \text{with } f \in C^\alpha(\overline{B}).$$

Then, we have the following estimates for each point $\tilde{x} \in B$ and each number $\kappa \in (0, \frac{1}{2})$:

$$\|u\|_2^{B(\tilde{x}, \frac{m}{2M}\kappa d(\tilde{x}))} \leq \frac{C}{d(\tilde{x})^2} \left\{ \|f\|_0^B + \kappa^\alpha \|f\|_{0,\alpha}^B + \frac{A_0}{\kappa^2} + \frac{A_1}{\kappa} + \kappa^\alpha A_2 + \kappa^{2\alpha} A_{2,\alpha} \right\}$$

and

$$\|u\|_{2,\alpha}^{B(\tilde{x}, \frac{m}{2M}\kappa d(\tilde{x}))} \leq \frac{C}{d(\tilde{x})^{2+\alpha}} \left\{ \frac{\|f\|_0^B}{\kappa^\alpha} + \|f\|_{0,\alpha}^B + \frac{A_0}{\kappa^{2+\alpha}} + \frac{A_1}{\kappa^{1+\alpha}} + A_2 + \kappa^\alpha A_{2,\alpha} \right\}$$

with a constant $C = C(\alpha, n, m, M, P) \in (0, +\infty)$.

Proof: We show this proposition by a method usually called *freezing of coefficients*. For each $x \in B(\tilde{x}, \kappa d(\tilde{x}))$ we have

$$d(x) = R - |x - \xi| \geq R - |\tilde{x} - \xi| - |x - \tilde{x}| \geq (1 - \kappa)d(\tilde{x}) \geq \frac{1}{2}d(\tilde{x}).$$

Then, we obtain

$$A_0 = \sup_{x \in B} |u(x)| \geq \sup_{x \in B(\tilde{x}, \kappa d(\tilde{x}))} |u(x)| = \|u\|_0^{B(\tilde{x}, \kappa d(\tilde{x}))} \quad (18)$$

and

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{2A_1}{d(\tilde{x})} &= \sup_{x \in B} \left\{ \frac{2d(x)}{d(\tilde{x})} \sum_{i=1}^n |u_{x_i}(x)| \right\} \\ &\geq \sup_{x \in B(\tilde{x}, \kappa d(\tilde{x}))} \left\{ \sum_{i=1}^n |u_{x_i}(x)| \right\} = \|u\|_1^{B(\tilde{x}, \kappa d(\tilde{x}))}. \end{aligned} \quad (19)$$

Furthermore, we note that

$$\frac{4A_2}{d(\tilde{x})^2} \geq \|u\|_2^{B(\tilde{x}, \kappa d(\tilde{x}))} \quad (20)$$

and

$$\frac{2^{2+\alpha} A_{2,\alpha}}{d(\tilde{x})^{2+\alpha}} \geq \|u\|_{2,\alpha}^{B(\tilde{x}, \kappa d(\tilde{x}))}. \quad (21)$$

Since u satisfies the differential equation $\mathcal{L}(u) = f$, we infer

$$\tilde{\mathcal{L}}(u) := \sum_{i,j=1}^n a_{ij}(\tilde{x}) \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x_j \partial x_j}(x) = g(x), \quad x \in B(\tilde{x}, \kappa d(\tilde{x})), \quad (22)$$

with the right-hand side

$$g(x) := f(x) - \left\{ \sum_{i,j=1}^n (a_{ij}(x) - a_{ij}(\tilde{x})) \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x_i \partial x_j} + \sum_{i=1}^n b_i(x) \frac{\partial u}{\partial x_i} + c(x)u \right\}. \quad (23)$$

To the relation (22) we now apply Theorem 2 with $\xi = \tilde{x}$, $R = \kappa d(\tilde{x})$. Then we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} \|u\|_2^{B(\tilde{x}, \frac{m}{2M} \kappa d(\tilde{x}))} &\leq \tilde{C} \left(\|g\|_0^{B(\tilde{x}, \kappa d(\tilde{x}))} + \|g\|_{0,\alpha}^{B(\tilde{x}, \kappa d(\tilde{x}))} \kappa^\alpha d(\tilde{x})^\alpha \right. \\ &\quad \left. + \frac{A_0}{\kappa^2 d(\tilde{x})^2} + \frac{2A_1}{\kappa d(\tilde{x})^2} \right) \end{aligned} \quad (24)$$

and

$$\begin{aligned} \|u\|_{2,\alpha}^{B(\tilde{x}, \frac{m}{2M} \kappa d(\tilde{x}))} &\leq \tilde{C} \left(\frac{\|g\|_0^{B(\tilde{x}, \kappa d(\tilde{x}))}}{\kappa^\alpha d(\tilde{x})^\alpha} + \|g\|_{0,\alpha}^{B(\tilde{x}, \kappa d(\tilde{x}))} \right. \\ &\quad \left. + \frac{A_0}{\kappa^{2+\alpha} d(\tilde{x})^{2+\alpha}} + \frac{2A_1}{\kappa^{1+\alpha} d(\tilde{x})^{2+\alpha}} \right) \end{aligned} \quad (25)$$

with the constant $\tilde{C} = \tilde{C}(\alpha, n, m, M) \in (0, +\infty)$.

The quantity $\|g\|_0^{B(\tilde{x}, \kappa d(\tilde{x}))}$ is estimated as follows: Taking $x \in B(\tilde{x}, \kappa d(\tilde{x}))$ we have

$$\begin{aligned} |g(x)| &\leq \|f\|_0^{B(\tilde{x}, \kappa d(\tilde{x}))} + \sum_{i,j=1}^n |a_{ij}(x) - a_{ij}(\tilde{x})| \left| \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x_i \partial x_j}(x) \right| \\ &\quad + \sum_{i=1}^n |b_i(x)| \left| \frac{\partial u}{\partial x_i}(x) \right| + |c(x)| |u(x)| \end{aligned}$$

and consequently

$$\begin{aligned} |g(x)| &\leq \|f\|_0^{B(\tilde{x}, \kappa d(\tilde{x}))} + \|u\|_2^{B(\tilde{x}, \kappa d(\tilde{x}))} \kappa^\alpha d(\tilde{x})^\alpha \sum_{i,j=1}^n \|a_{ij}\|_{0,\alpha}^{B(\tilde{x}, \kappa d(\tilde{x}))} \\ &\quad + \|u\|_1^{B(\tilde{x}, \kappa d(\tilde{x}))} \sum_{i=1}^n \|b_i\|_0^{B(\tilde{x}, \kappa d(\tilde{x}))} + \|u\|_0^{B(\tilde{x}, \kappa d(\tilde{x}))} \|c\|_0^{B(\tilde{x}, \kappa d(\tilde{x}))}. \end{aligned}$$

Therefore, we find

$$\begin{aligned} \|g\|_0^{B(\tilde{x}, \kappa d(\tilde{x}))} &\leq \|f\|_0^B + P \left(A_0 + \frac{2A_1}{d(\tilde{x})} + \frac{4\kappa^\alpha d(\tilde{x})^\alpha}{d(\tilde{x})^2} A_2 \right) \\ &\leq \|f\|_0^B + \frac{k_0(P)}{d(\tilde{x})^2} (A_0 + A_1 + \kappa^\alpha A_2), \end{aligned} \tag{26}$$

with a constant $k_0 = k_0(P)$.

In order to estimate the quantity $\|g\|_{0,\alpha}^{B(\tilde{x}, \kappa d(\tilde{x}))}$, we calculate for each two points $x', x'' \in B(\tilde{x}, \kappa d(\tilde{x}))$ as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} |g(x') - g(x'')| &\leq |f(x') - f(x'')| + \sum_{i,j=1}^n \left\{ |a_{ij}(x') - a_{ij}(x'')| |u_{x_i x_j}(x')| \right. \\ &\quad \left. + |a_{ij}(x'') - a_{ij}(\tilde{x})| |u_{x_i x_j}(x') - u_{x_i x_j}(x'')| \right\} \\ &\quad + \sum_{i=1}^n \left\{ |b_i(x') - b_i(x'')| |u_{x_i}(x')| + |b_i(x'')| |u_{x_i}(x') - u_{x_i}(x'')| \right\} \\ &\quad + \left\{ |c(x') - c(x'')| |u(x')| + |c(x'')| |u(x') - u(x'')| \right\}. \end{aligned}$$

This implies

$$\begin{aligned}
|g(x') - g(x'')| &\leq |x' - x''|^\alpha \left\{ \|f\|_{0,\alpha}^{B(\tilde{x}, \kappa d(\tilde{x}))} + \|u\|_2^{B(\tilde{x}, \kappa d(\tilde{x}))} \sum_{i,j=1}^n \|a_{ij}\|_{0,\alpha}^{B(\tilde{x}, \kappa d(\tilde{x}))} \right. \\
&\quad + \|u\|_{2,\alpha}^{B(\tilde{x}, \kappa d(\tilde{x}))} \kappa^\alpha d(\tilde{x})^\alpha \sum_{i,j=1}^n \|a_{ij}\|_{0,\alpha}^{B(\tilde{x}, \kappa d(\tilde{x}))} + \|u\|_1^{B(\tilde{x}, \kappa d(\tilde{x}))} \sum_{i=1}^n \|b_i\|_{0,\alpha}^{B(\tilde{x}, \kappa d(\tilde{x}))} \\
&\quad + \|u\|_2^{B(\tilde{x}, \kappa d(\tilde{x}))} (2\kappa d(\tilde{x}))^{1-\alpha} \sum_{i=1}^n \|b_i\|_0^{B(\tilde{x}, \kappa d(\tilde{x}))} \\
&\quad \left. + \|c\|_{0,\alpha}^{B(\tilde{x}, \kappa d(\tilde{x}))} \|u\|_0^{B(\tilde{x}, \kappa d(\tilde{x}))} + \|c\|_0^{B(\tilde{x}, \kappa d(\tilde{x}))} \|u\|_1^{B(\tilde{x}, \kappa d(\tilde{x}))} (2\kappa d(\tilde{x}))^{1-\alpha} \right\} \\
&\leq |x' - x''|^\alpha \left\{ \|f\|_{0,\alpha}^B + \frac{4A_2P}{d(\tilde{x})^2} + \kappa^\alpha P \frac{2^{2+\alpha} A_{2,\alpha}}{d(\tilde{x})^2} + \frac{2A_1P}{d(\tilde{x})} \right. \\
&\quad \left. + \frac{4A_2P}{d(\tilde{x})^2} (2\kappa)^{1-\alpha} (d(\tilde{x}))^{1-\alpha} + PA_0 + \frac{2PA_1}{d(\tilde{x})} (2\kappa)^{1-\alpha} (d(\tilde{x}))^{1-\alpha} \right\}.
\end{aligned}$$

Then, we obtain

$$\|g\|_{0,\alpha}^{B(\tilde{x}, \kappa d(\tilde{x}))} \leq \|f\|_{0,\alpha}^B + \frac{k_1(P)}{d(\tilde{x})^2} \{A_0 + A_1 + A_2 + \kappa^\alpha A_{2,\alpha}\} \quad (27)$$

with a constant $k_1 = k_1(P)$.

Combining the estimates (24), (26), and (27) we deduce

$$\begin{aligned}
\|u\|_2^{B(\tilde{x}, \frac{m}{2M}\kappa d(\tilde{x}))} &\leq \tilde{C} \left\{ \|f\|_0^B + \frac{k_0(P)}{d(\tilde{x})^2} (A_0 + A_1 + \kappa^\alpha A_2) + \kappa^\alpha d(\tilde{x})^\alpha \|f\|_{0,\alpha}^B \right. \\
&\quad \left. + \kappa^\alpha \frac{k_1(P)}{d(\tilde{x})^{2-\alpha}} (A_0 + A_1 + A_2 + \kappa^\alpha A_{2,\alpha}) + \frac{A_0}{\kappa^2 d(\tilde{x})^2} + \frac{2A_1}{\kappa d(\tilde{x})^2} \right\} \\
&\leq \frac{C(\alpha, n, m, M, P)}{d(\tilde{x})^2} \left\{ \|f\|_0^B + \kappa^\alpha \|f\|_{0,\alpha}^B + \frac{A_0}{\kappa^2} + \frac{A_1}{\kappa} + \kappa^\alpha A_2 + \kappa^{2\alpha} A_{2,\alpha} \right\}.
\end{aligned}$$

Furthermore, we estimate with the aid of (25), (26), and (27) as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}
\|u\|_{2,\alpha}^{B(\tilde{x}, \frac{m}{2M}\kappa d(\tilde{x}))} &\leq \tilde{C} \left\{ \frac{\|f\|_0^B}{\kappa^\alpha d(\tilde{x})^\alpha} + \frac{k_0(P)}{\kappa^\alpha d(\tilde{x})^{2+\alpha}} (A_0 + A_1 + \kappa^\alpha A_2) + \|f\|_{0,\alpha}^B \right. \\
&\quad \left. + \frac{k_1(P)}{d(\tilde{x})^2} (A_0 + A_1 + A_2 + \kappa^\alpha A_{2,\alpha}) + \frac{A_0}{\kappa^{2+\alpha} d(\tilde{x})^{2+\alpha}} + \frac{2A_1}{\kappa^{1+\alpha} d(\tilde{x})^{2+\alpha}} \right\} \\
&\leq \frac{C(\alpha, n, m, M, P)}{d(\tilde{x})^{2+\alpha}} \left\{ \frac{\|f\|_0^B}{\kappa^\alpha} + \|f\|_{0,\alpha}^B + \frac{A_0}{\kappa^{2+\alpha}} + \frac{A_1}{\kappa^{1+\alpha}} + A_2 + \kappa^\alpha A_{2,\alpha} \right\}.
\end{aligned}$$

This completes the proof.

q.e.d.

Theorem 3. *Let the assumption D be fulfilled; and $u \in C_*^{2+\alpha}(\overline{B(\xi, R)})$ may satisfy the differential equation*

$$\mathcal{L}(u) = f \quad \text{in } B = B(\xi, R)$$

with the right-hand side $f \in C^\alpha(\overline{B})$.

Then we have a constant $C = C(\alpha, n, m, M, P) \in (0, +\infty)$, such that

$$A_1 + A_2 + A_{2,\alpha} \leq C(A_0 + \|f\|_0^B + \|f\|_{0,\alpha}^B). \quad (28)$$

Proof: We choose $\kappa \in (0, \frac{1}{2})$ and infer the following inequality from Proposition 5 :

$$A_1 \leq \frac{2n}{\kappa^{1+\alpha}} A_0 + \frac{n\kappa^{1+\alpha}}{(1 - \kappa^{1+\alpha})^2} A_2. \quad (29)$$

Together with Proposition 6 we obtain the estimates

$$\begin{aligned} A_2 \leq C \bigg\{ & \|f\|_0^B + \kappa^\alpha \|f\|_{0,\alpha}^B + \left(\frac{1}{\kappa^2} + \frac{2n}{\kappa^{2+\alpha}} \right) A_0 \\ & + \left(\frac{n}{(1 - \kappa^{1+\alpha})^2} + 1 \right) \kappa^\alpha A_2 + \kappa^{2\alpha} A_{2,\alpha} \bigg\} \end{aligned}$$

and

$$\begin{aligned} \kappa^\alpha A_{2,\alpha} \leq C \bigg\{ & \|f\|_0^B + \kappa^\alpha \|f\|_{0,\alpha}^B + \left(\frac{1}{\kappa^2} + \frac{2n}{\kappa^{2+\alpha}} \right) A_0 \\ & + \left(\frac{n}{(1 - \kappa^{1+\alpha})^2} + 1 \right) \kappa^\alpha A_2 + \kappa^{2\alpha} A_{2,\alpha} \bigg\}. \end{aligned}$$

Their addition yields

$$\begin{aligned} A_2 + \kappa^\alpha A_{2,\alpha} \leq 2C \bigg\{ & \|f\|_0^B + \kappa^\alpha \|f\|_{0,\alpha}^B + \left(\frac{1}{\kappa^2} + \frac{2n}{\kappa^{2+\alpha}} \right) A_0 \\ & + \kappa^\alpha \left(1 + \frac{n}{(1 - \kappa^{1+\alpha})^2} \right) (A_2 + \kappa^\alpha A_{2,\alpha}) \bigg\}. \end{aligned}$$

Choosing $0 < \kappa_0$ so small that the condition

$$2C\kappa_0^\alpha \left(1 + \frac{n}{(1 - \kappa_0^{1+\alpha})^2} \right) \leq \frac{1}{2}$$

is fulfilled, we deduce

$$A_2 + \kappa_0^\alpha A_{2,\alpha} \leq 4C \bigg\{ \|f\|_0^B + \kappa_0^\alpha \|f\|_{0,\alpha}^B + \left(\frac{1}{\kappa_0^2} + \frac{2n}{\kappa_0^{2+\alpha}} \right) A_0 \bigg\}.$$

Consequently, the quantities A_2 and $A_{2,\alpha}$ are estimated in the desired form. Utilizing Proposition 5 once more, we attain the stated inequality (28).

q.e.d.

From this Theorem 3 we now can easily deduce the Schauder estimates given in § 5 .

Proof of Theorem 4 from § 5 : The quantity $d > 0$ being chosen arbitrarily small, we consider the set

$$\Omega_d := \{x \in \Omega : \text{dist}(x, \partial\Omega) > d\}.$$

In the ball $B = B(x_0, d) \subset \Omega$ we apply Theorem 3 with $x_0 \in \Omega_d$ and $R = d$. Then we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} \tilde{C} \left(\sup_{x \in \Omega} |u(x)| + \|f\|_0^\Omega + \|f\|_{0,\alpha}^\Omega \right) &\geq A_1 + A_2 + A_{2,\alpha} \\ &\geq d \sum_{i=1}^n |u_{x_i}(x_0)| + d^2 \sum_{i,j=1}^n |u_{x_i x_j}(x_0)| \\ &\quad + \left(\frac{d}{2}\right)^{2+\alpha} \sum_{i,j=1}^n \sup_{\substack{x', x'' \in B(x_0, d/2) \\ x' \neq x''}} \frac{|u_{x_i x_j}(x') - u_{x_i x_j}(x'')|}{|x' - x''|^\alpha} \end{aligned}$$

for all $x_0 \in \Omega_d$. This implies

$$\|u\|_1^{\Omega_d} + \|u\|_2^{\Omega_d} + \|u\|_{2,\alpha}^{\Omega_d} \leq C(\dots, d) (\|u\|_0^\Omega + \|f\|_0^\Omega + \|f\|_{0,\alpha}^\Omega). \quad \text{q.e.d.}$$

Let the domain Ω satisfy the assumption C_3 . For each boundary point $x_0 \in \partial\Omega$ we then have a half-neighborhood Ω_0 , which can be mapped onto a half-ball $B(\xi, R)$ with $\xi \in E = \{x \in \mathbb{R}^n : x_n = 0\}$ in such away that $\overline{B(\xi, R)} \cap E$ is related to $\partial\Omega \cap \partial\Omega_0$. This mapping represents a diffeomorphism of $\overline{B(\xi, R)}$ onto $\overline{\Omega_0}$ in the class $C^{2+\alpha}$. The differential equation $\mathcal{L}(u) = f$ is transformed - similar to the proof of Theorem 1 from § 6 - into an elliptic differential equation on the half-ball with zero boundary values on E . The Schauder estimates utilized in the proof of Theorem 1 from § 6 can be directly taken from Theorem 3 with the aid of the transformation above.

Finally, we supplement the

Proof of Theorem 1 from § 5: Following the arguments above, to each point $x_0 \in \partial\Omega$ there exists a neighborhood $\Omega_0 := \overline{\Omega} \cap B(x_0, \varepsilon_0)$ with $\varepsilon_0 > 0$, such that

$$\|u\|_1^{\Omega_0} + \|u\|_2^{\Omega_0} + \|u\|_{2,\alpha}^{\Omega_0} \leq \tilde{C} (\|u\|_0^\Omega + \|f\|_0^\Omega + \|f\|_{0,\alpha}^\Omega)$$

holds true. The boundary $\partial\Omega$ being compact, finitely many such neighborhoods Ω_j , $j = 1, \dots, N$ suffice in order to cover this set. Then we obtain

$$\|u\|_1^{\Omega_j} + \|u\|_2^{\Omega_j} + \|u\|_{2,\alpha}^{\Omega_j} \leq \tilde{C} (\|u\|_0^\Omega + \|f\|_0^\Omega + \|f\|_{0,\alpha}^\Omega) \quad \text{for } j = 1, \dots, N.$$

Choosing $d > 0$ sufficiently small, we attain the global Schauder estimate

$$\begin{aligned}
\|u\|_1^\Omega + \|u\|_2^\Omega + \|u\|_{2,\alpha}^\Omega &\leq \|u\|_1^{\Omega_d} + \|u\|_2^{\Omega_d} + \|u\|_{2,\alpha}^{\Omega_d} \\
&\quad + \sum_{j=1}^N (\|u\|_1^{\Omega_j} + \|u\|_2^{\Omega_j} + \|u\|_{2,\alpha}^{\Omega_j}) \\
&\leq (\tilde{C}N + \tilde{C}(d)) (\|u\|_0^\Omega + \|f\|_0^\Omega + \|f\|_{0,\alpha}^\Omega) \\
&\leq C (\|u\|_0^\Omega + \|f\|_0^\Omega + \|f\|_{0,\alpha}^\Omega)
\end{aligned}$$

with a constant $C = C(\alpha, n, m, M, P, \Omega) \in (0, +\infty)$. q.e.d

Now we have completely proved all the Schauder estimates, which we applied in § 5 and § 6.

§8 Some historical notices to Chapter IX

Boundary value problems for holomorphic functions have already been considered by B. Riemann. The just established theory of integral equations enabled D. Hilbert in 1904, to obtain new results for this problem. G. Hellwig observed in 1952 the nonuniqueness of the Riemann-Hilbert problem and the intricate structure for the set of their solutions. For a thorough treatment of these questions we refer the reader to the profound monograph by I.N. Vekua.

The boundary value problem for elliptic differential equations was solved by J. Schauder from 1932–1934 via functional analytic methods. At about the same time, G. Giraud and E. Hopf treated similar problems with alternative methods. For a detailed account we refer the reader to the book by D. Gilbarg and N. Trudinger.

J. Schauder worked, as a brilliant student of S. Banach, in the intellectually excellent atmosphere of the University at Lwów, now in the Ukraine. However, his life ended already in 1943 – within the tragical times of World War II.

Weak Solutions of Elliptic Differential Equations

In this chapter we consider Sobolev spaces in § 1 and prove the Sobolev embedding theorem and the Rellich selection theorem in § 2. Then we establish the existence of weak solutions in § 3. With the aid of Moser's iteration method we show the boundedness of weak solutions in § 4. In the subsequent § 5 we deduce Hölder continuity of weak solutions with the aid of the weak Harnack inequality by J. Moser. The necessary regularity theorem of John and Nirenberg will be derived in § 6. Finally, we investigate the boundary regularity of weak solutions in § 7. Then we apply our results to equations in divergence form (compare § 8). At the end of this chapter we present Green's function for elliptic operators with the aid of capacity methods, and we treat the eigenvalue problem for the Laplace-Beltrami operator.

§1 Sobolev spaces

Let $\Omega \subset \mathbb{R}^n$ be a bounded open set. Then the space $C_0^\infty(\Omega)$ is dense in the Lebesgue space $L^p(\Omega)$ for all $1 \leq p < +\infty$. We shall now construct a space $W^{k,p}(\Omega)$ of the k -times weakly differentiable functions - with weak derivatives in the space $L^p(\Omega)$.

To the element $f \in L^p(\Omega)$ we attribute the following functional in a natural way:

$$A_f(\varphi) := \int_{\Omega} f(x)\varphi(x) dx, \quad \varphi \in C_0^\infty(\Omega). \quad (1)$$

Taking the multi-index $\alpha = (\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n) \in \mathbb{N}_0^n$, $\mathbb{N}_0 := \mathbb{N} \cup \{0\}$, with $|\alpha| := \alpha_1 + \dots + \alpha_n \in \mathbb{N}_0$, we consider the functionals

$$A_{f,\alpha}(\varphi) := (-1)^{|\alpha|} \int_{\Omega} f(x) \partial^\alpha \varphi(x) dx, \quad \varphi \in C_0^\infty(\Omega). \quad (2)$$

Here the symbol

$$\partial^\alpha \varphi(x) := \frac{\partial^{|\alpha|}}{\partial x_1^{\alpha_1} \dots \partial x_n^{\alpha_n}} \varphi(x), \quad x \in \Omega,$$

denotes the corresponding partial derivative of φ . We note that

$$A_{f,0} = A_f.$$

With the function $f \in C^{|\alpha|}(\Omega)$, an $|\alpha|$ -times partial integration yields

$$A_{f,\alpha}(\varphi) = \int_{\Omega} \left(\partial^\alpha f(x) \right) \varphi(x) dx, \quad \varphi \in C_0^\infty(\Omega). \quad (3)$$

On account of $\varphi \in C_0^\infty(\Omega)$, the boundary integrals vanish during the partial integration.

In case the linear functional $A_{f,\alpha}$ - defined due to (2) - is bounded with respect to the $L^q(\Omega)$ -norm on the set $C_0^\infty(\Omega)$, we can extend this functional to the Lebesgue space $L^q(\Omega)$ for $1 \leq q < +\infty$. Via the Riesz representation theorem we have an element $g \in L^p(\Omega)$ with $p = \frac{q}{q-1} \in (1, +\infty]$, such that

$$A_{f,\alpha}(\varphi) = \int_{\Omega} g(x) \varphi(x) dx = A_g(\varphi) \quad \text{for all } \varphi \in C_0^\infty(\Omega) \quad (4)$$

holds true.

On account of (3) the following definition makes sense:

Definition 1. Take the multi-index $\alpha = (\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n) \in \mathbb{N}_0^n$, the exponent $1 \leq p \leq +\infty$, and the element $f \in L^p(\Omega)$. Then the element

$$g(x) := D^\alpha f(x) \in L^p(\Omega)$$

is called the weak partial derivative of order α for f if

$$\int_{\Omega} g(x) \varphi(x) dx = (-1)^{|\alpha|} \int_{\Omega} f(x) \partial^\alpha \varphi(x) dx \quad \text{for all } \varphi \in C_0^\infty(\Omega) \quad (5)$$

holds true.

Remarks:

1. Let the elements $g_1, g_2 \in L^p(\Omega)$ with $p > 1$ satisfy the identity (5). We then obtain

$$\int_{\Omega} g_1(x) \varphi(x) dx = A_{f,\alpha}(\varphi) = \int_{\Omega} g_2(x) \varphi(x) dx \quad \text{for all } \varphi \in C_0^\infty(\Omega).$$

For the conjugate exponent $q \in [1, +\infty)$ with $p^{-1} + q^{-1} = 1$ we infer

$$\int_{\Omega} (g_1 - g_2)(x) \varphi(x) dx = 0 \quad \text{for all } \varphi \in L^q(\Omega).$$

Utilizing Theorem 2 from Chapter II, § 8 we obtain

$$0 = \|A_{(g_1 - g_2)}\| = \|g_1 - g_2\|_p$$

and the identities $g_1 = g_2$ in $L^p(\Omega)$ respectively $g_1 = g_2$ almost everywhere (briefly a.e.) in Ω follow. Even if the weak derivative exists only in $L^1(\Omega)$, it is uniquely determined in this space.

2. In the classical situation $f \in C^{|\alpha|}(\Omega)$ we have the coincidence

$$\partial^\alpha f(x) = D^\alpha f(x) \quad \text{in } \Omega$$

due to the relation (3).

Definition 2. Let the numbers $k \in \mathbb{N}_0$ and $1 \leq p \leq +\infty$ be given. Then we define the Sobolev space

$$W^{k,p}(\Omega) := \left\{ f \in L^p(\Omega) : D^\alpha f \in L^p(\Omega), |\alpha| \leq k \right\}$$

with the Sobolev norm

$$\|f\|_{W^{k,p}(\Omega)} := \|f\|_{k,p,\Omega} := \left(\sum_{|\alpha| \leq k} \int_{\Omega} |D^\alpha f(x)|^p dx \right)^{\frac{1}{p}}. \quad (6)$$

Remarks:

1. An equivalent norm is given by

$$\|f\|'_{k,p} := \sum_{|\alpha| \leq k} \|D^\alpha f\|_p.$$

Therefore, there exist constants $0 < c_1 \leq c_2 < +\infty$ satisfying

$$c_1 \|f\|_{k,p} \leq \|f\|'_{k,p} \leq c_2 \|f\|_{k,p} \quad \text{for all } f \in W^{k,p}(\Omega).$$

2. Endowed with the norm from Definition 2, the space $W^{k,p}(\Omega)$ becomes a Banach space.
 3. With $1 < p \leq +\infty$ and $q = \frac{p}{p-1}$, the preliminary considerations yield

$$W^{k,p}(\Omega) = \left\{ f \in L^p(\Omega) : A_{f,\alpha} \in (L^q(\Omega))^*, |\alpha| \leq k \right\}. \quad (7)$$

Here the symbol $(L^q(\Omega))^*$ denotes the continuous dual space of $L^q(\Omega)$.

4. In the special case $p = 2$ we obtain the Hilbert spaces

$$H^k(\Omega) := W^{k,2}(\Omega)$$

with the inner product

$$(f, g)_{H^k(\Omega)} := \sum_{|\alpha| \leq k} \int_{\Omega} D^{\alpha} f(x) D^{\alpha} g(x) dx, \quad f, g \in H^k(\Omega).$$

5. One immediately shows the linearity of the weak derivative: Let the numbers $c, d \in \mathbb{R}$, the multi-index α from the set $\mathbb{N}_0^n$, and the elements f, g in $W^{k,p}(\Omega)$ be given. Then we have

$$D^{\alpha}(cf + dg) = cD^{\alpha}f + dD^{\alpha}g.$$

We shall now present a mollifying process which we owe to K. Friedrichs. By $\varrho \in C^{\infty}(\mathbb{R}^n)$ we denote the mollifier

$$\varrho(x) = \begin{cases} c \exp\left(\frac{1}{|x|^2-1}\right), & |x| < 1 \\ 0 & , |x| \geq 1 \end{cases}$$

satisfying

$$\int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \varrho(x) dx = 1.$$

Here we have to choose $c > 0$ suitably. A function $u(x) \in L^p(\Omega)$ with $1 \leq p \leq +\infty$ is extended onto the whole Euclidean space $\mathbb{R}^n$ as follows:

$$u(x) = \begin{cases} u(x), & x \in \Omega \\ 0 & , x \in \mathbb{R}^n \setminus \Omega \end{cases}.$$

Theorem 1. (Friedrichs)

Taking the exponent $1 \leq p \leq +\infty$ and the function $u(x) \in L^p(\Omega)$, we attribute the regularized function

$$u_h(x) := h^{-n} \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \varrho\left(\frac{x-y}{h}\right) u(y) dy, \quad x \in \mathbb{R}^n,$$

for each $h > 0$. Then the mapping $u \mapsto u_h$ is linear from $L^p(\mathbb{R}^n)$ into $L^p(\mathbb{R}^n)$, and we have the estimate

$$\|u_h\|_p \leq \|u\|_p \quad \text{for all } h > 0, \quad u \in L^p(\mathbb{R}^n).$$

Proof: The linearity of the map $u \mapsto u_h$ is evident, and we only have to show the norm estimate. The transformation formula for multiple integrals remains applicable to L^1 -functions via approximation, and we deduce

$$\begin{aligned} u_h(x) &= h^{-n} \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \varrho\left(\frac{x-y}{h}\right) u(y) dy \\ &= \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \varrho(z) u(x-hz) dz \\ &= \int_{|z| \leq 1} \varrho(z) u(x-hz) dz \end{aligned} \quad (8)$$

for all $h > 0$. With the aid of Hölder's inequality for $1 < p < +\infty$ and the identity $p^{-1} + q^{-1} = 1$ we arrive at

$$\begin{aligned} |u_h(x)| &\leq \int_{|z| \leq 1} \varrho^{\frac{1}{p}}(z) |u(x-hz)| \varrho^{\frac{1}{q}}(z) dz \\ &\leq \left(\int_{|z| \leq 1} \varrho(z) |u(x-hz)|^p dz \right)^{\frac{1}{p}} \left(\int_{|z| \leq 1} \varrho(z) dz \right)^{\frac{1}{q}} \end{aligned}$$

and

$$|u_h(x)|^p \leq \int_{|z| \leq 1} \varrho(z) |u(x-hz)|^p dz \quad \text{for all } x \in \mathbb{R}^n.$$

Integration via Fubini's theorem yields (for $p = 1$ as well)

$$\begin{aligned} \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} |u_h(x)|^p dx &\leq \int_{x \in \mathbb{R}^n} \left(\int_{|z| \leq 1} \varrho(z) |u(x-hz)|^p dz \right) dx \\ &= \int_{|z| \leq 1} \varrho(z) \left(\int_{x \in \mathbb{R}^n} |u(x-hz)|^p dx \right) dz \\ &= \left(\int_{\mathbb{R}^n} |u(x)|^p dx \right) \left(\int_{|z| \leq 1} \varrho(z) dz \right). \end{aligned}$$

This implies

$$\|u_h\|_p \leq \|u\|_p \quad \text{for all } u \in L^p(\mathbb{R}^n), \quad h > 0, \quad 1 \leq p < +\infty.$$

In the case $p = \infty$ we obtain $|u_h(x)| \leq \|u\|_\infty$ a. e. in $\mathbb{R}^n$ and consequently $\|u_h\|_\infty \leq \|u\|_\infty$. q.e.d.

Theorem 2. (Friedrichs)

We have the following statements:

1. Taking $u(x) \in C_0^0(\Omega)$ we observe

$$\sup_{x \in \mathbb{R}^n} |u(x) - u_h(x)| \longrightarrow 0 \quad \text{for } h \rightarrow 0+.$$

2. For $u \in L^p(\Omega)$ with $1 \leq p < +\infty$ we infer

$$\|u - u_h\|_p \longrightarrow 0 \quad \text{for } h \rightarrow 0+.$$

Proof:

1. We depart from $u \in C_0^0(\Omega)$: For each $\varepsilon > 0$ we find a number $\delta > 0$, such that the estimate

$$|u(x) - u(y)| \leq \varepsilon$$

is valid for all $x, y \in \mathbb{R}^n$ with $|x - y| \leq \delta$. Via (8) we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} |u_h(x) - u(x)| &\leq \int_{|z| \leq 1} \varrho(z) |u(x - hz) - u(x)| dz \\ &\leq \varepsilon \quad \text{for all } 0 < h \leq \delta(\varepsilon), \quad x \in \mathbb{R}^n. \end{aligned}$$

Consequently, we observe

$$\sup_{x \in \mathbb{R}^n} |u_h(x) - u(x)| \longrightarrow 0 \quad \text{for } h \rightarrow 0+.$$

2. Now we consider $u \in L^p(\Omega)$ with the exponent $1 \leq p < +\infty$. Because of Theorem 6 in Chapter II, § 7, each given $\varepsilon > 0$ admits a function $v \in C_0^0(\Omega)$ satisfying $\|u - v\|_p \leq \varepsilon$. Utilizing part 1 of our proof, we choose a number $h_0(\varepsilon) > 0$ so small that

$$\|v - v_h\|_p \leq \varepsilon \quad \text{for all } 0 < h \leq h_0(\varepsilon)$$

is correct. For all $0 < h \leq h_0(\varepsilon)$ we obtain the following inequality

$$\begin{aligned} \|u - u_h\|_p &\leq \|u - v\|_p + \|v - v_h\|_p + \|v_h - u_h\|_p \\ &\leq 2\|u - v\|_p + \|v - v_h\|_p \leq 3\varepsilon, \end{aligned}$$

taking Theorem 1 into account. This implies $\|u - u_h\|_p \rightarrow 0$ for $h \rightarrow 0+$.
q.e.d.

Now we shall prove that one can interchange weak differentiation and mollification.

Theorem 3. (Friedrichs)

Let us extend the function $f \in W^{k,p}(\Omega)$ onto the whole Euclidean space setting $f \equiv 0$ on $\mathbb{R}^n \setminus \Omega$. With the number $\varepsilon > 0$ given, we define the regularized function of class $C^\infty(\Omega)$ by

$$f_\varepsilon(x) := \frac{1}{\varepsilon^n} \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \varrho\left(\frac{x-y}{\varepsilon}\right) f(y) dy, \quad x \in \mathbb{R}^n.$$

For all multi-indices $\alpha \in \mathbb{N}_0^n$ with $|\alpha| \leq k$ and all numbers ε satisfying $0 < \varepsilon < \text{dist}(x, \mathbb{R}^n \setminus \Omega)$ we have the identity

$$\partial^\alpha f_\varepsilon(x) = (D^\alpha f)_\varepsilon(x), \quad x \in \Omega.$$

Proof: We calculate

$$\begin{aligned} \partial^\alpha f_\varepsilon(x) &= \frac{1}{\varepsilon^n} \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \partial_x^\alpha \varrho\left(\frac{x-y}{\varepsilon}\right) f(y) dy \\ &= (-1)^{|\alpha|} \frac{1}{\varepsilon^n} \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \partial_y^\alpha \varrho\left(\frac{x-y}{\varepsilon}\right) f(y) dy \\ &= \frac{1}{\varepsilon^n} \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \varrho\left(\frac{x-y}{\varepsilon}\right) D^\alpha f(y) dy = (D^\alpha f)_\varepsilon(x). \end{aligned}$$

q.e.d.

Theorem 4. (Meyers, Serrin)

With the exponent $1 \leq p < +\infty$ given, the linear subspace $C^\infty(\Omega) \cap W^{k,p}(\Omega)$ is dense in the Sobolev space $W^{k,p}(\Omega)$.

Proof: We choose the open sets $\Omega_j \subset \mathbb{R}^n$ for $j \in \mathbb{N}_0$ satisfying

$$\emptyset = \Omega_0 \subset \Omega_1 \subset \Omega_2 \subset \dots \subset \Omega \quad \text{and} \quad \overline{\Omega_j} \subset \Omega_{j+1}, \quad j \in \mathbb{N}_0,$$

such that

$$\bigcup_{j=1}^{\infty} \Omega_j = \Omega.$$

Furthermore, let $\Psi_j \in C_0^\infty(\Omega)$ denote a partition of unity subordinate to the set system $\{\Omega_{j+1} \setminus \overline{\Omega_{j-1}}\}_{j=1,2,\dots}$. This means

$$\text{supp } \Psi_j \subset \Omega_{j+1} \setminus \overline{\Omega_{j-1}} \quad \text{and} \quad \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} \Psi_j(x) = 1, \quad x \in \Omega.$$

The quantity $\varepsilon > 0$ given, we choose $\varepsilon_j > 0$ such that $\varepsilon_j < \text{dist}(\Omega_{j+1}, \partial\Omega)$ and

$$\|(\Psi_j f)_{\varepsilon_j} - (\Psi_j f)\|_{W^{k,p}(\Omega)} \leq \varepsilon 2^{-j}$$

is valid. This can be achieved with the aid of Theorem 2 and Theorem 3. We now observe

$$g(x) := \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} (\Psi_j f)_{\varepsilon_j}(x) \in C^\infty(\Omega)$$

and furthermore

$$\begin{aligned} \|g - f\|_{W^{k,p}(\Omega)} &= \left\| \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} (\Psi_j f)_{\varepsilon_j} - \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} (\Psi_j f) \right\|_{W^{k,p}(\Omega)} \\ &\leq \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} \|(\Psi_j f)_{\varepsilon_j} - (\Psi_j f)\|_{W^{k,p}(\Omega)} \leq \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} \frac{\varepsilon}{2^j} = \varepsilon. \end{aligned}$$

From the property $f \in W^{k,p}(\Omega)$ we infer $g \in W^{k,p}(\Omega)$. q.e.d.

According to this theorem we comprehend the Sobolev space $W^{k,p}(\Omega)$ as the *completion* of the linear set of functions $C^\infty(\Omega)$ with respect to the Sobolev norm $\|\cdot\|_{W^{k,p}(\Omega)}$. If the boundary $\partial\Omega$ represents a smooth C^1 -hypersurface in the Euclidean space $\mathbb{R}^n$, one can prove that even the linear space $C^\infty(\overline{\Omega})$ lies densely in the Sobolev space $W^{k,p}(\Omega)$. However, only in the case $k = 0$ and $p < +\infty$ is the set $C_0^\infty(\Omega)$ dense in the space $W^{k,p}(\Omega) = L^p(\Omega)$. For $k > 0$ we obtain the Sobolev space $W_0^{k,p}(\Omega)$ with *weak zero boundary values*.

Definition 3. Let the numbers $k \in \mathbb{N}$ and $1 \leq p \leq +\infty$ be prescribed, then we define the Sobolev space

$$W_0^{k,p}(\Omega) := \left\{ f \in W^{k,p}(\Omega) : \begin{array}{l} \text{There is a sequence } \{f_l\}_{l=1,2,\dots} \subset C_0^\infty(\Omega) \\ \text{with } \|f - f_l\|_{W^{k,p}(\Omega)} \rightarrow 0 \text{ for } l \rightarrow \infty \end{array} \right\}.$$

In the sequel we concentrate on the Sobolev spaces $W^{1,p}(\Omega)$ and $W_0^{1,p}(\Omega)$. Let the symbol $e_i := (\delta_{1i}, \dots, \delta_{ni}) \in \mathbb{R}^n$ with $i \in \{1, \dots, n\}$ denote a unit vector. Taking the point $x \in \Omega$ and the number ε with $0 < |\varepsilon| < \text{dist}(x, \mathbb{R}^n \setminus \Omega)$ arbitrarily, we define the *difference quotient in the direction e_i* by

$$\Delta_{i,\varepsilon} f(x) := \frac{f(x + \varepsilon e_i) - f(x)}{\varepsilon}.$$

Therefore, we can characterize the Sobolev functions as follows:

Theorem 5. Let the exponent $1 < p < +\infty$ and the element $f \in L^p(\Omega)$ be given, then the following two statements are equivalent:

i) We have the property $f \in W^{1,p}(\Omega)$.

ii) There exists a constant $C \in [0, +\infty)$, such that we have the uniform estimate

$$\|\Delta_{i,\varepsilon} f\|_{L^p(\Theta)} \leq C$$

for all open sets $\Theta \subset \Omega$ with $\overline{\Theta} \subset \Omega$ and all numbers ε with $0 < |\varepsilon| < \text{dist}(\Theta, \mathbb{R}^n \setminus \Omega)$ and all indices $i \in \{1, \dots, n\}$.

Proof:

1. At first, we prove the direction: i) $\Rightarrow$ ii).

Choosing $i \in \{1, \dots, n\}$, $f \in C^\infty(\Omega) \cap W^{1,p}(\Omega)$, and $\overline{\Theta} \subset \Omega$ we calculate

$$\Delta_{i,\varepsilon} f(x) = \frac{f(x + \varepsilon e_i) - f(x)}{\varepsilon} = \frac{1}{\varepsilon} \int_0^\varepsilon \frac{\partial}{\partial x_i} f(x + te_i) dt$$

for all $0 < |\varepsilon| < \text{dist}(\Theta, \mathbb{R}^n \setminus \Omega)$. With the aid of Hölder's inequality we deduce the following estimate for all $x \in \Theta$:

$$\begin{aligned} |\Delta_{i,\varepsilon} f(x)|^p &\leq \frac{1}{\varepsilon^p} \left(\int_0^\varepsilon \left| \frac{\partial}{\partial x_i} f(x + te_i) \right| dt \right)^p \\ &\leq \frac{\varepsilon^{\frac{p}{q}}}{\varepsilon^p} \int_0^\varepsilon \left| \frac{\partial}{\partial x_i} f(x + te_i) \right|^p dt \\ &= \frac{1}{\varepsilon} \int_0^\varepsilon \left| \frac{\partial}{\partial x_i} f(x + te_i) \right|^p dt. \end{aligned}$$

Here, we observe $1 \in L^q(\Omega)$ and $p^{-1} + q^{-1} = 1$. Then Fubini's theorem yields

$$\begin{aligned} \int_\Theta |\Delta_{i,\varepsilon} f(x)|^p dx &\leq \frac{1}{\varepsilon} \int_0^\varepsilon \left(\int_{\mathbb{R}^n} |D^{e_i} f(x + te_i)|^p dx \right) dt \\ &= \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} |D^{e_i} f(x)|^p dx. \end{aligned}$$

Consequently, we obtain

$$\|\Delta_{i,\varepsilon} f\|_{L^p(\Theta)} \leq \|f\|_{W^{1,p}(\Omega)} =: C$$

via the Meyers-Serrin theorem.

2. It remains to show the inverse direction: ii) $\Rightarrow$ i).

For the data $i \in \{1, \dots, n\}$, $\overline{\Theta} \subset \Omega$, and ε satisfying $0 < |\varepsilon| < \text{dist}(\Theta, \mathbb{R}^n \setminus \Omega)$ we have

$$\|\Delta_{i,\varepsilon} f\|_{L^p(\Theta)} \leq C.$$

Due to Theorem 7 in Chapter II, § 8 we have a sequence $\varepsilon_k \downarrow 0$ and an element $g_i \in L^p(\Omega)$ such that

$$\int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \varphi(x) \Delta_{i,\varepsilon_k} f(x) dx \longrightarrow \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \varphi(x) g_i(x) dx \quad \text{for all } \varphi \in C_0^\infty(\Omega)$$

is valid. Now we see that

$$\begin{aligned} \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \varphi(x) \Delta_{i,\varepsilon_k} f(x) dx &= - \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \left(\Delta_{i,-\varepsilon_k} \varphi(x) \right) f(x) dx \\ &\longrightarrow - \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} f(x) \frac{\partial}{\partial x_i} \varphi(x) dx \end{aligned} \quad (9)$$

for $k \rightarrow \infty$, and consequently

$$- \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} f(x) \frac{\partial}{\partial x_i} \varphi(x) dx = \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \varphi(x) g_i(x) dx \quad \text{for all } \varphi \in C_0^\infty(\Omega).$$

This implies

$$\Delta_{i,\varepsilon_k} f \xrightarrow{L^p(\Omega)} D^{e_i} f = g_i \in L^p(\Omega),$$

and therefore $f \in W^{1,p}(\Omega)$. In order to comprehend the identity (9), we integrate as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} &\Delta_{i,\varepsilon_k}(\varphi(x)f(x)) \\ &= \frac{1}{\varepsilon_k} \left\{ \left(\varphi(x + \varepsilon_k e_i) - \varphi(x) \right) f(x + \varepsilon_k e_i) + \varphi(x) \left(f(x + \varepsilon_k e_i) - f(x) \right) \right\} \\ &= \left\{ \frac{1}{\varepsilon_k} \left(\varphi(y) - \varphi(y - \varepsilon_k e_i) \right) f(y) \right\} \Big|_{y=x+\varepsilon_k e_i} + \varphi(x) \Delta_{i,\varepsilon_k} f(x) \\ &= \left\{ f(y) \Delta_{i,-\varepsilon_k} \varphi(y) \right\} \Big|_{y=x+\varepsilon_k e_i} + \varphi(x) \Delta_{i,\varepsilon_k} f(x). \end{aligned} \quad (10)$$

This completes the proof.

q.e.d.

Remark: With the Sobolev function $f \in W^{1,p}(\Omega)$ we consider the weakly convergent sequence of difference quotients $\{\Delta_{i,\varepsilon_k} f\}_{k=1,2,\dots}$, where $\varepsilon_k \downarrow 0$ holds true. Then the proof above yields

$$\Delta_{i,\varepsilon_k} f \rightharpoonup D^{e_i} f \quad \text{in } L^p(\Omega), \quad i = 1, \dots, n.$$

This fact explains the notion *weak derivative*.

Theorem 6. (Weak product rule)

Let the Sobolev functions $f, g \in W^{1,p}(\Omega) \cap L^\infty(\Omega)$ with the exponent $1 < p < +\infty$ be given. Then we have the property $h := fg \in W^{1,p}(\Omega) \cap L^\infty(\Omega)$ and the formula

$$D^\alpha h = f D^\alpha g + g D^\alpha f, \quad \text{for all } \alpha \in \mathbb{N}_0^n \text{ with } |\alpha| = 1.$$

Proof: Choose the function $\varphi \in C_0^\infty(\Omega)$ and a sufficiently small number $\varepsilon > 0$. When we apply the identity (10) twice, we obtain the following equation:

$$\begin{aligned} \Delta_{i,\varepsilon}(\varphi(x)h(x)) &= \left\{ h(y)\Delta_{i,-\varepsilon}\varphi(y) \right\}_{y=x+\varepsilon e_i} + \varphi(x)\Delta_{i,\varepsilon}h(x) \\ &= \left\{ h(y)\Delta_{i,-\varepsilon}\varphi(y) \right\}_{y=x+\varepsilon e_i} \\ &\quad + \varphi(x) \left(\left\{ f(y)\Delta_{i,-\varepsilon}g(y) \right\}_{y=x+\varepsilon e_i} + g(x)\Delta_{i,\varepsilon}f(x) \right) \\ &= \left\{ h(y)\Delta_{i,-\varepsilon}\varphi(y) \right\}_{y=x+\varepsilon e_i} \\ &\quad + \varphi(x)g(x)\Delta_{i,\varepsilon}f(x) + \left\{ \varphi(y)f(y)\Delta_{i,-\varepsilon}g(y) \right\}_{y=x+\varepsilon e_i} \\ &\quad + \left\{ (\varphi(y - \varepsilon e_i) - \varphi(y))f(y)\Delta_{i,-\varepsilon}g(y) \right\}_{y=x+\varepsilon e_i}. \end{aligned} \tag{11}$$

Noting $f, g \in W^{1,p}(\Omega)$, Theorem 5 and Theorem 7 from Chapter II, § 8 allow us to choose a zero sequence $\varepsilon_k \downarrow 0$, such that

$$\Delta_{i,\varepsilon_k}f(x) \rightarrow D^{e_i}f(x) \quad \text{and} \quad \Delta_{i,-\varepsilon_k}g(x) \rightarrow D^{e_i}g(x) \quad \text{in } L^p(\Omega).$$

From (11) we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} 0 &= \int_{\Omega} h(x)\Delta_{i,-\varepsilon_k}\varphi(x) dx + \int_{\Omega} \varphi(x)g(x)\Delta_{i,\varepsilon_k}f(x) dx \\ &\quad + \int_{\Omega} \varphi(x)f(x)\Delta_{i,-\varepsilon_k}g(x) dx + \int_{\Omega} (\varphi(x - \varepsilon_k e_i) - \varphi(x))f(x)\Delta_{i,-\varepsilon_k}g(x) dx \end{aligned}$$

by integration via the transformation formula. The passage to the limit $k \rightarrow \infty$ yields

$$0 = \int_{\Omega} h(x)\frac{\partial}{\partial x_i}\varphi(x) dx + \int_{\Omega} \varphi(x)g(x)D^{e_i}f(x) dx + \int_{\Omega} \varphi(x)f(x)D^{e_i}g(x) dx$$

for all $\varphi \in C_0^\infty(\Omega)$. This implies $D^\alpha h = f D^\alpha g + g D^\alpha f$ for all $\alpha \in \mathbb{N}_0^n$ with $|\alpha| = 1$.

q.e.d.

Theorem 7. (Weak chain rule)

On the bounded open set $\Omega \subset \mathbb{R}^n$ let the function $f \in W^{1,p}(\Omega) \cap L^\infty(\Omega)$ be defined with the exponent $1 < p < +\infty$. Furthermore, we have the scalar function $g : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R} \in C^1$. Then the composition $h := g \circ f$ belongs to the class $W^{1,p}(\Omega) \cap L^\infty(\Omega)$ as well, and we have the chain rule

$$D^\alpha h(x) = g'(f(x)) D^\alpha f(x), \quad x \in \Omega, \quad (12)$$

for all $\alpha \in \mathbb{N}_0^n$ with $|\alpha| = 1$.

Proof:

1. For monomials $g(y) = y^m$, $m \in \mathbb{N}$, we show the chain rule by induction. We start the induction with the evident case $m = 1$. From the validity of the statement for m we infer the correctness of the statement for $m + 1$ with the aid of Theorem 6:

$$\begin{aligned} D^\alpha \left\{ (f(x))^{m+1} \right\} &= D^\alpha \left\{ f(x)(f(x))^m \right\} \\ &= (D^\alpha f(x))(f(x))^m + f(x) D^\alpha \left\{ (f(x))^m \right\} \\ &= (D^\alpha f(x))(f(x))^m + f(x) m (f(x))^{m-1} D^\alpha f(x) \\ &= (m+1)(f(x))^m D^\alpha f(x) = g'(f(x)) D^\alpha f(x). \end{aligned}$$

2. When

$$g(y) = \sum_{k=0}^m a_k y^k, \quad a_k \in \mathbb{R}, \quad k = 0, \dots, m$$

is an arbitrary polynomial, we deduce

$$\begin{aligned} D^\alpha \left\{ g(f(x)) \right\} &= \sum_{k=0}^m a_k D^\alpha \left\{ (f(x))^k \right\} = \sum_{k=0}^m k a_k (f(x))^{k-1} D^\alpha f(x) \\ &= g'(f(x)) D^\alpha f(x). \end{aligned}$$

3. In the general case $g : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R} \in C^1$ we invoke the Weierstraß approximation theorem: We obtain a sequence of polynomials g_k , $k = 1, 2, \dots$, which converge together with their first derivatives g'_k locally uniformly on $\mathbb{R}$. Following part 2, the functions $h_k := g_k(f) \in W^{1,p}(\Omega) \cap L^\infty(\Omega)$ satisfy

$$D^\alpha h_k(x) = g'_k(f(x)) D^\alpha f(x) \quad \text{for all } \alpha \in \mathbb{N}_0^n, \quad |\alpha| = 1.$$

For all $\varphi \in C_0^\infty(\Omega)$ this implies

$$\begin{aligned} \int_{\Omega} g'_k(f(x)) (D^\alpha f(x)) \varphi(x) dx &= \int_{\Omega} (D^\alpha h_k(x)) \varphi(x) dx \\ &= (-1)^{|\alpha|} \int_{\Omega} h_k(x) D^\alpha \varphi(x) dx \end{aligned}$$

with arbitrary $|\alpha| = 1$. The passage to the limit $k \rightarrow \infty$ yields

$$\int_{\Omega} g'(f(x))(D^{\alpha}f(x))\varphi(x) dx = (-1)^{|\alpha|} \int_{\Omega} h(x)\partial^{\alpha}\varphi(x) dx$$

for all $\varphi \in C_0^{\infty}(\Omega)$. Finally, we obtain $D^{\alpha}h = g'(f)D^{\alpha}f \in L^p(\Omega)$, $|\alpha| = 1$.
q.e.d.

If the function $g : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ satisfies a Lipschitz condition

$$|g(y_1) - g(y_2)| \leq C|y_1 - y_2| \quad \text{for all } y_1, y_2 \in \mathbb{R}$$

and the property $f \in W^{1,p}(\Omega)$ holds true, then the composition $h := g \circ f$ belongs to the class $W^{1,p}(\Omega)$ as well. This is shown with the aid of Theorem 5, since we have

$$|\triangle_{i,\varepsilon}h(x)| = \left| \frac{g(f(x + \varepsilon e_i)) - g(f(x))}{\varepsilon} \right| \leq C \frac{|f(x + \varepsilon e_i) - f(x)|}{|\varepsilon|} = C|\triangle_{i,\varepsilon}f(x)|$$

for all $x \in \Omega$ and $0 < |\varepsilon| < \text{dist}\{x, \mathbb{R}^n \setminus \Omega\}$. In order to establish the chain rule, one needs a.e.-differentiability for the absolutely continuous function g .

We now shall prove an important special case of this statement directly.

Theorem 8. (Lattice property)

Taking the Sobolev function $f \in W^{1,p}(\Omega)$ with the exponent $1 < p < +\infty$, then the following functions

$$f^+(x) := \max\{f(x), 0\}, \quad f^-(x) := -\min\{f(x), 0\}, \quad |f|(x) := |f(x)|,$$

$$f_{-c,+c}(x) := \begin{cases} -c, & f(x) \leq -c \\ f(x), & -c < f(x) < +c \\ +c, & +c \leq f(x) \end{cases}$$

belong to the Sobolev space $W^{1,p}(\Omega)$, and we have

$$\begin{aligned} Df^+ &= \begin{cases} Df, & \text{if } f > 0 \\ 0, & \text{if } f \leq 0 \end{cases}, & Df^- &= \begin{cases} 0, & \text{if } f \geq 0 \\ -Df, & \text{if } f < 0 \end{cases}, \\ D|f| &= \begin{cases} Df, & \text{if } f > 0 \\ 0, & \text{if } f = 0 \\ -Df, & \text{if } f < 0 \end{cases}, & Df_{-c,+c} &= \begin{cases} Df, & \text{if } -c < f < +c \\ 0, & \text{else} \end{cases}. \end{aligned} \tag{13}$$

Here the symbol $Df = (D^{e_1}f, \dots, D^{e_n}f)$ denotes the weak gradient of f .

Proof:

1. On account of the identities $f^- = (-f)^+$, $|f| = f^+ + f^-$, and $f_{-c,+c} = (2c - (f - c)^-)^+ - c$ it suffices to investigate the function f^+ .
2. We consider $f \in W^{1,p}(\Omega)$ with the exponent $1 < p < +\infty$. Then the element f^+ belongs to $L^p(\Omega)$ as well, and its difference quotient satisfies

$$|\Delta_{i,\varepsilon} f^+(x)| = \left| \frac{f^+(x + \varepsilon e_i) - f^+(x)}{\varepsilon} \right| \leq \left| \frac{f(x + \varepsilon e_i) - f(x)}{\varepsilon} \right| = |\Delta_{i,\varepsilon} f(x)|$$

for all $x \in \Omega$ and all $0 < |\varepsilon| < \text{dist}\{x, \mathbb{R}^n \setminus \Omega\}$. According to Theorem 5 the function f^+ belongs to the class $W^{1,p}(\Omega)$ as well.

3. Let the function

$$g(y) := \begin{cases} y, & y > 0 \\ 0, & y \leq 0 \end{cases}$$

be given. For all $\delta > 0$ we approximate this function by the C^1 -functions

$$g_\delta(y) := \begin{cases} \sqrt{y^2 + \delta^2} - \delta, & y > 0 \\ 0, & y \leq 0 \end{cases}$$

with their derivatives

$$g'_\delta(y) = \begin{cases} \frac{y}{\sqrt{y^2 + \delta^2}}, & y > 0 \\ 0, & y \leq 0 \end{cases}.$$

Evidently, the inequalities

$$0 \leq g_\delta(y) \leq g(y), \quad 0 \leq g'_\delta(y) \leq \begin{cases} 1, & y > 0 \\ 0, & y \leq 0 \end{cases}$$

hold true for all $\delta > 0$, and we observe $g'_\delta(y) \uparrow 1$ ($\delta \downarrow 0$) for all $y > 0$.

4. Assuming $f \in W^{1,p}(\Omega)$, we consider the regularized function $f_\varepsilon \in C^\infty(\Omega)$ for all $\varepsilon > 0$. We differentiate the $C^1(\Omega)$ -function

$$h_{\varepsilon,\delta}(x) := g_\delta(f_\varepsilon(x)), \quad x \in \Omega,$$

and obtain

$$\partial^\alpha h_{\varepsilon,\delta}(x) = g'_\delta(f_\varepsilon(x)) \partial^\alpha f_\varepsilon(x) = g'_\delta(f_\varepsilon(x)) (D^\alpha f)_\varepsilon(x)$$

for all $\alpha \in \mathbb{N}_0^n$ with $|\alpha| = 1$. Taking an arbitrary test function $\varphi \in C_0^\infty(\Omega)$, we infer

$$\begin{aligned} \int_{\Omega} g'_\delta(f_\varepsilon(x)) (D^\alpha f)_\varepsilon(x) \varphi(x) dx &= \int_{\Omega} (\partial^\alpha h_{\varepsilon,\delta}(x)) \varphi(x) dx \\ &= (-1)^{|\alpha|} \int_{\Omega} h_{\varepsilon,\delta}(x) \partial^\alpha \varphi(x) dx \\ &= (-1)^{|\alpha|} \int_{\Omega} g_\delta(f_\varepsilon(x)) \partial^\alpha \varphi(x) dx \end{aligned}$$

for all $\alpha \in \mathbb{N}_0^n$ with $|\alpha| = 1$.

5. On account of the convergence $f_\varepsilon \rightarrow f$ and $(D^\alpha f)_\varepsilon \rightarrow D^\alpha f$ for $\varepsilon \rightarrow 0$ in $L^p(\Omega)$, the Lebesgue selection theorem from Chapter II, §4 gives us a subsequence $\varepsilon_k \downarrow 0$, such that $f_{\varepsilon_k} \rightarrow f$ and $(D^\alpha f)_{\varepsilon_k} \rightarrow D^\alpha f$ a.e. in Ω are correct. Via the Lebesgue convergence theorem we obtain the following identity observing $\varepsilon_k \downarrow 0$:

$$\int_{\Omega} g'_\delta(f(x))(D^\alpha f(x))\varphi(x) dx = (-1)^{|\alpha|} \int_{\Omega} g_\delta(f(x))\partial^\alpha \varphi(x) dx$$

for all $\varphi \in C_0^\infty(\Omega)$. The transition to the limit $\delta \rightarrow 0+$ yields

$$\begin{aligned} \int_{x \in \Omega: f(x) > 0} (D^\alpha f(x))\varphi(x) dx &= (-1)^{|\alpha|} \int_{x \in \Omega: f(x) > 0} f(x)\partial^\alpha \varphi(x) dx \\ &= (-1)^{|\alpha|} \int_{\Omega} f^+(x)\partial^\alpha \varphi(x) dx. \end{aligned}$$

Finally, we obtain

$$D^\alpha f^+(x) = \begin{cases} D^\alpha f(x), & f > 0 \\ 0, & f \leq 0 \end{cases}.$$

q.e.d.

§2 Embedding and compactness

We begin with the fundamental

Theorem 1. (Sobolev's embedding theorem)

Let the open bounded set $\Omega \subset \mathbb{R}^n$ with $n \geq 3$ and the exponent $1 \leq p < n$ be given. Then the Sobolev space $W_0^{1,p}(\Omega) \subset L^{\frac{np}{n-p}}(\Omega)$ is continuously embedded into the specified Lebesgue space: This means that the following estimate

$$\|f\|_{L^{\frac{np}{n-p}}(\Omega)} \leq C \|Df\|_{L^p(\Omega)} \quad \text{for all } f \in W_0^{1,p}(\Omega) \quad (1)$$

holds true with a constant $C = C(n, p) \in (0, +\infty)$. Here we denote the weak gradient by $Df := (D^{e_1} f, \dots, D^{e_n} f) \in L^p(\Omega) \times \dots \times L^p(\Omega)$.

Proof: (L. Nirenberg)

1. Because of the Definition 3 from §1 it suffices to prove the inequality (1) for all $f \in C_0^\infty(\Omega)$. In this context we need the *generalized Hölder inequality*, which can easily be deduced from Hölder's inequality by induction. For the integer $m \in \mathbb{N}$ with $m \geq 2$ we choose the exponents $p_1, \dots, p_m \in (1, \infty)$

satisfying $p_1^{-1} + \dots + p_m^{-1} = 1$. For all $f_j \in L^{p_j}(\Omega)$ with $j = 1, \dots, m$ then the following inequality holds true:

$$\int_{\Omega} f_1(x) \dots f_m(x) dx \leq \|f_1\|_{L^{p_1}(\Omega)} \dots \|f_m\|_{L^{p_m}(\Omega)}. \quad (2)$$

2. At first, we deduce the estimate (1) in the case $p = 1$. Noting $f \in C_0^\infty(\Omega)$, we have the following representation for all $x \in \mathbb{R}^n$:

$$f(x) = \int_{-\infty}^{x_i} D^{e_i} f(x_1, \dots, x_{i-1}, t, x_{i+1}, \dots, x_n) dt.$$

This implies

$$|f(x)| \leq \int_{-\infty}^{x_i} |D^{e_i} f| dt \leq \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} |D^{e_i} f| dx_i,$$

and consequently

$$|f(x)|^{\frac{n}{n-1}} \leq \left(\prod_{i=1}^n \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} |D^{e_i} f| dx_i \right)^{\frac{1}{n-1}}.$$

We integrate this inequality successively with respect to the variables $x_1, \dots, x_n$, using each time the generalized Hölder inequality with $p_1 = \dots = p_m = n-1$ and $m = n-1$. We then obtain

$$\begin{aligned} & \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} |f(x)|^{\frac{n}{n-1}} dx_1 \\ & \leq \left(\int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} |D^{e_1} f| dx_1 \right)^{\frac{1}{n-1}} \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} \prod_{i=2}^n \left(\int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} |D^{e_i} f| dx_i \right)^{\frac{1}{n-1}} dx_1 \\ & \leq \left(\int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} |D^{e_1} f| dx_1 \right)^{\frac{1}{n-1}} \prod_{i=2}^n \left(\int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} |D^{e_i} f| dx_i dx_1 \right)^{\frac{1}{n-1}}. \end{aligned}$$

A similar integration over the variables $x_2, \dots, x_n$ yields

$$\int_{\mathbb{R}^n} |f(x)|^{\frac{n}{n-1}} dx \leq \left(\prod_{i=1}^n \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} |D^{e_i} f| dx \right)^{\frac{1}{n-1}},$$

and finally

$$\begin{aligned}
 \|f\|_{\frac{n}{n-1}} &\leq \left(\prod_{i=1}^n \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} |D^{e_i} f| dx \right)^{\frac{1}{n}} \leq \frac{1}{n} \int_{\Omega} \left(\sum_{i=1}^n |D^{e_i} f| \right) dx \\
 &\leq \frac{1}{\sqrt{n}} \int_{\Omega} |Df| dx = \frac{1}{\sqrt{n}} \|Df\|_1
 \end{aligned} \tag{3}$$

for all $f \in C_0^\infty(\Omega)$.

3. We now consider the case $1 < p < n$. Here we insert $|f|^\gamma$ with $\gamma > 1$ into (3) and obtain the following relation with the aid of Hölder's inequality and the condition $p^{-1} + q^{-1} = 1$:

$$\begin{aligned}
 \| |f|^\gamma \|_{\frac{n}{n-1}} &\leq \frac{1}{\sqrt{n}} \int_{\Omega} |D|f|^\gamma| dx = \frac{\gamma}{\sqrt{n}} \int_{\Omega} |f|^{\gamma-1} |Df| dx \\
 &\leq \frac{\gamma}{\sqrt{n}} \| |f|^{\gamma-1} \|_q \|Df\|_p,
 \end{aligned} \tag{4}$$

and consequently

$$\|f\|_{\frac{\gamma n}{n-1}}^\gamma \leq \frac{\gamma}{\sqrt{n}} \|f\|_{(\gamma-1)q}^{\gamma-1} \|Df\|_p.$$

Choosing

$$\gamma := \frac{(n-1)p}{n-p} = \frac{np-p}{n-p},$$

we infer

$$\frac{\gamma n}{n-1} = (\gamma-1)q = \frac{np}{n-p}.$$

Finally, we arrive at

$$\|f\|_{\frac{np}{n-p}} \leq \frac{\gamma}{\sqrt{n}} \|Df\|_p \quad \text{for all } f \in C_0^\infty(\Omega).$$

With the constant

$$C := \frac{np-p}{\sqrt{n}(n-p)}$$

the statement above follows.

q.e.d.

Theorem 2. (Continuous embedding)

Let the assumptions of Theorem 1 with $p > n$ be satisfied. Then we have a constant $C = C(n, p, |\Omega|) \in (0, +\infty)$, such that

$$\|f\|_{C^0(\overline{\Omega})} := \sup_{x \in \overline{\Omega}} |f(x)| \leq C \|Df\|_{L^p(\Omega)} \quad \text{for all } f \in C_0^\infty(\Omega) \tag{5}$$

holds true. This implies $W_0^{1,p}(\Omega) \hookrightarrow C^0(\overline{\Omega})$, which means this Sobolev space is continuously embedded into the space $C^0(\overline{\Omega})$.

Proof:

1. When we have proved this inequality for open bounded sets $\Omega \subset \mathbb{R}^n$ whose measure fulfills $|\Omega| = 1$, we then obtain the inequality stated above by the transformation

$$y = x |\Omega|^{-\frac{1}{n}}, \quad x \in \Omega.$$

Therefore, we can assume $|\Omega| = 1$ in the sequel.

2. We utilize the inequality (4) and set

$$n' := \frac{n}{n-1} > p' := \frac{p}{p-1}, \quad \delta := \frac{n'}{p'} \in (1, \infty).$$

For all $\gamma \in (1, \infty)$ we therefore obtain the estimate

$$\left\| \frac{\sqrt{n}|f|^\gamma}{\|Df\|_p} \right\|_{n'} \leq \gamma \| |f|^{\gamma-1} \|_{p'}.$$

By multiplication with $\frac{\sqrt{n}^{\gamma-1}}{\|Df\|_p^{\gamma-1}}$ this implies

$$\left\| \left(\frac{\sqrt{n}|f|}{\|Df\|_p} \right)^\gamma \right\|_{n'} \leq \gamma \left\| \left(\frac{\sqrt{n}|f|}{\|Df\|_p} \right)^{\gamma-1} \right\|_{p'}.$$

Setting $g := \frac{\sqrt{n}}{\|Df\|_p} |f|$ we find

$$\|g^\gamma\|_{n'} \leq \gamma \|g^{\gamma-1}\|_{p'} \quad \text{for all } \gamma > 1$$

and consequently

$$\|g\|_{n'\gamma}^\gamma \leq \gamma \|g\|_{p'(\gamma-1)}^{\gamma-1} \leq \gamma \|g\|_{p'\gamma}^{\gamma-1}.$$

Finally, we obtain

$$\|g\|_{n'\gamma} \leq \gamma^{\frac{1}{\gamma}} \|g\|_{p'\gamma}^{1-\frac{1}{\gamma}} \quad \text{for all } \gamma > 1.$$

3. We now insert $\gamma := \delta^\nu$ with $\nu = 1, 2, \dots$ into the inequality above and get

$$\|g\|_{n'\delta^\nu} \leq \delta^{\nu\delta^{-\nu}} \|g\|_{n'\delta^{\nu-1}}^{1-\delta^{-\nu}}. \quad (6)$$

From (3), the fact that $|\Omega| = 1$, and Hölder's inequality we deduce

$$\|g\|_{n'} = \frac{\sqrt{n}}{\|Df\|_p} \|f\|_{n'} \leq \frac{\|Df\|_1}{\|Df\|_p} \leq 1.$$

With the aid of $|\Omega| = 1$ and Hölder's inequality we see that the sequence $\|g\|_{n'\delta^\nu}$, $\nu = 0, 1, 2, \dots$ increases weakly monotonically. Therefore, we have the following alternative: $\|g\|_{n'\delta^\nu} \leq 1$ for all ν – or there exists an index

$\lambda > 0$ satisfying $\|g\|_{n'\delta^\nu} \leq 1$ for all $\nu \leq \lambda$ and $\|g\|_{n'\delta^\nu} > 1$ for all $\nu > \lambda$. In the second case, we obtain the following estimate from the iteration formula (6) for $\mu > \lambda$:

$$\|g\|_{n'\delta^\mu} \leq \delta^{\sum_{\nu=\lambda+1}^{\mu} \nu \delta^{-\nu}} \|g\|_{n'\delta^\lambda}^{1-\delta^{-(\lambda+1)}} \leq \delta^{\sum_{\nu=1}^{\infty} \nu \delta^{-\nu}} =: c \in \mathbb{R}.$$

In each case we have $\|g\|_{L^\infty(\Omega)} \leq c$ and therefore

$$\|f\|_{L^\infty(\Omega)} \leq \frac{c}{\sqrt[n]{n}} \|Df\|_p \quad \text{for all } f \in C_0^\infty(\Omega).$$

This implies the statement above.

q.e.d.

If one intends to treat eigenvalue problems for partial differential equations with the aid of direct variational methods, we need the subsequent

Theorem 3. (Selection theorem of Rellich and Kondrachov)

Let $\Omega \subset \mathbb{R}^n$ with $n \geq 3$ denote a convex open bounded set and let $1 \leq p < n$ be an exponent. For all $1 \leq q < \frac{np}{n-p}$ and all $s \in [0, +\infty)$ then the set

$$\mathcal{K} := \left\{ f \in W_0^{1,p}(\Omega) \cap L^q(\Omega) : \|f\|_{W^{1,p}(\Omega)} \leq s \right\} \subset L^q(\Omega)$$

is compact: This means for each sequence $\{f_k\}_{k=1,2,\dots} \subset \mathcal{K}$ we can select a subsequence $\{f_{k_l}\}_{l=1,2,\dots}$ and an element $f \in L^q(\Omega)$ satisfying

$$\lim_{l \rightarrow \infty} \|f_{k_l} - f\|_{L^q(\Omega)} = 0.$$

Remarks:

1. F. Rellich discovered this result for the Hilbert spaces $W_0^{1,2}(\Omega) \hookrightarrow L^2(\Omega)$ in the year 1930. The general case was investigated later by Kondrachov.
2. The Banach space $\{\mathcal{B}_1, \|\cdot\|_1\}$ may be continuously embedded into the Banach space $\{\mathcal{B}_2, \|\cdot\|_2\}$. We call $\mathcal{B}_1$ *compactly embedded* into $\mathcal{B}_2$ if the injective mapping $I_1 : \mathcal{B}_1 \rightarrow \mathcal{B}_2$ is *compact*; this means that bounded sets in $\mathcal{B}_1$ are mapped on precompact sets in $\mathcal{B}_2$. Here a set $A \subset \mathcal{B}_2$ is called *precompact* if each sequence $\{f_k\}_{k=1,2,\dots} \subset A$ contains a subsequence converging in $\mathcal{B}_2$ with respect to the norm. Therefore, the theorem above indicates that $W_0^{1,p}(\Omega)$ is compactly embedded into the Lebesgue space $L^q(\Omega)$.

Proof of Theorem 3:

1. We start with an arbitrary sequence $\{f_k\}_{k=1,2,\dots} \subset \mathcal{K}$, and make the transition to a sequence $\{g_k\}_{k=1,2,\dots} \subset C_0^\infty(\Omega)$ with the property

$$\|g_k - f_k\|_{W^{1,p}(\Omega)} \leq \frac{1}{k}.$$

The latter satisfies the restriction

$$\|g_k\|_{W^{1,p}(\Omega)} \leq 1 + s \quad (7)$$

for all $k \in \mathbb{N}$. If we manage to select a subsequence $\{g_{k_l}\}_{l=1,2,\dots}$ convergent in $L^1(\Omega)$ from the sequence $\{g_k\}_{k=1,2,\dots}$, then the adjoint sequence $\{f_{k_l}\}_{l=1,2,\dots}$ is convergent in $L^1(\Omega)$ as well. Here, we observe the inequality

$$\|g_k - f_k\|_{L^1(\Omega)} \leq c\|g_k - f_k\|_{W^{1,p}(\Omega)} \leq \frac{c}{k}.$$

2. In order to show then that the sequence $\{f_{k_l}\}_{l=1,2,\dots}$ converges even in the space $L^q(\Omega)$ with $1 < q < \frac{np}{n-p}$, we apply the following *interpolation inequality*:

If the exponents $1 \leq p \leq q \leq r$ fulfill $\frac{1}{q} = \frac{\lambda}{p} + \frac{(1-\lambda)}{r}$ with $\lambda \in [0, 1]$, we conclude:

$$\|f\|_q \leq \|f\|_p^\lambda \|f\|_r^{1-\lambda} \quad \text{for all } f \in L^r(\Omega). \quad (8)$$

The proof of this interpolation estimate is established via Hölder's inequality. Noting

$$1 = \frac{\lambda q}{p} + \frac{(1-\lambda)q}{r} = \left(\frac{p}{\lambda q}\right)^{-1} + \left(\frac{r}{(1-\lambda)q}\right)^{-1}$$

we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} \|f\|_q &= \left(\int_{\Omega} |f|^{\lambda q} |f|^{(1-\lambda)q} dx \right)^{\frac{1}{q}} \\ &\leq \left(\int_{\Omega} |f|^p dx \right)^{\frac{\lambda}{p}} \left(\int_{\Omega} |f|^r dx \right)^{\frac{1-\lambda}{r}} \\ &= \|f\|_p^\lambda \|f\|_r^{1-\lambda}. \end{aligned}$$

We now choose a number $\lambda \in (0, 1)$ with the property $\frac{1}{q} = \lambda + (1-\lambda)\frac{n-p}{np}$, and Theorem 1 yields the estimate

$$\|f\|_q \leq \|f\|_1^\lambda \|f\|_{\frac{np}{n-p}}^{1-\lambda} \leq \|f\|_1^\lambda (C\|Df\|_p)^{1-\lambda}$$

for all $f \in W_0^{1,p}(\Omega)$. Therefore, we have

$$\|f_{k_l} - f_{k_m}\|_q \leq \tilde{C} \|f_{k_l} - f_{k_m}\|_1^\lambda \longrightarrow 0 \quad \text{for } l, m \rightarrow \infty.$$

Consequently, the sequence $\{f_{k_l}\}_{l=1,2,\dots}$ converges in $L^q(\Omega)$ if $\{g_{k_l}\}_{l=1,2,\dots}$ is convergent in $L^1(\Omega)$.

3. It still remains to select a subsequence convergent in $L^1(\Omega)$ from the sequence

$$\{g_k\}_{k=1,2,\dots} \subset C_0^\infty(\Omega).$$

Therefore, we take an arbitrary $\varepsilon \in (0, 1]$ and consider the sequence of functions

$$g_{k,\varepsilon}(x) := \frac{1}{\varepsilon^n} \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \varrho\left(\frac{x-y}{\varepsilon}\right) g_k(y) dy = \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \varrho(z) g_k(x - \varepsilon z) dz \in C_0^\infty(\Theta)$$

with

$$\Theta := \left\{ x \in \mathbb{R}^n : \text{dist}(x, \Omega) < 1 \right\}.$$

For each fixed $\varepsilon \in (0, 1]$ the sequence of functions $\{g_{k,\varepsilon}\}_{k=1,2,\dots}$ is uniformly bounded and equicontinuous: We namely have the following estimates for all $x \in \Theta$:

$$|g_{k,\varepsilon}(x)| \leq \frac{1}{\varepsilon^n} \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \varrho\left(\frac{x-y}{\varepsilon}\right) |g_k(y)| dy \leq \frac{C_0}{\varepsilon^n} \sup_{|z| \leq 1} \varrho(z)$$

and

$$\begin{aligned} |Dg_{k,\varepsilon}(x)| &\leq \frac{1}{\varepsilon^{n+1}} \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \left| D\varrho\left(\frac{x-y}{\varepsilon}\right) \right| |g_k(y)| dy \\ &\leq \varepsilon^{-(n+1)} \sup_{|z| \leq 1} |D\varrho(z)| \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} |g_k(y)| dy \\ &\leq \frac{C_0}{\varepsilon^{n+1}} \sup_{|z| \leq 1} |D\varrho(z)|. \end{aligned}$$

4. We apply the Arzelà-Ascoli theorem as follows: For each $\varepsilon > 0$ we have a subsequence $\{g_{k_l, \varepsilon}\}_{l=1,2,\dots}$ of the sequence $\{g_{k, \varepsilon}\}_{k=1,2,\dots}$ converging uniformly in the set $\overline{\Omega}$. We now set $\varepsilon_m = \frac{1}{m}$ with $m = 1, 2, \dots$; and with the aid of Cantor's diagonal procedure we select a subsequence $\{g_{k_l}\}_{l=1,2,\dots}$ of the sequence $\{g_k\}_{k=1,2,\dots}$ with the following property: For each fixed $m \in \mathbb{N}$ the sequence $\{g_{k_l, \varepsilon_m}\}_{l=1,2,\dots}$ converges uniformly in the set $\overline{\Omega}$.
5. We have the inequality

$$\begin{aligned} |g_k(x) - g_{k,\varepsilon}(x)| &\leq \int_{|z| \leq 1} \varrho(z) |g_k(x) - g_k(x - \varepsilon z)| dz \\ &\leq \int_{|z| \leq 1} \varrho(z) \int_0^\varepsilon |Dg_k(x - tz)| dt dz, \end{aligned}$$

for all $x \in \Omega$, which implies the estimate

$$\int_{\Omega} |g_k(x) - g_{k,\varepsilon}(x)| dx \leq \varepsilon \int_{\Omega} |Dg_k(x)| dx \leq C_1 \varepsilon$$

for all $k \in \mathbb{N}$. Choosing an arbitrary number $\varepsilon > 0$, we obtain the relation

$$\begin{aligned} \|g_{k_{l_1}} - g_{k_{l_2}}\|_{L^1(\Omega)} &\leq \|g_{k_{l_1}} - g_{k_{l_1}, \varepsilon_m}\|_{L^1(\Omega)} + \|g_{k_{l_1}, \varepsilon_m} - g_{k_{l_2}, \varepsilon_m}\|_{L^1(\Omega)} \\ &\quad + \|g_{k_{l_2}, \varepsilon_m} - g_{k_{l_2}}\|_{L^1(\Omega)} \\ &\leq (2C_1 + |\Omega|)\varepsilon \quad \text{for all } l_1, l_2 \geq l_0(\varepsilon). \end{aligned}$$

In this context, we determine $m = m(\varepsilon) \in \mathbb{N}$ sufficiently large and afterwards we choose $l_1, l_2 \geq l_0(\varepsilon, m(\varepsilon)) =: l_0(\varepsilon)$. Consequently, $\{g_{k_l}\}_{l=1,2,\dots}$ represents a Cauchy sequence in the space $L^1(\Omega)$ possessing a limit in $L^1(\Omega)$ - according to Theorem 3 from Chapter II, § 7.

q.e.d.

§3 Existence of weak solutions

From now on, we require $n \geq 3$ for the space dimension in this chapter. With adequate regularity assumptions, we consider a solution $v = v(x) : \Omega \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ on the open bounded set $\Omega \subset \mathbb{R}^n$ of the following elliptic differential equation in divergence form

$$\mathcal{L}v(x) := \sum_{i,j=1}^n \frac{\partial}{\partial x_j} \left(a_{ij}(x) \frac{\partial}{\partial x_i} v(x) \right) + c(x)v(x) = f(x), \quad x \in \Omega, \quad (1)$$

under Dirichlet's boundary conditions

$$v(x) = g(x), \quad x \in \partial\Omega. \quad (2)$$

Extending the boundary values $g = g(x)$ onto $\overline{\Omega}$, then the function $u(x) := v(x) - g(x)$, $x \in \overline{\Omega}$ solves the Dirichlet problem

$$\begin{aligned} - \sum_{i,j=1}^n \frac{\partial}{\partial x_j} \left(a_{ij}(x) \frac{\partial}{\partial x_i} u(x) \right) - c(x)u(x) \\ = -f(x) + c(x)g(x) + \sum_{i,j=1}^n \frac{\partial}{\partial x_j} \left(a_{ij}(x) \frac{\partial}{\partial x_i} g(x) \right), \quad x \in \Omega, \end{aligned} \quad (3)$$

under zero boundary conditions

$$u(x) = 0, \quad x \in \partial\Omega. \quad (4)$$

We now define the bilinear form

$$B(u, v) := \int_{\Omega} \left\{ \sum_{i,j=1}^n a_{ij}(x) D^{e_i} u(x) D^{e_j} v(x) - c(x)u(x)v(x) \right\} dx \quad (5)$$

and the linear form

$$F(v) := \int_{\Omega} \left\{ \left(-f(x) + c(x)g(x) \right) v(x) - \sum_{i,j=1}^n a_{ij}(x) D^{e_i} g(x) D^{e_j} v(x) \right\} dx. \quad (6)$$

Here the symbol D^{e_i} again denotes the weak derivative in the direction $e_i = (\delta_{1i}, \dots, \delta_{ni})$ with $i = 1, \dots, n$. Multiplying (3) by a test function $\varphi = \varphi(x) \in C_0^\infty(\Omega)$, the Gaussian integral theorem gives us the differential equation (3) in the weak form

$$B(u, \varphi) = F(\varphi) \quad \text{for all } \varphi \in C_0^\infty(\Omega) \quad (7)$$

under zero boundary conditions (4).

Now we fix the assumptions for the coefficients of the differential equation:

$$\begin{aligned} a_{ij}(x) &\in L^\infty(\Omega) && \text{for } i, j = 1, \dots, n, \\ a_{ij}(x) &= a_{ji}(x) && \text{a.e. in } \Omega \quad \text{for } i, j = 1, \dots, n, \\ \frac{1}{M} |\xi|^2 &\leq \sum_{i,j=1}^n a_{ij}(x) \xi_i \xi_j \leq M |\xi|^2 && \text{a.e. in } \Omega \quad \text{for all } \xi \in \mathbb{R}^n \end{aligned} \quad (8)$$

and

$$0 \leq -c(x) \quad \text{a.e. in } \Omega, \quad \|c\|_{L^\infty(\Omega)} \leq N \quad (9)$$

with the constants $M \in [1, +\infty)$ and $N \in [0, +\infty)$. We work in the Hilbert space $\mathcal{H} := W_0^{1,2}(\Omega)$ with the inner product

$$(u, v)_{\mathcal{H}} := \int_{\Omega} \left\{ Du(x) \cdot Dv(x) \right\} dx = \int_{\Omega} \left\{ \sum_{i=1}^n D^{e_i} u(x) D^{e_i} v(x) \right\} dx, \quad u, v \in \mathcal{H}. \quad (10)$$

According to the Sobolev embedding theorem, the induced norm

$$\|u\|_{\mathcal{H}} := \left(\int_{\Omega} |Du(x)|^2 dx \right)^{\frac{1}{2}}, \quad u \in \mathcal{H},$$

is equivalent to the norm of the space $W^{1,2}(\Omega)$ specified in § 1, Definition 2. For the right-hand side and the boundary condition we now assume

$$f(x) \in L^2(\Omega) \quad \text{and} \quad g(x) \in W^{1,2}(\Omega). \quad (11)$$

Then $F(v)$ defined in (6) becomes a bounded linear functional on $\mathcal{H}$. More precisely, we have a constant

$$b = b(\|f\|_{L^2(\Omega)}, \|g\|_{W^{1,2}(\Omega)}, M, N) \in [0, +\infty)$$

with the property

$$|F(v)| \leq b \|v\|_{\mathcal{H}} \quad \text{for all } v \in \mathcal{H}. \quad (12)$$

The representation theorem of Fréchet-Riesz in the Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}$ implies the existence of an element $w \in \mathcal{H}$ satisfying

$$(w, v)_{\mathcal{H}} = F(v) \quad \text{for all } v \in \mathcal{H}. \quad (13)$$

In the special situation $a_{ij}(x) = \delta_{ij}$ for $i, j = 1, \dots, n$ and $c(x) = 0$ a.e. in Ω , we have already found a solution $u = w$ of the weak differential equation (7). We emphasize that the representation theorem used above has been proved in Chapter II, §6 by direct variational methods.

In the general situation the coefficients satisfy the conditions (8) and (9), and we consider the symmetric bilinear form $B(u, v)$ for $u, v \in \mathcal{H}$ defined in (5). The latter is bounded and coercive, and therefore we have constants $c^{\pm} = c^{\pm}(M, N)$ with $0 < c^{-} \leq c^{+} < +\infty$, such that the inequalities

$$|B(u, v)| \leq c^{+} \|u\|_{\mathcal{H}} \|v\|_{\mathcal{H}} \quad \text{for all } u, v \in \mathcal{H} \quad (14)$$

and

$$B(u, u) \geq c^{-} \|u\|_{\mathcal{H}}^2 \quad \text{for all } u \in \mathcal{H} \quad (15)$$

are satisfied. Based on the Lax-Milgram theorem (compare Chapter VIII, §4 Theorem 10), we find a bounded symmetric operator $T : \mathcal{H} \rightarrow \mathcal{H}$ with $\|T\| \leq c^{+}$ possessing a bounded inverse $T^{-1} : \mathcal{H} \rightarrow \mathcal{H}$ with $\|T^{-1}\| \leq \frac{1}{c^{-}}$, such that

$$B(u, v) = (Tu, v)_{\mathcal{H}} \quad \text{for all } u, v \in \mathcal{H}. \quad (16)$$

This existence result is established by direct variational methods as well. The weak differential equation (7) therefore is transformed as follows:

$$(Tu, v)_{\mathcal{H}} = F(v) = (w, v)_{\mathcal{H}} \quad \text{for all } v \in \mathcal{H}. \quad (17)$$

With the element $u := T^{-1}w \in \mathcal{H}$ we obtain a solution of the weak differential equation (7).

Theorem 1. *With the assumptions (8) and (9) for the coefficients, the weak differential equation (7) has exactly one solution $u \in \mathcal{H}$ for all data (11).*

Proof: If we have two solutions u_1 and u_2 of (7), then the function $u = u_1 - u_2 \in \mathcal{H}$ satisfies the weak differential equation

$$B(u, \varphi) = 0 \quad \text{for all } \varphi \in \mathcal{H}. \quad (18)$$

We especially insert $\varphi = u$ and obtain

$$0 = B(u, u) \geq \frac{1}{M} \int_{\Omega} |Du(x)|^2 dx$$

and consequently $u(x) \equiv \text{const}$ in Ω . On account of $u \in W_0^{1,2}(\Omega)$ we conclude $u \equiv 0$ a.e. in Ω and finally $u_1 = u_2$.

q.e.d.

We now eliminate the sign condition in (9) and substitute this by the weaker assumption

$$c(x) \in L^\infty(\Omega), \quad \|c\|_{L^\infty(\Omega)} \leq N. \quad (19)$$

In order to solve the equation (7), we now consider the transferred bilinear form to a given $\sigma \in \mathbb{R}$, namely

$$B_\sigma(u, v) := \int_{\Omega} \left\{ \sum_{i,j=1}^n a_{ij}(x) D^{e_i} u(x) D^{e_j} v(x) + (\sigma - c(x)) u(x) v(x) \right\} dx \quad (20)$$

for $u, v \in \mathcal{H}$. Furthermore, we need the identical bilinear form

$$I(u, v) := \int_{\Omega} u(x) v(x) dx \quad (21)$$

for $u, v \in \mathcal{H}$. The equation (7) then appears in the equivalent form

$$B_\sigma(u, \varphi) - \sigma I(u, \varphi) = F(\varphi) \quad \text{for all } \varphi \in \mathcal{H}. \quad (22)$$

We now choose $\sigma \in \mathbb{R}$ so large that

$$\sigma - c(x) \geq 0 \quad \text{a.e. in } \Omega \quad (23)$$

is satisfied and the bilinear form $B_\sigma(u, v)$ becomes coercive. We additionally need the following

Proposition 1. *The mapping $K : \mathcal{H} \rightarrow \mathcal{H}$ satisfying*

$$(Ku, v)_\mathcal{H} = I(u, v) \quad \text{for all } u, v \in \mathcal{H} \quad (24)$$

is completely continuous.

Proof: Let $\{u_k\}_{k=1,2,\dots} \subset \mathcal{H}$ denote a sequence with $\|u_k\|_\mathcal{H} \leq \text{const}$ for all $k \in \mathbb{N}$. We then consider the continuous linear functionals

$$T_k := I(u_k, \cdot) : \mathcal{H} \rightarrow \mathbb{R} \in \mathcal{H}^*, \quad k = 1, 2, \dots$$

We apply the representation theorem of Fréchet-Riesz, and for each $k \in \mathbb{N}$ we have exactly one element $v_k =: Ku_k \in \mathcal{H}$, such that

$$I(u_k, \cdot) = T_k(\cdot) = (v_k, \cdot)_\mathcal{H} = (Ku_k, \cdot)_\mathcal{H}$$

is valid. The selection theorem of Rellich-Kondrachov allows the transition to a subsequence $\{u_{k_l}\}_{l=1,2,\dots}$ of $\{u_k\}_{k=1,2,\dots}$ satisfying

$$\|u_{k_l} - u_{k_m}\|_{L^2(\Omega)} \rightarrow 0 \quad (l, m \rightarrow \infty).$$

We obtain

$$\|Ku_{k_l} - Ku_{k_m}\|_{\mathcal{H}} = \|T_{k_l} - T_{k_m}\| \leq c\|u_{k_l} - u_{k_m}\|_{L^2(\Omega)} \rightarrow 0 \quad (l, m \rightarrow \infty).$$

Therefore, the operator $K : \mathcal{H} \rightarrow \mathcal{H}$ is completely continuous. q.e.d.

With the aid of the representations (13), (16), and (24) we transform (22) equivalently for σ from (23) :

$$(T_\sigma u, \varphi)_{\mathcal{H}} - \sigma(Ku, \varphi)_{\mathcal{H}} = (w, \varphi)_{\mathcal{H}} \quad \text{for all } \varphi \in \mathcal{H}. \quad (25)$$

When we insert $\varphi = T_\sigma^{-1}v$ into this equation, we obtain

$$(u, v)_{\mathcal{H}} - \sigma(T_\sigma^{-1} \circ Ku, v)_{\mathcal{H}} = (T_\sigma^{-1}w, v) \quad \text{for all } v \in \mathcal{H} \quad (26)$$

and consequently

$$(\text{Id}_{\mathcal{H}} - \sigma T_\sigma^{-1} \circ K)u = T_\sigma^{-1}w \quad (27)$$

with the completely continuous operator $T_\sigma^{-1} \circ K : \mathcal{H} \rightarrow \mathcal{H}$. According to Fredholm's theorem (compare Chapter VIII, § 6 Theorem 6) the null space

$$\mathcal{N} := \left\{ u \in \mathcal{H} : B(u, v) = 0 \text{ for all } v \in \mathcal{H} \right\} \quad (28)$$

is finite-dimensional with the orthogonal space

$$\mathcal{N}^\perp := \left\{ u \in \mathcal{H} : (u, v)_{\mathcal{H}} = 0 \text{ for all } v \in \mathcal{N} \right\}. \quad (29)$$

Choosing the right-hand side f and the boundary condition g from (11) such that its representation w from (13) satisfies the condition

$$T_\sigma^{-1}w \in \mathcal{N}^\perp, \quad (30)$$

then the weak differential equation (7) possesses a solution $u \in \mathcal{H}$. We finally obtain the following

Theorem 2. *With the assumptions (8) and (19) the solution space $\mathcal{N}$ of the homogeneous equation from (28) is finite-dimensional. To those data (11), whose linear form (6) allows a representation w from (13) such that $T_\sigma^{-1}w \in \mathcal{N}^\perp$ with $\sigma \in \mathbb{R}$ from (23) is satisfied, the weak differential equation (7) has a solution $u \in \mathcal{H}$.*

§4 Boundedness of weak solutions

We continue our considerations from §3 and quote those results by the added symbol *. We refer the reader to the bilinear form $B(u, v)$ from (5*) with the coefficients (8*) and (19*). With the aid of Moser's iteration method we prove the following

Theorem 1. (Stampacchia)

There exists a constant $C = C(M, N, n, |\Omega|) \in (0, +\infty)$, such that each weak solution $u \in \mathcal{H} := W_0^{1,2}(\Omega)$ of the elliptic differential equation

$$B(u, v) = 0 \quad \text{for all } v \in \mathcal{H} \quad (1)$$

satisfies the following estimate

$$\|u\|_{L^\infty(\Omega)} \leq C \|u\|_{L^2(\Omega)} \quad . \quad (2)$$

Proof:

1. We refer the reader to the proof of Theorem 2 from §2 for an orientation. Having already proved the inequality (2) for open bounded sets $\Omega \subset \mathbb{R}^n$ with the measure $|\Omega| = 1$, we obtain the general case by the following transformation

$$y = |\Omega|^{-\frac{1}{n}} x, \quad x \in \Omega. \quad (3)$$

The coefficients of the weak differential equation then additionally depend on $|\Omega|$. Therefore, we assume $|\Omega| = 1$ in the sequel, and the norm $\|u\|_p := \|u\|_{L^p(\Omega)}$ becomes weakly monotonically increasing with respect to $1 \leq p \leq \infty$ via Hölder's inequality.

2. We choose $K \in (0, +\infty)$ arbitrarily, and consider the function

$$\bar{u}(x) := \begin{cases} K, & u(x) \geq K \\ u(x), & -K < u(x) < K \\ -K, & u(x) \leq -K \end{cases} \quad (4)$$

of the class $W_0^{1,2}(\Omega) \cap L^\infty(\Omega)$. With the exponent

$$\beta \in [1, +\infty) \quad (5)$$

we insert the test functions

$$v(x) := \bar{u}(x)^\beta, \quad x \in \Omega, \quad (6)$$

into the weak differential equation (1). Together with the Sobolev embedding theorem, we obtain

$$\begin{aligned}
& \int_{\Omega} c(x)u(x)\bar{u}(x)^{\beta} dx \\
&= \beta \int_{\Omega} \left\{ \sum_{i,j=1}^n a_{ij}(x) D^{e_i} \bar{u}(x) D^{e_j} \bar{u}(x) \right\} \bar{u}(x)^{\beta-1} dx \\
&= \frac{4\beta}{(\beta+1)^2} \int_{\Omega} \left\{ \sum_{i,j=1}^n a_{ij}(x) D^{e_i} \left(\bar{u}(x)^{\frac{1}{2}(\beta+1)} \right) D^{e_j} \left(\bar{u}(x)^{\frac{1}{2}(\beta+1)} \right) \right\} dx \\
&\geq \frac{4\beta}{M(\beta+1)^2} \left\| D \left(\bar{u}^{\frac{1}{2}(\beta+1)} \right) \right\|_2^2 \\
&\geq \frac{4\beta}{M(\beta+1)^2 C(n,2)^2} \left\| \bar{u}^{\frac{1}{2}(\beta+1)} \right\|_{2\frac{n}{n-2}}^2.
\end{aligned} \tag{7}$$

3. For all $\beta \in [+1, +\infty)$ and $K \in (0, +\infty)$ we infer

$$\|\bar{u}\|_{\frac{n}{n-2}(\beta+1)}^{\beta+1} \leq \beta MNC(n,2)^2 \|u\|_{\beta+1}^{\beta+1}, \tag{8}$$

if $u \in L^{\beta+1}(\Omega)$ is satisfied. In (8) we pass to the limit $K \rightarrow +\infty$ and set

$$\delta := \frac{n}{n-2} \in (+1, +\infty) \quad \text{and} \quad \Gamma := MNC(n,2)^2 \in [0, +\infty).$$

Then we find an *iteration inequality*

$$\begin{aligned}
\|u\|_{\delta(\beta+1)} &\leq \sqrt[\beta+1]{\beta+1} \sqrt[\beta+1]{\Gamma} \|u\|_{\beta+1} \\
&\text{for all } \beta \in [+1, +\infty) \text{ if } u \in L^{\beta+1}(\Omega).
\end{aligned} \tag{9}$$

4. Noticing $u \in L^2(\Omega)$ we start the iteration with $\beta = 1$ and obtain

$$\|u\|_{2\delta} \leq \sqrt[2]{2} \sqrt[2]{\Gamma} \|u\|_2. \tag{10}$$

We then choose $\beta \in (1, +\infty)$ such that $\beta + 1 = 2\delta$, and from (9) we infer the inequality

$$\|u\|_{2\delta^2} \leq \sqrt[2\delta]{2\delta} \sqrt[2\delta]{2} \sqrt[2\delta]{\Gamma} \sqrt[2\delta]{\Gamma} \|u\|_2. \tag{11}$$

Continuation of this procedure yields for all $k \in \mathbb{N}$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\|u\|_{2\delta^k} &\leq \left(\prod_{j=0}^{k-1} \sqrt[2\delta^j]{2\delta^j} \right) \left(\prod_{j=0}^{k-1} \sqrt[2\delta^j]{\Gamma} \right) \|u\|_2 \\
&= (\sqrt{2})^{\sum_{j=0}^{k-1} (\frac{1}{\delta})^j} \left\{ \prod_{j=0}^{k-1} \left(\sqrt{\delta} \right)^{\delta^{-j}} \right\} (\sqrt{\Gamma})^{\sum_{j=0}^{k-1} (\frac{1}{\delta})^j} \|u\|_2 \\
&\leq (\sqrt{2})^{\sum_{j=0}^{\infty} (\frac{1}{\delta})^j} (\sqrt{\delta})^{\sum_{j=0}^{\infty} j(\frac{1}{\delta})^j} (\sqrt{\Gamma})^{\sum_{j=0}^{\infty} (\frac{1}{\delta})^j} \|u\|_2.
\end{aligned} \tag{12}$$

Observing $k \rightarrow +\infty$, we finally obtain the desired estimate

$$\|u\|_{L^\infty(\Omega)} \leq C(M, N, n, |\Omega|) \|u\|_2. \quad (13)$$

q.e.d.

Now we shall estimate weak solutions of the Dirichlet problem by their boundary values. In the bilinear form (5*) we require

$$c(x) = 0 \quad \text{a.e. in } \Omega, \quad (14)$$

and we obtain the *Dirichlet-Riemann bilinear form*

$$R(u, v) := \int_{\Omega} \left\{ \sum_{i,j=1}^n a_{ij}(x) D^{e_i} u(x) D^{e_j} v(x) \right\} dx \quad (15)$$

with the coefficients from (8*). The boundary function is prescribed as follows:

$$g = g(x) \in W^{1,2}(\Omega) \cap C^0(\overline{\Omega}). \quad (16)$$

Theorem 2. (L^∞ -boundary-estimate)

Let $u = u(x) \in W^{1,2}(\Omega)$ denote a weak solution of the differential equation

$$R(u, v) = 0 \quad \text{for all } v \in \mathcal{H} \quad (17)$$

with the weak boundary values

$$u - g \in W_0^{1,2}(\Omega). \quad (18)$$

Then we have

$$\mu := \inf_{y \in \partial\Omega} g(y) \leq u(x) \leq \sup_{y \in \partial\Omega} g(y) =: \nu \quad \text{for almost all } x \in \Omega. \quad (19)$$

Proof: Since the problem is invariant with respect to translations, we can always assume $\mu = 0$ by the transition $u(x) \mapsto u(x) - \mu$. We now show

$$u(x) \geq 0 \quad \text{a.e. in } \Omega. \quad (20)$$

If (20) were violated, we then would consider the nonvanishing function

$$u^-(x) := \begin{cases} u(x), & u(x) < 0 \\ 0, & u(x) \geq 0 \end{cases} \quad (21)$$

of the class $W_0^{1,2}(\Omega)$. When we insert this function into (17), we attain a contradiction with the relation

$$0 = R(u, u^-) > 0. \quad (22)$$

Therefore, the inequality (20) is valid. On account of the invariance with respect to translations, we can additionally achieve $\nu = 0$. Then we can reduce the second part of the inequality (19) to the statement (20) by the reflection $u(x) \mapsto -u(x)$.

q.e.d.

Remark: Further L^∞ -estimates for weak solutions are contained in [GT] 8.5.

§5 Hölder continuity of weak solutions

We quote the results from §3 by the added symbol $*$ and those from §4 by $**$. With

$$K_r(y) := \left\{ x \in \mathbb{R}^n : |x - y| \leq r \right\}$$

we denote the closed balls of radius $r \in (0, +\infty)$ about the center $y \in \mathbb{R}^n$. We consider the bilinear form $B(u, v)$ from (5*) again, with the coefficients (8*) and (19*). With the aid of Moser's iteration method we now show the profound

Theorem 1. (Moser's inequality)

Let $u = u(x) \in W^{1,2}(\Omega) \cap L^\infty(\Omega)$ with the property $u(x) \geq 0$ a.e. in Ω be a solution of the weak differential inequality

$$B(u, v) \geq 0 \quad \text{for all } v \in \mathcal{H} \text{ satisfying } v(x) \geq 0 \text{ a.e. in } \Omega. \quad (1)$$

Then we have a constant $C = C(M, Nr^2, n) \in (0, +\infty)$, such that the integral means over all balls $K_{4r}(y) \subset \overline{\Omega}$ satisfy the following inequality:

$$\int_{K_{2r}(y)} u(x) dx := \frac{1}{|K_{2r}(y)|} \int_{K_{2r}(y)} u(x) dx \leq C \inf_{x \in K_r(y)} u(x). \quad (2)$$

Remarks:

1. With a function $u(x) \in W^{1,2}(\Omega) \cap L^\infty(\Omega)$ we naturally define

$$\inf_{x \in \Omega} u(x) := \inf \left\{ c \in \mathbb{R} : \{x \in \Omega : u(x) \leq c\} \text{ is not a null-set} \right\}. \quad (3)$$

2. If $\Omega \subset \mathbb{R}^n$ is a domain, Theorem 1 implies the *principle of unique continuation*: A nonnegative solution of (1) vanishes on the set Ω , if we have a point $y \in \Omega$ and a radius $r_0 > 0$ such that

$$\inf_{x \in K_r(y)} u(x) = 0 \quad \text{for all balls } K_r(y) \subset \Omega \text{ with } 0 < r < r_0.$$

Proof of Theorem 1:

1. We choose $r_0 = r_0(n) > 0$ such that

$$|K_{3r_0}(y)| = 1 \quad (4)$$

is valid. For all $0 < r \leq 3r_0$ then the $\|\cdot\|_{L^p(K_r(y))}$ -norm becomes monotonically increasing with respect to $1 \leq p \leq +\infty$. Let the point $y \in \Omega$ be chosen to be fixed such that $K_{4r_0}(y) \subset \overline{\Omega}$ is correct. At first, we show the estimate (2) with $r = r_0$ and afterwards we prove the general case by a scaling argument. For measurable functions $v = v(x) : \Omega \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ satisfying

$$0 < \varepsilon \leq v(x) \leq \frac{1}{\varepsilon} \quad \text{a.e. in } \Omega \quad (5)$$

with fixed $\varepsilon > 0$, we define the positive-homogeneous function

$$\|v\|_{p, K_r(y)} := \left(\int_{K_r(y)} v(x)^p dx \right)^{\frac{1}{p}} \quad (6)$$

for all $p \in \mathbb{R}$ and all $0 < r \leq 3r_0$. In the interval $p \geq 1$ we obtain the familiar L^p -norm, and we see that

$$\begin{aligned} \lim_{p \rightarrow -\infty} \|v\|_{p, K_r(y)} &= \frac{1}{\lim_{p \rightarrow -\infty} \left(\int_{K_r(y)} \left(\frac{1}{v(x)} \right)^{-p} dx \right)^{\frac{1}{-p}}} \\ &= \frac{1}{\left\| \frac{1}{v} \right\|_{L^\infty(K_r(y))}} = \frac{1}{\sup_{K_r(y)} \frac{1}{v}} = \inf_{K_r(y)} v. \end{aligned} \quad (7)$$

By the symbol $\eta = \eta_{r, \varrho}(x) : \Omega \rightarrow \mathbb{R} \in W^{1, \infty}(\Omega)$ for $0 < r + \varrho \leq 3r_0$ we denote the piecewise linear, radially symmetric, annihilating function with the properties

$$\eta(x) \begin{cases} = 1, & x \in K_r(y) \\ \in [0, 1], & x \in K_{r+\varrho}(y) \setminus K_r(y) \\ = 0, & x \in \Omega \setminus K_{r+\varrho}(y) \end{cases} \quad (8)$$

and

$$|D\eta(x)| \leq \frac{1}{\varrho} \quad \text{a.e. in } \Omega. \quad (9)$$

2. Into the weak differential inequality (1) we now insert the following test function

$$v(x) := \eta(x)^2 \bar{u}(x)^\beta, \quad x \in \Omega, \quad (10)$$

with

$$\bar{u}(x) := u(x) + \varepsilon, \quad x \in \Omega, \quad (11)$$

and the exponents

$$-\infty < \beta < -1 \quad \text{and} \quad -1 < \beta < 0. \quad (12)$$

Here we have chosen $\varepsilon > 0$ in (11) to be fixed. We observe $v \in W_0^{1,2}(\Omega)$ and calculate

$$\begin{aligned}
& \int_{\Omega} c(x)u(x)\bar{u}(x)^{\beta}\eta(x)^2 dx \\
& \leq \beta \int_{\Omega} \left\{ \sum_{i,j=1}^n a_{ij}(x)D^{e_i}\bar{u}(x)D^{e_j}\bar{u}(x) \right\} \bar{u}(x)^{\beta-1}\eta(x)^2 dx \\
& \quad + 2 \int_{\Omega} \left\{ \sum_{i,j=1}^n a_{ij}(x)D^{e_i}\bar{u}(x)D^{e_j}\eta(x) \right\} \bar{u}(x)^{\beta}\eta(x) dx \\
& = \frac{4\beta}{(\beta+1)^2} \int_{\Omega} \left\{ \sum_{i,j=1}^n a_{ij}(x)D^{e_i}\left(\bar{u}(x)^{\frac{1}{2}(\beta+1)}\eta(x)\right)D^{e_j}\left(\bar{u}(x)^{\frac{1}{2}(\beta+1)}\eta(x)\right) \right\} dx \\
& \quad - \frac{4\beta}{(\beta+1)^2} \int_{\Omega} \left\{ \sum_{i,j=1}^n a_{ij}(x)D^{e_i}\eta(x)D^{e_j}\eta(x) \right\} \bar{u}(x)^{\beta+1} dx \\
& \quad + \left(2 - \frac{4\beta}{\beta+1}\right) \int_{\Omega} \left\{ \sum_{i,j=1}^n a_{ij}(x)D^{e_i}\bar{u}(x)D^{e_j}\eta(x) \right\} \bar{u}(x)^{\beta}\eta(x) dx \\
& = \frac{4\beta}{(\beta+1)^2} \int_{\Omega} \left\{ \sum_{i,j=1}^n a_{ij}(x)D^{e_i}\left(\bar{u}(x)^{\frac{1}{2}(\beta+1)}\eta(x)\right)D^{e_j}\left(\bar{u}(x)^{\frac{1}{2}(\beta+1)}\eta(x)\right) \right\} dx \\
& \quad - \frac{4}{(\beta+1)^2} \int_{\Omega} \left\{ \sum_{i,j=1}^n a_{ij}(x)D^{e_i}\eta(x)D^{e_j}\eta(x) \right\} \bar{u}(x)^{\beta+1} dx \\
& \quad - 4\frac{\beta-1}{(\beta+1)^2} \int_{\Omega} \left\{ \sum_{i,j=1}^n a_{ij}(x)D^{e_i}\left(\bar{u}(x)^{\frac{1}{2}(\beta+1)}\eta(x)\right)D^{e_j}\eta(x) \right\} \bar{u}(x)^{\frac{1}{2}(\beta+1)} dx.
\end{aligned} \tag{13}$$

Then we obtain the following inequality for all $\beta \in (-\infty, -1) \cup (-1, 0)$:

$$\int_{\Omega} \left\{ \sum_{i,j=1}^n a_{ij}(x)D^{e_i}\left(\bar{u}(x)^{\frac{1}{2}(\beta+1)}\eta(x)\right)D^{e_j}\left(\bar{u}(x)^{\frac{1}{2}(\beta+1)}\eta(x)\right) \right\} dx =$$

$$\begin{aligned}
&\leq \frac{1}{4}(1+\beta)\left(1+\frac{1}{\beta}\right) \int_{\Omega} c(x)u(x)\bar{u}(x)^{\beta}\eta(x)^2 dx \\
&\quad + \left(1-\frac{1}{\beta}\right) \int_{\Omega} \left\{ \sum_{i,j=1}^n a_{ij}(x) D^{e_i} \left(\bar{u}(x)^{\frac{1}{2}(\beta+1)} \eta(x) \right) D^{e_j} \eta(x) \right\} \bar{u}(x)^{\frac{1}{2}(\beta+1)} dx \\
&\quad + \frac{1}{\beta} \int_{\Omega} \left\{ \sum_{i,j=1}^n a_{ij}(x) D^{e_i} \eta(x) D^{e_j} \eta(x) \right\} \bar{u}(x)^{\beta+1} dx \\
&\leq \frac{1}{4}(1+\beta)\left(1+\frac{1}{\beta}\right) \int_{\Omega} c(x)u(x)\bar{u}(x)^{\beta}\eta(x)^2 dx \\
&\quad + \frac{1}{2} \int_{\Omega} \left\{ \sum_{i,j=1}^n a_{ij}(x) D^{e_i} \left(\bar{u}(x)^{\frac{1}{2}(\beta+1)} \eta(x) \right) D^{e_j} \left(\bar{u}(x)^{\frac{1}{2}(\beta+1)} \eta(x) \right) \right\} dx \\
&\quad + \left\{ \frac{1}{\beta} + \frac{1}{2} \left(1-\frac{1}{\beta}\right)^2 \right\} \int_{\Omega} \left\{ \sum_{i,j=1}^n a_{ij}(x) D^{e_i} \eta(x) D^{e_j} \eta(x) \right\} \bar{u}(x)^{\beta+1} dx.
\end{aligned} \tag{14}$$

Finally, we deduce the estimate

$$\begin{aligned}
&\int_{\Omega} \left\{ \sum_{i,j=1}^n a_{ij}(x) D^{e_i} \left(\bar{u}(x)^{\frac{1}{2}(\beta+1)} \eta(x) \right) D^{e_j} \left(\bar{u}(x)^{\frac{1}{2}(\beta+1)} \eta(x) \right) \right\} dx \\
&\leq \frac{1}{2}(1+\beta)\left(1+\frac{1}{\beta}\right) \int_{\Omega} c(x)u(x)\bar{u}(x)^{\beta}\eta(x)^2 dx \\
&\quad + \left(1+\frac{1}{\beta^2}\right) \int_{\Omega} \left\{ \sum_{i,j=1}^n a_{ij}(x) D^{e_i} \eta(x) D^{e_j} \eta(x) \right\} \bar{u}(x)^{\beta+1} dx
\end{aligned} \tag{15}$$

for all $\beta \in (-\infty, -1) \cup (-1, 0)$.

3. We now apply Sobolev's embedding theorem with $p = 2$. Let $\delta \in (1, \frac{n}{n-2}]$ be chosen, and furthermore we assume $0 < r + \varrho \leq 3r_0$. We take the definition of η into account and obtain the following estimate for all $\beta \in (-\infty, -1) \cup (-1, 0)$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\|\bar{u}\|_{\delta(\beta+1), K_r}^{\beta+1} &= \left(\int_{K_r} |\bar{u}(x)|^{\delta(\beta+1)} dx \right)^{\frac{1}{\delta}} = \|\bar{u}^{\frac{1}{2}(\beta+1)} \eta\|_{L^{2\delta}(K_r)}^2 \\
&\leq \|\bar{u}^{\frac{1}{2}(\beta+1)} \eta\|_{L^{\frac{2n}{n-2}}(\Omega)}^2 \leq C(n, 2)^2 \|D(\bar{u}^{\frac{1}{2}(\beta+1)} \eta)\|_{L^2(\Omega)}^2 \\
&\leq MC(n, 2)^2 \int_{\Omega} \left\{ \sum_{i,j=1}^n a_{ij} D^{e_i} \left(\bar{u}^{\frac{1}{2}(\beta+1)} \eta \right) D^{e_j} \left(\bar{u}^{\frac{1}{2}(\beta+1)} \eta \right) \right\} dx \\
&\leq MC(n, 2)^2 \left\{ \frac{1}{2} |1 + \beta| \left| 1 + \frac{1}{\beta} \right| N + \left(1 + \frac{1}{\beta^2} \right) \frac{M}{\varrho^2} \right\} \|\bar{u}\|_{\beta+1, K_{r+\varrho}}^{\beta+1}.
\end{aligned} \tag{16}$$

4. In part 8 of the proof, we determine a number $p_0 = p_0(M, N, n) > 0$ and a constant $C_0 = C_0(M, N, n) > 0$, such that

$$\|\bar{u}\|_{p_0, K_{3r_0}} \leq C_0 \|\bar{u}\|_{-p_0, K_{3r_0}}. \tag{17}$$

We now choose $\delta \in (1, \frac{n}{n-2}]$ and $\nu \in \mathbb{N}_0$ satisfying

$$\begin{aligned}
\delta^j p_0 &\in (0, 1) \quad \text{for } j = 0, \dots, \nu - 1, \\
\delta^\nu p_0 &\in (1, +\infty).
\end{aligned} \tag{18}$$

Taking $j = 0, \dots, \nu$ we consider the balls $K_{\varrho_j} \subset \Omega$ with the radii $\varrho_j := 3r_0 - j \frac{r_0}{\nu}$. Formula (16) then yields a constant $\tilde{C}_+ = \tilde{C}_+(M, N, n) > 0$, such that

$$\|\bar{u}\|_{\delta^j p_0, K_{\varrho_j}} \leq \tilde{C}_+ \|\bar{u}\|_{\delta^{j-1} p_0, K_{\varrho_{j-1}}} \quad \text{for } j = 1, \dots, \nu \tag{19}$$

holds true. An iteration ν -times finally reveals the following estimate:

$$\|\bar{u}\|_{L^1(K_{2r_0})} \leq \|\bar{u}\|_{\delta^\nu p_0, K_{\varrho_\nu}} \leq C_+(M, N, n) \|\bar{u}\|_{p_0, K_{3r_0}}. \tag{20}$$

5. From (16) we obtain the following inequalities for all $\beta \leq -1 - p_0$ abbreviating $\delta := \frac{n}{n-2}$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\|\bar{u}\|_{\delta(\beta+1), K_r}^{\beta+1} &\leq MC(n, 2)^2 \left\{ \frac{1}{2} |\beta + 1| N + \frac{2M}{\varrho^2} \right\} \|\bar{u}\|_{\beta+1, K_{r+\varrho}}^{\beta+1} \\
&\leq \frac{\tilde{C}_-(M, N, n) |\beta + 1|}{\varrho^2} \|\bar{u}\|_{\beta+1, K_{r+\varrho}}^{\beta+1}
\end{aligned}$$

with a constant $\tilde{C}_- = \tilde{C}_-(M, N, n) > 0$ and

$$\|\bar{u}\|_{\beta+1, K_{r+\varrho}} \leq \left(\frac{\tilde{C}_-(M, N, n) |\beta + 1|}{\varrho^2} \right)^{\frac{1}{|\beta+1|}} \|\bar{u}\|_{\delta(\beta+1), K_r} \tag{21}$$

assuming $0 < r + \varrho \leq 3r_0$. When we choose

$$\varrho_j := 3r_0 - 2r_0 \sum_{l=1}^j \frac{1}{2^l}, \quad j = 0, 1, 2, \dots,$$

the relation (21) yields the iteration inequality

$$\|\bar{u}\|_{-\delta^j p_0, K_{\varrho_j}} \leq \tilde{C}_-^{\frac{\delta-j}{p_0}} (\delta^j p_0)^{\frac{\delta-j}{p_0}} \left(\frac{2^{2j}}{r_0^2} \right)^{\frac{\delta-j}{p_0}} \|\bar{u}\|_{-\delta^{j+1} p_0, K_{\varrho_{j+1}}} \quad (22)$$

for $j = 0, 1, 2, \dots$. This implies the estimate

$$\begin{aligned} \|\bar{u}\|_{-p_0, K_{3r_0}} &\leq \left\{ \left({}^{p_0}\sqrt{\tilde{C}_-} \right)^{\sum_{j=0}^k (\frac{1}{\delta})^j} \left({}^{p_0}\sqrt{\delta} \right)^{\sum_{j=0}^k j(\frac{1}{\delta})^j} \left({}^{p_0}\sqrt{p_0} \right)^{\sum_{j=0}^k (\frac{1}{\delta})^j} \right. \\ &\quad \cdot \left. \left({}^{p_0}\sqrt{4} \right)^{\sum_{j=0}^k j(\frac{1}{\delta})^j} \left({}^{p_0}\sqrt{r_0^{-2}} \right)^{\sum_{j=0}^k (\frac{1}{\delta})^j} \right\} \|\bar{u}\|_{-\delta^{k+1} p_0, K_{\varrho_{k+1}}} \\ &\leq C_-(M, N, n) \|\bar{u}\|_{-\delta^{k+1} p_0, K_{\varrho_{k+1}}}, \quad k = 0, 1, 2, \dots \end{aligned} \quad (23)$$

The passage to the limit $k \rightarrow \infty$ finally gives

$$\|\bar{u}\|_{-p_0, K_{3r_0}} \leq C_-(M, N, n) \inf_{x \in K_{r_0}} \bar{u}(x). \quad (24)$$

6. From (20), (17), and (24) we obtain

$$\|\bar{u}\|_{L^1(K_{2r_0})} \leq C_+ \|\bar{u}\|_{p_0, K_{3r_0}} \leq C_+ C_0 \|\bar{u}\|_{-p_0, K_{3r_0}} \leq C_+ C_0 C_- \inf_{x \in K_{r_0}} \bar{u}(x).$$

Setting $C = C(M, N, n) := C_+ C_0 C_-$ and observing the independence of this constant from $\varepsilon > 0$, the transition to the limit $\varepsilon \rightarrow 0+$ yields the following inequality:

$$\|u\|_{L^1(K_{2r_0})} \leq C(M, N, n) \inf_{x \in K_{r_0}} u(x). \quad (25)$$

This implies Moser's inequality (2) for the case $r = r_0$ with $r_0 = r_0(n) > 0$ from (4).

Having chosen $y \in \Omega$ and $r > 0$ with $K_{4r}(y) \subset \overline{\Omega}$, we then observe the transition from u to

$$u^*(x) := u\left(\frac{r}{r_0}x\right), \quad x \in K_{4r_0}\left(\frac{r_0}{r}y\right). \quad (26)$$

The function $u^* = u^*(x)$ satisfies a weak differential inequality (1) in $K_{4r_0}(\frac{r_0}{r}y)$ with the coefficients $a_{ij} \in L^\infty(K_{4r_0}(\frac{r_0}{r}y))$ defined in (8*) and

$$c \in L^\infty\left(K_{4r_0}\left(\frac{r_0}{r}y\right)\right), \quad \|c\|_{L^\infty(K_{4r_0}(\frac{r_0}{r}y))} \leq \frac{Nr^2}{r_0^2}.$$

The arguments above therefore yield the inequalities

$$\|u^*\|_{L^1(K_{2r_0}(\frac{r_0}{r}y))} \leq C(M, Nr^2, n) \inf_{x \in K_{r_0}(\frac{r_0}{r}y)} u^*(x)$$

and

$$\frac{r_0^n}{r^n} \int_{K_{2r}(y)} u(x) dx \leq C(M, Nr^2, n) \inf_{x \in K_r(y)} u(x).$$

Now the proof of our theorem is complete, if we still show (17).

7. To this aim we deduce a growth condition for Dirichlet's integral from the weak differential inequality. With the annihilating function $\eta(x)$ from (8) for $\varrho = r$ and with $\bar{u}(x)$ from (11), we insert the following test function into the inequality (1):

$$v(x) := \eta(x)^2 \bar{u}(x)^{-1}, \quad x \in \Omega. \quad (27)$$

We remark that this function coincides with v from (10) for $\beta = -1$! We then obtain

$$\begin{aligned} & \int_{\Omega} c(x) u(x) \bar{u}(x)^{-1} \eta(x)^2 dx \\ & \leq - \int_{\Omega} \left\{ \sum_{i,j=1}^n a_{ij}(x) D^{e_i} \bar{u}(x) D^{e_j} \bar{u}(x) \right\} \bar{u}(x)^{-2} \eta(x)^2 dx \\ & \quad + 2 \int_{\Omega} \left\{ \sum_{i,j=1}^n a_{ij}(x) D^{e_i} \bar{u}(x) D^{e_j} \eta(x) \right\} \bar{u}(x)^{-1} \eta(x) dx \\ & = - \int_{\Omega} \left\{ \sum_{i,j=1}^n a_{ij}(x) D^{e_i} (\log \bar{u}(x)) D^{e_j} (\log \bar{u}(x)) \right\} \eta(x)^2 dx \\ & \quad + 2 \int_{\Omega} \left\{ \sum_{i,j=1}^n a_{ij}(x) \left[\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \eta(x) D^{e_i} (\log \bar{u}(x)) \right] \left[\sqrt{2} D^{e_j} \eta(x) \right] \right\} dx \\ & \leq - \frac{1}{2} \int_{\Omega} \left\{ \sum_{i,j=1}^n a_{ij}(x) D^{e_i} (\log \bar{u}(x)) D^{e_j} (\log \bar{u}(x)) \right\} \eta(x)^2 dx \\ & \quad + 2 \int_{\Omega} \left\{ \sum_{i,j=1}^n a_{ij}(x) D^{e_i} \eta(x) D^{e_j} \eta(x) \right\} dx. \end{aligned} \quad (28)$$

We now define the function

$$w(x) := \log \bar{u}(x), \quad x \in \Omega,$$

and from (28) we infer the estimate

$$\begin{aligned}
 \int_{K_r(y)} |Dw(x)|^2 dx &\leq M \int_{\Omega} \left\{ \sum_{i,j=1}^n a_{ij}(x) D^{e_i} w(x) D^{e_j} w(x) \right\} \eta(x)^2 dx \\
 &\leq 2M \int_{\Omega} |c(x)| \bar{u}(x) \bar{u}(x)^{-1} \eta(x)^2 dx \\
 &\quad + 4M \int_{\Omega} \left\{ \sum_{i,j=1}^n a_{ij}(x) D^{e_i} \eta(x) D^{e_j} \eta(x) \right\} dx \\
 &\leq 2M \left\{ N + \frac{2M}{r^2} \right\} |K_{2r}(y)| \leq C_1(M, N, n) r^{n-2}
 \end{aligned}$$

for $r \leq r_0(n)$. Therefore, the growth condition

$$\int_{K_r(y)} |Dw(x)| dx \leq \sqrt{\kappa_n} r^{\frac{n}{2}} \left(\int_{K_r(y)} |Dw(x)|^2 dx \right)^{\frac{1}{2}} \leq C_2(M, N, n) r^{n-1} \quad (29)$$

follows for all balls $K_{2r}(y) \subset \Omega$ with $r \leq r_0(n)$. Here κ_n denotes the volume of the n -dimensional unit ball.

8. We now apply the regularity theorem of John and Nirenberg to the function $w(x)$ (see Theorem 1 in §6) : Taking $y \in \Omega$ with $K_{4r_0}(y) \subset \Omega$ we define

$$w_0 := |K_{3r_0}(y)|^{-1} \int_{K_{3r_0}(y)} w(x) dx.$$

Then there exists a constant $p_0 = p_0(M, N, n) > 0$, such that

$$\int_{K_{3r_0}(y)} \exp \{ p_0 |w(x) - w_0| \} dx \leq C_3(M, N, n). \quad (30)$$

This implies

$$\int_{K_{3r_0}(y)} \exp \{ p_0 (\pm w(x) \mp w_0) \} dx \leq C_3(M, N, n)$$

and consequently

$$\int_{K_{3r_0}(y)} \exp \{ \pm p_0 w(x) \} \leq e^{\pm p_0 w_0} C_3(M, N, n).$$

We then obtain by multiplication

$$\int_{K_{3r_0}(y)} \exp\{p_0 w(x)\} dx \cdot \int_{K_{3r_0}(y)} \exp\{-p_0 w(x)\} dx \leq C_3(M, N, n)^2$$

and finally

$$\|\bar{u}\|_{p_0, K_{3r_0}(y)} \leq C_4(M, N, n) \|\bar{u}\|_{-p_0, K_{3r_0}(y)}.$$

This is the desired estimate (17).

q.e.d.

We now prove the important

Theorem 2. (de Giorgi, Nash)

Let $u = u(x) \in W^{1,2}(\Omega) \cap L^\infty(\Omega)$ denote a solution of the weak differential equation

$$R(u, v) = 0 \quad \text{for all } v \in \mathcal{H} = W_0^{1,2}(\Omega) \quad (31)$$

with the Dirichlet-Riemann bilinear form $R(u, v)$ from (15**). Then we have constants $C = C(M, n) \in (0, +\infty)$ and $\alpha = \alpha(M, n) \in (0, 1)$, such that the oscillation estimate

$$\operatorname{osc}_{K_r(y)} u \leq C \left(\frac{r}{r_0} \right)^\alpha \operatorname{osc}_{K_{r_0}(y)} u, \quad 0 < r \leq r_0, \quad (32)$$

holds true for all balls $K_{r_0}(y) \subset \Omega$. Here the oscillation is defined by

$$\operatorname{osc}_{K_r(y)} u := \sup_{K_r(y)} u - \inf_{K_r(y)} u. \quad (33)$$

Proof:

1. We abbreviate $K_r = K_r(y)$, and for $0 < r \leq \frac{1}{4}r_0$ we introduce the quantities

$$M_4 = \sup_{K_{4r}} u, \quad m_4 = \inf_{K_{4r}} u, \quad M_1 = \sup_{K_r} u, \quad m_1 = \inf_{K_r} u.$$

The functions $M_4 - u$ and $u - m_4$ are nonnegative in $K_{4r} \subset K_{r_0} \subset \Omega$, and they satisfy the following weak differential equation (31) there. Moser's inequality now yields

$$\begin{aligned} |K_{2r}|^{-1} \int_{K_{2r}} \{M_4 - u(x)\} dx &\leq C(M, n)(M_4 - M_1), \\ |K_{2r}|^{-1} \int_{K_{2r}} \{u(x) - m_4\} dx &\leq C(M, n)(m_1 - m_4). \end{aligned} \quad (34)$$

Addition gives us

$$M_4 - m_4 \leq C\{(M_4 - m_4) - (M_1 - m_1)\}$$

and

$$M_1 - m_1 \leq \left(1 - \frac{1}{C}\right)(M_4 - m_4) \quad ,$$

respectively. Therefore, we obtain the oscillation estimate

$$\operatorname{osc}_{K_r} u \leq \gamma \operatorname{osc}_{K_{4r}} u \quad \text{with} \quad \gamma := 1 - \frac{1}{C} \in (0, 1). \quad (35)$$

2. We then consider the monotonically increasing function

$$\omega(r) := \operatorname{osc}_{K_r} u, \quad 0 < r \leq r_0, \quad (36)$$

with the growth property

$$\omega(r) \leq \gamma \omega(4r) \quad \text{for} \quad 0 < r \leq \frac{1}{4}r_0. \quad (37)$$

To each number $r \in (0, \frac{1}{4}r_0]$ we have an integer $k \in \mathbb{N}$ satisfying

$$\left(\frac{1}{4}\right)^{k+1} r_0 < r \leq \left(\frac{1}{4}\right)^k r_0, \quad (38)$$

and we choose $\alpha = \alpha(M, n) \in (0, 1)$, such that

$$\gamma \leq \left(\frac{1}{4}\right)^\alpha. \quad (39)$$

From (37)-(39) we infer the estimate

$$\begin{aligned} \omega(r) &\leq \omega\left(\left(\frac{1}{4}\right)^k r_0\right) \leq \gamma^k \omega(r_0) \\ &\leq \left(\frac{1}{4^k}\right)^\alpha \omega(r_0) \leq \left(\frac{4r}{r_0}\right)^\alpha \omega(r_0), \quad 0 < r \leq \frac{1}{4}r_0, \end{aligned}$$

or equivalently

$$\operatorname{osc}_{K_r} u \leq 4^\alpha \left(\frac{r}{r_0}\right)^\alpha \operatorname{osc}_{K_{r_0}} u, \quad 0 < r \leq r_0. \quad (40)$$

The monotonicity of $\omega(r)$ namely implies (40) for $\frac{1}{4}r_0 \leq r \leq r_0$. q.e.d.

Remarks:

1. Requiring an exterior cone condition for the domain Ω , one can even prove Hölder continuity of the solution up to the boundary. We refer the reader to Theorem 2 from § 7 in this context.
2. With suitable assumptions on the coefficient matrix $(a_{ij}(x))_{i,j=1,\dots,n}$, one obtains higher regularity of the solution by the Schauder theory from Chapter IX. Here one should locally reconstruct the weak solution by the classical $C^{2+\alpha}$ -solution.

Theorem 3. (J. Moser)

Let $u = u(x) \in W^{1,2}(\mathbb{R}^n) \cap L^\infty(\mathbb{R}^n)$ denote an entire solution of the weak differential equation

$$R(u, v) = 0 \quad \text{for all } v \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^n). \quad (41)$$

Then we have

$$u(x) \equiv \text{const} \quad \text{in } \mathbb{R}^n.$$

Proof: We infer the following estimate from Theorem 2:

$$\text{osc}_{K_r(0)} u \leq C \left(\frac{r}{r_0} \right)^\alpha \text{osc}_{\mathbb{R}^n} u, \quad 0 < r \leq r_0 < +\infty. \quad (42)$$

The passage to the limit $r_0 \rightarrow +\infty$ yields

$$\text{osc}_{K_r(0)} u = 0 \quad \text{for all } 0 < r < +\infty.$$

Therefore, the solution u is constant.

q.e.d.

For later use in §9 we still provide the following

Theorem 4. (Harnack-Moser inequality)

Let $u = u(x) \in W^{1,2}(\Omega) \cap C^0(\overline{\Omega})$ with the property $u(x) > 0$, $x \in \overline{\Omega}$ be a positive solution of the weak differential equation

$$R(u, v) = 0 \quad \text{for all } v \in \mathcal{H}.$$

Then we have a constant $C = C(M, n) \in (0, +\infty)$, such that the following inequality

$$\sup_{x \in K_r(y)} u(x) \leq C \inf_{x \in K_r(y)} u(x)$$

is fulfilled for all balls $K_{4r}(y) \subset \overline{\Omega}$.

Proof: We have to supplement the proof of Moser's inequality in Theorem 1 as follows: We insert the test functions (10) with arbitrary positive powers $\beta \in (0, +\infty)$ into the weak differential equation. Now the constant $N = 0$ vanishes, the inequality (13) turns into an equation $0 = \dots$, and via the estimates (14) and (15) we arrive at the decisive inequality

$$\|\bar{u}\|_{\delta(\beta+1), K_r}^{\beta+1} \leq MC(n, 2)^2 \left(1 + \frac{1}{\beta^2}\right) \frac{M}{\varrho^2} \|\bar{u}\|_{\beta+1, K_{r+e}}^{\beta+1} \quad \text{for all } \beta \in (0, +\infty) \quad (43)$$

parallel to (16). When we define $p_1 := \delta^\nu p_0 \in (1, +\infty)$ from (18), we easily obtain a constant $\tilde{C}_{++}(M, n)$ such that the estimate

$$\|\bar{u}\|_{\delta(\beta+1), K_r} \leq \left(\frac{\tilde{C}_{++}(M, n)}{\varrho^2} \right)^{\frac{1}{\beta+1}} \|\bar{u}\|_{\beta+1, K_{r+e}} \quad \text{for all } \beta \geq p_1 - 1 \quad (44)$$

holds true - parallel to (21) - with $\delta := \frac{n}{n-2}$. Now we introduce the radii

$$\varrho_j := 2r_0 - r_0 \sum_{l=1}^j \frac{1}{2^l}, \quad j = 0, 1, 2, \dots$$

and employ Moser's iteration technique - as described in (22) and (23). Thus we obtain a constant $C_{++}(M, n)$ such that

$$\begin{aligned} & \|\bar{u}\|_{\delta^{k+1}p_1, K_{\varrho_{k+1}}} \leq \\ & \left\{ \left(\sqrt[p_1]{\tilde{C}_{++}} \right)^{\sum_{j=0}^k (\frac{1}{\delta})^j} \left(\sqrt[p_1]{4} \right)^{\sum_{j=0}^k (j+1)(\frac{1}{\delta})^j} \left(\sqrt[p_1]{r_0^{-2}} \right)^{\sum_{j=0}^k (\frac{1}{\delta})^j} \right\} \|\bar{u}\|_{p_1, K_{\varrho_0}} \quad (45) \\ & \leq C_{++}(M, n) \|\bar{u}\|_{p_1, K_{2r_0}}, \quad k = 0, 1, 2, \dots \end{aligned}$$

is valid. Then we evaluate the limit

$$\lim_{p \rightarrow +\infty} \|\bar{u}\|_{p, K_{r_0}}(y) = \sup_{x \in K_{r_0}(y)} \bar{u}(x) \quad (46)$$

in formula (45) and arrive at the estimate

$$\sup_{x \in K_{r_0}(y)} \bar{u}(x) \leq C_{++}(M, n) \|\bar{u}\|_{p_1, K_{2r_0}} \quad (47)$$

Combining this inequality with the estimates (20), (17), and (24) we finally obtain the Harnack-Moser inequality. q.e.d.

§6 Weak potential-theoretic estimates

Let $\Omega \subset \mathbb{R}^n$ denote an open ball with radius $R > 0$ about the center $x_0 \in \mathbb{R}^n$. By the symbol ω_n we denote the area of the unit sphere in $\mathbb{R}^n$.

Definition 1. For the numbers $\mu \in (0, 1]$ we define the Riesz operator

$$\mathbb{V}_\mu f(x) := \int_{\Omega} |x - y|^{n(\mu-1)} f(y) dy \quad \text{for all } f \in C_0^\infty(\Omega). \quad (1)$$

Proposition 1. The linear operator $\mathbb{V}_\mu : L^1(\Omega) \rightarrow L^1(\Omega)$ is continuous for all $\mu \in (0, 1]$ and satisfies

$$\|\mathbb{V}_\mu f\|_{L^1(\Omega)} \leq \frac{\omega_n}{n\mu} (2R)^{n\mu} \|f\|_{L^1(\Omega)} \quad \text{for all } f \in L^1(\Omega). \quad (2)$$

Proof: We choose $f \in C_0^\infty(\Omega)$ and estimate as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}
 \|\mathbb{V}_\mu f\|_{L^1(\Omega)} &= \int_{\Omega} |\mathbb{V}_\mu f(x)| \, dx \\
 &\leq \int_{\Omega} \left\{ \int_{\Omega} |x - y|^{n(\mu-1)} |f(y)| \, dy \right\} dx \\
 &\leq \int_{\Omega} |f(y)| \left\{ \int_{x:|x-y|\leq 2R} |x - y|^{n(\mu-1)} \, dx \right\} dy.
 \end{aligned} \tag{3}$$

In polar coordinates we deduce

$$\int_{x:|x-y|\leq 2R} |x - y|^{n(\mu-1)} \, dx = \int_0^{2R} \varrho^{n\mu-n} \omega_n \varrho^{n-1} \, d\varrho = \frac{\omega_n}{n\mu} (2R)^{n\mu}. \tag{4}$$

From (3) and (4) we infer the statement (2). q.e.d.

Definition 2. For $1 \leq p \leq +\infty$ the measurable function f belongs to Morrey's class of functions $M^p(\Omega)$ if and only if

$$\int_{\Omega \cap K_r(x)} |f(y)| \, dy \leq L r^{n(1-\frac{1}{p})} \quad \text{for all } x \in \Omega, \quad r > 0 \tag{5}$$

is satisfied, with a constant $L \in [0, +\infty)$.

Remark: Evidently $L^p(\Omega) \subset M^p(\Omega)$ holds true for all $1 \leq p \leq +\infty$.

When we remember part 7 in the proof of Theorem 1 from § 5, we should concentrate on the class $M^n(\Omega)$.

Proposition 2. Let $f \in M^n(\Omega)$ and $\frac{1}{n} < \mu \leq 1$ be satisfied. Then we have

$$|\mathbb{V}_\mu f(x)| \leq (2R)^{n\mu-1} \frac{n-1}{n\mu-1} L \quad \text{a.e. in } \Omega. \tag{6}$$

Proof: We fix the point $x \in \Omega$ and consider the function

$$\Phi(r) := \int_{\Omega \cap K_r(x)} |f(y)| \, dy, \quad 0 < r < 2R, \tag{7}$$

with the derivative

$$\Phi'(r) = \int_{\Omega \cap \partial K_r(x)} |f(y)| \, d\sigma(y). \tag{8}$$

Then we obtain the following estimate for almost all $x \in \Omega$

$$\begin{aligned}
 |\nabla_\mu f(x)| &\leq \int_{\Omega} |y-x|^{n\mu-n} |f(y)| dy \\
 &= \int_0^{2R} r^{n\mu-n} \left\{ \int_{\Omega \cap \partial K_r(x)} |f(y)| d\sigma(y) \right\} dr = \int_0^{2R} r^{n\mu-n} \Phi'(r) dr \\
 &= [r^{n\mu-n} \Phi(r)]_{0+}^{2R} - (n\mu - n) \int_0^{2R} r^{n\mu-n-1} \Phi(r) dr \\
 &\leq (2R)^{n\mu-n} L(2R)^{n-1} + n(1-\mu) \int_0^{2R} r^{n\mu-n-1} Lr^{n-1} dr \\
 &= L \left\{ (2R)^{n\mu-1} + n(1-\mu) \frac{1}{n\mu-1} [r^{n\mu-1}]_0^{2R} \right\} \\
 &= L(2R)^{n\mu-1} \frac{n-1}{n\mu-1},
 \end{aligned}$$

and consequently (6).

q.e.d.

Proposition 3. *The functions $f \in M^n(\Omega)$ are subject to the following estimate*

$$\int_{\Omega} \exp \left\{ \frac{\gamma}{(n-1)L} |\nabla_{\frac{1}{n}} f(x)| \right\} dx \leq C(n, \gamma) R^n \quad (9)$$

for each $\gamma \in (0, \frac{1}{e})$, with a constant $C = C(n, \gamma) > 0$.

Proof: For $k = 1, 2, \dots$ we note that

$$|x-y|^{1-n} = |x-y|^{n(\frac{1}{nk}-1)\frac{1}{k}} |x-y|^{n(\frac{1}{nk}+\frac{1}{n}-1)(1-\frac{1}{k})}.$$

With the aid of Hölder's inequality we deduce

$$\begin{aligned}
 &|\nabla_{\frac{1}{n}} f(x)| \\
 &\leq \int_{\Omega} \left\{ |x-y|^{n(\frac{1}{nk}-1)\frac{1}{k}} |f(y)|^{\frac{1}{k}} \right\} \left\{ |x-y|^{n(\frac{1}{nk}+\frac{1}{n}-1)(1-\frac{1}{k})} |f(y)|^{1-\frac{1}{k}} \right\} dy \\
 &\leq \left(\int_{\Omega} |x-y|^{n(\frac{1}{nk}-1)} |f(y)| dy \right)^{\frac{1}{k}} \left(\int_{\Omega} |x-y|^{n(\frac{1}{nk}+\frac{1}{n}-1)} |f(y)| dy \right)^{1-\frac{1}{k}}
 \end{aligned}$$

and therefore

$$\begin{aligned}
 |\nabla_{\frac{1}{n}} f(x)|^k &\leq \left(\nabla_{\frac{1}{nk}} |f|(x) \right) \left(\nabla_{(\frac{1}{n}+\frac{1}{nk})} |f|(x) \right)^{k-1} \\
 &\text{for all } x \in \Omega \text{ and } k = 1, 2, \dots
 \end{aligned} \quad (10)$$

Via Proposition 1 and 2 we estimate for $k = 1, 2, \dots$ as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}
 \int_{\Omega} |\mathbb{V}_{\frac{1}{n}} f(x)|^k dx &\leq \left\{ \sup_{x \in \Omega} \mathbb{V}_{(\frac{1}{n} + \frac{1}{nk})} |f|(x) \right\}^{k-1} \int_{\Omega} \mathbb{V}_{\frac{1}{nk}} |f|(x) dx \\
 &\leq (2R)^{\frac{k-1}{k}} \{k(n-1)\}^{k-1} L^{k-1} k \omega_n (2R)^{\frac{1}{k}} \|f\|_{L^1(\Omega)} \\
 &\leq 2R k^k (n-1)^{k-1} L^{k-1} \omega_n L R^{n-1} \\
 &= 2 \frac{\omega_n}{n-1} R^n \{(n-1)L\}^k k^k.
 \end{aligned}$$

Consequently, we arrive at

$$\int_{\Omega} \frac{1}{k!} \left\{ \frac{\gamma}{(n-1)L} |\mathbb{V}_{\frac{1}{n}} f(x)| \right\}^k dx \leq 2 \frac{\omega_n}{n-1} R^n \frac{(\gamma k)^k}{k!} \quad \text{for } k = 0, 1, 2, \dots \quad (11)$$

The summation over $k = 0, 1, 2, \dots$ yields

$$\int_{\Omega} \exp \left\{ \frac{\gamma}{(n-1)L} |\mathbb{V}_{\frac{1}{n}} f(x)| \right\} dx \leq 2 \frac{\omega_n}{n-1} R^n \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{(\gamma k)^k}{k!}.$$

We investigate the convergence of the series $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} a_k$ by the quotient test with $a_k := \frac{(\gamma k)^k}{k!}$:

$$\frac{a_{k+1}}{a_k} = \frac{\{\gamma(k+1)\}^{k+1} k!}{(k+1)! (\gamma k)^k} = \gamma \left(1 + \frac{1}{k}\right)^k \xrightarrow{k \rightarrow \infty} \gamma e < 1.$$

Therefore, we find a constant $C = C(n, \gamma) \in (0, +\infty)$ satisfying

$$\int_{\Omega} \exp \left\{ \frac{\gamma}{(n-1)L} |\mathbb{V}_{\frac{1}{n}} f(x)| \right\} dx \leq C(n, \gamma) R^n.$$

q.e.d.

Proposition 4. We take $u = u(x) \in W^{1,1}(\Omega)$ and set

$$u_0 := \frac{1}{|\Omega|} \int_{\Omega} u(x) dx.$$

Then we have the inequality

$$|u(x) - u_0| \leq \frac{2^n}{n \kappa_n} \int_{\Omega} |x - y|^{1-n} |Du(y)| dy, \quad (12)$$

where κ_n denotes the volume of the n -dimensional unit ball.

Proof: Due to the Meyers-Serrin theorem it suffices to prove the inequality (12) in the class of functions $u = u(x) \in C^1(\Omega) \cap W^{1,1}(\Omega)$. We choose $x, y \in \Omega$ arbitrarily and note that

$$u(x) - u(y) = - \int_0^{|x-y|} \frac{d}{dr} u(x + r\zeta) dr \quad \text{with} \quad \zeta := \frac{y-x}{|y-x|}.$$

We integrate over Ω with respect to y and obtain

$$|\Omega|(u(x) - u_0) = - \int_{\Omega} \left\{ \int_0^{|x-y|} \frac{d}{dr} u(x + r\zeta) dr \right\} dy.$$

Now we define the $L^1(\mathbb{R}^n)$ -function

$$v(x) := \begin{cases} |Du(x)|, & x \in \Omega \\ 0, & x \notin \Omega \end{cases}.$$

On account of $|\frac{d}{dr} u(x + r\zeta)| \leq |Du(x + r\zeta)|$ we then get the estimate

$$\begin{aligned} |u(x) - u_0| &\leq \frac{1}{|\Omega|} \int_{\Omega} \left\{ \int_0^{|x-y|} |Du(x + r\zeta)| dr \right\} dy \\ &\leq \frac{1}{|\Omega|} \int_{K_{2R}(x)} \left\{ \int_0^{\infty} v(x + r\zeta) dr \right\} dy \\ &= \frac{1}{|\Omega|} \int_0^{\infty} \left\{ \int_{K_{2R}(x)} v(x + r\zeta) dy \right\} dr. \end{aligned}$$

We introduce polar coordinates due to $y = x + \varrho\zeta$, and for fixed $r \in (0, +\infty)$ we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} \int_{K_{2R}(x)} v(x + r\zeta) dy &= \int_{|\zeta|=1} \left\{ \int_0^{2R} v(x + r\zeta) \varrho^{n-1} d\varrho \right\} d\sigma(\zeta) \\ &= \frac{(2R)^n}{n} \int_{|\zeta|=1} v(x + r\zeta) d\sigma(\zeta) \end{aligned}$$

and consequently

$$|u(x) - u_0| \leq \frac{(2R)^n}{n|\Omega|} \int_0^{\infty} \left\{ \int_{|\zeta|=1} v(x + r\zeta) d\sigma(\zeta) \right\} dr. \quad (13)$$

With the notation $z = x + r\zeta$, $dz = |x - z|^{n-1} dr d\sigma(\zeta)$ and the definition of v we infer the following inequality from (13):

$$|u(x) - u_0| \leq \frac{2^n}{n\kappa_n} \int_{\Omega} |x - z|^{1-n} |Du(z)| dz. \quad \text{q.e.d.}$$

We summarize our results to the subsequent

Theorem 1. (John, Nirenberg)

Let the function $u = u(x) \in W^{1,1}(\Omega)$ satisfy the growth condition

$$\int_{\Omega \cap K_r(y)} |Du(x)| dx \leq Lr^{n-1} \quad \text{for all } y \in \Omega, \quad r > 0 \quad (14)$$

with a constant $L > 0$. Then we have a constant $C = C(n, \gamma) > 0$ for each $\gamma \in (0, \frac{1}{e})$, such that

$$\int_{\Omega} \exp \left\{ \frac{n\kappa_n \gamma}{2^n(n-1)L} |u(x) - u_0| \right\} dx \leq C(n, \gamma) R^n \quad (15)$$

holds true.

Proof: On account of (14) the function $f(x) := |Du(x)|$, $x \in \Omega$, belongs to Morrey's class $M^n(\Omega)$. From Proposition 4 we infer

$$\frac{n\kappa_n}{2^n} |u(x) - u_0| \leq \mathbb{V}_{\frac{1}{n}} f(x), \quad x \in \Omega.$$

Then Proposition 3 yields the desired estimate (15). q.e.d.

Now we require a higher growth condition in (14) and deduce Hölder continuity directly. In this context we modify Proposition 2 to the following

Proposition 5. Let $f \in M^p(\Omega)$ with $n < p < +\infty$ be given. Then we have the estimate

$$|\mathbb{V}_{\frac{1}{n}} f(x)| \leq C(n, p) \cdot R^\alpha \quad \text{a.e. in } \Omega \quad (16)$$

with the Hölder constant $C(n, p) \in (0, +\infty)$ and the Hölder exponent $\alpha = 1 - \frac{n}{p} \in (0, 1)$.

Proof: We follow the arguments in the proof of Proposition 2 utilizing (7) and (8). Then we obtain the subsequent estimate for almost all $x \in \Omega$, namely

$$\begin{aligned}
 |\mathbb{V}_{\frac{1}{n}} f(x)| &\leq \int_0^{2R} r^{1-n} \Phi'(r) dr \\
 &= [r^{1-n} \Phi(r)]_{0+}^{2R} + (n-1) \int_0^{2R} r^{-n} \Phi(r) dr \\
 &\leq (2R)^{1-n} \Phi(2R) + (n-1)L \int_0^{2R} r^{-\frac{n}{p}} dr \\
 &\leq L \left\{ (2R)^{1-\frac{n}{p}} + \frac{n-1}{1-\frac{n}{p}} [r^{1-\frac{n}{p}}]_0^{2R} \right\} \\
 &= L \left\{ 2^\alpha + \frac{n-1}{1-\frac{n}{p}} 2^\alpha \right\} \cdot R^\alpha \\
 &=: LC(n, p) \cdot R^\alpha .
 \end{aligned}$$

q.e.d.

In order to establish regularity for solutions of variational problems, we prove the fundamental

Theorem 2. (C.B. Morrey)

Let $\Theta \subset \mathbb{R}^n$ denote a bounded domain where the function $u = u(x) \in W^{1,1}(\Theta)$ may satisfy Morrey's growth condition

$$\int_{\Theta \cap K_r(x)} |Du(y)| dy \leq Lr^{n-\frac{n}{p}} \quad \text{for almost all } x \in \Theta \quad \text{and all } r > 0 \quad ; \quad (17)$$

with $n < p < +\infty$ and $L \in (0, +\infty)$.

Then we find a constant $C = C(n, p, \Theta_0) > 0$ for each open set $\Theta_0 \subset\subset \Theta$, such that the Hölder estimate

$$|u(y) - u(z)| \leq C|y - z|^\alpha \quad \text{for all } y, z \in \Theta_0 \quad (18)$$

holds true; with the Hölder exponent $\alpha = 1 - \frac{n}{p} \in (0, 1)$.

Proof: We take $y, z \in \Theta_0$ with $R := |y - z| \leq \text{dist}(\Theta_0, \partial\Theta)$ and define

$$\Omega := \{x \in \mathbb{R}^n : |x - x_0| \leq R\} \quad ,$$

where $x_0 := y$ is chosen. On account of (17), the function

$$f(x) := |Du(x)|, \quad x \in \Omega$$

belongs to Morrey's class $M^p(\Omega)$. Proposition 5 in combination with Proposition 4 implies

$$|u(x) - u_0| \leq \frac{2^n}{n\kappa_n} C(n, p) \cdot R^\alpha \quad \text{a.e. in } \Omega. \quad (19)$$

Now we arrive at the inequality

$$|u(y) - u(z)| \leq |u(y) - u_0| + |u(z) - u_0| \leq \frac{2^{n+1}}{n\kappa_n} C(n, p) \cdot R^\alpha =: C(n, p, \Theta_0) |y - z|^\alpha$$

for all $y, z \in \Theta_0 \subset \subset \Theta$. q.e.d.

Remark: When we require the following *growth condition for Dirichlet's integral*, namely

$$\int_{\Theta \cap K_r(x)} |Du(y)|^2 dy \leq L r^{n - \frac{2n}{p}} \quad \text{for almost all } x \in \Theta \quad \text{and all } r > 0 \quad (20)$$

with $2 \leq n < p < +\infty$ and $0 < L < +\infty$, the Morrey growth condition (17) is obviously satisfied. This regularity criterion has been originally invented by C.B. Morrey in the case $n = 2$.

Finally we note the

Theorem 3. (Morrey's embedding theorem)

Let $\Theta \subset \mathbb{R}^n$ denote a bounded domain and $u \in W_0^{1,p}(\Theta)$ a Sobolev function with the exponent $n < p < +\infty$. Then u belongs to the class $C^\alpha(\overline{\Theta})$ with the Hölder exponent $\alpha = 1 - \frac{n}{p}$.

Proof: We continue u trivially beyond $\partial\Theta$ and preserve the $W^{1,1}$ -regularity. On account of

$$Du \in L^p(\Theta) \subset M^p(\Theta) \quad \text{with} \quad n < p < +\infty, \quad ,$$

we have Morrey's growth condition globally on Θ . Then Theorem 2 implies our corollary. q.e.d.

§7 Boundary behavior of weak solutions

We continue the considerations from §5 and need the following variant of Moser's inequality in this section.

Theorem 1. (Trudinger)

Let $u = u(x) \in W^{1,2}(\Omega) \cap L^\infty(\Omega)$ with $u(x) \geq 0$ a.e. in Ω denote a weak solution of the differential equation

$$R(u, v) = 0 \quad \text{for all } v \in \mathcal{H} := W_0^{1,2}(\Omega) \quad (1)$$

with the Dirichlet-Riemann bilinear form $R(u, v)$ given in formula (15) from §4. With $y \in \partial\Omega$ and $r > 0$ we furthermore assume $u \in C^0(\partial\Omega \cap K_{4r}(y))$, and we set

$$m \in \left[0, \inf_{\partial\Omega \cap K_{4r}(y)} u(x)\right].$$

Then we have a constant $C = C(M, n) \in (0, +\infty)$, such that the extended function

$$w(x) = [u]^m(x) := \begin{cases} m, & x \in K_{4r}(y) \setminus \Omega \\ \inf\{u(x), m\}, & x \in \Omega \end{cases} \quad (2)$$

satisfies the following estimate

$$\int_{K_{2r}(y)} w(x) dx := \frac{1}{|K_{2r}(y)|} \int_{K_{2r}(y)} w(x) dx \leq C \inf_{x \in K_r(y)} w(x). \quad (3)$$

Proof: We have only to consider the case $m > 0$ and transfer the proof of Theorem 1 in §5 to this situation. Here we define the set

$$\Omega^m := \{x \in \Omega : u(x) < m\}.$$

The function u is continuous in Ω according to §5, Theorem 2 and therefore Ω^m represents an open set. In the case $\Omega^m \cap K_{4r}(y) = \emptyset$ we have nothing to show. Otherwise we define the positive function

$$\bar{w}(x) := \frac{1}{m + \varepsilon} (w(x) + \varepsilon), \quad x \in K_{4r}(y) \cup \Omega \quad (4)$$

with $\varepsilon > 0$ fixed. In Ω^m this function $\bar{w}$ satisfies the weak equation

$$R(\bar{w}, v) = 0 \quad \text{for all } v \in W_0^{1,2}(\Omega^m). \quad (5)$$

Furthermore, we have

$$\bar{w}(x) = 1 \quad \text{for all } x \in K_{4r}(y) \setminus \Omega^m. \quad (6)$$

We choose the powers

$$\beta \in (-\infty, 0) \quad (7)$$

and insert the following test functions into the weak differential equation (5):

$$v(x) := (\bar{w}(x)^\beta - 1)\eta(x)^2 \in W_0^{1,2}(\Omega^m). \quad (8)$$

Here the function $\eta = \eta(x)$ is defined as in the proof of Theorem 1 from §5. We now obtain

$$\begin{aligned}
& -\beta \int_{\Omega^m} \left\{ \sum_{i,j=1}^n a_{ij}(x) D^{e_i} \bar{w}(x) D^{e_j} \bar{w}(x) \right\} \bar{w}(x)^{\beta-1} \eta(x)^2 dx \\
& = 2 \int_{\Omega^m} \left\{ \sum_{i,j=1}^n a_{ij}(x) D^{e_i} \bar{w}(x) D^{e_j} \eta(x) \right\} (\bar{w}(x)^\beta - 1) \eta(x) dx \\
& = 2 \int_{\Omega^m} \left\{ \left[\sum_{i,j=1}^n a_{ij}(x) D^{e_i} \bar{w}(x) D^{e_j} \eta(x) \right] \sqrt{\frac{-\beta}{2}} (\bar{w}(x)^{\frac{\beta}{2}} - 1) \frac{1}{\sqrt{\bar{w}(x)}} \eta(x) \right. \\
& \quad \left. \cdot \sqrt{\frac{2}{-\beta}} (\bar{w}(x)^{\frac{\beta}{2}} + 1) \sqrt{\bar{w}(x)} \right\} dx \\
& \leq \frac{-\beta}{2} \int_{\Omega^m} \left\{ \sum_{i,j=1}^n a_{ij}(x) D^{e_i} \bar{w}(x) D^{e_j} \bar{w}(x) \right\} \bar{w}(x)^{\beta-1} \eta(x)^2 dx \\
& \quad + \frac{8}{-\beta} \int_{\Omega^m} \left\{ \sum_{i,j=1}^n a_{ij}(x) D^{e_i} \eta(x) D^{e_j} \eta(x) \right\} \bar{w}(x)^{\beta+1} dx
\end{aligned} \tag{9}$$

and therefore

$$\begin{aligned}
& \int_{\Omega^m} \left\{ \sum_{i,j=1}^n a_{ij}(x) D^{e_i} \bar{w}(x) D^{e_j} \bar{w}(x) \right\} \bar{w}(x)^{\beta-1} \eta(x)^2 dx \\
& \leq \frac{16}{\beta^2} \int_{\Omega^m} \left\{ \sum_{i,j=1}^n a_{ij}(x) D^{e_i} \eta(x) D^{e_j} \eta(x) \right\} \bar{w}(x)^{\beta+1} dx.
\end{aligned} \tag{10}$$

Since (10) in $K_{4r}(y) \setminus \Omega^m$ is trivially satisfied, we therefore can deduce estimates analogous to (15) and (28), respectively, from the proof of Theorem 1 in § 5. Here we substitute $\bar{u}$ by $\bar{w}$ and Ω by $\Omega^m \cup K_{4r}(y)$. With the considerations given there, one derives the inequality (3) stated above.

q.e.d.

Theorem 2. (Boundary behavior)

In the bounded domain $\Omega \subset \mathbb{R}^n$ the boundary point $y \in \partial\Omega$ is assumed to satisfy the Wiener condition

$$\beta \leq \frac{|K_r(y) \setminus \Omega|}{|K_r(y)|} \quad \text{for } 0 < r \leq r_0 \tag{11}$$

with the constants $\beta \in (0, 1)$ and $r_0 > 0$. Let

$$u = u(x) \in W^{1,2}(\Omega) \cap L^\infty(\Omega) \cap C^0(\partial\Omega \cap K_{r_0}(y))$$

denote a solution of the weak differential equation (1), and we define its boundary oscillation

$$\sigma(r) := \operatorname{osc}_{x \in \partial\Omega \cap K_r(y)} u(x), \quad 0 < r \leq r_0. \quad (12)$$

Then we have constants $C = C(M, n, \beta) \in (0, +\infty)$ and $\alpha = \alpha(M, n, \beta) \in (0, 1)$, such that the following estimate

$$\operatorname{osc}_{\Omega \cap K_r(y)} u \leq C \left(\frac{r}{r_0} \right)^\alpha \operatorname{osc}_{\Omega \cap K_{r_0}(y)} u + \sigma(r_0), \quad 0 < r \leq r_0 \quad (13)$$

holds true.

Proof:

1. We designate the sets $K_r = K_r(y)$, $\Omega_r := \Omega \cap K_r(y)$, $(\partial\Omega)_r := \partial\Omega \cap K_r(y)$ and use the quantities

$$M_4 = \sup_{\Omega_{4r}} u, \quad m_4 = \inf_{\Omega_{4r}} u, \quad M_1 = \sup_{\Omega_r} u, \quad m_1 = \inf_{\Omega_r} u.$$

In the ball K_{4r} we apply Theorem 1 to the functions $M_4 - u(x)$ and $u(x) - m_4$ which are nonnegative in Ω_{4r} , and we set

$$M := \sup_{(\partial\Omega)_{4r}} u, \quad m := \inf_{(\partial\Omega)_{4r}} u.$$

For all $0 < r \leq \frac{1}{4}r_0$ we obtain the estimates

$$\begin{aligned} \beta(M_4 - M) &\leq (M_4 - M) \frac{|K_{2r} \setminus \Omega|}{|K_{2r}|} \\ &\leq \int_{K_{2r}} [M_4 - u(x)]^{M_4 - M} dx \\ &\leq C(M_4 - M_1) \end{aligned} \quad (14)$$

and

$$\begin{aligned} \beta(m - m_4) &\leq (m - m_4) \frac{|K_{2r} \setminus \Omega|}{|K_{2r}|} \\ &\leq \int_{K_{2r}} [u(x) - m_4]^{m - m_4} dx \\ &\leq C(m_1 - m_4). \end{aligned} \quad (15)$$

Addition of (14) and (15) yields

$$\beta(M_4 - m_4) - \beta(M - m) \leq C(M_4 - m_4) - C(M_1 - m_1)$$

and

$$M_1 - m_1 \leq \left(1 - \frac{\beta}{C}\right)(M_4 - m_4) + \frac{\beta}{C}(M - m),$$

and therefore

$$\operatorname{osc}_{\Omega_r} u \leq \gamma \operatorname{osc}_{\Omega_{4r}} u + (1 - \gamma)\sigma(4r), \quad 0 < r \leq \frac{1}{4}r_0, \quad (16)$$

with $\gamma := 1 - \frac{\beta}{C} \in (0, 1)$.

2. Analogously to the proof of Theorem 2 in § 5, we consider the monotonically increasing function

$$\omega(r) := \operatorname{osc}_{\Omega_r} u, \quad 0 < r \leq r_0. \quad (17)$$

The latter satisfies the growth condition

$$\omega(r) \leq \gamma\omega(4r) + (1 - \gamma)\sigma(4r), \quad 0 < r \leq \frac{1}{4}r_0. \quad (18)$$

For each $r \in (0, \frac{1}{4}r_0]$ we now have an integer $k \in \mathbb{N}$, such that

$$\left(\frac{1}{4}\right)^{k+1} r_0 < r \leq \left(\frac{1}{4}\right)^k r_0 \quad (19)$$

is satisfied. Additionally choosing $\alpha \in (0, 1)$ with

$$\gamma \leq \left(\frac{1}{4}\right)^\alpha, \quad (20)$$

we can calculate

$$\begin{aligned} \omega(r) &\leq \omega\left(\left(\frac{1}{4}\right)^k r_0\right) \leq \gamma\omega\left(\left(\frac{1}{4}\right)^{k-1} r_0\right) + (1 - \gamma)\sigma(r_0) \\ &\leq \gamma\left\{\gamma\omega\left(\left(\frac{1}{4}\right)^{k-2} r_0\right) + (1 - \gamma)\sigma(r_0)\right\} + (1 - \gamma)\sigma(r_0) \\ &\quad \vdots \\ &\leq \gamma^k \omega(r_0) + \left\{1 + \gamma + \dots + \gamma^{k-1}\right\}(1 - \gamma)\sigma(r_0) \\ &\leq \left(\frac{1}{4^k}\right)^\alpha \omega(r_0) + \left(\sum_{l=0}^{\infty} \gamma^l\right)(1 - \gamma)\sigma(r_0) \\ &\leq 4^\alpha \left(\frac{r}{r_0}\right)^\alpha \omega(r_0) + \sigma(r_0), \quad 0 < r \leq \frac{1}{4}r_0. \end{aligned} \quad (21)$$

Since (21) for $\frac{1}{4}r_0 \leq r \leq r_0$ is trivially satisfied, we obtain the desired estimate (13).

q.e.d.

Remark: On account of $\sigma(r) \rightarrow 0$ ($r \rightarrow 0+$), we prescribe $\varepsilon > 0$ in (13) and choose $r_0 > 0$ sufficiently small and afterwards $\delta(\varepsilon) > 0$ such that the estimate

$$\operatorname{osc}_{\Omega \cap K_r(y)} u \leq \varepsilon \quad \text{for all } 0 < r \leq \delta(\varepsilon) \quad (22)$$

is realized.

§8 Equations in divergence form

When we construct minima of energy functionals in the Sobolev space by direct variational methods, we obtain weak solutions of differential equations in divergence form. More precisely, we take a vector-field

$$A(p) = (A^1(p), \dots, A^n(p))^* : \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n \in C^{1+\alpha}(\mathbb{R}^n) \quad (1)$$

with $\alpha \in (0, 1)$, whose Jacobi matrix

$$\partial A(p) := \left(\frac{\partial A^j}{\partial p_k}(p) \right)_{j,k=1,\dots,n}, \quad p \in \mathbb{R}^n, \quad (2)$$

is symmetric and satisfies the ellipticity condition

$$\frac{1}{M} |\xi|^2 \leq \sum_{j,k=1}^n \frac{\partial A^j}{\partial p_k}(p) \xi_j \xi_k \leq M |\xi|^2 \quad \text{for all } \xi, p \in \mathbb{R}^n \quad (3)$$

with a constant $M \in [1, +\infty)$. We now consider bounded weak solutions

$$u = u(x) \in W^{1,2}(\Omega) \cap L^\infty(\Omega) \quad (4)$$

of the differential equation

$$\operatorname{div} A(Du(x)) = 0 \quad \text{in } \Omega, \quad (5)$$

and therefore we start with the integral relation

$$\int_{\Omega} \{ \nabla \varphi(x) \cdot A(Du(x)) \} dx = 0 \quad \text{for all } \varphi \in C_0^\infty(\Omega). \quad (6)$$

We utilize the difference quotient

$$\Delta_{i,\varepsilon} \varphi(x) := \frac{\varphi(x + \varepsilon e_i) - \varphi(x)}{\varepsilon} \quad (7)$$

in the direction e_i with sufficiently small $\varepsilon \neq 0$. This notion has been introduced in §1, and we calculate similarly to the proofs of Theorem 5 and 6 there. When we insert (7) into (6), we obtain

$$0 = \int_{\Omega} \{ \nabla(\Delta_{i,\varepsilon} \varphi(x)) \cdot A(Du(x)) \} dx = - \int_{\Omega} \{ \nabla \varphi(x) \cdot \Delta_{i,\varepsilon} A(Du(x)) \} dx. \quad (8)$$

We calculate

$$\begin{aligned} \Delta_{i,\varepsilon} A(Du(x)) &= \frac{1}{\varepsilon} \left\{ A(Du(x + \varepsilon e_i) - Du(x)) \right\} \\ &= \left\{ \int_0^1 \partial A(Du(x) + t[Du(x + \varepsilon e_i) - Du(x)]) dt \right\} \Delta_{i,\varepsilon} Du(x) \end{aligned} \quad (9)$$

and define the symmetric matrix

$$B_\varepsilon(x) := \int_0^1 \partial A(Du(x) + t[Du(x + \varepsilon e_i) - Du(x)]) dt, \quad x \in \Omega, \quad (10)$$

satisfying the uniform ellipticity condition

$$\frac{1}{M} |\xi|^2 \leq \xi \circ B_\varepsilon(x) \circ \xi^* \leq M |\xi|^2 \quad \text{for all } \xi \in \mathbb{R}^n, x \in \Omega, |\varepsilon| \leq \varepsilon_0. \quad (11)$$

The combination of (8), (9), and (10) yields the following weak uniformly elliptic differential equation for the difference quotient $\Delta_{i,\varepsilon}u(x)$:

$$0 = \int_\Omega \{ \nabla \varphi(x) \circ B_\varepsilon(x) \circ D(\Delta_{i,\varepsilon}u(x)) \} dx \quad \text{for all } \varphi \in C_0^\infty(\Omega). \quad (12)$$

This difference quotient satisfies a Hölder condition independent of ε , according to Theorem 2 from § 5 of de Giorgi - Nash. The passage to the limit $\varepsilon \rightarrow 0+$ yields

$$u \in C^{1+\mu}(\Omega) \quad (13)$$

for a sufficiently small $\mu \in (0, 1)$. We then consider the coefficient matrix

$$B(x) := \partial A(Du(x)), \quad x \in \Omega, \quad (14)$$

of the class $C^\mu(\Omega)$. The transition to the limit $\varepsilon \rightarrow 0+$ in (12) reveals the following weak differential equation in divergence form for the partial derivatives $u_{x_i}(x)$, $i = 1, \dots, n$, namely

$$0 = \int_\Omega \{ \nabla \varphi(x) \circ B(x) \circ Du_{x_i}(x) \} dx \quad \text{for all } \varphi \in C_0^\infty(\Omega) \quad (15)$$

with Hölder continuous coefficients. The higher regularity of u is shown by local reconstruction.

Theorem 1. *We prescribe the boundary values $\psi : \partial K \rightarrow \mathbb{R} \in C^{1+\mu}(\partial K)$ on the boundary of the open ball $K \subset \subset \Omega$. Then the following Dirichlet problem adjoint to the vector field (1)-(3) above possesses a solution*

$$\begin{aligned} v &= v(x) \in C^{2+\mu}(K) \cap C^0(\overline{K}) \cap W^{1,2}(K), \\ \operatorname{div} A(Dv(x)) &= 0 \quad \text{in } K, \\ v(x) &= \psi(x) \quad \text{on } \partial K. \end{aligned} \quad (16)$$

Proof:

1. In the first part of our proof, we utilize a method proposed by A. Haar for variational problems. At each point $x_0 \in \partial K$ we have the linear support functions $\eta_-^+(x) : \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ with

$$\begin{aligned}\eta_-^+(x_0) &= \psi(x_0) \quad \text{and} \\ \eta_-(x) &\leq \psi(x) \leq \eta^+(x) \quad \text{for all } x \in \partial K, \quad \text{where} \\ |D\eta_-^+(x_0)| &\leq C(\|\psi\|_{C^{1+\mu}(\partial K)}) \quad \text{for all } x_0 \in \partial K\end{aligned}\tag{17}$$

is satisfied. For the solution $v \in C^1(\overline{K})$ of (16) we then deduce the inequality

$$|Dv(x_0)| \leq C \quad \text{for all } x_0 \in \partial K\tag{18}$$

from the inclusion

$$\eta_-(x) \leq v(x) \leq \eta^+(x), \quad x \in \overline{K}.\tag{19}$$

The latter is inferred from (17) by the maximum principle applied to the quasilinear elliptic equation

$$\sum_{j,k=1}^n \frac{\partial A^j}{\partial p_k}(Dv(x)) v_{x_j x_k}(x) = 0, \quad x \in K.\tag{20}$$

Now the derivatives v_{x_i} in K are subject to the weak elliptic differential equation (15) as well and therefore satisfy the maximum principle:

$$|Dv(x)| \leq C(\|\psi\|_{C^{1+\mu}(\partial K)}), \quad x \in \overline{K}.\tag{21}$$

2. When we have solved our boundary value problem (16) for the boundary values

$$\overline{\psi} : \partial K \rightarrow \mathbb{R} \in C^{2+\mu}(\partial K),$$

we then approximate the given function ψ by a sequence

$$\psi_k \rightarrow \psi \quad \text{in } C^{1+\mu}(\partial K) \quad (k \rightarrow \infty).$$

The adjoint solutions v_k of (16) are equicontinuous on account of (21). Therefore, we make the transition to a subsequence which is uniformly convergent in $\overline{K}$ with a limit function v satisfying the inequality

$$|Dv(x)| \leq C, \quad x \in K.\tag{22}$$

Due to the inner Hölder estimate for Dv given above, we can achieve via the differential equation (20) by the inner Schauder estimates that the sequence converges in $C^{2+\mu}(\overline{\Theta})$ for each open set $\Theta \subset \subset K$. Consequently, the limit function belongs to the class

$$C^{2+\mu}(K) \cap C^0(\overline{K}) \cap W^{1,2}(K).$$

3. It remains to solve the Dirichlet problem (16) for $C^{2+\mu}$ -boundary-values ψ . Here we have to establish a global Hölder estimate for the gradient of the solution with the aid of Theorem 2 from § 7. A result of O. Ladyzhenskaya and N. Uraltseva (see [GT] Theorem 13.2) yields

$$\|Dv\|_{C^\mu(\overline{K})} \leq C(\|\psi\|_{C^2(\partial K)}) \quad (23)$$

for an exponent $\mu \in (0, 1)$. This estimate is inferred from the Hölder continuous boundary values of v_{x_i} and the weak differential equation (15) for the derivatives. We insert this inequality into the quasilinear differential equation (20). Applied to the sequence of boundary values

$$\psi_k \rightarrow \psi \quad \text{in } C^{2+\mu}(\partial K) \quad (k \rightarrow \infty)$$

the global Schauder estimates imply the following statement

$$v_k \rightarrow v \quad \text{in } C^{2+\mu}(\overline{K}) \quad (k \rightarrow \infty)$$

for the adjoint solutions of the boundary value problem (16).

4. By a nonlinear continuity method deforming the boundary values, we can solve the boundary value problem (16) for all $\psi \in C^{2+\mu}(\partial K)$. This procedure will be presented in § 9 from Chapter XII for the nonparametric equation of prescribed mean curvature. Similar to Proposition 4 there, we start with a solution v of (20) and solve the following nonlinear differential equation for small boundary values with the aid of Banach's fixed point theorem:

$$\begin{aligned} 0 &= \sum_{j,k=1}^n \frac{\partial A^j}{\partial p_k} (Dv(x) + Dw(x)) [v_{x_j x_k} + w_{x_j x_k}] \\ &= \sum_{j,k=1}^n \left[\frac{\partial A^j}{\partial p_k} (Dv(x)) + \sum_{l=1}^n \frac{\partial A^j}{\partial p_k \partial p_l} (Dv(x)) w_{x_l} + \dots \right] [v_{x_j x_k} + w_{x_j x_k}] \\ &= \sum_{j,k=1}^n \frac{\partial A^j}{\partial p_k} (Dv(x)) w_{x_j x_k} \\ &\quad + \sum_{l=1}^n \left(\sum_{j,k=1}^n v_{x_j x_k} \frac{\partial A^j}{\partial p_k \partial p_l} (Dv(x)) \right) w_{x_l} + \dots, \quad x \in K. \end{aligned} \quad (24)$$

Here we assume polynomial coefficients in the differential equation (20) at first, and we denote by $\dots$ the superlinear terms in the partial derivatives of w . As in Theorem 2 of § 9 from Chapter XII we then deform the trivial solution $v = 0$ into the solution of the Dirichlet problem posed. By an adequate approximation we finally solve the differential equation with the given coefficients.

q.e.d.

We now obtain the fundamental

Theorem 2. (Regularity theorem of de Giorgi)

A bounded weak solution u of (4) and (6) with the vector field (1)-(3) belongs to the regularity class $C^{2+\alpha}(\Omega)$.

Proof: In each ball $K \subset\subset \Omega$ we reconstruct the solution u for the boundary values $\psi := u|_{\partial K}$ by a solution of (16) from Theorem 1. With the aid of the Gaussian energy method one easily shows that the boundary value problem (16) for weak solutions is uniquely determined. This implies

$$u(x) = v(x) \quad \text{in } \overline{K},$$

and consequently $u \in C^{2+\mu}(K)$. By a renewed reconstruction within the C^2 -solutions we obtain

$$u \in C^{2+\alpha}(\Omega).$$

q.e.d.

Remarks:

1. The regularity questions are situated in the center of the modern calculus of variations, especially in the monograph

M. Giaquinta: *Multiple integrals in the calculus of variations and nonlinear elliptic systems*. Princeton University Press 1983.

In this context we recommend the beautiful presentation in [Jo] 11.3 by J. Jost.

2. By the methods of this chapter a general theory for quasilinear elliptic differential equations in n variables can be developed as in the pioneering book [GT] Part II of D. Gilbarg and N. Trudinger.
3. We want to address the theory of two-dimensional partial differential equations in the next chapters. Here one can transform the equations into a normal form in the hyperbolic and in the elliptic situation as well, and both cases are interrelated via the complex space. For intuitive geometry the two-dimensional theory is of central importance.

We finally treat the *regularity question for the minimal surface equation*:

In the bounded domain $\Omega \subset \mathbb{R}^n$ let $u = u(x) \in W^{1,\infty}(\Omega)$ denote a weak solution of the nonparametric minimal surface equation in divergence form

$$\operatorname{div}\{(1 + |Du(x)|^2)^{-\frac{1}{2}} Du(x)\} = 0 \quad \text{in } \Omega. \quad (25)$$

This equation will be derived differential-geometrically in the second part of § 1 from Chapter XI. On account of $Du(x) \in L^\infty(\Omega)$, the differential equation (25) is uniformly elliptic and Theorem 2 from § 2 reveals $u \in C^0(\overline{\Omega})$. Now the regularity result of de Giorgi, Theorem 2 implies $u \in C^{2+\alpha}(\Omega)$. Since one can easily construct solutions in the class $W^{1,2}(\Omega)$ within the calculus of variations, the central task remains to estimate $\|Du\|_{L^\infty(\Omega)}$. Therefore, gradient estimates have to be established!

With $\mu \in (0, 1)$ given, we prescribe

a bounded convex domain $\Omega \subset \mathbb{R}^n$ with $C^{2+\mu}$ -boundary $\partial\Omega$
and the boundary values $\psi : \partial\Omega \rightarrow \mathbb{R} \in C^{2+\mu}(\partial\Omega)$. (26)

We consider a solution of the Dirichlet problem

$$\begin{aligned} u = u(x) \in C^2(\Omega) \cap C^1(\overline{\Omega}) & \text{ satisfies (25)} \\ \text{and the boundary condition} & \quad u(x) = \psi(x) \quad \text{on} \quad \partial\Omega, \end{aligned} \quad (27)$$

and deduce the following boundary-gradient-estimate:

$$|Du(x)| \leq C(\partial\Omega, \|\psi\|_{C^{2+\mu}(\partial\Omega)}), \quad x \in \partial\Omega. \quad (28)$$

In this context we show: At each boundary point $(x, u(x))$, $x \in \partial\Omega$ the tangential plane for the surface

$$(x, u(x)), \quad x \in \overline{\Omega}$$

has an angle with the support plane of the boundary manifold, whose modulus can be estimated from below by a number $\omega > 0$ independent of the point $x \in \partial\Omega$. Here one considers the minimal surface in its height representation

$$v : \overline{\Theta} \rightarrow [0, \infty)$$

above the support plane, satisfying the now differentiated minimal surface equation (compare § 1 in Chapter XI):

$$(1 + |Dv(x)|^2) \Delta v(x) - \sum_{i,j=1}^n v_{x_i} v_{x_j} v_{x_i x_j}(x) = 0 \quad \text{in} \quad \Theta. \quad (29)$$

With the aid of the boundary point lemma due to E. Hopf from § 1 in Chapter VI, the statement (28) follows. The weak maximum principle applied to the derivatives u_{x_i} now implies

$$\|u\|_{C^1(\overline{\Omega})} \leq C(\partial\Omega, \|\psi\|_{C^{2+\mu}(\partial\Omega)}). \quad (30)$$

With the aid of methods presented in part 3 and 4 of the proof for Theorem 1, one finally shows the following statement, whose complete derivation however is left to the reader.

Theorem 3. (Jenkins, Serrin)

With the data (26) there exists exactly one solution $u \in C^{2+\mu}(\overline{\Omega})$ of the Dirichlet problem (27) for the minimal surface equation.

§9 Green's function for elliptic operators

In the present section, we shall construct Green's function for elliptic differential operators in divergence form with the aid of Schauder's theory. For instance, this enables us to transform the eigenvalue problem of elliptic operators into an integral equation and then to proceed similarly to the considerations for the Laplace operator in Chapter VIII.

We take a bounded domain $\Omega \subset \mathbb{R}^n$ such that the regular boundary $\partial\Omega$ is of the class $C^{2+\mu}$ with $\mu \in (0, 1)$ and an integer $n \in \mathbb{N}$ satisfying $n \geq 3$. Furthermore, we denote the exterior normal by $\nu = \nu(x)$ and the diameter of Ω by $R > 0$. For the differential operator

$$\mathcal{L}(u) := \sum_{i=1}^n \frac{\partial}{\partial x_i} \left(\sum_{j=1}^n a_{ij}(x) u_{x_j}(x) \right), \quad x \in \Omega \quad (1)$$

in divergence form, we require the coefficient matrix

$$(a_{ij}(x))_{i,j=1,\dots,n}, \quad x \in \Omega \quad \text{of the class} \quad C^{1+\mu}(\overline{\Omega}) \quad (2)$$

to be real and symmetric satisfying the following ellipticity condition

$$\frac{1}{M} |\xi|^2 \leq \sum_{i,j=1}^n a_{ij}(x) \xi_i \xi_j \leq M |\xi|^2 \quad \text{in } \Omega \quad \text{for all } \xi \in \mathbb{R}^n, \quad (3)$$

with the ellipticity constant $M \in [1, +\infty)$. For a fixed point $y \in \Omega$ we define the neighborhood

$$\mathcal{U} := \{x \in \mathbb{R}^n : |x - y| < r_0\} \subset \Omega \quad (4)$$

with the fixed radius $0 < r_0 < \rho = \rho(y) := \text{dist}(y, \partial\Omega) \in (0, R)$. At first, we assume our coefficients to fulfill

$$a_{ij}(x) = \delta_{ij} \quad \text{for } x \in \mathcal{U} \quad \text{and} \quad i, j = 1, \dots, n \quad (5)$$

such that the differential operator $\mathcal{L}$ coincides with the Laplacian near the point y . With the aid of Schauder's theory from Chapter IX, we determine the unique solution of the following boundary value problem

$$\begin{aligned} \phi &= \phi(x, y) \in C^{2+\mu}(\overline{\Omega}), \quad \mathcal{L}(\phi) = -\mathcal{L}\left(\frac{1}{(n-2)\omega_n} |x - y|^{2-n}\right) \quad \text{in } \Omega \\ \phi(x, y) &= -\frac{1}{(n-2)\omega_n} |x - y|^{2-n}, \quad x \in \partial\Omega. \end{aligned} \quad (6)$$

Naturally, the quantity ω_n denotes the area of the unit sphere in $\mathbb{R}^n$. We now obtain the *approximate Green's function*

$$g = g(x, y) := \frac{1}{(n-2)\omega_n} |x - y|^{2-n} + \phi(x, y) \in C^{2+\mu}(\overline{\Omega} \setminus \{y\}) \quad (7)$$

satisfying

$$\mathcal{L}(g) = 0, \quad x \in \Omega \setminus \{y\} \quad \text{and} \quad g(x, y) = 0, \quad x \in \partial\Omega. \quad (8)$$

Setting $g(x, y) = 0$ for $x \in \mathbb{R}^n \setminus \Omega$, $y \in \Omega$ we trivially continue the function onto the whole space.

For all functions $u \in C^1(\overline{\Omega})$ with zero boundary values $u(x) = 0$ on $\partial\Omega$ we now calculate

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{i=1}^n \frac{\partial}{\partial x_i} \left(u \sum_{j=1}^n a_{ij}(x) g_{x_j}(x, y) \right) &= u \mathcal{L}(g) + \sum_{i,j=1}^n a_{ij}(x) u_{x_i}(x) g_{x_j}(x, y) = \\ &= \sum_{i,j=1}^n a_{ij}(x) u_{x_i}(x) g_{x_j}(x, y) \quad \text{for } x \in \Omega \setminus \{y\}. \end{aligned} \quad (9)$$

We apply the Gaussian integral theorem on the domain $\Omega_\varepsilon := \{x \in \Omega : |x - y| > \varepsilon\}$ with the exterior normal $\nu = \nu(x)$ and $0 < \varepsilon < r_0$. Then we obtain the following relation:

$$\begin{aligned} \int_{\Omega_\varepsilon} \left(\sum_{i,j=1}^n a_{ij}(x) u_{x_i}(x) g_{x_j}(x, y) \right) dx &= \\ \int_{|x-y|=\varepsilon} \left(u(x) \sum_{i=1}^n \{ \nu_i(x) \sum_{j=1}^n a_{ij}(x) g_{x_j}(x, y) \} \right) d\sigma(x) &= \\ \int_{|x-y|=\varepsilon} u(x) \frac{\partial g(x, y)}{\partial \nu(x)} d\sigma(x) \rightarrow u(y) \quad \text{for } \varepsilon \rightarrow 0+. \end{aligned} \quad (10)$$

Consequently, we obtain the fundamental

Proposition 1. *For all functions $u \in C^1(\overline{\Omega})$ with zero boundary values $u(x) = 0$ on $\partial\Omega$ we have the following identity:*

$$R(u, g) := \int_{\Omega} \left(\sum_{i,j=1}^n a_{ij}(x) u_{x_i}(x) g_{x_j}(x, y) \right) dx = u(y).$$

Here, the symbol $R(.,.)$ denotes the Dirichlet-Riemann bilinear form.

Now we observe $g(x, y) > 0$ for $x \in \Omega \setminus \{y\}$ on account of E.Hopf's maximum principle and $g(x, y) \rightarrow +\infty$ when $x \rightarrow y$ and $x \neq y$ holds true. For all $t \in (0, +\infty)$ we consider the level sets

$$\Omega(t) := \{x \in \Omega : g(x, y) < t\} \quad \text{and} \quad \Theta(t) := \{x \in \Omega : g(x, y) \geq t\},$$

where y is an interior point of the closed set $\Theta(t)$. We define the *truncated approximate Green's function*

$$g^t(x, y) = \begin{cases} g(x, y), & x \in \Omega(t) \\ t, & x \in \Theta(t) \end{cases}. \quad (11)$$

Parallel to Theorem 8 in §1 we prove by approximation that this function belongs to the class $W_0^{1,2}(\Omega) \cap C^0(\overline{\Omega})$, and $u(x) = g^t(x, y)$ can be inserted as a test function in Proposition 1. Thus we obtain the *evaluation formula*

$$\int_{\Omega(t)} \left(\sum_{i,j=1}^n a_{ij}(x) g_{x_i}(x, y) g_{x_j}(x, y) \right) dx = R(g^t, g) = g^t(y, y) = t, \quad 0 < t < +\infty. \quad (12)$$

The subsequent concept is of central importance:

Definition 1. For a measurable subset $E \subset \subset \Omega$ we define by

$$cap_{\Omega, \mathcal{L}}(E) := \inf \{ R(v, v) : v \in W_0^{1,2}(\Omega), \quad v(x) = 1 \quad \text{a.e. in } E \}$$

the capacity of the set E in Ω .

With the function $v(x) := \frac{1}{t} g^t(x, y)$, $x \in \Omega$ we obviously have the unique minimizer in the variational problem above for the set $E := \Theta(t)$ with the energy $R(v, v) = \frac{1}{t}$ due to the evaluation formula above. Thus we have shown

Proposition 2. The relation $cap_{\Omega, \mathcal{L}}(\Theta(t)) = \frac{1}{t}$, $0 < t < +\infty$, for the capacities of the level sets is correct.

We need the following elementary comparison properties of the capacity:

$$E_1 \subset E_2 \subset \Omega \quad \text{implies} \quad cap_{\Omega, \mathcal{L}}(E_1) \leq cap_{\Omega, \mathcal{L}}(E_2), \quad (13)$$

$$E \subset \Omega_1 \subset \Omega \quad \text{implies} \quad cap_{\Omega_1, \mathcal{L}}(E) \geq cap_{\Omega, \mathcal{L}}(E), \quad (14)$$

$$\frac{1}{M} cap_{\Omega}(E) \leq cap_{\Omega, \mathcal{L}}(E) \leq M cap_{\Omega}(E) \quad \text{for } E \subset \Omega, \quad (15)$$

abbreviating $cap_{\Omega}(E) := cap_{\Omega, \Delta}(E)$ for the *standard capacity*. With the radii $r > 0$ we consider the balls

$$U_r := \{x \in \mathbb{R}^n : |x - y| < r\}$$

and define the quantities

$$a(r) := \inf \{ g(x, y) : x \in \partial U_r \} \quad \text{and} \quad b(r) := \sup \{ g(x, y) : x \in \partial U_r \}$$

for $0 < r < \rho$. We note that $0 < a(r) \leq b(r) < +\infty$, and Hopf's maximum principle implies

$$g(x, y) > a(r), x \in U_r \quad \text{and} \quad g(x, y) < b(r), x \in \overline{\Omega} \setminus \overline{U_r}.$$

Therefore, we obtain the inclusions

$$U_r \subset \Theta(a(r)) \quad \text{and} \quad \Theta(b(r)) \subset U_r.$$

The comparison properties for capacities together with Proposition 2 yield

$$\text{cap}_{\Omega, \mathcal{L}}(U_r) \leq \text{cap}_{\Omega, \mathcal{L}}(\Theta(a(r))) = \frac{1}{a(r)} \quad (16)$$

and

$$\text{cap}_{\Omega, \mathcal{L}}(U_r) \geq \text{cap}_{\Omega, \mathcal{L}}(\Theta(b(r))) = \frac{1}{b(r)}. \quad (17)$$

To the function $v(x) := g(y + rx, y)$, $\frac{1}{2} < |x| < 2$ we apply the Harnack-Moser inequality from Theorem 4 in §5. Due to the homogeneity in r of the differential equation for v , the ellipticity constant is independent of the radius r . Therefore, we obtain a constant $c = c(M) \in [1, +\infty)$ such that

$$\begin{aligned} b(r) &\leq \sup\{v(x) : \tfrac{1}{2} < |x| < 2\} \leq c(M) \inf\{v(x) : \tfrac{1}{2} < |x| < 2\} \\ &\leq c(M)a(r), \quad 0 < r < \tfrac{1}{2}\rho \end{aligned} \quad (18)$$

holds true. In combination with (16) and (17) we deduce

$$b(r) \leq c(M)(\text{cap}_{\Omega, \mathcal{L}}(U_r))^{-1} \quad (19)$$

and

$$a(r) \geq (c(M)\text{cap}_{\Omega, \mathcal{L}}(U_r))^{-1}. \quad (20)$$

From the inclusion $U_\rho \subset \Omega \subset U_R$ we infer the inequalities

$$\frac{1}{M}\text{cap}_{U_R}(U_r) \leq \frac{1}{M}\text{cap}_\Omega(U_r) \leq \text{cap}_{\Omega, \mathcal{L}}(U_r) \leq M\text{cap}_\Omega(U_r) \leq M\text{cap}_{U_\rho}(U_r)$$

via the comparison properties and therefore

$$\frac{1}{M}(\text{cap}_{U_\rho}(U_r))^{-1} \leq (\text{cap}_{\Omega, \mathcal{L}}(U_r))^{-1} \leq M(\text{cap}_{U_R}(U_r))^{-1} \quad \text{for } 0 < r < \tfrac{1}{2}\rho. \quad (21)$$

The standard capacity of concentric balls can be determined as follows: On the domain U_R we have the standard Green's function

$$g^*(x, y) := |x - y|^{2-n} - R^{2-n}, \quad x \in U_R.$$

For $0 < r < R$ we have the quantities

$$a^*(r) = b^*(r) = r^{2-n} - R^{2-n},$$

and we observe $\overline{U_r} = \Theta(a^*(r))$. Then Proposition 2 implies

$$(\text{cap}_{U_R}(U_r))^{-1} = a^*(r) = r^{2-n} - R^{2-n}. \quad (22)$$

The combination of (19), (20), (21), and (22) gives us the constants $0 < c_1 = c_1(M, n) \leq c_2 = c_2(M, n) < +\infty$ such that

$$c_1 r^{2-n} \leq a(r) \leq b(r) \leq c_2 r^{2-n}, \quad 0 < r < \frac{1}{2}\rho \quad (23)$$

holds true. Now we easily show

Proposition 3. *For the approximate Green's function we have the following estimates:*

$$0 < g(x, y) \leq c_2(M, n)|x - y|^{2-n}, \quad x \in \Omega, \quad x \neq y$$

and

$$g(x, y) \geq c_1(M, n)|x - y|^{2-n}, \quad x \in \Omega, \quad |x - y| \leq \frac{1}{2}\rho(y).$$

Proof: The second estimate can be directly inferred from (23). However, we still have to show the validity of the first inequality on the whole set Ω . To this aim we introduce the exhausting set $\Omega^\delta := \{x \in \Omega : \rho(x) > \delta\}$ for sufficiently small $\delta > 0$ and take a test function $\chi = \chi_\delta(x) \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^n, [0, 1])$ with $\text{supp } \chi_\delta \subset \Omega^{\frac{1}{2}\delta}$ satisfying $\chi(x) = 1$, $x \in \Omega^\delta$. Now we continue the coefficients of our operator differentiably onto the ball U_{2R} as follows:

$$a_{ij}^\delta(x) = \begin{cases} \chi_\delta(x)a_{ij}(x) + (1 - \chi_\delta(x))\delta_{ij}, & x \in \Omega \\ \delta_{ij}, & x \in U_{2R} \setminus \Omega \end{cases}. \quad (24)$$

The operator $\mathcal{L}_\delta$ in divergence form (1) with the coefficients

$$a_{ij}^\delta(x) \quad \text{for } i, j = 1, \dots, n$$

possesses the approximate Green's function $g_\delta(x, y)$ on the domain U_{2R} . The auxiliary function

$$w(x) := g_\delta(x, y) - g(x, y) + \sup\{g(z, y) : z \in \partial\Omega^\delta\}, \quad x \in \Omega^\delta$$

satisfies

$$\mathcal{L}(w) = 0, \quad x \in \Omega^\delta; w(x) > 0, \quad x \in \partial\Omega^\delta.$$

The maximum principle of E. Hopf yields

$$\begin{aligned} g(x, y) &\leq g_\delta(x, y) + \sup\{g(z, y) : z \in \partial\Omega^\delta\} \\ &\leq c_2(M, n)|x - y|^{2-n} + \sup\{g(z, y) : z \in \partial\Omega^\delta\}, \quad x \in \Omega^\delta. \end{aligned}$$

The transition to the limit $\delta \rightarrow 0+$ implies

$$g(x, y) \leq c_2(M, n)|x - y|^{2-n}, \quad x \in \Omega.$$

q.e.d.

With the aid of the hole-filling technique, we now estimate $|\nabla g|$ in the $L^p(\Omega)$ -norm.

Proposition 4. *The approximate Green's function satisfies the estimate*

$$\int_{\Omega} |\nabla g(x, y)|^p dx \leq C(M, n, p)$$

for all exponents $p \in [1, \frac{n}{n-1})$, with the a-priori-constant $0 < C(M, n, p) < +\infty$.

Proof: We utilize the auxiliary function $\chi = \chi(x) \in C^1(\mathbb{R}^n, [0, 1])$ satisfying

$$\chi(x) = 0 \quad \text{for all } x \in \mathbb{R}^n \quad \text{with} \quad |x - y| \leq \frac{1}{4}R \quad \text{or} \quad |x - y| \geq 2R,$$

$$\chi(x) = 1 \quad \text{for all } x \in \mathbb{R}^n \quad \text{with} \quad \frac{1}{2}R \leq |x - y| \leq R,$$

$$\text{and} \quad |\nabla \chi(x)| \leq \frac{c}{R} \quad \text{for all } x \in \mathbb{R}^n.$$

Then we insert the test function $u(x) = \chi(x)^2 g(x, y)$ into the integral equation of Proposition 1 and obtain

$$0 = \int_{\Omega} \chi^2 \sum_{i,j=1}^n (a_{ij}(x) g_{x_i} g_{x_j}) dx + \int_{\Omega} 2\chi g \sum_{i,j=1}^n (a_{ij}(x) \chi_{x_i} g_{x_j}) dx.$$

Standard estimates for quadratic forms as in §5 imply

$$\begin{aligned} & \int_{x \in \Omega: \frac{1}{2}R \leq |x-y| \leq R} |\nabla g(x, y)|^2 dx \\ & \leq \int_{\Omega} \chi^2 |\nabla g(x, y)|^2 dx \\ & \leq c(M, n) \int_{\Omega} g^2 |\nabla \chi(x)|^2 dx \\ & \leq c(M, n) \int_{x \in \Omega: \frac{1}{4}R \leq |x-y| \leq 2R} g(x, y)^2 |\nabla \chi(x)|^2 dx \\ & \leq c(M, n) R^{4-2n} \cdot R^{-2} \cdot R^n = c(M, n) R^{2-n}, \end{aligned} \tag{25}$$

using the growth condition for Green's function from Proposition 3.

We take a quantity $1 \leq p < 2$ fixed and apply Hölder's inequality with the conjugate exponents $q = \frac{2}{p}$, $q' = \frac{2}{2-p}$ as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}
& \int_{x \in \Omega: \frac{1}{2}R \leq |x-y| \leq R} |\nabla g(x, y)|^p \, dx \\
&= \int_{x \in \Omega: \frac{1}{2}R \leq |x-y| \leq R} |\nabla g(x, y)|^p \cdot 1 \, dx \\
&\leq \left(\int_{x \in \Omega: \frac{1}{2}R \leq |x-y| \leq R} |\nabla g(x, y)|^2 \, dx \right)^{\frac{p}{2}} \cdot \left(\int_{x \in \Omega: \frac{1}{2}R \leq |x-y| \leq R} 1 \, dx \right)^{\frac{2-p}{2}} \quad (26) \\
&\leq c(M, n, p) R^{(2-n)\frac{p}{2}} \cdot R^{n \cdot \frac{2-p}{2}} = c(M, n, p) R^{p - \frac{np}{2} + n - \frac{np}{2}} \\
&= c(M, n, p) R^{n - (n-1)p}.
\end{aligned}$$

Now we replace R by $\frac{R}{2^k}$ for $k = 0, 1, 2, \dots$ and obtain

$$\int_{x \in \Omega: 2^{-k-1}R \leq |x-y| \leq 2^{-k}R} |\nabla g(x, y)|^p \, dx \leq c(M, n, p) R^{n - (n-1)p} \cdot 2^{-k(n - (n-1)p)}.$$

With $1 \leq p < \frac{n}{n-1}$ we observe that $(n - (n-1)p) > 0$ holds true and the summation over all k yields the desired estimate

$$\int_{\Omega} |\nabla g(x, y)|^p \, dx \leq c(M, n, p) R^{n - (n-1)p} \left(\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} 2^{-k(n - (n-1)p)} \right) := C(M, n, p).$$

Here we observe that the series above converges. q.e.d.

We are now prepared to prove the central

Theorem 1. (Generalized Green's function)

For the elliptic differential operator $\mathcal{L}$ with the properties (1),(2),(3) from above we have a function

$$G = G(x, y) : \overline{\Omega} \times \Omega \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$$

such that $G(\cdot, y)$ belongs to the class $W_0^{1,p}(\Omega) \cap C^{2+\mu}(\overline{\Omega} \setminus \{y\})$ for all $y \in \Omega$ with the exponent $p \in [1, \frac{n}{n-1})$ satisfying the growth conditions

$$0 < G(x, y) \leq c_2(M, n) |x - y|^{2-n}, \quad x \in \Omega, \quad x \neq y$$

and

$$G(x, y) \geq c_1(M, n) |x - y|^{n-2}, \quad x \in \Omega, \quad |x - y| \leq \frac{1}{2}\rho(y).$$

The function G implies the following representation formula

$$u(y) = \int_{\Omega} \left(\sum_{i,j=1}^n a_{ij}(x) D^{e_i} u(x) G_{x_j}(x, y) \right) dx, \quad y \in \Omega$$

for all functions $u \in W_0^{1,q}(\Omega)$ with the exponent $q \in (n, +\infty]$. Here we denote by D^{e_i} the weak derivatives and remark that the Sobolev space above is continuously embedded into $C^0(\overline{\Omega})$ due to Theorem 2 in § 2.

Proof: At first, we consider test functions $u = u(x) \in C_0^\infty(\Omega)$ and choose a fixed $y \in \Omega$.

Then we take a sequence of auxiliary functions $\chi_k = \chi_k(x) \in C^\infty(\mathbb{R}^n, [0, 1])$ satisfying

$$\chi_k(x) = 0, \quad x \in U_{\frac{1}{2k}\rho}$$

and

$$\chi_k(x) = 1, \quad x \in \Omega \setminus U_{\frac{1}{k}\rho}$$

for $k = 1, 2, 3, \dots$. For our operator (1) we define the coefficients

$$a_{ij}^k(x) = \chi_k(x)a_{ij}(x) + (1 - \chi_k(x))\delta_{ij}, \quad x \in \Omega; \quad i, j = 1, \dots, n$$

and observe their convergence

$$\|a_{ij}^k - a_{ij}\|_{L^s(\Omega)} \rightarrow 0 \quad \text{for } k \rightarrow \infty$$

with arbitrary numbers $1 \leq s < +\infty$. The differential operator $\mathcal{L}_k$ possesses the approximate Green's function g^k for $k = 1, 2, \dots$ and Proposition 1 implies the following representation:

$$\int_{\Omega} \left(\sum_{i,j=1}^n a_{ij}^k(x) u_{x_i}(x) g_{x_j}^k(x, y) \right) dx = u(y) \quad . \quad (27)$$

Due to Proposition 4 the sequence $g_{x_j}^k(x, y)$, $k = 1, 2, \dots$ is bounded in the $L^p(\Omega)$ -norm for the given p and all indices $j = 1, \dots, n$. Then Theorem 7 in Chapter II, §8 allows the transition to a weakly convergent subsequence $g_{x_j}^{k'}(x, y) \rightharpoonup D^{ej} G(x, y)$, $k' \rightarrow \infty$ for $j = 1, \dots, n$. Here the limit function $G = G(., y)$ belongs to the Sobolev space $W^{1,p}(\Omega)$.

The sequence $g^k(., y)$, $k = 1, 2, \dots$ satisfies the growth conditions from Proposition 3 and is therefore uniformly bounded in each compact set $K \subset \overline{\Omega} \setminus \{y\}$. Consequently, we can estimate these functions in the $C^{2+\mu}(K)$ -norm by the Schauder estimates derived in Chapter IX. Finally, the limit function G belongs to the class $W_0^{1,p}(\Omega) \cap C^{2+\mu}(\overline{\Omega} \setminus \{y\})$.

We pass to the limit $k' \rightarrow \infty$ in (27) and observe the weak convergence of the derivatives and the strong convergence of the coefficients. We use familiar arguments for Hilbert spaces - see the Remark 3.) on weak convergence in Chapter VIII, §6 - which pertain to these Lebesgue spaces. Then we obtain the representation formula stated in the theorem for test functions.

Finally, we approximate the Sobolev functions $u \in W_0^{1,q}(\Omega)$ with the exponent $q > n$ by test functions and take Theorem 2 from §2 into account. We then obtain the representation formula even in the Sobolev class. q.e.d.

Definition 2. We call the function $G(x, y)$ from Theorem 1 the generalized Green's function for the operator $\mathcal{L}$ on the domain Ω .

For twice differentiable functions we obtain the following corollary:

Theorem 2. *With the generalized Green's function from Theorem 1 we have the representation*

$$u(y) = - \int_{\Omega} \mathcal{L}u(x) \cdot G(x, y) dx, \quad y \in \Omega$$

for all functions $u \in C^2(\overline{\Omega})$ with $u = 0$ on $\partial\Omega$.

Proof: We integrate the relation

$$\sum_{i,j=1}^n a_{ij}(x) u_{x_i}(x) G_{x_j}(x, y) = \sum_{j=1}^n \frac{\partial}{\partial x_j} \left(\sum_{i=1}^n a_{ij}(x) u_{x_i}(x) G(x, y) \right) - G(x, y) \mathcal{L}(u)$$

over the domain Ω_ε via the Gaussian integral theorem. The boundary integrals vanish for $\varepsilon \rightarrow 0+$ due to the growth condition, and we evaluate the integral on the left-hand side by Theorem 1. This gives us the representation formula stated above. q.e.d.

Remarks:

1. Originally the Green function for elliptic differential operators in divergence form has been considered by W. Littman, G. Stampacchia, and H.F. Weinberger. Later M. Grüter constructed Green's function for elliptic operators with L^∞ -coefficients in the Sobolev space and derived global estimates together with K.-O. Widman. Here we refer the reader to the original paper of M. Grüter and K.-O. Widman quoted at the end of Chapter VIII in §9.
2. In his graduate seminar at the University of Göttingen, E. Heinz gave us the present approach to Green's function via the Schauder theory in the winter-semester 1985/86. I am grateful to H.-C. Grunau for an elaborate copy of these beautiful lectures on Green's function and for valuable discussions.
3. One can even derive the familiar growth estimates for the first and second partial derivatives of Green's function near the singularity:

$$|G_{x_i}(x, y)| \leq c_3(M, n) |x - y|^{1-n}, \quad i = 1, \dots, n \quad \text{for } x \in \Omega, \quad x \neq y$$

and

$$|G_{x_i x_j}(x, y)| \leq c_4(M, n) |x - y|^{-n}, \quad i, j = 1, \dots, n \quad \text{for } x \in \Omega, \quad x \neq y.$$

Here we utilize the weighted Schauder estimates in Theorem 3 of §7 from Chapter IX without boundary conditions. We apply them to the generalized Green's function $G(x, y)$ at all midpoints $x \in \Omega \setminus \{y\}$ in the full disc $B(x, R)$ of radius $R = \frac{1}{2}|y - x|$ outside the singularity.

4. We infer the symmetry of the generalized Green's function from the symmetry of the Riemann-Dirichlet bilinear form above. Here we proceed as in § 1 of Chapter VIII for the ordinary Green's function and utilize the representation formula in Theorem 1.
5. When we take only $L^\infty(\Omega)$ -coefficients for the differential operator, our approximation method described in the proof of Theorem 1 gives us a generalized Green's function even in this situation. Here we approximate the coefficients by $C^{1+\alpha}(\Omega)$ -coefficients and control the representation formula in the limit. This generalized Green's function belongs to the Sobolev space in Theorem 1, satisfies the given growth condition, and is Hölder continuous outside the singularity - due to the regularity result of de Giorgi and Nash from Theorem 2 in § 5. However, differentiability and moreover growth conditions for the derivatives of Green's function cannot be attained in this situation.

§10 Spectral theory of the Laplace-Beltrami operator

Let $\Omega \subset \mathbb{R}^n$ denote a bounded domain with the $C^{2+\mu}$ -boundary $\partial\Omega$ and $0 < \mu < 1$. Here we prescribe the elliptic Riemannian metric

$$ds^2 = \sum_{i,j=1}^n g_{ij}(x) dx_i dx_j \quad , \quad x \in \overline{\Omega}$$

of the class $C^{1+\mu}(\overline{\Omega})$ with its Gramian determinant

$$g(x) := \det(g_{ij}(x))_{i,j=1,\dots,n}$$

and its inverse matrix

$$(g^{ij}(x))_{i,j=1,\dots,n} \quad , \quad x \in \Omega.$$

For the functions $\psi = \psi(x) \in C^{2+\mu}(\overline{\Omega})$ we consider the *Laplace-Beltrami operator*

$$\Delta\psi(x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{g(x)}} \sum_{i=1}^n \frac{\partial}{\partial x_i} \left(\sqrt{g(x)} \sum_{j=1}^n g^{ij}(x) \frac{\partial}{\partial x_j} \psi(x) \right) \quad (1)$$

introduced in § 8 of Chapter I. Of central interest is the following eigenvalue problem

$$-\Delta\psi(x) = \lambda\psi(x), \quad x \in \Omega \quad \text{and} \quad \psi(x) = 0, \quad x \in \partial\Omega \quad (2)$$

for real eigenvalues $\lambda \in \mathbb{R}$. We recall the *Beltrami operator of first order*

$$\nabla(\phi, \psi) := \sum_{i,j=1}^n g^{ij}(x) \phi_{x_i}(x) \psi_{x_j}(x)$$

and obtain the invariant *Riemann-Dirichlet bilinear form*

$$\mathbb{D}(\phi, \psi) := \int_{\Omega} \nabla(\phi, \psi) \sqrt{g(x)} dx = \int_{\Omega} \left\{ \sum_{i,j=1}^n \sqrt{g(x)} g^{ij}(x) \phi_{x_i}(x) \psi_{x_j}(x) \right\} dx.$$

Furthermore, we introduce the canonical bilinear form on the Riemannian manifold

$$\mathbb{B}(\phi, \psi) := \int_{\Omega} \{ \phi(x) \psi(x) \} \sqrt{g(x)} dx \quad ; \quad \phi, \psi \in L^2(\Omega).$$

Now we multiply (2) by an arbitrary test function and we arrive at the *weak eigenvalue equation*

$$\mathbb{D}(\phi, \psi) = \lambda \mathbb{B}(\phi, \psi) \quad , \quad \phi \in C_0^\infty(\Omega). \quad (3)$$

As described in §9, we determine the symmetric Green's function to the elliptic operator

$$\mathcal{L}(\psi) := \sum_{i=1}^n \frac{\partial}{\partial x_i} \left(\sum_{j=1}^n a_{ij}(x) \psi_{x_j}(x) \right), \quad x \in \Omega \quad (4)$$

with the coefficients

$$a_{ij}(x) := \sqrt{g(x)} g^{ij}(x), \quad x \in \overline{\Omega} \quad \text{for } i, j = 1, \dots, n.$$

Now we insert $G(., y)$ into the weak eigenvalue equation and obtain the following identity

$$\begin{aligned} \lambda \int_{\Omega} G(x, y) \psi(x) \sqrt{g(x)} dx &= \lambda \mathbb{B}(G(., y), \psi) = \\ &= \mathbb{D}(G(., y), \psi) = \int_{\Omega} \left\{ \sum_{i,j=1}^n a_{ij}(x) G_{x_i}(x, y) \psi_{x_j}(x) \right\} dx = \psi(y) \end{aligned}$$

for all points $y \in \Omega$. Finally, we define the weakly singular integral operator

$$\mathbb{K}\psi(y) := \int_{\Omega} G(x, y) \psi(x) \sqrt{g(x)} dx \quad , \quad y \in \overline{\Omega}.$$

We have transformed the eigenvalue problem (1) into the equivalent eigenvalue problem

$$\mathbb{K}\psi(y) = \frac{1}{\lambda} \psi(y) \quad , \quad y \in \overline{\Omega} \quad (5)$$

for the weakly singular integral operator $\mathbb{K}$.

Now we can proceed as in Chapter VIII in order to study the eigenvalue problem of this integral operator. We only have to integrate with respect to the surface element

$$\sqrt{g(x)}, \quad x \in \Omega$$

over the manifold. This constitutes a positive $C^{1+\mu}(\overline{\Omega})$ -function: We obtain Hilbert-Schmidt integral operators with respect to the Riemannian metric ds^2 , where their kernels are symmetric and weakly singular. We construct our eigenfunctions and their eigenvalues in the Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}$, endowed with the inner product $\mathbb{B}(\cdot, \cdot)$, via Rellich's spectral theorem. Then we regularize the eigenfunctions with the aid of I. Schur's theory of iterated kernels. Thus we arrive at the following result, whose complete proof can be taken from §§1, 2, 6, 7, and 9 in Chapter VIII.

Theorem 1. *To the Laplace-Beltrami operator from above, there exists a complete orthonormal system in $\mathcal{H}$ of eigenfunctions $\psi_k(x) \in C^{2+\mu}(\overline{\Omega})$ satisfying*

$$-\Delta \psi_k(x) = \lambda_k \psi_k(x), \quad x \in \Omega \quad \text{and} \quad \psi_k(x) = 0, \quad x \in \partial\Omega$$

for the eigenvalues λ_k with $k = 1, 2, 3, \dots$ such that

$$0 < \lambda_1 \leq \lambda_2 \leq \lambda_3 \leq \dots$$

holds true.

§11 Some historical notices to Chapter X

The concept of weak solutions for partial differential equations was created by D. Hilbert already in 1900. His theory of integral equations from Chapter VIII provides the transition from the classical to the modern approach for partial differential equations.

Before they became widely known under the present name, Sobolev spaces have already been applied by K. Friedrichs and F. Rellich to spectral problems, as described in Chapter VIII. Especially, Rellich's selection theorem from 1930 provided the decisive tool treating weak partial differential equations.

About 1957, E. de Georgi and independently J. Nash achieved the breakthrough in the regularity theory from weak to classical solutions. This was substantially simplified by J. Moser in 1960 by his iteration technique, consisting of inverse Hölder inequalities. Finally, W. Littman, G. Stampacchia, and H. Weinberger constructed even the Green's function for weak elliptic differential equations in 1963.

PORTRAIT OF K. FRIEDRICHS (1901–1982); taken from the biography by *C. Reid: Courant, in Göttingen and New York - An Album*; Springer-Verlag, Berlin... (1976).



XI

Nonlinear Partial Differential Equations

In this chapter we consider geometric partial differential equations, which appear for two-dimensional surfaces in their state of equilibrium. Here we give the differential-geometric foundations in §1 and determine in §2 the Euler equations of 2-dimensional, parametric functionals. In §3 we present the theory of characteristics for quasilinear hyperbolic differential equations, and §4 is devoted to the solution of Cauchy's initial value problem with the aid of successive approximation. In §5 we treat the Riemannian integration method for linear hyperbolic differential equations. Finally, we prove S.Bernstein's analyticity theorem in §6 using ideas of H. Lewy.

§1 The fundamental forms and curvatures of a surface

In the first part of this section, we consider the *differential-geometrically regular surface* on the parameter domain $\Omega \subset \mathbb{R}^2$:

$$\mathbf{x}(u, v) = (x(u, v), y(u, v), z(u, v))^* : \Omega \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^3 \in C^2(\Omega, \mathbb{R}^3),$$

satisfying the condition

$$\mathbf{x}_u(u, v) \wedge \mathbf{x}_v(u, v) \neq \mathbf{0} \quad \text{for all } (u, v) \in \Omega. \quad (1)$$

Here $\wedge$ denotes the exterior product in $\mathbb{R}^3$. Now the surface $\mathbf{x}$ has the normal

$$\mathbf{N}(u, v) := |\mathbf{x}_u \wedge \mathbf{x}_v(u, v)|^{-1} \mathbf{x}_u \wedge \mathbf{x}_v(u, v) : \Omega \rightarrow S^2 \quad (2)$$

with $S^2 := \{\mathbf{y} \in \mathbb{R}^3 : |\mathbf{y}| = 1\}$ and the tangential space

$$T_{\mathbf{x}(u, v)} := \left\{ \mathbf{y} \in \mathbb{R}^3 : \mathbf{y} \cdot \mathbf{N}(u, v) = 0 \right\}. \quad (3)$$

For each point $(u, v) \in \Omega$ we define the linear mapping

$$d\mathbf{x}(u, v) : \mathbb{R}^2 \rightarrow T_{\mathbf{x}(u, v)},$$

$$(du, dv) \mapsto (\mathbf{x}_u, \mathbf{x}_v) \cdot \begin{pmatrix} du \\ dv \end{pmatrix} = \mathbf{x}_u(u, v) du + \mathbf{x}_v(u, v) dv \quad (4)$$

with its adjoint mapping

$$d\mathbf{x}(u, v)^* : (du, dv) \mapsto (du, dv) \cdot \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{x}_u^* \\ \mathbf{x}_v^* \end{pmatrix} = \mathbf{x}_u(u, v)^* du + \mathbf{x}_v(u, v)^* dv. \quad (5)$$

We remark that the relation $1 = \mathbf{N}^* \cdot \mathbf{N}$ implies

$$\mathbf{N}^* \cdot \mathbf{N}_u = 0 = \mathbf{N}^* \cdot \mathbf{N}_v \quad \text{in } \Omega. \quad (6)$$

Consequently, we obtain a further linear mapping

$$d\mathbf{N}(u, v) : \mathbb{R}^2 \rightarrow T_{\mathbf{N}(u, v)},$$

$$(du, dv) \mapsto (\mathbf{N}_u, \mathbf{N}_v) \cdot \begin{pmatrix} du \\ dv \end{pmatrix} = \mathbf{N}_u(u, v) du + \mathbf{N}_v(u, v) dv \quad (7)$$

with the adjoint mapping

$$d\mathbf{N}(u, v)^* : (du, dv) \mapsto (du, dv) \cdot \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{N}_u^* \\ \mathbf{N}_v^* \end{pmatrix} = \mathbf{N}_u(u, v)^* du + \mathbf{N}_v(u, v)^* dv. \quad (8)$$

We now define three quadratic forms on the space $\mathbb{R}^2$ depending on the point $(u, v) \in \Omega$. *The first fundamental form* is given by

$$I(u, v) := d\mathbf{x}(u, v)^* \cdot d\mathbf{x}(u, v)$$

$$= \mathbf{x}_u^* \cdot \mathbf{x}_u(u, v) du^2 + 2\mathbf{x}_u^* \cdot \mathbf{x}_v(u, v) du dv + \mathbf{x}_v^* \cdot \mathbf{x}_v(u, v) dv^2 \quad (9)$$

$$=: E(u, v) du^2 + 2F(u, v) du dv + G(u, v) dv^2,$$

and *the second fundamental form* is defined by

$$II(u, v) := -d\mathbf{x}(u, v)^* \cdot d\mathbf{N}(u, v)$$

$$= -(\mathbf{x}_u^* \cdot \mathbf{N}_u) du^2 - (\mathbf{x}_u^* \cdot \mathbf{N}_v + \mathbf{x}_v^* \cdot \mathbf{N}_u) du dv - (\mathbf{x}_v^* \cdot \mathbf{N}_v) dv^2 \quad (10)$$

$$= (\mathbf{N}^* \cdot \mathbf{x}_{uu}) du^2 + 2(\mathbf{N}^* \cdot \mathbf{x}_{uv}) du dv + (\mathbf{N}^* \cdot \mathbf{x}_{vv}) dv^2$$

$$=: L(u, v) du^2 + 2M(u, v) du dv + N(u, v) dv^2.$$

Here we have used that the relation $\mathbf{N}^* \cdot \mathbf{x}_u = 0 = \mathbf{N}^* \cdot \mathbf{x}_v$ implies

$$-\mathbf{N}_u^* \cdot \mathbf{x}_u = \mathbf{N}^* \cdot \mathbf{x}_{uu}, \quad -\mathbf{N}_u^* \cdot \mathbf{x}_v = \mathbf{N}^* \cdot \mathbf{x}_{uv}, \quad \text{etc.}$$

Finally, we define *the third fundamental form*

$$III(u, v) := d\mathbf{N}(u, v)^* \cdot d\mathbf{N}(u, v)$$

$$= (\mathbf{N}_u^* \cdot \mathbf{N}_u) du^2 + 2(\mathbf{N}_u^* \cdot \mathbf{N}_v) du dv + (\mathbf{N}_v^* \cdot \mathbf{N}_v) dv^2 \quad (11)$$

$$=: e(u, v) du^2 + 2f(u, v) du dv + g(u, v) dv^2.$$

The behavior as far as the curvatures of a surface are concerned is determined by the *Weingarten mapping* or alternatively the *shape operator*

$$W(u, v) := -d\mathbf{N}(u, v) \circ (d\mathbf{x}(u, v))^{-1} : T_{\mathbf{x}(u, v)} \rightarrow T_{\mathbf{x}(u, v)}. \quad (12)$$

The parameters $(u, v) \in \Omega$ being fixed, the mapping $W(u, v)$ attributes the vectors $\mathbf{x}_u \mapsto -\mathbf{N}_u$ and $\mathbf{x}_v \mapsto -\mathbf{N}_v$.

Geometric interpretation:

The tangential vector $\mathbf{y} \in T_{\mathbf{x}(u, v)}$ given, we consider a regular curve

$$\mathbf{x}(t) := \mathbf{x}(u(t), v(t)), \quad -\varepsilon < t < \varepsilon$$

on the surface $\mathbf{x}$ satisfying

$$\mathbf{x}(0) = \mathbf{x}(u(0), v(0)) = \mathbf{x}(u, v) \quad \text{and} \quad \mathbf{x}'(0) = \mathbf{y} \in T_{\mathbf{x}(u, v)}.$$

We then observe the curve

$$\mathbf{N}(t) := -\mathbf{N}(u(t), v(t)), \quad -\varepsilon < t < \varepsilon$$

with the tangent vector $\mathbf{N}'(0) \in T_{\mathbf{x}(u, v)}$. The mapping

$$\mathbf{y} = \mathbf{x}'(0) \mapsto \mathbf{N}'(0) =: -\nabla_{\mathbf{y}}\mathbf{N}(u, v) : T_{\mathbf{x}(u, v)} \rightarrow T_{\mathbf{x}(u, v)}$$

is usually denoted as *covariant derivative* of the vector-field $\mathbf{N}$ in direction $\mathbf{y}$. Since this linear mapping coincides with the Weingarten mapping on the basis $\{\mathbf{x}_u, \mathbf{x}_v\}$, the Weingarten mapping is the negative covariant derivative of the normal $\mathbf{N}$ in the direction of the tangential vector $\mathbf{y}$. Consequently, the Weingarten mapping is invariant with respect to positive-oriented parameter transformations.

With respect to the basis $\{\mathbf{x}_u, \mathbf{x}_v\}$ in the tangential space $T_{\mathbf{x}(u, v)}$ the Weingarten map $W(u, v)$ is described by the symmetric matrix

$$\begin{pmatrix} -\mathbf{N}_u \cdot \mathbf{x}_u & -\mathbf{N}_u \cdot \mathbf{x}_v \\ -\mathbf{N}_v \cdot \mathbf{x}_u & -\mathbf{N}_v \cdot \mathbf{x}_v \end{pmatrix}. \quad (13)$$

Therefore, $W(u, v)$ is a symmetric linear mapping. The latter possesses two real eigenvalues $\kappa_j(u, v)$ belonging to the eigenvectors $\mathbf{e}_j(u, v) \in T_{\mathbf{x}(u, v)}$ with $|\mathbf{e}_j(u, v)| = 1$ for $j = 1, 2$. We obtain the *principal curvatures* with $\kappa_j(u, v)$ attributed to the *principal curvature directions* $\mathbf{e}_j(u, v)$. We summarize

$$W(u, v) \circ \mathbf{e}_j(u, v) = \kappa_j(u, v) \mathbf{e}_j(u, v) \quad \text{for } j = 1, 2. \quad (14)$$

Let $\mathbf{y} = \cos \vartheta \mathbf{e}_1(u, v) + \sin \vartheta \mathbf{e}_2(u, v)$, $0 \leq \vartheta \leq 2\pi$, be an arbitrary tangential vector to the surface $\mathbf{x}(u, v)$. Then we consider the quadratic form

$$\begin{aligned}
Q(\mathbf{y}) &:= (W(u, v) \circ \mathbf{y}) \cdot \mathbf{y} \\
&= (W(u, v) \circ (\cos \vartheta \mathbf{e}_1 + \sin \vartheta \mathbf{e}_2)) \cdot (\cos \vartheta \mathbf{e}_1 + \sin \vartheta \mathbf{e}_2) \\
&= (\cos \vartheta \kappa_1 \mathbf{e}_1 + \sin \vartheta \kappa_2 \mathbf{e}_2) \cdot (\cos \vartheta \mathbf{e}_1 + \sin \vartheta \mathbf{e}_2) \\
&= \kappa_1(u, v) \cos^2 \vartheta + \kappa_2(u, v) \sin^2 \vartheta.
\end{aligned}$$

Consequently, we obtain the

Theorem 1. (Euler's formula for the normal curvature)

We determine the normal curvature of the surface in the direction $\mathbf{y} = \cos \vartheta \mathbf{e}_1(u, v) + \sin \vartheta \mathbf{e}_2(u, v)$ by

$$Q(\mathbf{y}) = \kappa_1(u, v) \cos^2 \vartheta + \kappa_2(u, v) \sin^2 \vartheta. \quad (15)$$

In the case $\kappa_1(u, v) \leq \kappa_2(u, v)$, the normal curvature is minimized in the direction $\mathbf{e}_1(u, v)$ and maximized in the direction $\mathbf{e}_2(u, v)$.

Definition 1. A point $\mathbf{x}(u, v)$ of the surface $\mathbf{x}$ is called an umbilical point, if $\kappa_1(u, v) = \kappa_2(u, v)$ is satisfied.

Definition 2. We define the Gaussian curvature of the surface by

$$K(u, v) := \kappa_1(u, v) \kappa_2(u, v) = \det W(u, v), \quad (u, v) \in \Omega. \quad (16)$$

The mean curvature is given by

$$H(u, v) := \frac{1}{2}(\kappa_1(u, v) + \kappa_2(u, v)) = \frac{1}{2} \operatorname{tr} W(u, v), \quad (u, v) \in \Omega. \quad (17)$$

Here $\det$ and tr denote the determinant and the trace of a matrix.

With respect to the bases $\{\mathbf{x}_u, \mathbf{x}_v\}$, $\{(1, 0), (0, 1)\}$, $\{\mathbf{x}_u, \mathbf{x}_v\}$ the Weingarten mapping is described by the matrices

$$\begin{pmatrix} L & M \\ M & N \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} E & F \\ F & G \end{pmatrix}^{-1} = \frac{1}{EG - F^2} \begin{pmatrix} L & M \\ M & N \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} G & -F \\ -F & E \end{pmatrix}. \quad (18)$$

This reveals the following formulas

$$K(u, v) = \frac{LN - M^2}{EG - F^2} \quad (19)$$

and

$$H(u, v) = \frac{1}{2} \frac{GL - 2FM + EN}{EG - F^2}. \quad (20)$$

Finally, we show the

Theorem 2. *We have the following relation between the three fundamental forms*

$$\begin{pmatrix} e & f \\ f & g \end{pmatrix} - 2H \begin{pmatrix} L & M \\ M & N \end{pmatrix} + K \begin{pmatrix} E & F \\ F & G \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}. \quad (21)$$

Proof: According to the theorem of Hamilton-Cayley, a symmetric matrix represents a zero of its characteristic polynomial. Noting the symmetry of $W(u, v)$ we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} 0 &= W(u, v)^* \circ W(u, v) - 2H(u, v)W(u, v) + K(u, v) \text{Id} \\ &= (d\mathbf{N} \circ (d\mathbf{x})^{-1})^* \circ d\mathbf{N} \circ (d\mathbf{x})^{-1} + 2H d\mathbf{N} \circ (d\mathbf{x})^{-1} + K \text{Id} \\ &= (d\mathbf{x}^*)^{-1} \circ d\mathbf{N}^* \circ d\mathbf{N} \circ (d\mathbf{x})^{-1} + 2H d\mathbf{N} \circ (d\mathbf{x})^{-1} + K \text{Id}. \end{aligned}$$

Applying the operations $d\mathbf{x}^* \circ$ and $\circ d\mathbf{x}$ to this equation, we attain the identity

$$\begin{aligned} 0 &= d\mathbf{N}^* \circ d\mathbf{N} + 2H d\mathbf{x}^* \circ d\mathbf{N} + K d\mathbf{x}^* \circ d\mathbf{x} \\ &= III(u, v) - 2H II(u, v) + K I(u, v), \end{aligned}$$

and (21) follows. q.e.d.

In the second part of this section we investigate *graphs in arbitrary dimensions* $n \geq 2$:

$$\mathbf{z}(x) = \mathbf{z}(x_1, \dots, x_n) := (x_1, \dots, x_n, \zeta(x_1, \dots, x_n)) : \Omega \mapsto \mathbb{R}^{n+1}. \quad (22)$$

Here we defined the height function

$$z = \zeta(x) = \zeta(x_1, \dots, x_n) \in C^2(\Omega) \quad (23)$$

on the domain $\Omega \subset \mathbb{R}^n$. We determine the tangential vectors

$$\mathbf{z}_{x_i}(x) = (\delta_{i1}, \dots, \delta_{in}, \zeta_{x_i}(x)), \quad x \in \Omega \quad \text{for } i = 1, \dots, n. \quad (24)$$

We have the upper unit normal

$$\mathbf{N}(x) := (1 + |\nabla \zeta(x)|^2)^{-\frac{1}{2}} (-\zeta_{x_1}, \dots, -\zeta_{x_n}, 1), \quad x \in \Omega \quad (25)$$

and the *tangential space*

$$T_{\mathbf{z}(x)} := \{\mathbf{y} \in \mathbb{R}^{n+1} | \mathbf{y} \cdot \mathbf{N}(x) = 0\}. \quad (26)$$

As above we introduce the first fundamental form with the coefficients

$$g_{ij}(x) := \mathbf{z}_{x_i} \cdot \mathbf{z}_{x_j}(x) = \delta_{ij} + \zeta_{x_i}(x) \zeta_{x_j}(x), \quad x \in \Omega \quad \text{for } i, j = 1, \dots, n. \quad (27)$$

The tangential map

$$d\mathbf{z}(x) : \mathbb{R}^n \mapsto T_{\mathbf{z}(x)} \quad (28)$$

with respect to the bases $\mathbf{e}_i = (\delta_{i1}, \dots, \delta_{in}) \in \mathbb{R}^n$ and $\mathbf{z}_{x_i}(x) \in T_{\mathbf{z}(x)}$ for $i = 1, \dots, n$ is given by the matrix

$$(g_{ij}(x))_{i,j=1,\dots,n}.$$

We now consider the family of matrices

$$G^\lambda(x) := (\delta_{ij} + \lambda \zeta_{x_i}(x) \zeta_{x_j}(x))_{i,j=1,\dots,n} \quad (29)$$

and observe

$$G^\lambda(x) \circ \nabla \zeta(x) = (1 + \lambda |\nabla \zeta(x)|^2) \nabla \zeta(x) \quad (30)$$

with an arbitrary parameter $\lambda \in \mathbb{R}$. Furthermore, we note that

$$G^\lambda(x) \circ \mathbf{y} = \mathbf{y} \quad \text{for all } \mathbf{y} \in \mathbb{R}^n \quad \text{with } \mathbf{y} \cdot \nabla \zeta(x) = 0. \quad (31)$$

We deduce

$$G^\lambda(x) \circ G^1(x) \circ \nabla \zeta(x) = (1 + \lambda |\nabla \zeta(x)|^2)(1 + |\nabla \zeta(x)|^2) \nabla \zeta(x)$$

and choose λ such that

$$1 = (1 + \lambda |\nabla \zeta(x)|^2)(1 + |\nabla \zeta(x)|^2) \quad \text{or equivalently}$$

$$\frac{1}{1 + |\nabla \zeta(x)|^2} - 1 = \lambda |\nabla \zeta(x)|^2 \quad \text{or equivalently}$$

$$\frac{-1}{1 + |\nabla \zeta(x)|^2} = \lambda \quad \text{holds true.}$$

Introducing the matrix

$$g^{ij}(x) := \delta_{ij} - \frac{\zeta_{x_i}(x) \zeta_{x_j}(x)}{1 + |\nabla \zeta(x)|^2} \quad \text{with } i, j = 1, \dots, n \quad (32)$$

we obtain

$$g^{ij}(x) g_{jk}(x) = \delta_k^i, \quad x \in \Omega \quad (33)$$

via the Einstein summation convention.

As above we can introduce the second fundamental form with the coefficients

$$h_{ij}(x) := -\mathbf{N}_{x_i} \cdot \mathbf{z}_{x_j}(x) = \mathbf{N} \cdot \mathbf{z}_{x_i x_j}(x) = (\mathbf{N}(x) \cdot \mathbf{e}) \zeta_{x_i x_j}(x), \quad x \in \Omega \quad (34)$$

for $i, j = 1, \dots, n$. Here we used the unit vector $\mathbf{e} = (0, \dots, 0, 1) \in \mathbb{R}^{n+1}$. The linear map

$$-d\mathbf{N}(x) : \mathbb{R}^n \mapsto T_{\mathbf{z}(x)} \quad (35)$$

is represented by the matrix $(h_{ij}(x))_{i,j=1,\dots,n}$ with respect to the canonical bases.

We summarize to the

Theorem 3. *The Weingarten mapping for n -dimensional graphs is given by the matrices*

$$W(x) = (\mathbf{N}(x) \cdot \mathbf{e}) (\zeta_{x_i x_j}(x))_{i,j=1,\dots,n} \circ \left(\delta_{ij} - \frac{\zeta_{x_i}(x) \zeta_{x_j}(x)}{1 + |\nabla \zeta(x)|^2} \right)_{i,j=1,\dots,n}, \quad x \in \Omega \quad (36)$$

with respect to the canonical bases.

Remarks: From this theorem we can deduce curvature equations for graphs in arbitrary dimensions. Especially for the equation

$$\text{trace } W(x) = 0, \quad x \in \Omega \quad (37)$$

we obtain the quasilinear n -dimensional minimal surface equation

$$\sum_{i,j=1}^n \left(\delta_{ij} - \frac{\zeta_{x_i}(x) \zeta_{x_j}(x)}{1 + |\nabla \zeta(x)|^2} \right) \zeta_{x_i x_j}(x) = 0 \quad \text{in } \Omega. \quad (38)$$

We now calculate

$$\begin{aligned} & \sqrt{1 + |\nabla \zeta(x)|^2} \operatorname{div} \left((1 + |\nabla \zeta(x)|^2)^{-\frac{1}{2}} \nabla \zeta(x) \right) = \\ & \Delta \zeta(x) - \frac{1}{2(1 + |\nabla \zeta(x)|^2)} (\nabla \sum_{i=1}^n \zeta_{x_i}^2) \cdot (\nabla \zeta(x)) = \\ & \Delta \zeta(x) - \frac{1}{1 + |\nabla \zeta(x)|^2} \sum_{j=1}^n \left(\sum_{i=1}^n \zeta_{x_i} \zeta_{x_i x_j} \right) \zeta_{x_j}(x) = \\ & \Delta \zeta(x) - \frac{1}{1 + |\nabla \zeta(x)|^2} \sum_{i,j=1}^n \zeta_{x_i} \zeta_{x_j} \zeta_{x_i x_j}(x). \end{aligned} \quad (39)$$

By the identity (39) we transform (38) into the *minimal surface equation in divergence form*

$$\operatorname{div} \left(\frac{\nabla \zeta(x)}{\sqrt{1 + |\nabla \zeta(x)|^2}} \right) = 0 \quad \text{in } \Omega. \quad (40)$$

Geometrically, the arithmetic means of the n principal curvatures vanishes for these graphs at each point.

§2 Two-dimensional parametric integrals

We consider differential-geometrically regular surfaces on the parameter domain $(u, v) \in \Omega \subset \mathbb{R}^2$, namely

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{x} &= \mathbf{x}(u, v) = (x_1(u, v), x_2(u, v), x_3(u, v)) = (x(u, v), y(u, v), z(u, v)), \\ \mathbf{x} : \Omega &\rightarrow \mathbb{R}^3 \in C^3(\Omega) \end{aligned} \quad (1)$$

satisfying $|\mathbf{x}_u \wedge \mathbf{x}_v(u, v)| > 0$ for all $(u, v) \in \Omega$ and

$$\iint_{\Omega} |\mathbf{x}_u \wedge \mathbf{x}_v(u, v)| \, du \, dv < +\infty.$$

Denoting by $S^2 := \{\mathbf{z} \in \mathbb{R}^3 : |\mathbf{z}| = 1\}$ the unit sphere in $\mathbb{R}^3$, the normal $\mathbf{X}$ of the surface $\mathbf{x}$ is given as follows:

$$\mathbf{X}(u, v) := |\mathbf{x}_u \wedge \mathbf{x}_v|^{-1} \mathbf{x}_u \wedge \mathbf{x}_v(u, v) : \Omega \rightarrow S^2 \in C^2(\Omega). \quad (2)$$

We consider a density function

$$\begin{aligned} F &= F(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{p}) = F(x_1, x_2, x_3; p_1, p_2, p_3), \\ F &: \mathbb{R}^3 \times \mathbb{R}^3 \rightarrow \mathbb{R} \in C^2(\mathbb{R}^3 \times (\mathbb{R}^3 \setminus \{\mathbf{0}\})) \cap C^0(\mathbb{R}^3 \times \mathbb{R}^3), \end{aligned}$$

which we assume to be positive-homogeneous of degree 1; that means

$$F(\mathbf{x}, \lambda \mathbf{p}) = \lambda F(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{p}) \quad \text{for all } \lambda > 0. \quad (3)$$

From the relation (3) we obtain the following condition by differentiation with respect to λ at $\lambda = 1$:

$$F_{\mathbf{p}}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{p}) \cdot \mathbf{p}^* = F(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{p}), \quad \mathbf{p} \circ F_{\mathbf{p}\mathbf{p}}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{p}) \circ \mathbf{p}^* = 0 \quad \text{for } \mathbf{p} \neq \mathbf{0}. \quad (4)$$

Furthermore, $F_{\mathbf{x}}(\mathbf{x}, \lambda \mathbf{p}) = \lambda F_{\mathbf{x}}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{p})$ implies

$$F_{\mathbf{x}\mathbf{p}}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{p}) \circ \mathbf{p}^* = F_{\mathbf{x}}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{p}) \quad \text{for } \mathbf{p} \neq \mathbf{0}. \quad (5)$$

Here we have abbreviated $F_{\mathbf{p}} := (F_{p_1}, F_{p_2}, F_{p_3})$, $F_{\mathbf{p}\mathbf{p}} := (F_{p_i p_j})_{i,j=1,2,3}$, etc.

We define the *generalized area integral*

$$\begin{aligned} A(\mathbf{x}) &= \iint_{\Omega} F(\mathbf{x}(u, v), \mathbf{X}(u, v)) |\mathbf{x}_u \wedge \mathbf{x}_v(u, v)| \, du \, dv \\ &= \iint_{\Omega} F(\mathbf{x}(u, v), \mathbf{x}_u \wedge \mathbf{x}_v(u, v)) \, du \, dv. \end{aligned} \quad (6)$$

Evidently, an arbitrary positive-oriented diffeomorphism

$$f = f(\alpha, \beta) = (u(\alpha, \beta), v(\alpha, \beta)) : \Theta \rightarrow \Omega \in C^1(\Theta, \mathbb{R}^2)$$

satisfies the identity

$$A(\mathbf{x}) = A(\mathbf{x} \circ f).$$

Consequently, A represents a parametric functional. We can show that the expression A from (6) gives us the most general two-dimensional parameter-invariant functional in $\mathbb{R}^3$.

Examples:

1. For $F = F(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{p}) := |\mathbf{p}|$ we obtain the *ordinary area functional*.
2. In the case

$$F = F(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{p}) = |\mathbf{p}| + \frac{2H}{3} \mathbf{x} \cdot \mathbf{p}, \quad H \in \mathbb{R},$$

we get the *functional of E. Heinz*

$$A(\mathbf{x}) = \iint_{\Omega} \left\{ |\mathbf{x}_u \wedge \mathbf{x}_v| + \frac{2H}{3} (\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x}_u, \mathbf{x}_v) \right\} du dv, \quad (7)$$

abbreviating the triple product as follows:

$$(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y}, \mathbf{z}) := \mathbf{x} \cdot (\mathbf{y} \wedge \mathbf{z}), \quad \mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y}, \mathbf{z} \in \mathbb{R}^3.$$

In (7) we have to comprehend H as a Lagrange parameter. Therefore, one minimizes the ordinary area functional with the subsidiary condition of keeping the volume constant:

$$\frac{2H}{3} \iint_{\Omega} (\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x}_u, \mathbf{x}_v) du dv = 1.$$

3. When we finally consider

$$\begin{aligned} F &= F(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{p}) = |\mathbf{p}| + 2\mathbf{Q}(\mathbf{x}) \cdot \mathbf{p}, \\ \mathbf{Q} : \mathbb{R}^3 &\rightarrow \mathbb{R}^3 \in C^2(\mathbb{R}^3) \quad \text{with} \quad \operatorname{div} \mathbf{Q}(\mathbf{x}) = H(\mathbf{x}), \end{aligned}$$

we obtain the *functional of S. Hildebrandt*

$$A(\mathbf{x}) = \iint_{\Omega} \left\{ |\mathbf{x}_u \wedge \mathbf{x}_v| + 2(\mathbf{Q}(\mathbf{x}), \mathbf{x}_u, \mathbf{x}_v) \right\} du dv. \quad (8)$$

Here one minimizes the ordinary area functional with respect to constant weighted volume as a subsidiary condition:

$$2 \iint_{\Omega} (\mathbf{Q}(\mathbf{x}), \mathbf{x}_u, \mathbf{x}_v) du dv = 1.$$

We shall now determine the Euler equations of our generalized area integral A : Therefore, we consider the surface varied in the normal direction, when we take an arbitrary test function $\varphi = \varphi(u, v) \in C_0^\infty(\Omega)$, namely

$$\bar{\mathbf{x}}(u, v; t) := \mathbf{x}(u, v) + t\varphi(u, v)\mathbf{X}(u, v) : \Omega \times (-\varepsilon, \varepsilon) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^3. \quad (9)$$

When we choose the number $\varepsilon > 0$ sufficiently small, these surfaces remain differential-geometrically regular. We calculate

$$\begin{aligned}
\bar{\mathbf{x}}_u &= \mathbf{x}_u + t(\varphi \mathbf{X})_u, & \bar{\mathbf{x}}_v &= \mathbf{x}_v + t(\varphi \mathbf{X})_v, \\
\bar{\mathbf{x}}_u \wedge \bar{\mathbf{x}}_v &= \mathbf{x}_u \wedge \mathbf{x}_v + t\{\mathbf{x}_u \wedge (\varphi \mathbf{X})_v + (\varphi \mathbf{X})_u \wedge \mathbf{x}_v\} + t^2(\varphi \mathbf{X})_u \wedge (\varphi \mathbf{X})_v.
\end{aligned} \tag{10}$$

This implies

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{\partial}{\partial t} A(\bar{\mathbf{x}}) &= \frac{\partial}{\partial t} \iint_{\Omega} F(\bar{\mathbf{x}}, \bar{\mathbf{x}}_u \wedge \bar{\mathbf{x}}_v) du dv \\
&= \iint_{\Omega} (F_{\mathbf{x}}(\bar{\mathbf{x}}, \bar{\mathbf{x}}_u \wedge \bar{\mathbf{x}}_v) \cdot \mathbf{X}) \varphi du dv \\
&\quad + \iint_{\Omega} F_{\mathbf{p}}(\bar{\mathbf{x}}, \bar{\mathbf{x}}_u \wedge \bar{\mathbf{x}}_v) \cdot \{\mathbf{x}_u \wedge (\varphi \mathbf{X})_v + (\varphi \mathbf{X})_u \wedge \mathbf{x}_v\} du dv \\
&\quad + 2t \iint_{\Omega} (F_{\mathbf{p}}(\bar{\mathbf{x}}, \bar{\mathbf{x}}_u \wedge \bar{\mathbf{x}}_v), (\varphi \mathbf{X})_u, (\varphi \mathbf{X})_v) du dv.
\end{aligned} \tag{11}$$

Then, we obtain the Euler equations in the weak form

$$\begin{aligned}
0 &= \frac{\partial}{\partial t} A(\bar{\mathbf{x}}) \Big|_{t=0} \\
&= \iint_{\Omega} \{F_{\mathbf{x}}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{X}) \cdot \mathbf{X}\} \varphi |\mathbf{x}_u \wedge \mathbf{x}_v| du dv \\
&\quad + \iint_{\Omega} \left\{ (F_{\mathbf{p}}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{X}), \mathbf{x}_u, \varphi \mathbf{X})_v + (F_{\mathbf{p}}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{X}), \varphi \mathbf{X}, \mathbf{x}_v)_u \right\} du dv \\
&\quad - \iint_{\Omega} \left\{ ((F_{\mathbf{p}}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{X}))_v, \mathbf{x}_u, \varphi \mathbf{X}) + ((F_{\mathbf{p}}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{X}))_u, \varphi \mathbf{X}, \mathbf{x}_v) \right\} du dv \\
&= \iint_{\Omega} \{ \mathbf{X} \circ F_{\mathbf{p}\mathbf{x}}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{X}) \circ \mathbf{X}^* \} \varphi |\mathbf{x}_u \wedge \mathbf{x}_v| du dv \\
&\quad + \iint_{\Omega} \left\{ (\mathbf{x}_u, F_{\mathbf{p}\mathbf{x}}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{X}) \circ \mathbf{x}_v, \mathbf{X}) + (F_{\mathbf{p}\mathbf{x}}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{X}) \circ \mathbf{x}_u, \mathbf{x}_v, \mathbf{X}) \right\} \varphi du dv \\
&\quad + \iint_{\Omega} \left\{ (\mathbf{x}_u, F_{\mathbf{p}\mathbf{p}}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{X}) \circ \mathbf{X}_v, \mathbf{X}) + (F_{\mathbf{p}\mathbf{p}}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{X}) \circ \mathbf{X}_u, \mathbf{x}_v, \mathbf{X}) \right\} \varphi du dv.
\end{aligned} \tag{12}$$

We now set

$$2H(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{p}) := \operatorname{div} F_{\mathbf{p}}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{p}) = \operatorname{tr} F_{\mathbf{p}\mathbf{x}}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{p}).$$

($\operatorname{tr} F_{\mathbf{p}\mathbf{x}}$ denotes the trace of the matrix $F_{\mathbf{p}\mathbf{x}}$.) Consequently, the following parameter invariant equation holds true:

$$\begin{aligned}
 & (F_{\mathbf{p}\mathbf{x}}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{X}) \circ \mathbf{x}_u, \mathbf{x}_v, \mathbf{X}) + (\mathbf{x}_u, F_{\mathbf{p}\mathbf{x}}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{X}) \circ \mathbf{x}_v, \mathbf{X}) + (\mathbf{x}_u, \mathbf{x}_v, F_{\mathbf{p}\mathbf{x}}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{X}) \circ \mathbf{X}) \\
 & = 2H(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{X})(\mathbf{x}_u, \mathbf{x}_v, \mathbf{X}).
 \end{aligned} \tag{13}$$

Therefore, the weak Euler differential equation (12) appears in the form

$$\begin{aligned}
 0 = \iint_{\Omega} \Big\{ & (F_{\mathbf{p}\mathbf{p}}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{X}) \circ \mathbf{X}_u, \mathbf{x}_v, \mathbf{X}) + (\mathbf{x}_u, F_{\mathbf{p}\mathbf{p}}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{X}) \circ \mathbf{X}_v, \mathbf{X}) \\
 & + 2H(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{X})|\mathbf{x}_u \wedge \mathbf{x}_v| \Big\} \varphi(u, v) du dv \quad \text{for all } \varphi \in C_0^\infty(\Omega).
 \end{aligned} \tag{14}$$

We obtain the Euler equation as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}
 0 = & (F_{\mathbf{p}\mathbf{p}}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{X}) \circ \mathbf{X}_u, \mathbf{x}_v, \mathbf{X}) + (\mathbf{x}_u, F_{\mathbf{p}\mathbf{p}}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{X}) \circ \mathbf{X}_v, \mathbf{X}) \\
 & + 2H(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{X})|\mathbf{x}_u \wedge \mathbf{x}_v| \quad \text{in } \Omega.
 \end{aligned} \tag{15}$$

This equation is obviously equivalent to the system

$$\begin{aligned}
 \mathbf{0} = & \{F_{\mathbf{p}\mathbf{p}}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{X}) \circ \mathbf{X}_u\} \wedge \mathbf{x}_v + \mathbf{x}_u \wedge \{F_{\mathbf{p}\mathbf{p}}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{X}) \circ \mathbf{X}_v\} \\
 & + 2H(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{X})\mathbf{x}_u \wedge \mathbf{x}_v \quad \text{in } \Omega.
 \end{aligned} \tag{16}$$

Following the arguments in the book by W. Klingenberg: *Eine Vorlesung über Differentialgeometrie*, Section 3.6, we now introduce the lines of principal curvatures as parameters u, v into the surface. We obtain

$$\begin{aligned}
 \mathbf{x}_u \cdot \mathbf{x}_v = 0 = \mathbf{X}_u \cdot \mathbf{x}_v = \mathbf{X}_v \cdot \mathbf{x}_u, \\
 \mathbf{X}_u = -\kappa_1 \mathbf{x}_u, \quad \mathbf{X}_v = -\kappa_2 \mathbf{x}_v \quad \text{in } \Omega
 \end{aligned} \tag{17}$$

with the principal curvatures κ_1, κ_2 . Furthermore, we define the weight factors

$$\varrho_1(u, v) := |\mathbf{x}_u \wedge \mathbf{x}_v|^{-1} (F_{\mathbf{p}\mathbf{p}}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{X}) \circ \mathbf{x}_u, \mathbf{x}_v, \mathbf{X}) \tag{18}$$

and

$$\varrho_2(u, v) := |\mathbf{x}_u \wedge \mathbf{x}_v|^{-1} (\mathbf{x}_u, F_{\mathbf{p}\mathbf{p}}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{X}) \circ \mathbf{x}_v, \mathbf{X}). \tag{19}$$

Then the relation (15) is transformed into the *quasilinear curvature equation*

$$\varrho_1(u, v)\kappa_1(u, v) + \varrho_2(u, v)\kappa_2(u, v) = 2H(\mathbf{x}(u, v), \mathbf{X}(u, v)) \quad \text{in } \Omega. \tag{20}$$

The weight factors ϱ_1 and ϱ_2 have the same positive (different) sign if and only if the matrix $F_{\mathbf{p}\mathbf{p}}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{p})$ is positive-definite (indefinite) on the space orthogonal to $\mathbf{p}$.

Theorem 1. *The quasilinear curvature equation (20) represents the Euler equation of the parametric functional (6).*

In the case of Hildebrandt's functional (8) we observe

$$F(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{p}) = |\mathbf{p}| + 2\mathbf{Q}(\mathbf{x}) \cdot \mathbf{p} = \sqrt{\sum_{k=1}^3 p_k^2} + 2 \sum_{k=1}^3 q_k(\mathbf{x}) p_k$$

with $\operatorname{div} \mathbf{Q}(\mathbf{x}) = H(\mathbf{x})$. We calculate

$$F_{p_i} = \frac{p_i}{\sqrt{\sum_{k=1}^3 p_k^2}} + 2q_i(\mathbf{x}), \quad F_{p_i p_j} = \frac{\delta_{ij}}{\sqrt{\sum_{k=1}^3 p_k^2}} - \frac{p_i p_j}{\sqrt{\sum_{k=1}^3 p_k^2}^3}$$

for $i, j = 1, 2, 3$. The weight factors reduce to $\varrho_1(u, v) \equiv 1 \equiv \varrho_2(u, v)$ in Ω and the equation (20) specializes to

$$\frac{1}{2}(\kappa_1(u, v) + \kappa_2(u, v)) = \frac{1}{2} \operatorname{div} F_{\mathbf{p}} = \operatorname{div} \mathbf{Q}(\mathbf{x}) = H(\mathbf{x}) \quad \text{in } \Omega. \quad (21)$$

Then the system (16) appears in the form

$$\mathbf{X}_u \wedge \mathbf{x}_v + \mathbf{x}_u \wedge \mathbf{X}_v + 2H(\mathbf{x})\mathbf{x}_u \wedge \mathbf{x}_v = \mathbf{0} \quad \text{in } \Omega \quad (22)$$

or equivalently

$$-(\mathbf{X} \wedge \mathbf{x}_v)_u + (\mathbf{X} \wedge \mathbf{x}_u)_v = 2H(\mathbf{x})\mathbf{x}_u \wedge \mathbf{x}_v \quad \text{in } \Omega. \quad (23)$$

The equations (23) become transparent if we introduce conformal parameters into the surface as follows:

$$\mathbf{x}_u \cdot \mathbf{x}_v = 0 = |\mathbf{x}_u|^2 - |\mathbf{x}_v|^2 \quad \text{in } \Omega. \quad (24)$$

We now observe

$$\mathbf{X} \wedge \mathbf{x}_u = \mathbf{x}_v, \quad \mathbf{X} \wedge \mathbf{x}_v = -\mathbf{x}_u \quad \text{in } \Omega. \quad (25)$$

Inserting (25) into (23), we obtain the *H-surface system*

$$\Delta \mathbf{x}(u, v) = 2H(\mathbf{x})\mathbf{x}_u \wedge \mathbf{x}_v \quad \text{in } \Omega. \quad (26)$$

We summarize our considerations to the following

Theorem 2. (F. Rellich)

A conformally parametrized surface $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{x}(u, v) : \Omega \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^3$ due to (24) has the prescribed mean curvature $H = H(\mathbf{x})$ if and only if $\mathbf{x}$ fulfills the H-surface system (26).

Remark: If the matrix $F_{\mathbf{p}\mathbf{p}}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{p})$ is positive-definite on the space orthogonal to $\mathbf{p}$, we can introduce conformal parameters into a weighted first fundamental form. We then obtain the following elliptic system for the mapping

$$\mathbf{y}(u, v) := (\mathbf{x}(u, v), \mathbf{X}(u, v)) : \Omega \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^6,$$

namely

$$|\Delta \mathbf{y}(u, v)| \leq c |\nabla \mathbf{y}(u, v)|^2 \quad \text{in } \Omega.$$

In this context we refer the reader to

F. Sauvigny: *Curvature estimates for immersions of minimal surface type via uniformization and theorems of Bernstein type*. Manuscripta math. 67 (1990), 69-97.

On the domain $\Omega \subset \mathbb{R}^2$ we now define the surface

$$\mathbf{x}(x, y) := (x, y, \zeta(x, y)), \quad (x, y) \in \Omega, \quad (27)$$

given as a graph above the x, y -plane. The normal to the surface $\mathbf{x}$ is then represented by

$$\mathbf{X}(x, y) := \frac{1}{\sqrt{1 + |\nabla \zeta(x, y)|^2}} (-\zeta_x, -\zeta_y, 1), \quad (x, y) \in \Omega, \quad (28)$$

and the surface element by

$$|\mathbf{x}_x \wedge \mathbf{x}_y| = \sqrt{1 + |\nabla \zeta(x, y)|^2} =: \sqrt{\quad}. \quad (29)$$

We determine the derivatives

$$\mathbf{x}_x(x, y) = (1, 0, \zeta_x(x, y)), \quad \mathbf{x}_y(x, y) = (0, 1, \zeta_y(x, y)) \quad (30)$$

and

$$\mathbf{X}_x = \frac{1}{\sqrt{\quad}} (-\zeta_{xx}, -\zeta_{xy}, 0) + \lambda_1 \mathbf{X}, \quad \mathbf{X}_y = \frac{1}{\sqrt{\quad}} (-\zeta_{xy}, -\zeta_{yy}, 0) + \lambda_2 \mathbf{X} \quad (31)$$

with certain functions λ_1, λ_2 . When we insert the relations (30) and (31) into (15), we get the differential equation

$$\begin{aligned} 0 = & \left(F_{\mathbf{p}\mathbf{p}}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{X}) \circ \begin{pmatrix} -\zeta_{xx} \\ -\zeta_{xy} \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ \zeta_y \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} -\zeta_x \\ -\zeta_y \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \right) \\ & + \left(\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ \zeta_x \end{pmatrix}, F_{\mathbf{p}\mathbf{p}}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{X}) \circ \begin{pmatrix} -\zeta_{xy} \\ -\zeta_{yy} \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} -\zeta_x \\ -\zeta_y \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \right) \\ & + 2H(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{X}) \sqrt{1 + |\nabla \zeta(x, y)|^2}^3 \quad \text{in } \Omega. \end{aligned} \quad (32)$$

This represents a quasilinear differential equation of the form

$$a(x, y, \zeta(x, y), \nabla \zeta(x, y)) \zeta_{xx} + 2b(\dots) \zeta_{xy} + c(\dots) \zeta_{yy} + d(\dots) = 0 \quad \text{in } \Omega. \quad (33)$$

In particular, for Hildebrandt's functional we obtain

$$\begin{aligned}
 0 &= \begin{vmatrix} -\zeta_{xx} & 0 & -\zeta_x \\ -\zeta_{xy} & 1 & -\zeta_y \\ 0 & \zeta_y & 1 \end{vmatrix} + \begin{vmatrix} 1 & -\zeta_{xy} & -\zeta_x \\ 0 & -\zeta_{yy} & -\zeta_y \\ \zeta_x & 0 & 1 \end{vmatrix} + 2H(\mathbf{x})\sqrt{1+|\nabla\zeta(x,y)|^2}^3 \\
 &= -(1+\zeta_y^2)\zeta_{xx} + 2\zeta_x\zeta_y\zeta_{xy} - (1+\zeta_x^2)\zeta_{yy} + 2H(\mathbf{x})\sqrt{1+|\nabla\zeta(x,y)|^2}^3
 \end{aligned}$$

or equivalently

$$\begin{aligned}
 \mathcal{M}\zeta &:= (1+\zeta_y^2)\zeta_{xx} - 2\zeta_x\zeta_y\zeta_{xy} + (1+\zeta_x^2)\zeta_{yy} \\
 &= 2H(\mathbf{x})\sqrt{1+|\nabla\zeta(x,y)|^2}^3 \quad \text{in } \Omega.
 \end{aligned} \tag{34}$$

Theorem 3. (Lagrange, Gauß)

The graph $z = \zeta(x, y)$, $(x, y) \in \Omega$, possesses the prescribed mean curvature $H = H(x, y, z)$ if and only if the function ζ satisfies the nonparametric equation of prescribed mean curvature (34).

Remark: In the case $H \equiv 0$ we obtain the minimal surface equation

$$\mathcal{M}\zeta(x, y) \equiv 0 \quad \text{in } \Omega.$$

Example 1. The minimal surface of H. F. Scherk.

With the aid of the ansatz $z = \zeta(x, y) = f(x) + g(y)$ we search for all minimal surfaces of this form satisfying $\zeta(0, 0) = 0$, $\nabla\zeta(0, 0) = 0$. Inserting into the minimal surface equation we obtain

$$\begin{aligned}
 0 &= (1+\zeta_y^2)\zeta_{xx} - 2\zeta_x\zeta_y\zeta_{xy} + (1+\zeta_x^2)\zeta_{yy} \\
 &= \{1 + (g'(y))^2\}f''(x) + \{1 + (f'(x))^2\}g''(y) \quad \text{in } \Omega.
 \end{aligned}$$

This is equivalent to

$$\frac{f''(x)}{1 + (f'(x))^2} = -\frac{g''(y)}{1 + (g'(y))^2} \quad \text{in } \Omega.$$

Consequently, the condition

$$-\frac{f''(x)}{1 + (f'(x))^2} = a = \frac{g''(y)}{1 + (g'(y))^2}, \quad a \in \mathbb{R},$$

holds true, and we assume $a > 0$ without loss of generality. We deduce

$$a = -(\arctan f'(x))', \quad \arctan f'(x) = -ax + b$$

and via $b = 0$ we obtain

$$f'(x) = \tan(-ax), \quad f(x) = \frac{1}{a} \log \cos(ax).$$

Similarly we comprehend

$$g(y) = -\frac{1}{a} \log \cos(ay)$$

and consequently

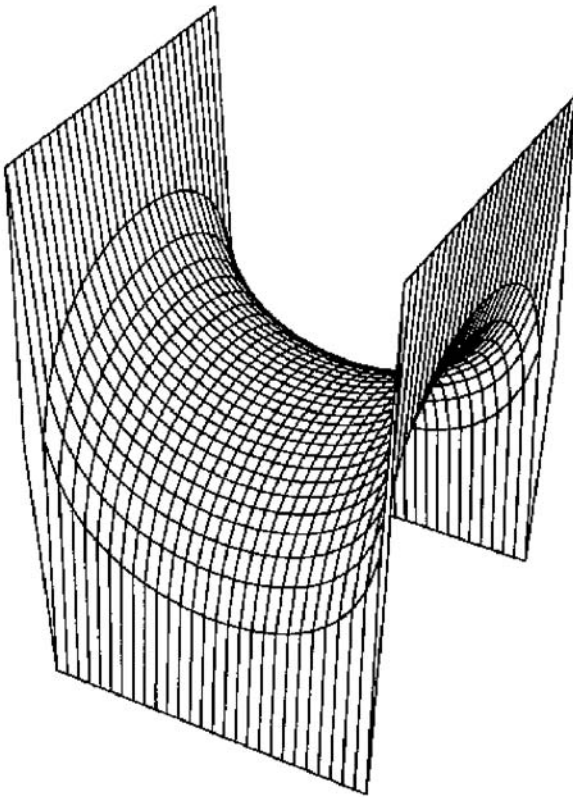
$$\zeta(x, y) = f(x) + g(y) = \frac{1}{a} \log \frac{\cos ax}{\cos ay}, \quad a > 0.$$

This surface is defined on the open square

$$\Omega := \left\{ (x, y) \in \mathbb{R}^2 : |x| < \frac{\pi}{2a}, |y| < \frac{\pi}{2a} \right\}$$

and cannot be extended beyond this domain.

A GRAPHIC OF SCHERK'S MINIMAL SURFACE



§3 Quasilinear hyperbolic differential equations and systems of second order (Characteristic parameters)

Let the solution $z = \zeta(x, y) : \Omega \rightarrow \mathbb{R} \in C^3(\Omega)$ of the quasilinear differential equation

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{L}\zeta(x, y) := & a(x, y, \zeta(x, y), \nabla\zeta(x, y))\zeta_{xx}(x, y) + 2b(\dots)\zeta_{xy} + c(\dots)\zeta_{yy} \\ & + d(x, y, \zeta(x, y), \nabla\zeta(x, y)) = 0 \quad \text{in } \Omega \end{aligned} \quad (1)$$

be given on the domain $\Omega \subset \mathbb{R}^2$. Here the coefficients b and c depend on the same quantities as a does. In the sequel, we often use the abbreviations

$$\begin{aligned} z(x, y) &:= \zeta(x, y), & p(x, y) &:= \zeta_x(x, y), & q(x, y) &:= \zeta_y(x, y), \\ r(x, y) &:= \zeta_{xx}(x, y), & s(x, y) &:= \zeta_{xy}(x, y), & t(x, y) &:= \zeta_{yy}(x, y) \quad \text{in } \Omega. \end{aligned} \quad (2)$$

For a given solution $z = \zeta(x, y)$ of (1) we set

$$\begin{aligned} a(x, y) &:= a(x, y, \zeta(x, y), \nabla\zeta(x, y)), \\ b(x, y) &:= b(x, y, \zeta(x, y), \nabla\zeta(x, y)), \\ c(x, y) &:= c(x, y, \zeta(x, y), \nabla\zeta(x, y)) \quad \text{in } \Omega, \end{aligned} \quad (3)$$

and obtain the differential equation

$$\begin{aligned} 0 = & a(x, y)\zeta_{xx}(x, y) + 2b(x, y)\zeta_{xy}(x, y) + c(x, y)\zeta_{yy}(x, y) \\ & + d(x, y, \zeta(x, y), \nabla\zeta(x, y)) \quad \text{in } \Omega. \end{aligned} \quad (4)$$

We now assume the differential equation (4) to be hyperbolic, which means

$$a(x, y)c(x, y) - b(x, y)^2 < 0 \quad \text{in } \Omega. \quad (5)$$

We observe that this condition depends on the coefficients $a(x, y, z, p, q)$, ... and on the solution ζ and its gradient $\nabla\zeta$ as well.

We now intend to bring the differential equation (1) or equivalently (4) into a form as simple as possible. To this aim we consider the following transformation of variables in the neighborhood $\mathcal{U}(x_0, y_0) \subset \Omega$, namely

$$\begin{aligned} \xi &= \xi(x, y), \quad \eta = \eta(x, y) \in C^2(\mathcal{U}(x_0, y_0)), \\ \xi_0 &= \xi(x_0, y_0), \quad \eta_0 = \eta(x_0, y_0), \quad \frac{\partial(\xi, \eta)}{\partial(x, y)} \neq 0 \text{ in } \mathcal{U}(x_0, y_0), \end{aligned} \quad (6)$$

with the inverse mapping $x = x(\xi, \eta)$, $y = y(\xi, \eta) \in C^2(\mathcal{U}(\xi_0, \eta_0))$.

We calculate

$$\begin{aligned}
z &= \zeta(x, y) = z(\xi(x, y), \eta(x, y)), & (x, y) \in \mathcal{U}(x_0, y_0), \\
\zeta_x &= z_\xi \xi_x + z_\eta \eta_x, & \zeta_y = z_\xi \xi_y + z_\eta \eta_y, \\
\zeta_{xx} &= z_{\xi\xi} \xi_x^2 + 2z_{\xi\eta} \xi_x \eta_x + z_{\eta\eta} \eta_x^2 + z_\xi \xi_{xx} + z_\eta \eta_{xx} \\
\zeta_{xy} &= z_{\xi\xi} \xi_x \xi_y + z_{\xi\eta} (\xi_x \eta_y + \xi_y \eta_x) + z_{\eta\eta} \eta_x \eta_y + z_\xi \xi_{xy} + z_\eta \eta_{xy} \\
\zeta_{yy} &= z_{\xi\xi} \xi_y^2 + 2z_{\xi\eta} \xi_y \eta_y + z_{\eta\eta} \eta_y^2 + z_\xi \xi_{yy} + z_\eta \eta_{yy}.
\end{aligned} \tag{7}$$

Therefore, the relation (4) yields the transformed differential equation

$$\begin{aligned}
0 &= a(x, y) \zeta_{xx} + 2b(x, y) \zeta_{xy} + c(x, y) \zeta_{yy} + d(x, y, \zeta, \nabla \zeta) \\
&= A(x, y) z_{\xi\xi} + 2B(x, y) z_{\xi\eta} + C(x, y) z_{\eta\eta} + D(x, y, z, \nabla z)
\end{aligned} \tag{8}$$

with

$$\begin{aligned}
A(x, y) &= a(x, y) \xi_x^2 + 2b(x, y) \xi_x \xi_y + c(x, y) \xi_y^2 =: Q(\xi, \xi), \\
B(x, y) &= a(x, y) \xi_x \eta_x + b(x, y) (\xi_x \eta_y + \xi_y \eta_x) + c(x, y) \xi_y \eta_y =: Q(\xi, \eta), \\
C(x, y) &= a(x, y) \eta_x^2 + 2b(x, y) \eta_x \eta_y + c(x, y) \eta_y^2 =: Q(\eta, \eta).
\end{aligned} \tag{9}$$

The quadratic form

$$Q(\xi, \eta) := (\xi_x, \xi_y) \circ \begin{pmatrix} a(x, y) & b(x, y) \\ b(x, y) & c(x, y) \end{pmatrix} \circ \begin{pmatrix} \eta_x \\ \eta_y \end{pmatrix} \tag{10}$$

is called the *characteristic form of the differential equation (4)*; we finally set $Q(\varphi) := Q(\varphi, \varphi)$. We summarize our relations (9) to the following matrix equation:

$$\begin{pmatrix} A(x, y) & B(x, y) \\ B(x, y) & C(x, y) \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \xi_x & \xi_y \\ \eta_x & \eta_y \end{pmatrix} \circ \begin{pmatrix} a(x, y) & b(x, y) \\ b(x, y) & c(x, y) \end{pmatrix} \circ \begin{pmatrix} \xi_x & \eta_x \\ \xi_y & \eta_y \end{pmatrix}. \tag{11}$$

This implies

$$AC - B^2 = \left(\frac{\partial(\xi, \eta)}{\partial(x, y)} \right)^2 (ac - b^2) < 0, \tag{12}$$

and the transformed equation (8) is hyperbolic as well. Those level curves

$$\Gamma : \varphi(x, y) = \text{const}$$

satisfying

$$Q(\varphi) := Q(\varphi, \varphi) = (a\varphi_x^2 + 2b\varphi_x\varphi_y + c\varphi_y^2) \Big|_\Gamma = 0,$$

are the *characteristic curves of the hyperbolic differential equation (4)* (compare Chapter VI, §4). Choosing the parameter transformation $\xi = \xi(x, y)$, $\eta = \eta(x, y)$ such that

$$A(x, y) = Q(\xi) = 0, \quad C(x, y) = Q(\eta) = 0 \quad \text{in } \mathcal{U}(x_0, y_0), \tag{13}$$

then the curves $\xi(x, y) = \text{const}$ and $\eta(x, y) = \text{const}$ are the characteristic curves of (4). From the relation (12) we infer the identity

$$|B(x, y)| = \sqrt{b^2 - ac} \left| \frac{\partial(\xi, \eta)}{\partial(x, y)} \right| > 0, \quad (14)$$

and (8) is reduced to the *hyperbolic normal form*

$$z_{\xi\eta}(\xi, \eta) = - \left\{ \frac{1}{2B(x, y)} D(x, y, z, p, q) \right\} \bigg|_{\substack{x=x(\xi, \eta) \\ y=y(\xi, \eta)}}. \quad (15)$$

We remind the reader that introducing characteristic parameters ξ, η has already been essential for the treatment of the one-dimensional wave equation $\zeta_{xx} - \zeta_{yy} = 0$ in Chapter VI, § 5.

We now show the existence of a local parameter transformation (6) with the property (13). The transition to inverse matrices in the relation (11) yields

$$\frac{1}{AC - B^2} \begin{pmatrix} C & -B \\ -B & A \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} x_\xi & y_\xi \\ x_\eta & y_\eta \end{pmatrix} \circ \frac{1}{ac - b^2} \begin{pmatrix} c & -b \\ -b & a \end{pmatrix} \circ \begin{pmatrix} x_\xi & x_\eta \\ y_\xi & y_\eta \end{pmatrix}. \quad (16)$$

Taking the equation (12) into account, we deduce

$$\begin{aligned} & (C d\xi^2 - 2B d\xi d\eta + A d\eta^2) \left(\frac{\partial(x, y)}{\partial(\xi, \eta)} \right)^2 \\ &= \frac{ac - b^2}{AC - B^2} (d\xi, d\eta) \circ \begin{pmatrix} C & -B \\ -B & A \end{pmatrix} \circ \begin{pmatrix} d\xi \\ d\eta \end{pmatrix} \\ &= (d\xi, d\eta) \circ \begin{pmatrix} x_\xi & y_\xi \\ x_\eta & y_\eta \end{pmatrix} \circ \begin{pmatrix} c & -b \\ -b & a \end{pmatrix} \circ \begin{pmatrix} x_\xi & x_\eta \\ y_\xi & y_\eta \end{pmatrix} \circ \begin{pmatrix} d\xi \\ d\eta \end{pmatrix} \\ &= (dx, dy) \circ \begin{pmatrix} c & -b \\ -b & a \end{pmatrix} \circ \begin{pmatrix} dx \\ dy \end{pmatrix} \\ &= c dx^2 - 2b dx dy + a dy^2. \end{aligned}$$

Therefore, we obtain the transformation formula

$$\begin{aligned} & c(x, y) dx^2 - 2b(x, y) dx dy + a(x, y) dy^2 \\ &= \left(\frac{\partial(x, y)}{\partial(\xi, \eta)} \right)^2 \left\{ C(x, y) d\xi^2 - 2B(x, y) d\xi d\eta + A(x, y) d\eta^2 \right\}. \end{aligned} \quad (17)$$

Since the coefficient matrix is transformed under parameter transformations due to (11), a rotation of the x, y -plane allows us to achieve the condition

$$a(x, y)c(x, y) \neq 0 \quad \text{in } \mathcal{U}(x_0, y_0). \quad (18)$$

We now solve the differential equation

$$\begin{aligned} 0 &= a(x, y) dy^2 - 2b(x, y) dx dy + c(x, y) dx^2 \\ &= a \left(dy^2 - 2\frac{b}{a} dx dy + \frac{c}{a} dx^2 \right) \\ &= a(dy - \lambda^+ dx)(dy - \lambda^- dx) \end{aligned} \quad (19)$$

with

$$\lambda^\pm := \frac{b \pm \sqrt{b^2 - ac}}{a}. \quad (20)$$

Respecting $\lambda^\pm \in C^2(\mathcal{U}(x_0, y_0))$, the solutions of the regular first-order differential equation

$$dy - \lambda^+ dx = 0 \quad (21)$$

are constructed as level lines $\eta(x, y) = \text{const}$ of a function $\eta \in C^2(\mathcal{U}(x_0, y_0))$. In the same way we find the solutions of

$$dy - \lambda^- dx = 0 \quad (22)$$

in the form $\xi(x, y) = \text{const}$ for $\xi \in C^2(\mathcal{U}(x_0, y_0))$. On account of $\lambda^+(x_0, y_0) \neq \lambda^-(x_0, y_0)$ the vectors $(1, \lambda^+(x_0, y_0))$ and $(1, \lambda^-(x_0, y_0))$ are linear independent. The vectors $\nabla \xi(x_0, y_0)$ and $\nabla \eta(x_0, y_0)$, respectively, are orthogonal to them, and we see

$$\frac{\partial(\xi, \eta)}{\partial(x, y)} = \det \begin{pmatrix} \xi_x & \xi_y \\ \eta_x & \eta_y \end{pmatrix} \neq 0 \quad \text{in } \mathcal{U}(x_0, y_0). \quad (23)$$

Therefore, the inverse mapping exists as well $x = x(\xi, \eta), y = y(\xi, \eta) \in C^2(\mathcal{U}(\xi_0, \eta_0))$ in a sufficiently small neighborhood $\mathcal{U}(\xi_0, \eta_0)$. Along the ξ -curve $\eta(x, y) = \text{const}$ we have

$$y_\xi - \lambda^+ x_\xi = 0, \quad (24)$$

and (17) implies $C(x, y) = Q(\eta) = 0$. Along the η -curve $\xi(x, y) = \text{const}$ we have

$$y_\eta - \lambda^- x_\eta = 0, \quad (25)$$

and (17) yields $A(x, y) = Q(\xi) = 0$. Consequently, we arrive at the following

Theorem 1. (Linear hyperbolic differential equations)

For the hyperbolic differential equation with linear principal part (4), (5) given, we have a transformation of variables (6) with

$$Q(\xi) = 0 = Q(\eta) \quad \text{in } \mathcal{U}(x_0, y_0). \quad (26)$$

The differential equation appears in the hyperbolic normal form (15) and the parameter transformation $x = x(\xi, \eta), y = y(\xi, \eta)$ satisfies the first-order system (24), (25).

We now consider the case $a = a(x, y, z)$, $b = b(x, y, z)$, $c = c(x, y, z)$ and consequently $\lambda^\pm = \lambda^\pm(x, y, z)$. The characteristic differential equations (24), (25) now additionally depend on the solution $z = \zeta(x, y)$. Differentiating (24) with respect to η and (25) with respect to ξ , we see

$$y_{\xi\eta} - \lambda^+ x_{\xi\eta} = \lambda_\eta^+ x_\xi = \lambda_x^+ x_\eta x_\xi + \lambda_y^+ y_\eta x_\xi + \lambda_z^+ z_\eta x_\xi \quad (27)$$

and

$$y_{\xi\eta} - \lambda^- x_{\xi\eta} = \lambda_\xi^- x_\eta = \lambda_x^- x_\xi x_\eta + \lambda_y^- y_\xi x_\eta + \lambda_z^- z_\xi x_\eta, \quad (28)$$

respectively. The coefficient matrix for this linear system of equations is non-singular due to $\lambda^+ \neq \lambda^-$, and we can therefore resolve the equations (27), (28) to $x_{\xi\eta}, y_{\xi\eta}$. Then we arrive at the following

Theorem 2. *A quasilinear differential equation (1) with the coefficients $a = a(x, y, z)$, $b = b(x, y, z)$, $c = c(x, y, z)$, which is hyperbolic according to (5) with respect to its solution $z = \zeta(x, y)$, appears as the following system in characteristic parameters (24), (25), namely*

$$\mathbf{x}_{\xi\eta}(\xi, \eta) = \mathbf{h}(\xi, \eta, \mathbf{x}(\xi, \eta), \mathbf{x}_\xi(\xi, \eta), \mathbf{x}_\eta(\xi, \eta)) \quad (29)$$

for the vector-valued function $\mathbf{x}(\xi, \eta) := (x(\xi, \eta), y(\xi, \eta), z(\xi, \eta))$.

We now consider the general case

$$a = a(x, y, z, p, q), \quad b = b(x, y, z, p, q), \quad c = c(x, y, z, p, q).$$

Noting that $\lambda^\pm = \lambda^\pm(x, y, z, p, q)$ holds true in this situation, the characteristic curves depend on the solution $z = \zeta(x, y)$ and its gradient $\nabla\zeta(x, y)$. The equations (27) and (28) are modified to

$$y_{\xi\eta} - \lambda^+ x_{\xi\eta} = \lambda_x^+ x_\eta x_\xi + \lambda_y^+ y_\eta x_\xi + \lambda_z^+ z_\eta x_\xi + \lambda_p^+ p_\eta x_\xi + \lambda_q^+ q_\eta x_\xi \quad (30)$$

and

$$y_{\xi\eta} - \lambda^- x_{\xi\eta} = \lambda_x^- x_\xi x_\eta + \lambda_y^- y_\xi x_\eta + \lambda_z^- z_\xi x_\eta + \lambda_p^- p_\xi x_\eta + \lambda_q^- q_\xi x_\eta, \quad (31)$$

respectively. In order to obtain a complete system, we derive two additional differential equations of the first order for the functions $p = p(\xi, \eta)$, $q = q(\xi, \eta)$ in characteristic parameters: Let $z = \zeta(x, y)$ be a given solution of (1). The second derivatives $\zeta_{xx}, \zeta_{xy}, \zeta_{yy}$ then satisfy three linear equations

$$\begin{aligned} a\zeta_{xx} + 2b\zeta_{xy} + c\zeta_{yy} &= -d \\ dx\zeta_{xx} + dy\zeta_{xy} &= dp \\ dx\zeta_{xy} + dy\zeta_{yy} &= dq. \end{aligned} \quad (32)$$

We refer the reader to the considerations in Chapter VI, § 4: Posing the Cauchy initial value problem along a characteristic curve $\Gamma \subset \Omega$

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathcal{L}\zeta &= 0 && \text{in } \Omega, \\
\zeta(x, y) &= f(x, y) && \text{on } \Gamma, \\
\frac{\partial \zeta}{\partial \nu}(x, y) &= g(x, y) && \text{on } \Gamma,
\end{aligned} \tag{33}$$

not all the second derivatives $\zeta_{xx}, \zeta_{xy}, \zeta_{yy}$ are determined by the data $\mathcal{L}, f, g$. Since dp and dq are known along a characteristic, the linear system of equations (32) could be resolved to $\zeta_{xx}, \zeta_{xy}, \zeta_{yy}$, if the determinant of the coefficient matrix did not vanish. Therefore, the relation

$$0 = \begin{vmatrix} a & 2b & c \\ dx & dy & 0 \\ 0 & dx & dy \end{vmatrix} = a \, dy^2 - 2b \, dx \, dy + c \, dx^2 \tag{34}$$

is valid along a characteristic, which has already been shown alternatively with the aid of (17). On the other hand, the system of equations (32) possesses the solution $\{\zeta_{xx}, \zeta_{xy}, \zeta_{yy}\}$. Consequently, the relation

$$\text{rank} \begin{pmatrix} a & 2b & c & d \\ dx & dy & 0 & -dp \\ 0 & dx & dy & -dq \end{pmatrix} = 2 \tag{35}$$

holds true along the characteristics. In particular, we obtain

$$0 = \begin{vmatrix} a & c & d \\ dx & 0 & -dp \\ 0 & dy & -dq \end{vmatrix} = a \, dy \, dp + c \, dx \, dq + d \, dx \, dy. \tag{36}$$

Evaluating this equation along the ξ -characteristic, the multiplication by $(a \, dy \, d\xi)^{-1}$ together with relation (21) yields

$$0 = p_\xi + \frac{c}{a} \frac{dx}{dy} q_\xi + \frac{d}{a} x_\xi = p_\xi + \lambda^+ \lambda^- \frac{1}{\lambda^+} q_\xi + \frac{d}{a} x_\xi$$

and consequently

$$p_\xi + \lambda^- q_\xi + \frac{d}{a} x_\xi = 0. \tag{37}$$

Along the η -characteristic the relation (36) together with (22) implies the following equation by multiplication with $(a \, dy \, d\eta)^{-1}$, namely

$$0 = p_\eta + \frac{c}{a} \frac{dx}{dy} q_\eta + \frac{d}{a} x_\eta = p_\eta + \lambda^+ \lambda^- \frac{1}{\lambda^-} q_\eta + \frac{d}{a} x_\eta$$

and consequently

$$p_\eta + \lambda^+ q_\eta + \frac{d}{a} x_\eta = 0. \tag{38}$$

Finally, the differential equation $dz = p \, dx + q \, dy$ along the ξ -characteristic yields

$$z_\xi - p x_\xi - q y_\xi = 0. \tag{39}$$

We now prove the interesting

Theorem 3. (Hyperbolic normal form for quasilinear differential equations)

The quasilinear differential equation (1), which is hyperbolic with respect to its solution $z = \zeta(x, y)$ due to (5), can be equivalently transformed into the following first-order system by the local parameter transformation (6):

$$\begin{aligned} y_\xi - \lambda^+ x_\xi &= 0, & y_\eta - \lambda^- x_\eta &= 0, \\ p_\xi + \lambda^- q_\xi + \frac{d}{a} x_\xi &= 0, & p_\eta + \lambda^+ q_\eta + \frac{d}{a} x_\eta &= 0, \\ z_\xi - px_\xi - qy_\xi &= 0. \end{aligned} \quad (40)$$

For the function $\mathbf{y}(\xi, \eta) := (x(\xi, \eta), y(\xi, \eta), z(\xi, \eta), p(\xi, \eta), q(\xi, \eta))$ we obtain a hyperbolic system of the second order

$$\mathbf{y}_{\xi\eta}(\xi, \eta) = \mathbf{h}(\xi, \eta, \mathbf{y}(\xi, \eta), \mathbf{y}_\xi(\xi, \eta), \mathbf{y}_\eta(\xi, \eta)), \quad (41)$$

where the right-hand side is quadratic in the first derivatives $x_\xi, y_\xi, \dots, p_\eta, q_\eta$.

Proof:

1. Starting from the solution (40) we show the validity of the differential equation (1). The first and second equation from (40) together with the matrix equation

$$\begin{pmatrix} x_\xi & x_\eta \\ y_\xi & y_\eta \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \xi_x & \xi_y \\ \eta_x & \eta_y \end{pmatrix}^{-1} = \frac{\partial(x, y)}{\partial(\xi, \eta)} \begin{pmatrix} \eta_y & -\xi_y \\ -\eta_x & \xi_x \end{pmatrix}$$

imply the relations

$$\eta_x + \lambda^+ \eta_y = 0, \quad \xi_x + \lambda^- \xi_y = 0.$$

Therefore, we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} z_{xx} &= p_x = p_\xi \xi_x + p_\eta \eta_x \\ &= -\left(\lambda^- q_\xi + \frac{d}{a} x_\xi\right) \xi_x - \left(\lambda^+ q_\eta + \frac{d}{a} x_\eta\right) \eta_x \\ &= -(\lambda^+ + \lambda^-)(q_\xi \xi_x + q_\eta \eta_x) - \lambda^+ \lambda^- (q_\xi \xi_y + q_\eta \eta_y) - \frac{d}{a} \\ &= -\frac{2b}{a} z_{yx} - \frac{c}{a} z_{yy} - \frac{d}{a}, \end{aligned}$$

which reveals that $az_{xx} + 2bz_{xy} + cz_{yy} + d = 0$.

2. Differentiating all the equations of (40) containing only ξ -derivatives with respect to η and vice-versa, we obtain

$$\begin{aligned}
 -\lambda^+ x_{\xi\eta} + y_{\xi\eta} &= \dots \\
 -\lambda^- x_{\xi\eta} + y_{\xi\eta} &= \dots \\
 \frac{d}{a} x_{\xi\eta} + p_{\xi\eta} + \lambda^- q_{\xi\eta} &= \dots \\
 \frac{d}{a} x_{\xi\eta} + p_{\xi\eta} + \lambda^+ q_{\xi\eta} &= \dots \\
 -px_{\xi\eta} - qy_{\xi\eta} + z_{\xi\eta} &= \dots
 \end{aligned} \tag{42}$$

On the right-hand side only quadratic terms in the first derivatives of x, y, z, p, q appear. We treat (42) as a linear system of equations in the unknowns $x_{\xi\eta}, y_{\xi\eta}, z_{\xi\eta}, p_{\xi\eta}, q_{\xi\eta}$. The coefficient matrix of this system is nonsingular on account of

$$\begin{vmatrix}
 -\lambda^+ & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
 -\lambda^- & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
 \frac{d}{a} & 0 & 0 & 1 & \lambda^- \\
 \frac{d}{a} & 0 & 0 & 1 & \lambda^+ \\
 -p & -q & 1 & 0 & 0
 \end{vmatrix} = -4 \frac{b^2 - ac}{a^2} \neq 0. \tag{43}$$

Therefore, we can resolve the system (42) in the form (41). q.e.d.

§4 Cauchy's initial value problem for quasilinear hyperbolic differential equations and systems of second order

The theorem of d'Alembert (see Theorem 1 in Chapter VI, § 5) gives us the solution of Cauchy's initial value problem (briefly CIP) for the one-dimensional wave equation

$$\begin{aligned}
 u &= u(x, y) \in C^2(\mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R}, \mathbb{R}), \\
 \square u(x, y) &:= u_{yy}(x, y) - u_{xx}(x, y) = 0 \quad \text{in } \mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R}, \\
 u(x, 0) &= f(x), \quad \frac{\partial}{\partial y} u(x, 0) = g(x) \quad \text{for all } x \in \mathbb{R},
 \end{aligned} \tag{1}$$

namely

$$u(x, y) = \frac{1}{2} \left(f(x+y) + f(x-y) \right) + \frac{1}{2} \int_{x-y}^{x+y} g(s) ds, \quad (x, y) \in \mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R}. \tag{2}$$

Here we need $f \in C^2(\mathbb{R})$ and $g \in C^1(\mathbb{R})$. Since the problem (1) is uniquely solvable according to Theorem 2 from Chapter VI, § 4, we easily deduce the regularity of the solution from d'Alembert's solution formula (2). We obtain the following:

- (a) With the assumptions $f \in C^{2+k}(\mathbb{R})$ and $g \in C^{1+k}(\mathbb{R})$ for $k = 0, 1, 2, \dots$, we have the regularity $u \in C^{2+k}(\mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R})$ for the solution.
- (b) We now require that the functions f and g can be expanded into convergent power series in a disc of radius $2R \in (0, +\infty)$. With the variable $x = x_1 + ix_2 \in \mathbb{C}$ we have the representations

$$f(x) = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} a_k x^k, \quad g(x) = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} b_k x^k \quad \text{for } x \in \mathbb{C} \quad \text{with } |x| < 2R. \quad (3)$$

In the dicylinder $Z_R := \{(x, y) \in \mathbb{C}^2 : |x| < R, |y| < R\}$ the function

$$u(x, y) = \frac{1}{2} \left(f(x+y) + f(x-y) \right) + \frac{1}{2} \int_{x-y}^{x+y} g(s) ds, \quad (x, y) \in Z_R, \quad (4)$$

then gives us a solution which is holomorphic in Z_R of the following CIP:

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\partial^2}{\partial y^2} u(x, y) - \frac{\partial^2}{\partial x^2} u(x, y) &= 0 \quad \text{in } Z_R, \\ u(x, 0) &= f(x), \quad \frac{\partial}{\partial y} u(x, 0) = g(x) \quad \text{for all } x \in \mathbb{C} \quad \text{with } |x| < R. \end{aligned} \quad (5)$$

Here the complex derivatives are denoted by $\frac{\partial}{\partial x}$ and $\frac{\partial}{\partial y}$.

We now perform a rotation about the angle $-\frac{\pi}{4}$ by the mapping

$$\begin{pmatrix} \xi \\ \eta \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \cos(-\frac{\pi}{4}) & -\sin(-\frac{\pi}{4}) \\ \sin(-\frac{\pi}{4}) & \cos(-\frac{\pi}{4}) \end{pmatrix} \circ \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \circ \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix}$$

and get the equations

$$\xi = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(x+y), \quad \eta = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(y-x). \quad (6)$$

From the wave equation we determine the coefficients of the transformed differential equation with the aid of formula (11) in § 3 as follows:

$$\begin{pmatrix} A & B \\ B & C \end{pmatrix} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \circ \begin{pmatrix} -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \circ \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 \\ 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}. \quad (7)$$

By this rotation, the x -axis $y = 0$ - where the Cauchy data are prescribed - is transferred into the secondary diagonal

$$\xi + \eta = 0.$$

The vector $(0, 1)$ is transformed into the unit normal to the secondary diagonal in the direction of the first quadrant, namely $\nu = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(1, 1)$. Therefore, the CIP (1) is transformed into the following CIP:

$$\begin{aligned} u &= u(\xi, \eta) \in C^2(\mathbb{R}^2, \mathbb{R}), \\ u_{\xi\eta}(\xi, \eta) &= 0 \quad \text{in } \mathbb{R}^2, \\ u(\xi, -\xi) &= f(\sqrt{2}\xi) \quad \text{for } \xi \in \mathbb{R}, \\ \frac{\partial}{\partial \nu} u(\xi, -\xi) &:= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(u_\xi(\xi, -\xi) + u_\eta(\xi, -\xi)) = g(\sqrt{2}\xi) \quad \text{for } \xi \in \mathbb{R}. \end{aligned} \tag{8}$$

The problem (5) is similarly transferred in the case of real-analytic initial values f, g .

We summarize our considerations to the following

Theorem 1. *The functions $f = f(\xi) \in C^2(\mathbb{R})$ and $g = g(\xi) \in C^1(\mathbb{R})$ being prescribed, the CIP (8) possesses exactly one solution $u = u(\xi, \eta) \in C^2(\mathbb{R}^2)$. If we assume $f \in C^{2+k}(\mathbb{R})$ and $g \in C^{1+k}(\mathbb{R})$ with an integer $k \in \{0, 1, 2, \dots\}$, we have $u \in C^{2+k}(\mathbb{R}^2)$. If the functions f and g on $\{\xi \in \mathbb{C} : |\xi| < \sqrt{2}R\}$ can be expanded into convergent power series, then the function $u = u(\xi, \eta)$ is holomorphic in Z_R , the differential equation*

$$\frac{\partial^2}{\partial \xi \partial \eta} u(\xi, \eta) = 0 \quad \text{in } Z_R$$

is fulfilled, and the initial conditions in (8) are valid for all $\xi \in \mathbb{C}$ with $|\xi| < R$.

In §3 we have transformed a quasilinear hyperbolic differential equation of second order into a hyperbolic system in the normal form. In order to obtain a solution of the CIP for the quasilinear equation, we solve the following CIP:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{x} &= \mathbf{x}(\xi, \eta) \in C^{2+k}(Q_R, \mathbb{R}^n), \quad Q_R := [-R, R] \times [-R, R], \quad n \in \mathbb{N}, \\ \mathbf{x}_{\xi\eta}(\xi, \eta) &= \mathbf{h}(\xi, \eta, \mathbf{x}(\xi, \eta), \mathbf{x}_\xi(\xi, \eta), \mathbf{x}_\eta(\xi, \eta)) \quad \text{in } Q_R, \\ \mathbf{x}(\xi, -\xi) &= \mathbf{f}(\xi), \quad \frac{\partial}{\partial \nu} \mathbf{x}(\xi, -\xi) = \mathbf{g}(\xi) \quad \text{for } \xi \in [-R, R] \end{aligned} \tag{9}$$

with the Cauchy data

$$\mathbf{f} = \mathbf{f}(\xi) \in C^{2+k}(\mathbb{R}, \mathbb{R}^n) \quad \text{and} \quad \mathbf{g} = \mathbf{g}(\xi) \in C^{1+k}(\mathbb{R}, \mathbb{R}^n)$$

and the continuous right-hand side

$$\mathbf{h} = \mathbf{h}(\xi, \eta, \mathbf{x}, \mathbf{p}, \mathbf{q}).$$

Applying Theorem 1 to each component function, we find a uniquely determined solution of the CIP

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{y} &= \mathbf{y}(\xi, \eta) \in C^{2+k}(\mathbb{R}^2, \mathbb{R}^n), \\ \mathbf{y}_{\xi\eta}(\xi, \eta) &= 0 \quad \text{in } \mathbb{R}^2, \\ \mathbf{y}(\xi, -\xi) &= \mathbf{f}(\xi), \quad \frac{\partial}{\partial \nu} \mathbf{y}(\xi, -\xi) = \mathbf{g}(\xi), \quad \xi \in \mathbb{R}. \end{aligned} \tag{10}$$

When we make the transition to

$$\begin{aligned} \tilde{\mathbf{x}}(\xi, \eta) &:= \mathbf{x}(\xi, \eta) - \mathbf{y}(\xi, \eta), \\ \tilde{\mathbf{h}}(\xi, \eta, \tilde{\mathbf{x}}, \tilde{\mathbf{p}}, \tilde{\mathbf{q}}) &:= \mathbf{h}(\xi, \eta, \mathbf{y}(\xi, \eta) + \tilde{\mathbf{x}}, \mathbf{y}_\xi(\xi, \eta) + \tilde{\mathbf{p}}, \mathbf{y}_\eta(\xi, \eta) + \tilde{\mathbf{q}}), \end{aligned} \tag{11}$$

the problem (9) is equivalently transformed into the CIP

$$\begin{aligned} \tilde{\mathbf{x}} &= \tilde{\mathbf{x}}(\xi, \eta) \in C^{2+k}(Q_R, \mathbb{R}^n), \\ \tilde{\mathbf{x}}_{\xi\eta}(\xi, \eta) &= \tilde{\mathbf{h}}(\xi, \eta, \tilde{\mathbf{x}}(\xi, \eta), \tilde{\mathbf{x}}_\xi(\xi, \eta), \tilde{\mathbf{x}}_\eta(\xi, \eta)) \quad \text{in } Q_R, \\ \tilde{\mathbf{x}}(\xi, -\xi) &= 0 = \frac{\partial}{\partial \nu} \tilde{\mathbf{x}}(\xi, -\xi) \quad \text{for } \xi \in [-R, R]. \end{aligned} \tag{12}$$

In the sequel we suppress $\sim$ in (12) and transform (12) equivalently into an integro-differential-equation: Let the point $(x, y) \in Q_R$ be chosen with $x + y > 0$. We then define the *characteristic triangle* to (x, y) by

$$T(x, y) := \left\{ (\xi, \eta) \in \mathbb{R}^2 : -x < -\xi < \eta < y \right\} \subset Q_R.$$

We confine our considerations to the subset of Q_R above the secondary diagonal. A solution beneath the secondary diagonal is constructed in the same way, defining the characteristic triangle

$$T(x, y) = \left\{ (\xi, \eta) \in \mathbb{R}^2 : y < \eta < -\xi < -x \right\}.$$

We apply the Stokes integral theorem to the Pfaffian form

$$\omega = \mathbf{x}_\eta(\xi, \eta) d\eta - \mathbf{x}_\xi(\xi, \eta) d\xi, \quad (\xi, \eta) \in T(x, y).$$

We deduce

$$\begin{aligned} 2\mathbf{x}(x, y) &= \int_{\partial T(x, y)} \mathbf{x}_\eta d\eta - \mathbf{x}_\xi d\xi = \iint_{T(x, y)} d(\mathbf{x}_\eta d\eta - \mathbf{x}_\xi d\xi) \\ &= 2 \iint_{T(x, y)} \mathbf{x}_{\xi\eta}(\xi, \eta) d\xi d\eta \\ &= 2 \iint_{T(x, y)} \mathbf{h}(\xi, \eta, \mathbf{x}(\xi, \eta), \mathbf{x}_\xi(\xi, \eta), \mathbf{x}_\eta(\xi, \eta)) d\xi d\eta \end{aligned}$$

and consequently

$$\mathbf{x}(x, y) = \iint_{T(x, y)} \mathbf{h}(\xi, \eta, \mathbf{x}(\xi, \eta), \mathbf{x}_\xi(\xi, \eta), \mathbf{x}_\eta(\xi, \eta)) d\xi d\eta, \quad (x, y) \in Q_R. \quad (13)$$

On the contrary, we depart from a given solution of the integro-differential-equation (13) and immediately comprehend $\mathbf{x}(x, -x) = 0$ for all $x \in [-R, R]$. From the representation

$$\mathbf{x}(x, y) = \int_{-y}^x \left(\int_{-\xi}^y \mathbf{h}(\xi, \eta, \mathbf{x}(\xi, \eta), \mathbf{x}_\xi(\xi, \eta), \mathbf{x}_\eta(\xi, \eta)) d\eta \right) d\xi$$

we infer the equation

$$\mathbf{x}_x(x, y) = \int_{-x}^y \mathbf{h}(x, \eta, \mathbf{x}(x, \eta), \mathbf{x}_\xi(x, \eta), \mathbf{x}_\eta(x, \eta)) d\eta. \quad (14)$$

This representation implies $\mathbf{x}_x(x, -x) = 0$ for all $x \in [-R, R]$. Furthermore, the representation

$$\mathbf{x}(x, y) = \int_{-x}^y \left(\int_{-\eta}^x \mathbf{h}(\xi, \eta, \mathbf{x}(\xi, \eta), \mathbf{x}_\xi(\xi, \eta), \mathbf{x}_\eta(\xi, \eta)) d\xi \right) d\eta$$

yields

$$\mathbf{x}_y(x, y) = \int_{-y}^x \mathbf{h}(\xi, y, \mathbf{x}(\xi, y), \mathbf{x}_\xi(\xi, y), \mathbf{x}_\eta(\xi, y)) d\xi, \quad (15)$$

and consequently $\mathbf{x}_y(x, -x) = 0$ for $x \in [-R, R]$. Finally, we can differentiate (14) with respect to y and (15) with respect to x , and we obtain the fundamental

Theorem 2. *The function $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{x}(x, y)$ of the class*

$$C_{xy}(Q_R, \mathbb{R}^n) := \left\{ \mathbf{y} \in C^1(Q_R, \mathbb{R}^n) : \mathbf{y}_{xy} = \mathbf{y}_{yx} \text{ exist continuously in } Q_R \right\}$$

solves the CIP

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{x}_{xy}(x, y) &= \mathbf{h}(x, y, \mathbf{x}(x, y), \mathbf{x}_x(x, y), \mathbf{x}_y(x, y)) && \text{in } Q_R, \\ \mathbf{x}(x, -x) &= 0 = \frac{\partial}{\partial \nu} \mathbf{x}(x, -x) && \text{for } x \in [-R, R] \end{aligned} \quad (16)$$

if and only if $\mathbf{x}$ satisfies the integro-differential-equation (13).

For the right-hand side $\mathbf{h} = \mathbf{h}(\xi, \eta, \mathbf{x}, \mathbf{p}, \mathbf{q})$ we now require the following Lipschitz condition

$$|\mathbf{h}(\xi, \eta, \mathbf{x}, \mathbf{p}, \mathbf{q}) - \mathbf{h}(\xi, \eta, \tilde{\mathbf{x}}, \tilde{\mathbf{p}}, \tilde{\mathbf{q}})| \leq L|(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{p}, \mathbf{q}) - (\tilde{\mathbf{x}}, \tilde{\mathbf{p}}, \tilde{\mathbf{q}})|$$

for all $(\xi, \eta, \mathbf{x}, \mathbf{p}, \mathbf{q}), (\xi, \eta, \tilde{\mathbf{x}}, \tilde{\mathbf{p}}, \tilde{\mathbf{q}}) \in Q_R \times \mathbb{R}^n \times \mathbb{R}^n \times \mathbb{R}^n$

(17)

with the Lipschitz constant $L \in [0, +\infty)$. With this assumption we derive a contraction condition for the *integro-differential-operator*

$$I(\mathbf{x})(x, y) := \iint_{T(x, y)} \mathbf{h}(\xi, \eta, \mathbf{x}(\xi, \eta), \mathbf{x}_\xi(\xi, \eta), \mathbf{x}_\eta(\xi, \eta)) d\xi d\eta, \quad (x, y) \in Q_R.$$
(18)

For the function $\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y} \in C^1(Q_R, \mathbb{R}^n)$ we set

$$\hat{\mathbf{x}}(x, y) := I(\mathbf{x})(x, y), \quad \hat{\mathbf{y}}(x, y) := I(\mathbf{y})(x, y), \quad (x, y) \in Q_R.$$

Now we can estimate

$$\begin{aligned} |\hat{\mathbf{x}}(x, y) - \hat{\mathbf{y}}(x, y)| &\leq \iint_{T(x, y)} |\mathbf{h}(\xi, \eta, \mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x}_\xi, \mathbf{x}_\eta) - \mathbf{h}(\xi, \eta, \mathbf{y}, \mathbf{y}_\xi, \mathbf{y}_\eta)| d\xi d\eta \\ &\leq L \iint_{T(x, y)} |(\mathbf{x}(\xi, \eta) - \mathbf{y}(\xi, \eta), \mathbf{x}_\xi - \mathbf{y}_\xi, \mathbf{x}_\eta - \mathbf{y}_\eta)| d\xi d\eta \\ &\leq L \int_0^{x+y} |x + y - \tau| \phi(\tau) d\tau \end{aligned}$$
(19)

with

$$\phi(\tau) := \max_{(\xi, \eta) \in T(x, y), \xi + \eta = \tau} |(\mathbf{x}(\xi, \eta) - \mathbf{y}(\xi, \eta), \mathbf{x}_\xi - \mathbf{y}_\xi, \mathbf{x}_\eta - \mathbf{y}_\eta)|. \quad (20)$$

Furthermore, the relation (14) implies the inequality

$$\begin{aligned} |\hat{\mathbf{x}}_x(x, y) - \hat{\mathbf{y}}_x(x, y)| &\leq \int_{-x}^y |\mathbf{h}(x, \eta, \mathbf{x}(x, \eta), \mathbf{x}_\xi, \mathbf{x}_\eta) - \mathbf{h}(x, \eta, \mathbf{y}(x, \eta), \mathbf{y}_\xi, \mathbf{y}_\eta)| d\eta \\ &\leq L \int_{-x}^y |(\mathbf{x}(x, \eta) - \mathbf{y}(x, \eta), \mathbf{x}_\xi - \mathbf{y}_\xi, \mathbf{x}_\eta - \mathbf{y}_\eta)| d\eta \\ &\leq L \int_0^{x+y} \phi(\tau) d\tau. \end{aligned}$$
(21)

In the same way we deduce the following estimate via (15):

$$|\hat{\mathbf{x}}_y(x, y) - \hat{\mathbf{y}}_y(x, y)| \leq L \int_0^{x+y} \phi(\tau) d\tau. \quad (22)$$

We summarize the inequalities (19), (21), and (22) to the following

Theorem 3. *For arbitrary functions $\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y} \in C^1(Q_R, \mathbb{R}^n)$ we have the subsequent estimate in Q_R :*

$$\begin{aligned} & \left| \left(\hat{\mathbf{x}}(x, y) - \hat{\mathbf{y}}(x, y), \hat{\mathbf{x}}_x(x, y) - \hat{\mathbf{y}}_x(x, y), \hat{\mathbf{x}}_y(x, y) - \hat{\mathbf{y}}_y(x, y) \right) \right| \\ & \leq L \int_0^{x+y} (2 + |x + y - \tau|) \phi(\tau) d\tau. \end{aligned}$$

We define the set

$$Q_{R,S} := \left\{ (x, y, \mathbf{x}, \mathbf{p}, \mathbf{q}) \in Q_R \times \mathbb{R}^n \times \mathbb{R}^n \times \mathbb{R}^n : |\mathbf{x}|, |\mathbf{p}|, |\mathbf{q}| \leq S \right\},$$

and prove the central

Theorem 4. *Let the parameter-dependent right-hand side*

$$\mathbf{h} = \mathbf{h}(x, y, \mathbf{x}, \mathbf{p}, \mathbf{q}, \lambda) : Q_{R,S} \times [\lambda_1, \lambda_2] \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$$

of the class $C^1(Q_{R,S} \times [\lambda_1, \lambda_2], \mathbb{R}^n)$ with $R > 0$, $S > 0$ and $-\infty < \lambda_1 < \lambda_2 < +\infty$ be given. Then we have a number $r \in (0, R]$, such that the following CIP has exactly one solution for all $\lambda \in [\lambda_1, \lambda_2]$:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{x} &= \mathbf{x}(x, y, \lambda) \in C_{xy}(Q_r, \mathbb{R}^n), \\ \mathbf{x}_{xy}(x, y, \lambda) &= \mathbf{h}(x, y, \mathbf{x}(x, y, \lambda), \mathbf{x}_x(x, y, \lambda), \mathbf{x}_y(x, y, \lambda), \lambda) \quad \text{in } Q_r, \\ \mathbf{x}(x, -x, \lambda) &= 0 = \frac{\partial}{\partial \nu} \mathbf{x}(x, -x, \lambda) \quad \text{for } x \in [-r, r]. \end{aligned} \quad (23)$$

Furthermore, the solution depends differentiably on the parameter as follows:

$$\mathbf{x}(x, y, \lambda) \in C^1(Q_r \times [\lambda_1, \lambda_2], \mathbb{R}^n).$$

Proof:

1. At first, we fix the parameter $\lambda \in [\lambda_1, \lambda_2]$ and construct a solution $\mathbf{x}(x, y, \lambda)$ with the aid of Banach's fixed point theorem. To this aim, we define the Banach space

$$\mathcal{B} := \left\{ \mathbf{y} \in C^1(Q_R, \mathbb{R}^n) : \mathbf{y}(x, -x) = 0 = \frac{\partial}{\partial \nu} \mathbf{y}(x, -x), x \in [-R, R] \right\}$$

endowed with the norm

$$\|\mathbf{y}\| := \sup_{(x,y) \in Q_R} |(\mathbf{y}(x, y), \mathbf{y}_\xi(x, y), \mathbf{y}_\eta(x, y))|. \quad (24)$$

We extend the right-hand side $\mathbf{h} : Q_{R,S} \times [\lambda_1, \lambda_2] \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$ onto the set

$$Q_R \times \mathbb{R}^n \times \mathbb{R}^n \times \mathbb{R}^n \times [\lambda_1, \lambda_2]$$

in such a way that the Lipschitz condition (17) with a uniform Lipschitz constant $L \geq 0$ is valid for arbitrary $\lambda \in [\lambda_1, \lambda_2]$. According to Theorem 3 we find a sufficiently small $R > 0$ such that the integro-differential operator $I : \mathcal{B} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$ defined in (18) is contractible. This means, we have a constant $\theta \in [0, 1)$ satisfying

$$\|I(\mathbf{x}) - I(\mathbf{y})\| \leq \theta \|\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{y}\| \quad \text{for all } \mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y} \in \mathcal{B}. \quad (25)$$

Banach's fixed point theorem (see Theorem 3 in Chapter VII, § 1) gives us the existence of a solution $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{x}(x, y, \lambda) \in \mathcal{B}$ for the integro-differential equation

$$\mathbf{x}(x, y, \lambda) = \iint_{T(x,y)} \mathbf{h}(\xi, \eta, \mathbf{x}(\xi, \eta, \lambda), \mathbf{x}_\xi(\xi, \eta, \lambda), \mathbf{x}_\eta(\xi, \eta, \lambda), \lambda) d\xi d\eta \quad (26)$$

for all $\lambda \in [\lambda_1, \lambda_2]$. Parallel to the proof of Theorem 2, we see that $\mathbf{x}(x, y, \lambda) \in C_{xy}(Q_R, \mathbb{R}^n)$ holds true for each $\lambda \in [\lambda_1, \lambda_2]$.

2. We now show that the solution is independent of the extension of the right-hand side $\mathbf{h}$ for sufficiently small $R > 0$: Let $\mathbf{x}$ be a solution of the CIP (23) to the fixed parameter $\lambda \in [\lambda_1, \lambda_2]$, and we set

$$\mathbf{y}(x, y) := I(\mathbf{0})(x, y) = \iint_{T(x,y)} \mathbf{h}(\xi, \eta, 0, 0, 0, \lambda) d\xi d\eta.$$

We apply Theorem 3 to the function

$$\psi(t) := \max_{(x,y) \in Q_R, x+y=t} |(\mathbf{x}(x, y) - \mathbf{y}(x, y), \mathbf{x}_\xi - \mathbf{y}_\xi, \mathbf{x}_\eta - \mathbf{y}_\eta)|$$

and obtain the following estimate

$$\psi(t) \leq A \int_0^t (\psi(\tau) + \|\mathbf{y}\|) d\tau \quad (27)$$

with a constant $A > 0$. The comparison lemma (see Proposition 1 in § 5) yields

$$\psi(t) \leq \|\mathbf{y}\|(e^{At} - 1).$$

Choosing $R > 0$ sufficiently small, the inclusion

$$(\mathbf{x}(x, y), \mathbf{x}_\xi(x, y), \mathbf{x}_\eta(x, y)) \in Q_{R,S} \quad \text{for all } (x, y) \in Q_R$$

is fulfilled.

3. Let two solutions $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{x}(x, y, \lambda)$ and $\tilde{\mathbf{x}} = \tilde{\mathbf{x}}(x, y, \tilde{\lambda})$ to the parameters λ and $\tilde{\lambda}$ be given. Then we derive an inequality of the form

$$\psi(t) \leq A \int_0^t (\psi(\tau) + \varepsilon(\lambda, \tilde{\lambda})) d\tau \quad (28)$$

for the function

$$\psi(t) := \max_{(x,y) \in Q_R, x+y=t} |(\mathbf{x}(x, y) - \tilde{\mathbf{x}}(x, y), \mathbf{x}_\xi - \tilde{\mathbf{x}}_\xi, \mathbf{x}_\eta - \tilde{\mathbf{x}}_\eta)|,$$

as in the proof of Theorem 3. Here $\varepsilon(\lambda, \tilde{\lambda}) \rightarrow \varepsilon(\lambda, \lambda) = 0$ for $\lambda \rightarrow \tilde{\lambda}$ is satisfied. With the comparison lemma from above we infer

$$\psi(t) \leq \varepsilon(\lambda, \tilde{\lambda})(e^{At} - 1), \quad (29)$$

which implies the continuous dependence of the solution on the parameter in the C^1 -norm. Furthermore, the equation $\varepsilon(\lambda, \lambda) = 0$ gives us the unique solvability of the CIP.

4. In order to show the differentiable dependence on the parameter, we consider the difference quotient as in the theory of ordinary differential equations and observe the limit in the integro-differential-equation. q.e.d.

Remarks:

1. The solution of the CIP (23) is constructed by successive approximation

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{x}^{(0)}(x, y) &:= 0 \quad \text{in } Q_R, \\ \mathbf{x}^{(j+1)}(x, y) &:= \iint_{T(x,y)} \mathbf{h}(\xi, \eta, \mathbf{x}^{(j)}(\xi, \eta), \mathbf{x}_\xi^{(j)}, \mathbf{x}_\eta^{(j)}) d\xi d\eta \quad \text{in } Q_R, \quad (30) \\ &\text{for } j = 0, 1, 2, \dots \end{aligned}$$

2. Assuming higher regularity of the right-hand side $\mathbf{h}$, we obtain the corresponding higher regularity for the solutions. This statement pertains to the differentiability for the family of solutions with respect to the parameter $\lambda \in [\lambda_1, \lambda_2]$. Again one uses the method of difference quotients indicated in part 4 of the proof above.

Theorem 5. Assumptions: *Let the quasilinear differential equation*

$$\begin{aligned} 0 &= a(x, y, \zeta(x, y), \zeta_x(x, y), \zeta_y(x, y))\zeta_{xx} + 2b(\dots)\zeta_{xy} + c(\dots)\zeta_{yy} \\ &\quad + d(x, y, \zeta(x, y), \zeta_x(x, y), \zeta_y(x, y)) = 0 \quad \text{in } \Omega \end{aligned} \quad (31)$$

with the coefficients

$$a = a(x, y, z, p, q), \dots, d = d(x, y, z, p, q) \in C^2(\Omega \times \mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R}, \mathbb{R})$$

be given, where $\Omega \subset \mathbb{R}^2$ is an open set. We consider a regular curve

$$\Gamma : x = x(t), y = y(t), \quad t \in [t_0 - T, t_0 + T], \quad \text{in } \Omega$$

with the height function $f = f(t) \in C^3([t_0 - T, t_0 + T], \mathbb{R})$ and the prescribed derivative $g = g(t) \in C^2([t_0 - T, t_0 + T], \mathbb{R})$ in the direction of its normal

$$\nu = \nu(t) := \frac{1}{\sqrt{x'(t)^2 + y'(t)^2}} (-y'(t), x'(t)).$$

The differential equation (31) is hyperbolic along this stripe, which means

$$a(t)c(t) - b(t)^2 < 0 \quad \text{for all } t \in [t_0 - T, t_0 + T].$$

Here we have set $a(t) := a(x(t), y(t), f(t), p(t), q(t))$ etc. with

$$p(t) := \frac{x'(t)f'(t) - \sqrt{x'(t)^2 + y'(t)^2} y'(t)g(t)}{x'(t)^2 + y'(t)^2},$$

$$q(t) := \frac{y'(t)f'(t) + \sqrt{x'(t)^2 + y'(t)^2} x'(t)g(t)}{x'(t)^2 + y'(t)^2}.$$

Finally, the curve Γ with respect to this stripe shall represent a noncharacteristic curve for the differential equation (31), which means

$$c(t)x'(t)^2 - 2b(t)x'(t)y'(t) + a(t)y'(t)^2 \neq 0 \quad \text{for all } t \in [t_0 - T, t_0 + T].$$

Statement: Then we have a neighborhood $\Theta = \Theta(x^0, y^0)$ of the point $(x^0, y^0) := (x(t_0), y(t_0))$ and a function $\zeta = \zeta(x, y) \in C^2(\Theta)$, which solves the Cauchy initial value problem

$$a(x, y, \zeta(x, y), \zeta_x, \zeta_y) \zeta_{xx} + 2b(\dots) \zeta_{xy} + c(\dots) \zeta_{yy} + d(\dots) = 0 \quad \text{in } \Theta$$

$$\zeta(x(t), y(t)) = f(t), \quad \frac{\partial}{\partial \nu} \zeta(x(t), y(t)) = g(t) \quad \text{on } \Gamma \cap \Theta. \quad (32)$$

Here $\frac{\partial}{\partial \nu}$ denotes the derivative in the direction of the normal ν to the curve Γ . The solution of (32) is uniquely determined.

Remark: We can locally supplement the prescribed noncharacteristic stripe $\{\Gamma, f, g\}$ to a solution of the given differential equation.

Proof: With the aid of § 3, Theorem 3 we introduce characteristic parameters (ξ, η) into the differential equation (31). Differentiating the first-order system once, we obtain a system of the form

$$\mathbf{y}_{\xi\eta}(\xi, \eta) = \mathbf{h}(\xi, \eta, \mathbf{y}(\xi, \eta), \mathbf{y}_\xi(\xi, \eta), \mathbf{y}_\eta(\xi, \eta)). \quad (33)$$

On account of $a, b, c, d \in C^2$ the function $\mathbf{h}$ belongs to the class C^1 with respect to $\mathbf{y}, \mathbf{y}_\xi, \mathbf{y}_\eta$. From the Cauchy data

$$(x(t), y(t), f(t), g(t)) \quad \text{with} \quad t_0 - T \leq t \leq t_0 + T$$

we calculate the initial values for $\mathbf{y}$. Since $\xi = \text{const}$ and $\eta = \text{const}$ are the characteristic curves, we can transfer the noncharacteristic curve Γ into the secondary diagonal $\xi + \eta = 0$ by the transformation

$$\xi \mapsto \varphi(\xi), \eta \mapsto \psi(\eta).$$

With the aid of Theorem 1 we make the transition to homogeneous initial values, and we solve the CIP for the system (33) by Theorem 4. Via resubstitution we obtain a solution of the CIP (32) (compare the proof of §3, Theorem 3). The uniqueness follows from the corresponding statement for the system (33).

q.e.d.

§5 Riemann's integration method

In this paragraph we shall investigate linear hyperbolic differential equations. Though we established only local solvability in Theorem 5 of §4, we now shall prove global solvability of the linear Cauchy initial value problem. For the convenience of the reader we supply the preparatory

Proposition 1. (Comparison lemma)

The continuous function $f : [\xi - h, \xi + h] \rightarrow [0, +\infty)$ satisfies the integral inequality

$$f(x) \leq A \int_{\xi}^x (f(t) + \varepsilon) |dt| \quad \text{for all } x \in [\xi - h, \xi + h]$$

with the constants $A > 0$ and $\varepsilon \geq 0$. Then we have the estimate

$$0 \leq f(x) \leq \varepsilon (e^{A|x-\xi|} - 1) = \varepsilon \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{A^k}{k!} |x - \xi|^k$$

for all $x \in [\xi - h, \xi + h]$.

Proof: We set $M := \max\{f(x) : \xi - h \leq x \leq \xi + h\}$ and show via complete induction

$$f(x) \leq \varepsilon \sum_{k=1}^n \frac{A^k}{k!} |x - \xi|^k + M \frac{A^n}{n!} |x - \xi|^n, \quad x \in [\xi - h, \xi + h].$$

From the integral inequality we deduce

$$f(x) \leq MA|x - \xi| + \varepsilon A|x - \xi| \quad \text{for all } x \in [\xi - h, \xi + h],$$

such that the case $n = 1$ is established. If the estimate above is valid for a number $n \in \mathbb{N}$, we then find

$$\begin{aligned}
 f(x) &\leq \varepsilon A|x - \xi| + A \int_{\xi}^x f(t) |dt| \\
 &\leq \varepsilon A|x - \xi| + A \int_{\xi}^x \left\{ \varepsilon \sum_{k=1}^n \frac{A^k}{k!} |x - \xi|^k + M \frac{A^n}{n!} |x - \xi|^n \right\} |dt| \\
 &= \varepsilon A|x - \xi| + \varepsilon \sum_{k=1}^n \frac{A^{k+1}}{(k+1)!} |x - \xi|^{k+1} + M \frac{A^{n+1}}{(n+1)!} |x - \xi|^{n+1} \\
 &= \varepsilon \sum_{k=1}^{n+1} \frac{A^k}{k!} |x - \xi|^k + M \frac{A^{n+1}}{(n+1)!} |x - \xi|^{n+1}.
 \end{aligned}$$

We observe

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{(A|x - \xi|)^{n+1}}{(n+1)!} = 0,$$

and the limit procedure in the estimate above yields

$$f(x) \leq \varepsilon \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{A^k}{k!} |x - \xi|^k = \varepsilon (e^{A|x - \xi|} - 1).$$

q.e.d.

Theorem 1. *Let the functions $f = f(t) \in C_0^2(\mathbb{R})$ and $g = g(t) \in C_0^1(\mathbb{R})$ be given. Furthermore, the coefficient functions $a = a(x, y)$, $b = b(x, y)$, $c = c(x, y)$, $d = d(x, y)$ belong to the class $C_0^1(\mathbb{R}^2)$. Then the Cauchy initial value problem*

$$\begin{aligned}
 u_{xy}(x, y) + au_x(x, y) + bu_y(x, y) + cu(x, y) &= d(x, y) \quad \text{in } \mathbb{R}^2, \\
 u(x, -x) = f(x), \quad \frac{\partial}{\partial \nu} u(x, -x) &= g(x) \quad \text{for } x \in \mathbb{R}
 \end{aligned} \tag{1}$$

possesses exactly one solution. Here the symbol $\frac{\partial}{\partial \nu}$ again denotes the derivative in the direction of the normal $\nu = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(1, 1)$.

Proof: We write the differential equation in the form

$$u_{xy} = h(x, y, u, u_x, u_y) := d(x, y) - a(x, y)u_x - b(x, y)u_y - c(x, y)u.$$

Here the right-hand side h globally satisfies a Lipschitz condition as in § 4, formula (17), with the Lipschitz constant $L \in [0, +\infty)$. We consider a solution $u = u(x, y)$ existing in a neighborhood of the secondary diagonal $x + y = 0$, and we investigate the function

$$\phi(t) := \max_{x+y=t} \left| \left(u(x, y) - v(x, y), u_x(x, y) - v_x(x, y), u_y(x, y) - v_y(x, y) \right) \right|$$

with

$$v(x, y) := I(0)|_{(x, y)}.$$

Here I denotes the integro-differential-operator defined in §4, formula (18). From Theorem 3 in §4 we infer the differential inequality

$$\phi(t) \leq L \int_0^t (2 + T)(\phi(\tau) + K) d\tau \quad \text{for all } 0 \leq t \leq T < +\infty$$

with a constant $K > 0$. Proposition 1 gives us the estimate

$$\phi(t) \leq K(e^{L(2+T)t} - 1) \quad \text{for all } 0 \leq t \leq T < +\infty$$

and consequently

$$\phi(T) \leq K(e^{L(2+T)T} - 1) \quad \text{for } 0 \leq T < +\infty. \quad (2)$$

Therefore, the solution of the Cauchy initial value problem remains bounded in the C^1 -norm, and the procedure of successive approximation yields a global solution on $\mathbb{R}^2$.

q.e.d.

We shall now prove an integral representation for the solution of Cauchy's initial value problem (1). This *Riemannian integration method* corresponds to the representation for solutions of Poisson's equation with the aid of Green's function. Together with the linear differential operator

$$\mathcal{L}u(x, y) := u_{xy}(x, y) + a(x, y)u_x(x, y) + b(x, y)u_y(x, y) + c(x, y)u(x, y) \quad (3)$$

we consider the *adjoint differential operator*

$$\mathcal{M}v(x, y) := v_{xy}(x, y) - [a(x, y)v(x, y)]_x - [b(x, y)v(x, y)]_y + c(x, y)v(x, y). \quad (4)$$

The operators $\mathcal{L}$ and $\mathcal{M}$ coincide if and only if $a \equiv 0 \equiv b$ is satisfied.

Proposition 2. *We have*

$$v\mathcal{L}u - u\mathcal{M}v = (-v_yu + auv)_x + (vu_x + bvu)_y. \quad (5)$$

Proof: We calculate

$$\begin{aligned} v\mathcal{L}u &= vu_{xy} + avu_x + bvu_y + cvu \\ &= (vu_x)_y - v_yu_x + (avu)_x - (av)_xu + (bvu)_y - (bv)_yu + cvu \\ &= (vu_x + bvu)_y + (-v_yu + auv)_x + uv_{xy} - u(av)_x - u(bv)_y + ucv \\ &= (vu_x + bvu)_y + (-v_yu + auv)_x + u\mathcal{M}v. \end{aligned}$$

q.e.d.

Let the closed, regular arc $\Gamma \subset \mathbb{R}^2$ be given, which represents a noncharacteristic curve for the differential equation (1). This means, the arc Γ never appears parallel to the coordinate axes. Therefore, we can find a continuous, strictly monotonic function $\varphi = \varphi(x) : [x_1, x_2] \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ such that

$$\begin{aligned} \Gamma &= \left\{ (x, y) \in \mathbb{R}^2 : y = \varphi(x), x_1 \leq x \leq x_2 \right\} \\ &= \left\{ (x, y) \in \mathbb{R}^2 : x = \varphi^{-1}(y), y_2 \leq y \leq y_1 \right\} \end{aligned}$$

holds true with $y_1 = \varphi(x_1)$ and $y_2 = \varphi(x_2)$. (Without loss of generality we assume $y_2 < y_1$.) Furthermore, $P = (x, y) \notin \Gamma$ represents a fixed point in the square $[x_1, x_2] \times [y_2, y_1]$ above the arc Γ , that means $y > \varphi(x)$. Then we define the *characteristic triangle*

$$T(x, y) := \left\{ (\xi, \eta) \in \mathbb{R}^2 : \varphi(x) < \varphi(\xi) < \eta < y \right\}.$$

Furthermore, we use the abbreviation

$$\Gamma(x, y) := \Gamma \cap \partial T(x, y).$$

Finally, $\nu = (\nu_1, \nu_2)$ denotes the exterior normal to $T(x, y)$, and we set $A := (\varphi^{-1}(y), y)$, $B := (x, \varphi(x)) \in \Gamma$.

With the aid of the Gaussian integral theorem we integrate (5) over the triangle $T(x, y)$ and obtain

$$\begin{aligned}
& \iint_{T(x,y)} (v \mathcal{L}u - u \mathcal{M}v) \Big|_{(\xi,\eta)} d\xi d\eta \\
&= \int_{\partial T(x,y)} \left\{ (-v_y u + a u v) \nu_1 + (v u_x + b v u) \nu_2 \right\} d\sigma \\
&= \int_{\widehat{AB}} \left\{ (-v_y u + a u v) \nu_1 + (v u_x + b v u) \nu_2 \right\} d\sigma \\
&\quad + \int_{\widehat{BP}} (-v_y + a v) u d\eta + \int_{\widehat{PA}} (u_x + b u) v d\xi \\
&= \int_{\widehat{AB}} \left\{ (-v_y u + a u v) \nu_1 + (v u_x + b v u) \nu_2 \right\} d\sigma \\
&\quad + \int_{\widehat{BP}} (-v_y + a v) u d\eta + \int_{\widehat{PA}} (-v_x + b v) u d\xi + \int_{\widehat{PA}} (uv)_x d\xi \\
&= \int_{\widehat{AB}} \left\{ (-v_y u + a u v) \nu_1 + (v u_x + b v u) \nu_2 \right\} d\sigma \\
&\quad + \int_{\widehat{BP}} (-v_y + a v) u d\eta + \int_{\widehat{PA}} (-v_x + b v) u d\xi \\
&\quad - u(P)v(P) + u(A)v(A).
\end{aligned}$$

Here $\widehat{AB} = \Gamma(x, y)$ denotes the positive-oriented arc from A to B on the boundary of $T(x, y)$ between the points A and B .

Definition 1. The function $v(\xi, \eta) =: R(\xi, \eta; x, y)$ is called Riemannian function if the following conditions are fulfilled:

1. The function v satisfies the differential equation $\mathcal{M}v = 0$ in $T(x, y)$.
2. We have $v(x, y) = R(x, y; x, y) = 1$.
3. Along the arc $\widehat{BP}$ we have $-v_y + av = 0$, and therefore

$$v(x, \eta) = \exp \left\{ \int_y^\eta a(x, t) dt \right\}.$$

4. Along the arc $\widehat{PA}$ we have $-v_x + bv = 0$, and therefore

$$v(\xi, y) = \exp \left\{ \int_x^\xi b(t, y) dt \right\}.$$

If we can find a Riemannian function, we have the following

Theorem 2. (Riemannian integration method)

A solution of the hyperbolic differential equation $\mathcal{L}u(\xi, \eta) = h(\xi, \eta)$ can be represented by the Cauchy data with the aid of the Riemannian function $R(\xi, \eta; x, y)$ as follows: For the point $P = (x, y)$ we have

$$u(P) = u(A)R(A; P) - \iint_{T(x, y)} R(\xi, \eta; P)h(\xi, \eta) d\xi d\eta \\ + \int_{\Gamma(x, y)} \left\{ (-R_\eta(\xi, \eta; P)u(\xi, \eta) + auR)\nu_1 + (Ru_\xi + bRu)\nu_2 \right\} d\sigma. \quad (6)$$

Remark: The problem remains to construct a Riemannian function.

§6 Bernstein's analyticity theorem

On the unit disc $B := \{(u, v) : u^2 + v^2 < 1\}$ we consider a solution

$$\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{x}(u, v) = (x_1(u, v), \dots, x_n(u, v)) : B \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n \in C^3(B, \mathbb{R}^n) \quad (1)$$

of the quasilinear elliptic system

$$\Delta \mathbf{x}(u, v) = \mathbf{F}(u, v, \mathbf{x}(u, v), \mathbf{x}_u(u, v), \mathbf{x}_v(u, v)), \quad (u, v) \in B. \quad (2)$$

In an open neighborhood $\mathcal{O} \subset \mathbb{R}^{2+3n}$ of the surface

$$\mathcal{F} := \left\{ (u, v, \mathbf{x}(u, v), \mathbf{x}_u(u, v), \mathbf{x}_v(u, v)) : (u, v) \in B \right\}$$

the function

$$\mathbf{F} : \mathcal{O} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n \quad \text{is assumed real-analytic.} \quad (3)$$

At each point $\mathbf{z} \in \mathcal{O}$ we can locally expand the function $\mathbf{F}$ with $2 + 3n$ variables into a power series whose coefficients belong to $\mathbb{R}^n$. This series also converges in the complex variables $u, v, z_1, \dots, z_n, p_1, \dots, p_n, q_1, \dots, q_n \in \mathbb{C}$. This enables us to continue the right-hand side of (2) onto an open set $\mathcal{O}$ in $\mathbb{C}^{2+3n}$ with $\mathcal{F} \subset \mathcal{O}$. Then we obtain

$$\mathbf{F} = \mathbf{F}(u, v, z_1, \dots, z_n, p_1, \dots, p_n, q_1, \dots, q_n) : \mathcal{O} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}^n \in C^1(\mathcal{O}, \mathbb{C}^n) \quad (4)$$

without relabeling our function. Then $\mathbf{F}$ satisfies the $2 + 3n$ Cauchy-Riemann equations

$$\mathbf{F}_{\bar{u}} \equiv \mathbf{F}_{\bar{v}} \equiv \mathbf{F}_{\bar{z}_1} \equiv \dots \equiv \mathbf{F}_{\bar{z}_n} \equiv \mathbf{F}_{\bar{p}_1} \equiv \dots \equiv \mathbf{F}_{\bar{p}_n} \equiv \mathbf{F}_{\bar{q}_1} \equiv \dots \equiv \mathbf{F}_{\bar{q}_n} \equiv 0 \quad (5)$$

in $\mathcal{O}$. With the assumptions (3) or equivalently (4)-(5), we shall show that a solution (1) of (2) is real-analytic on the disc B . Then we have an open neighborhood $\mathcal{B} \subset \mathbb{C}^2$ of B such that the following function extended to $\mathcal{B}$

$$\mathbf{x}(u, v) = (x_1(u, v), \dots, x_n(u, v)) : \mathcal{B} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}^n \in C^3(\mathcal{B}, \mathbb{C}^n) \quad (6)$$

satisfies the Cauchy-Riemann equations

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial \bar{u}} x_j(u, v) \equiv 0 \equiv \frac{\partial}{\partial \bar{v}} x_j(u, v), \quad (u, v) \in \mathcal{B}, \quad \text{for } j = 1, \dots, n \quad (7)$$

or equivalently

$$\mathbf{x}_{\bar{u}} := (x_{1,\bar{u}}, \dots, x_{n,\bar{u}}) \equiv 0 \equiv (x_{1,\bar{v}}, \dots, x_{n,\bar{v}}) =: \mathbf{x}_{\bar{v}} \quad \text{in } \mathcal{B}. \quad (8)$$

With the aid of ideas from H. Lewy, we shall analytically extend the solution (1) of (2) from B onto $\mathcal{B}$. This is achieved by solving initial value problems for nonlinear hyperbolic differential equations with two variables. Starting from an extension into the variables $(u, v) = (\alpha + i\beta, \gamma + i\delta) \in \mathcal{B}$ for the moment, the system (2) appears in the form

$$\mathbf{x}_{\alpha\alpha}(u, v) + \mathbf{x}_{\gamma\gamma}(u, v) = \mathbf{F}(u, v, \mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x}_{\alpha}(u, v), \mathbf{x}_{\gamma}(u, v)) \quad \text{in } \mathcal{B}. \quad (9)$$

We can write the Cauchy-Riemann equations as follows:

$$\mathbf{x}_{\beta}(u, v) = i\mathbf{x}_{\alpha}(u, v) \quad \text{in } \mathcal{B} \quad (10)$$

and

$$\mathbf{x}_{\delta}(u, v) = i\mathbf{x}_{\gamma}(u, v) \quad \text{in } \mathcal{B}. \quad (11)$$

These imply the Laplace equations

$$\mathbf{x}_{\alpha\alpha}(u, v) + \mathbf{x}_{\beta\beta}(u, v) = 0 \quad \text{in } \mathcal{B} \quad (12)$$

and

$$\mathbf{x}_{\gamma\gamma}(u, v) + \mathbf{x}_{\delta\delta}(u, v) = 0 \quad \text{in } \mathcal{B}. \quad (13)$$

Inserting (12) and (10) into (9) we obtain

$$-\mathbf{x}_{\beta\beta}(u, v) + \mathbf{x}_{\gamma\gamma}(u, v) = \mathbf{F}(u, v, \mathbf{x}, -i\mathbf{x}_{\beta}, \mathbf{x}_{\gamma}) \quad \text{in } \mathcal{B}. \quad (14)$$

From (13), (11), and (9) we infer

$$\mathbf{x}_{\alpha\alpha}(u, v) - \mathbf{x}_{\delta\delta}(u, v) = \mathbf{F}(u, v, \mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x}_{\alpha}, -i\mathbf{x}_{\delta}) \quad \text{in } \mathcal{B}. \quad (15)$$

Now we solve initial value problems for the hyperbolic equations (14) and (15) with initial velocities given by (10) and (11), respectively.

We thus obtain the

Theorem 1. (Analyticity theorem of S. Bernstein)

Let the solution $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{x}(u, v)$ of the p.d.e. problem (1)-(2) be given with the real-analytic right-hand side (3) or equivalently (4)-(5). Then the function $\mathbf{x}$ is real-analytic in B .

Proof (H. Lewy):

1. Using the notations from above, we start with a solution $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{x}(\alpha, \gamma) : B \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n \in C^3(B, \mathbb{R}^n)$ for the system of differential equations

$$\mathbf{x}_{\alpha\alpha}(\alpha, \gamma) + \mathbf{x}_{\gamma\gamma}(\alpha, \gamma) = \mathbf{F}(\alpha, \gamma, \mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x}_\alpha(\alpha, \gamma), \mathbf{x}_\gamma(\alpha, \gamma)) \quad \text{in } B. \quad (16)$$

We consider the Cauchy initial value problem

$$\begin{aligned} -\mathbf{x}_{\beta\beta}(\alpha, \beta, \gamma) + \mathbf{x}_{\gamma\gamma}(\alpha, \beta, \gamma) &= \mathbf{F}(\alpha, \beta, \gamma, \mathbf{x}, -i\mathbf{x}_\beta, \mathbf{x}_\gamma) \quad \text{in } B', \\ \mathbf{x}(\alpha, 0, \gamma) &= \mathbf{x}(\alpha, \gamma) \quad \text{in } B, \\ \mathbf{x}_\beta(\alpha, 0, \gamma) &= i\mathbf{x}_\alpha(\alpha, \gamma) \quad \text{in } B \end{aligned} \quad (17)$$

with the parameter α . Here $B' \subset \mathbb{R}^3$ denotes a suitable open set satisfying $B \subset B'$. According to §4, the problem (17) possesses a locally unique solution $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{x}(\alpha, \beta, \gamma)$, since the characteristic curves of the differential equation point out of B . We emphasize the differentiable dependence of the solution from the parameter α . We now define $u := \alpha + i\beta$. Taking the Remark 2 following Theorem 4 from §4 into consideration, we can apply the operator

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial \bar{u}} = \frac{1}{2} \left(\frac{\partial}{\partial \alpha} + i \frac{\partial}{\partial \beta} \right)$$

to the differential equation in (17). For the function

$$\mathbf{y}(\alpha, \beta, \gamma) = (y_1(\alpha, \beta, \gamma), \dots, y_n(\alpha, \beta, \gamma)) := \mathbf{x}_{\bar{u}}(\alpha, \beta, \gamma)$$

we obtain the system of differential equations

$$-\mathbf{y}_{\beta\beta}(\alpha, \beta, \gamma) + \mathbf{y}_{\gamma\gamma}(\alpha, \beta, \gamma) = \sum_{j=1}^n \{ \mathbf{F}_{z_j} y_j - i \mathbf{F}_{p_j} y_{j,\beta} + \mathbf{F}_{q_j} y_{j,\gamma} \} \quad \text{in } B'. \quad (18)$$

Noting (17) we comprehend

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{y}(\alpha, 0, \gamma) &= \frac{1}{2} (\mathbf{x}_\alpha(\alpha, 0, \gamma) + i\mathbf{x}_\beta(\alpha, 0, \gamma)) \\ &= \frac{1}{2} (\mathbf{x}_\alpha(\alpha, \gamma) + ii\mathbf{x}_\alpha(\alpha, \gamma)) = 0 \quad \text{in } B. \end{aligned} \quad (19)$$

Furthermore, we observe (17) and (16) and calculate

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{y}_\beta(\alpha, 0, \gamma) &= \frac{1}{2} (\mathbf{x}_{\alpha\beta}(\alpha, 0, \gamma) + i\mathbf{x}_{\beta\beta}(\alpha, 0, \gamma)) \\ &= \frac{1}{2} (\mathbf{x}_{\alpha\beta}(\alpha, 0, \gamma) + i\mathbf{x}_{\gamma\gamma}(\alpha, 0, \gamma) - i\mathbf{F}(\alpha, 0, \gamma, \mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x}_\alpha, \mathbf{x}_\gamma)) \\ &= \frac{1}{2} (\mathbf{x}_{\alpha\beta}(\alpha, 0, \gamma) - i\mathbf{x}_{\alpha\alpha}(\alpha, \gamma)) \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \frac{\partial}{\partial \alpha} (\mathbf{x}_\beta(\alpha, 0, \gamma) - i\mathbf{x}_\alpha(\alpha, \gamma)) = 0 \quad \text{in } B, \end{aligned}$$

and consequently

$$\mathbf{y}_\beta(\alpha, 0, \gamma) = 0 \quad \text{in } B. \quad (20)$$

The homogeneous Cauchy initial value problem (18)-(20) is uniquely solvable by $\mathbf{y}(\alpha, \beta, \gamma) \equiv 0$ in B' , and we see

$$\mathbf{x}_{\overline{u}}(\alpha, \beta, \gamma) \equiv 0 \quad \text{in } B'. \quad (21)$$

2. We now extend $\mathbf{x}$ from B' onto $B \subset \mathbb{C}^2$. In this context we solve the Cauchy initial value problem

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{x}_{\alpha\alpha}(\alpha, \beta, \gamma, \delta) - \mathbf{x}_{\delta\delta}(\alpha, \beta, \gamma, \delta) &= \mathbf{F}(\alpha, \beta, \gamma, \delta, \mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x}_\alpha, -i\mathbf{x}_\delta) \quad \text{in } B, \\ \mathbf{x}(\alpha, \beta, \gamma, 0) &= \mathbf{x}(\alpha, \beta, \gamma) \quad \text{in } B', \\ \mathbf{x}_\delta(\alpha, \beta, \gamma, 0) &= i\mathbf{x}_\gamma(\alpha, \beta, \gamma) \quad \text{in } B'. \end{aligned} \quad (22)$$

The solution depends differentiably on the parameters β, γ , and higher regularity follows as in §4. At first, we consider the function

$$\mathbf{y}(\alpha, \beta, \gamma, \delta) = (y_1(\alpha, \beta, \gamma, \delta), \dots, y_n(\alpha, \beta, \gamma, \delta)) := \mathbf{x}_{\overline{u}}(\alpha, \beta, \gamma, \delta).$$

On account of (22), this function satisfies the hyperbolic system

$$\mathbf{y}_{\alpha\alpha}(\alpha, \beta, \gamma, \delta) - \mathbf{y}_{\delta\delta}(\alpha, \beta, \gamma, \delta) = \sum_{j=1}^n \{ \mathbf{F}_{z_j} y_j + \mathbf{F}_{p_j} y_{j,\alpha} - i\mathbf{F}_{q_j} y_{j,\delta} \} \quad \text{in } B. \quad (23)$$

Due to (21) we have the initial conditions

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{y}(\alpha, \beta, \gamma, 0) &= \frac{1}{2}(\mathbf{x}_\alpha(\alpha, \beta, \gamma, 0) + i\mathbf{x}_\beta(\alpha, \beta, \gamma, 0)) \\ &= \mathbf{x}_{\overline{u}}(\alpha, \beta, \gamma) = 0 \quad \text{in } B' \end{aligned} \quad (24)$$

and

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{y}_\delta(\alpha, \beta, \gamma, 0) &= \frac{1}{2}(\mathbf{x}_{\alpha\delta}(\alpha, \beta, \gamma, 0) + i\mathbf{x}_{\beta\delta}(\alpha, \beta, \gamma, 0)) \\ &= \frac{i}{2}(\mathbf{x}_{\alpha\gamma}(\alpha, \beta, \gamma) + i\mathbf{x}_{\beta\gamma}(\alpha, \beta, \gamma)) \\ &= i\frac{\partial}{\partial\gamma}\mathbf{x}_{\overline{u}}(\alpha, \beta, \gamma) = 0 \quad \text{in } B'. \end{aligned} \quad (25)$$

From (23)-(25) we deduce $\mathbf{y}(\alpha, \beta, \gamma, \delta) = 0$ in B and consequently

$$\mathbf{x}_{\overline{u}}(\alpha, \beta, \gamma, \delta) \equiv 0 \quad \text{in } B. \quad (26)$$

Finally, we investigate the function

$$\mathbf{z}(\alpha, \beta, \gamma, \delta) = (z_1(\alpha, \beta, \gamma, \delta), \dots, z_n(\alpha, \beta, \gamma, \delta)) := \mathbf{x}_{\overline{v}}(\alpha, \beta, \gamma, \delta)$$

and infer the following system of differential equations from (22):

$$\mathbf{z}_{\alpha\alpha}(\alpha, \beta, \gamma, \delta) - \mathbf{z}_{\delta\delta}(\alpha, \beta, \gamma, \delta) = \sum_{j=1}^n \{ \mathbf{F}_{z_j} z_j + \mathbf{F}_{p_j} z_{j,\alpha} - i \mathbf{F}_{q_j} z_{j,\delta} \} \quad \text{in } \mathcal{B}. \quad (27)$$

For the function $\mathbf{z}$ we determine the initial conditions

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{z}(\alpha, \beta, \gamma, 0) &= \frac{1}{2} (\mathbf{x}_\gamma(\alpha, \beta, \gamma, 0) + i \mathbf{x}_\delta(\alpha, \beta, \gamma, 0)) \\ &= \frac{1}{2} (\mathbf{x}_\gamma(\alpha, \beta, \gamma) + i i \mathbf{x}_\gamma(\alpha, \beta, \gamma)) = 0 \quad \text{in } \mathcal{B}' \end{aligned} \quad (28)$$

and

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{z}_\delta(\alpha, \beta, \gamma, 0) &= \frac{1}{2} (\mathbf{x}_{\gamma\delta}(\alpha, \beta, \gamma, 0) + i \mathbf{x}_{\delta\delta}(\alpha, \beta, \gamma, 0)) \\ &= \frac{1}{2} (\mathbf{x}_{\gamma\delta}(\alpha, \beta, \gamma, 0) + i \mathbf{x}_{\alpha\alpha}(\alpha, \beta, \gamma, 0) - i \mathbf{F}(\alpha, \beta, \gamma, 0, \mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x}_\alpha, \mathbf{x}_\gamma)) \\ &= \frac{1}{2} (\mathbf{x}_{\gamma\delta}(\alpha, \beta, \gamma, 0) - i \mathbf{x}_{\gamma\gamma}(\alpha, \beta, \gamma)) \\ &= \frac{\partial}{\partial \gamma} \frac{1}{2} (\mathbf{x}_\delta(\alpha, \beta, \gamma, 0) - i \mathbf{x}_\gamma(\alpha, \beta, \gamma)) = 0 \quad \text{in } \mathcal{B}', \end{aligned} \quad (29)$$

using (22) and (16). The equation (16) remains valid in $\mathcal{B}'$ due to (21). From (27)-(29) we infer $\mathbf{z}(\alpha, \beta, \gamma, \delta) \equiv 0$ in $\mathcal{B}$ and finally

$$\mathbf{x}_{\overline{v}}(\alpha, \beta, \gamma, \delta) \equiv 0 \quad \text{in } \mathcal{B}. \quad (30)$$

Consequently, we have extended the solution $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{x}(\alpha, \gamma)$ of (16) to a function $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{x}(\alpha, \beta, \gamma, \delta) : \mathcal{B} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}^n$, which is holomorphic in the variables $u = \alpha + i\beta$ and $v = \gamma + i\delta$ on account of (26) and (30). Therefore, the function

$$\mathbf{x}(\alpha, \gamma) = \mathbf{x}(\alpha, \beta, \gamma, \delta)|_{\beta=\delta=0}$$

is real-analytic in α and γ .

q.e.d.

The theorems about holomorphic mappings necessary for the next proof are contained in the beautiful book [GF] of H. Grauert and K. Fritzsche, especially in Chapter I, § 6 and § 7.

Theorem 2. *On the open set $\Omega \subset \mathbb{R}^2$ let us consider a solution $z = \zeta(x, y) \in C^3(\Omega, \mathbb{R})$ of the nonparametric H -surface equation*

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{M}\zeta(x, y) &:= (1 + \zeta_y^2) \zeta_{xx}(x, y) - 2 \zeta_x \zeta_y \zeta_{xy}(x, y) + (1 + \zeta_x^2) \zeta_{yy}(x, y) \\ &= 2H(x, y, \zeta(x, y)) (1 + |\nabla \zeta(x, y)|^2)^{\frac{3}{2}} \quad \text{in } \Omega. \end{aligned} \quad (31)$$

The mean curvature $H = H(x, y, z)$ is assumed real-analytic in a three-dimensional open neighborhood of the surface

$$\mathcal{F} := \left\{ (x, y, \zeta(x, y)) : (x, y) \in \Omega \right\}.$$

Then the solution $z = \zeta(x, y) : \Omega \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ is real-analytic in Ω .

Proof: We choose the point $(x^0, y^0) \in \Omega$ arbitrarily and determine $r > 0$ such that the corresponding disc satisfies

$$B_r(x^0, y^0) := \left\{ (x, y) \in \mathbb{R}^2 : (x - x^0)^2 + (y - y^0)^2 < r^2 \right\} \subset \subset \Omega.$$

We consider the C^2 -metric

$$ds^2 = (1 + \zeta_x^2) dx^2 + 2\zeta_x \zeta_y dx dy + (1 + \zeta_y^2) dy^2 \quad \text{in } B_r(x^0, y^0)$$

and introduce isothermal parameters via the diffeomorphic mapping

$$f(u, v) = (x(u, v), y(u, v)) : B \rightarrow B_r(x^0, y^0) \in C^3(B).$$

The function

$$\mathbf{x}(u, v) := (f(u, v), z(u, v)) \in C^3(B, \mathbb{R}^3) \quad (32)$$

with

$$z(u, v) := \zeta \circ f(u, v), \quad (u, v) \in B$$

satisfies Rellich's system

$$\Delta \mathbf{x}(u, v) = 2H(\mathbf{x}(u, v)) \mathbf{x}_u \wedge \mathbf{x}_v(u, v) \quad \text{in } B. \quad (33)$$

According to Theorem 1, the function $\mathbf{x}$ is real-analytic in B and the mapping $f : B \rightarrow B_r(x^0, y^0)$ as well. Since $J_f(u, v) \neq 0$ in B holds true, also the inverse mapping $f^{-1} : B_r(x^0, y^0) \rightarrow B$ is real-analytic. Consequently, the function

$$\zeta(x, y) = z \circ f^{-1}(x, y), \quad (x, y) \in B_r(x^0, y^0), \quad (34)$$

is real-analytic in $B_r(x^0, y^0)$. This holds true in Ω as well, since the point $(x^0, y^0) \in \Omega$ has been chosen arbitrarily. q.e.d.

Remarks:

1. The introduction of conformal parameters by the uniformization theorem (see Chapter XII, § 8) can be achieved by various proofs: A continuity method is presented in the paper by

F. Sauvigny: *Introduction of isothermal parameters into a Riemannian metric by the continuity method*. Analysis 19 (1999), 235-243.

A variational method is applied by the authors

S. Hildebrandt, H. von der Mosel: *On Lichtenstein's theorem about globally conformal mappings*. Calc. Var. 23 (2005), 415-424.

2. For arbitrary quasilinear, real-analytic, elliptic differential equations in two variables, F. Müller has proved the Bernstein analyticity theorem by the uniformization method used in Theorem 2. In this context we refer the reader to:

F. Müller: – *On the continuation of solutions for elliptic equations in two variables*. Ann. Inst. H. Poincaré - AN 19 (2002), 745-776.

– *Analyticity of solutions for semilinear elliptic systems of second order*. Calc. Var. and PDE 15 (2002), 257-288.

3. Finally, the reader should consider Hans Lewy's original treatise:

H. Lewy: *Neuer Beweis des analytischen Charakters der Lösungen elliptischer Differentialgleichungen*. Math. Annalen 101 (1929), 609-619.

§7 Some historical notices to Chapter XI

The Bernstein analyticity theorem represents the first regularity result in the theory of partial differential equations. This question was proposed by D. Hilbert to S. Bernstein, who solved this problem by intricate methods in 1904.

K. Friedrichs and H. Lewy treated the initial value problem for hyperbolic equations in 1927. Their method of successive approximations, which is nowadays established via Banach's fixed point theorem, has been invented already by E. Picard. Two years later in 1929, H. Lewy ingeniously built the bridge from hyperbolic to elliptic equations with his approach to Bernstein's analyticity theorem. We would like to mention that H. Lewy attended lectures of J. Hadamard (1865–1963) during his research visit to Paris in 1930.

In his wonderful book *Partial Differential Equations*, P. Garabedian observed that Lewy's proof is substantially simplified when the principal part of the equation reduces to the Laplacian. With the uniformization theorem for non-analytic Riemannian metrics, we present the decisive tool to investigate arbitrary elliptic equations in the next chapter.

PORTRAIT OF H. LEWY (1904–1988);
taken from the biography by *C. Reid: Courant*, in *Göttingen and New York – An Album*, Springer-Verlag, Berlin... (1976).



PORTRAIT OF F. RELICH (1906–1955); taken from the biography above.



XII

Nonlinear Elliptic Systems

We present a maximum principle of W. Jäger for the H -surface system in § 1. Then we prove the fundamental gradient estimate of E. Heinz for nonlinear elliptic systems of differential equations in § 2. Global estimates are established in § 3. In combination with the Leray-Schauder degree of mapping, we deduce an existence theorem for nonlinear elliptic systems in § 4. Specialized to the system $\Delta \mathbf{x} = 2H\mathbf{x}_u \wedge \mathbf{x}_v$ discovered by F. Rellich, this result was proved by E. Heinz already in 1954. In § 5 we derive an inner distortion estimate for plane nonlinear elliptic systems, which implies a curvature estimate presented in § 6. In the next sections §§ 7-8 we introduce conformal parameters into a Riemannian metric and establish a priori estimates up to the boundary in this context. We explain the uniformization method for quasilinear elliptic differential equations in § 9 and solve the Dirichlet problem for the nonparametric equation of prescribed mean curvature. Finally, we provide an introduction to Plateau's problem for surfaces of constant mean curvature in § 10.

§1 Maximum principles for the H -surface system

Let $B := \{w = u + iv \in \mathbb{C} : |w| < 1\}$ denote the unit disc. We prescribe the function

$$H = H(w, \mathbf{x}) : \overline{B} \times \mathbb{R}^3 \rightarrow \mathbb{R} \in C^0(\overline{B} \times \mathbb{R}^3, \mathbb{R}) \quad (1)$$

with the bounds

$$\begin{aligned} |H(w, \mathbf{x})| &\leq h_0, & |H(w, \mathbf{x}) - H(w, \mathbf{y})| &\leq h_1 |\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{y}| \\ \text{for all } w &\in B, & \mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y} &\in \mathbb{R}^3 \end{aligned} \quad (2)$$

and consider *Rellich's H -surface system*

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{x} &= \mathbf{x}(u, v) \in C^2(B, \mathbb{R}^3) \cap C^0(\overline{B}, \mathbb{R}^3), \\ \Delta \mathbf{x}(u, v) &= 2H(w, \mathbf{x}(w)) \mathbf{x}_u \wedge \mathbf{x}_v, & w &\in B. \end{aligned} \quad (3)$$

If a solution of (3) additionally satisfies the relations

$$|\mathbf{x}_u|^2 = |\mathbf{x}_v|^2, \quad \mathbf{x}_u \cdot \mathbf{x}_v = 0 \quad \text{in } B,$$

which means $\mathbf{x}$ represents a conformally parametrized surface, then $\mathbf{x}$ possesses the prescribed mean curvature $H = H(w, \mathbf{x}(w))$. We now start with two suitable solutions $\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y}$ of (3), consider the difference function $\mathbf{z}(w) := \mathbf{x}(w) - \mathbf{y}(w)$, $w \in \overline{B}$ and deduce an inequality of the form

$$\sup_{w \in \overline{B}} |\mathbf{z}(w)| \leq C(h_0, h_1, \dots) \sup_{w \in \partial B} |\mathbf{z}(w)|. \quad (4)$$

The latter implies unique solvability of the Dirichlet problem for (3) and its stability with respect to perturbations of the boundary values in the C^0 -topology.

The special case $H \equiv 0$: Let the two solutions $\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y}$ of the system (3) with $H \equiv 0$ be given. Then their difference $\mathbf{z}(u, v) = \mathbf{x}(u, v) - \mathbf{y}(u, v) \in C^2(B) \cap C^0(\overline{B})$ is a harmonic function as well. We consider the auxiliary function

$$f(u, v) := |\mathbf{z}(u, v)|^2 = \mathbf{z}(u, v) \cdot \mathbf{z}(u, v) = \mathbf{z}(u, v)^2, \quad (u, v) \in \overline{B}, \quad (5)$$

and calculate

$$\begin{aligned} \Delta f(u, v) &= \nabla \cdot \nabla f(u, v) = \nabla \cdot \nabla (\mathbf{z} \cdot \mathbf{z}) \\ &= 2\nabla(\mathbf{z} \cdot \nabla \mathbf{z}) = 2(|\nabla \mathbf{z}|^2 + \mathbf{z} \cdot \Delta \mathbf{z}) \\ &= 2|\nabla \mathbf{z}(u, v)|^2 \geq 0 \quad \text{in } B. \end{aligned}$$

Here we used $\nabla = (\frac{\partial}{\partial u}, \frac{\partial}{\partial v})$ and abbreviated $\mathbf{z} \cdot \nabla \mathbf{z} = (\mathbf{z} \cdot \mathbf{z}_u, \mathbf{z} \cdot \mathbf{z}_v) \in \mathbb{R}^2$. The maximum principle for subharmonic functions yields

$$\sup_{w \in \overline{B}} |\mathbf{z}(w)| \leq \sup_{w \in \partial B} |\mathbf{z}(w)|. \quad (6)$$

In the general case $H \not\equiv 0$, we start with two solutions $\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y}$ of (3) and consider the difference function $\mathbf{z}(u, v) = \mathbf{x}(u, v) - \mathbf{y}(u, v)$. Then we introduce the *weighted distance function of W. Jäger*

$$F(u, v) := |\mathbf{z}(u, v)|^2 \exp \left\{ \frac{1}{2} \left(\phi(|\mathbf{x}(u, v)|^2) + \phi(|\mathbf{y}(u, v)|^2) \right) \right\} \quad (7)$$

for $w = u + iv \in \overline{B}$. Here, the symbol

$$\phi = \phi(t) : [0, M^2] \rightarrow \mathbb{R} \in C^2([0, M^2]) \quad (8)$$

denotes an auxiliary function still to be determined - with an appropriate quantity $M > 0$. With the distance function (7) we obviously can consider only *small solutions* satisfying

$$|\mathbf{x}(u, v)| < M, \quad |\mathbf{y}(u, v)| < M \quad \text{for all } w = u + iv \in \overline{B}. \quad (9)$$

Now we shall determine ϕ in such a way that F fulfills a differential inequality subject to the maximum principle. At first, we note that

$$\nabla e^{\frac{1}{2}(\phi(\mathbf{x}^2) + \phi(\mathbf{y}^2))} = e^{\frac{1}{2}(\phi(\mathbf{x}^2) + \phi(\mathbf{y}^2))} \left[\phi'(\mathbf{x}^2)(\mathbf{x} \cdot \nabla \mathbf{x}) + \phi'(\mathbf{y}^2)(\mathbf{y} \cdot \nabla \mathbf{y}) \right], \quad (10)$$

and we calculate

$$\nabla F = e^{\frac{1}{2}(\phi(\mathbf{x}^2) + \phi(\mathbf{y}^2))} \left\{ \nabla(\mathbf{z}^2) + \mathbf{z}^2 \left[\phi'(\mathbf{x}^2)(\mathbf{x} \cdot \nabla \mathbf{x}) + \phi'(\mathbf{y}^2)(\mathbf{y} \cdot \nabla \mathbf{y}) \right] \right\}$$

and consequently

$$e^{-\frac{1}{2}(\phi(\mathbf{x}^2) + \phi(\mathbf{y}^2))} \nabla F = \nabla(\mathbf{z}^2) + \mathbf{z}^2 \left[\phi'(\mathbf{x}^2)(\mathbf{x} \cdot \nabla \mathbf{x}) + \phi'(\mathbf{y}^2)(\mathbf{y} \cdot \nabla \mathbf{y}) \right]. \quad (11)$$

Applying the operator ∇ to this identity we obtain the subsequent

Proposition 1. *The function $F(u, v)$ defined in (7) satisfies the following differential equation in B :*

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{L}F &:= \left(e^{-\frac{1}{2}(\phi(\mathbf{x}^2) + \phi(\mathbf{y}^2))} F_u \right)_u + \left(e^{-\frac{1}{2}(\phi(\mathbf{x}^2) + \phi(\mathbf{y}^2))} F_v \right)_v \\ &= \Delta(\mathbf{z}^2) + \frac{1}{2} \mathbf{z}^2 \left[\phi'(\mathbf{x}^2) \Delta(\mathbf{x}^2) + \phi'(\mathbf{y}^2) \Delta(\mathbf{y}^2) \right] \\ &\quad + 2\mathbf{z}^2 \left[\phi''(\mathbf{x}^2)(\mathbf{x} \cdot \nabla \mathbf{x})^2 + \phi''(\mathbf{y}^2)(\mathbf{y} \cdot \nabla \mathbf{y})^2 \right] \\ &\quad + 2(\mathbf{z} \cdot \nabla \mathbf{z}) \cdot \left[\phi'(\mathbf{x}^2)(\mathbf{x} \cdot \nabla \mathbf{x}) + \phi'(\mathbf{y}^2)(\mathbf{y} \cdot \nabla \mathbf{y}) \right]. \end{aligned}$$

We intend to choose ϕ in such a way that $\mathcal{L}F \geq 0$ in B holds true. At first, we note that

$$|\Delta \mathbf{x}| \leq 2|H| |\mathbf{x}_u \wedge \mathbf{x}_v| \leq h_0 |\nabla \mathbf{x}|^2$$

and obtain

$$\begin{aligned} \Delta(\mathbf{x}^2) &= 2(|\nabla \mathbf{x}|^2 + \mathbf{x} \cdot \Delta \mathbf{x}) \geq 2(|\nabla \mathbf{x}|^2 - |\mathbf{x}| |\Delta \mathbf{x}|) \\ &\geq 2|\nabla \mathbf{x}|^2 (1 - h_0 |\mathbf{x}|), \\ \Delta(\mathbf{y}^2) &= 2(|\nabla \mathbf{y}|^2 + \mathbf{y} \cdot \Delta \mathbf{y}) \geq 2(|\nabla \mathbf{y}|^2 - |\mathbf{y}| |\Delta \mathbf{y}|) \\ &\geq 2|\nabla \mathbf{y}|^2 (1 - h_0 |\mathbf{y}|) \quad \text{in } B. \end{aligned} \quad (12)$$

Proposition 2. *For all $w \in B' := \{\zeta \in B \mid |z(\zeta)| \neq 0\}$ we have*

$$\Delta(\mathbf{z}^2) - 2 \left(\frac{\mathbf{z}}{|\mathbf{z}|} \cdot \nabla \mathbf{z} \right)^2 \geq -(h_0^2 + h_1) |\mathbf{z}|^2 (|\nabla \mathbf{x}|^2 + |\nabla \mathbf{y}|^2).$$

Proof: We evaluate $\Delta(\mathbf{z}^2) = 2(|\nabla \mathbf{z}|^2 + \mathbf{z} \cdot \Delta \mathbf{z})$ and estimate as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}
|\mathbf{z} \cdot \Delta \mathbf{z}| &= |\mathbf{z} \cdot (\Delta \mathbf{x} - \Delta \mathbf{y})| = |\mathbf{z} \cdot (2H(w, \mathbf{x})\mathbf{x}_u \wedge \mathbf{x}_v - 2H(w, \mathbf{y})\mathbf{y}_u \wedge \mathbf{y}_v)| \\
&\leq 2|H(w, \mathbf{x})| |\mathbf{z} \cdot (\mathbf{x}_u \wedge \mathbf{x}_v - \mathbf{y}_u \wedge \mathbf{y}_v)| \\
&\quad + 2|H(w, \mathbf{x}) - H(w, \mathbf{y})| |\mathbf{z}| |\mathbf{y}_u \wedge \mathbf{y}_v| \\
&\leq 2h_0|(\mathbf{z}, \mathbf{z}_u, \mathbf{x}_v) + (\mathbf{z}, \mathbf{y}_u, \mathbf{z}_v)| + h_1|\mathbf{z}|^2 |\nabla \mathbf{y}|^2 \\
&\leq 2h_0 \left(\frac{|\mathbf{z} \wedge \mathbf{z}_u|}{|\mathbf{z}|} |\mathbf{x}_v| |\mathbf{z}| + \frac{|\mathbf{z} \wedge \mathbf{z}_v|}{|\mathbf{z}|} |\mathbf{y}_u| |\mathbf{z}| \right) + h_1|\mathbf{z}|^2 |\nabla \mathbf{y}|^2 \\
&\leq \frac{|\mathbf{z} \wedge \mathbf{z}_u|^2}{|\mathbf{z}|^2} + \frac{|\mathbf{z} \wedge \mathbf{z}_v|^2}{|\mathbf{z}|^2} + h_0^2 |\mathbf{z}|^2 (|\mathbf{x}_v|^2 + |\mathbf{y}_u|^2) + h_1|\mathbf{z}|^2 |\nabla \mathbf{y}|^2 \\
&= |\nabla \mathbf{z}|^2 - \frac{1}{|\mathbf{z}|^2} \{(\mathbf{z} \cdot \mathbf{z}_u)^2 + (\mathbf{z} \cdot \mathbf{z}_v)^2\} \\
&\quad + h_0^2 |\mathbf{z}|^2 (|\mathbf{x}_v|^2 + |\mathbf{y}_u|^2) + h_1|\mathbf{z}|^2 |\nabla \mathbf{y}|^2.
\end{aligned}$$

Interchanging $\mathbf{x}$ and $\mathbf{y}$ we add both inequalities and obtain

$$\begin{aligned}
2|\mathbf{z} \cdot \Delta \mathbf{z}| &\leq 2|\nabla \mathbf{z}|^2 - \frac{2}{|\mathbf{z}|^2} (\mathbf{z} \cdot \nabla \mathbf{z})^2 + h_0^2 |\mathbf{z}|^2 (|\nabla \mathbf{x}|^2 + |\nabla \mathbf{y}|^2) \\
&\quad + h_1|\mathbf{z}|^2 (|\nabla \mathbf{x}|^2 + |\nabla \mathbf{y}|^2).
\end{aligned}$$

Finally, we arrive at

$$\Delta(\mathbf{z}^2) \geq 2 \frac{1}{|\mathbf{z}|^2} (\mathbf{z} \cdot \nabla \mathbf{z})^2 - (h_0^2 + h_1) |\mathbf{z}|^2 (|\nabla \mathbf{x}|^2 + |\nabla \mathbf{y}|^2). \quad \text{q.e.d.}$$

We now combine the Propositions 1 and 2 with the formula (12) and deduce

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathcal{L}F &\geq \left\{ -(h_0^2 + h_1) + \phi'(\mathbf{x}^2)(1 - h_0|\mathbf{x}|) \right\} |\mathbf{z}|^2 |\nabla \mathbf{x}|^2 \\
&\quad + \left\{ -(h_0^2 + h_1) + \phi'(\mathbf{y}^2)(1 - h_0|\mathbf{y}|) \right\} |\mathbf{z}|^2 |\nabla \mathbf{y}|^2 + 2 \left(\frac{\mathbf{z}}{|\mathbf{z}|} \cdot \nabla \mathbf{z} \right)^2 \\
&\quad + + 2\sqrt{2} \left(\frac{\mathbf{z}}{|\mathbf{z}|} \cdot \nabla \mathbf{z} \right) \cdot \left\{ \phi'(\mathbf{x}^2)(\mathbf{x} \cdot \nabla \mathbf{x}) + \phi'(\mathbf{y}^2)(\mathbf{y} \cdot \nabla \mathbf{y}) \right\} \frac{|\mathbf{z}|}{\sqrt{2}} \\
&\quad + 2|\mathbf{z}|^2 \left\{ \phi''(\mathbf{x}^2)(\mathbf{x} \cdot \nabla \mathbf{x})^2 + \phi''(\mathbf{y}^2)(\mathbf{y} \cdot \nabla \mathbf{y})^2 \right\} \\
&\geq \psi(|\mathbf{x}|) |\mathbf{z}|^2 |\nabla \mathbf{x}|^2 + \psi(|\mathbf{y}|) |\mathbf{z}|^2 |\nabla \mathbf{y}|^2 \\
&\quad - \frac{1}{2} |\mathbf{z}|^2 |\phi'(\mathbf{x}^2)(\mathbf{x} \cdot \nabla \mathbf{x}) + \phi'(\mathbf{y}^2)(\mathbf{y} \cdot \nabla \mathbf{y})|^2 \\
&\quad + 2|\mathbf{z}|^2 \left\{ \phi''(\mathbf{x}^2)(\mathbf{x} \cdot \nabla \mathbf{x})^2 + \phi''(\mathbf{y}^2)(\mathbf{y} \cdot \nabla \mathbf{y})^2 \right\}.
\end{aligned}$$

Consequently, we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{L}F \geq & \psi(|\mathbf{x}|)|\mathbf{z}|^2|\nabla\mathbf{x}|^2 + \psi(|\mathbf{y}|)|\mathbf{z}|^2|\nabla\mathbf{y}|^2 \\ & + |\mathbf{z}|^2 \left\{ (2\phi''(\mathbf{x}^2) - \phi'(\mathbf{x}^2)^2)(\mathbf{x} \cdot \nabla\mathbf{x})^2 + (2\phi''(\mathbf{y}^2) - \phi'(\mathbf{y}^2)^2)(\mathbf{y} \cdot \nabla\mathbf{y})^2 \right\} \end{aligned} \quad (13)$$

with the auxiliary function

$$\psi(t) := -(h_0^2 + h_1) + \phi'(t^2)(1 - h_0 t), \quad t \in [0, M). \quad (14)$$

In formula (13) we additionally required $\phi'(t) \geq 0$ for $t \in [0, M^2)$; and we determine a function $\phi(t) : [0, M^2) \rightarrow \mathbb{R} \in C^2$ such that

$$\phi''(t) \geq \frac{1}{2}\phi'(t)^2 \quad \text{in } [0, M^2)$$

holds true. This is obviously realized by the function

$$\phi(t) = -2 \log(M^2 - t), \quad t \in [0, M^2),$$

with $\phi'(t) = 2(M^2 - t)^{-1}$, $\phi''(t) = 2(M^2 - t)^{-2} = \frac{1}{2}\phi'(t)^2$ for $t \in [0, M^2)$. Inserting this function ϕ and the corresponding function ψ into (13) we infer that

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{L}F \geq & \psi(|\mathbf{x}|)|\mathbf{z}|^2|\nabla\mathbf{x}|^2 + \psi(|\mathbf{y}|)|\mathbf{z}|^2|\nabla\mathbf{y}|^2 \quad \text{in } B, \\ \text{if } & |\mathbf{x}| < M, |\mathbf{y}| < M \quad \text{in } \overline{B} \end{aligned} \quad (15)$$

is correct. For all $t \in [0, M)$ we now have the estimate

$$\begin{aligned} \psi(t) &= -(h_0^2 + h_1) + 2 \frac{1 - h_0 t}{M^2 - t^2} \\ &= \frac{h_0^2 + h_1}{M^2 - t^2} \left\{ -(M^2 - t^2) + 2 \frac{1 - h_0 t}{h_0^2 + h_1} \right\} \\ &= \frac{h_0^2 + h_1}{M^2 - t^2} \left\{ t^2 - 2 \frac{h_0}{h_0^2 + h_1} t + \left(\frac{h_0}{h_0^2 + h_1} \right)^2 \right. \\ &\quad \left. - \frac{h_0^2}{(h_0^2 + h_1)^2} + \frac{2}{h_0^2 + h_1} - M^2 \right\} \\ &\geq \frac{h_0^2 + h_1}{M^2 - t^2} \left\{ \frac{2(h_0^2 + h_1) - h_0^2}{(h_0^2 + h_1)^2} - M^2 \right\} = 0, \end{aligned}$$

by choosing

$$M = \frac{\sqrt{h_0^2 + 2h_1}}{h_0^2 + h_1}. \quad (16)$$

We therefore obtain the following

Theorem 1. (Jäger's maximum principle)

The function $H = H(w, \mathbf{x}) \in C^0(\overline{B} \times \mathbb{R}^3)$ is subject to the inequalities (2), and by $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{x}(u, v)$, $\mathbf{y} = \mathbf{y}(u, v)$ we denote two solutions of the H -surface system (3). We now define

$$F(u, v) := \frac{|\mathbf{x}(u, v) - \mathbf{y}(u, v)|^2}{(M^2 - |\mathbf{x}(u, v)|^2)(M^2 - |\mathbf{y}(u, v)|^2)}, \quad (u, v) \in \overline{B}. \quad (17)$$

Here, we assume $|\mathbf{x}(u, v)| < M$, $|\mathbf{y}(u, v)| < M$ for all $(u, v) \in \overline{B}$ with

$$M = \frac{\sqrt{h_0^2 + 2h_1}}{h_0^2 + h_1}.$$

Statement: Then the function F satisfies the linear elliptic differential inequality

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{L}F &:= \left\{ (M^2 - |\mathbf{x}|^2)(M^2 - |\mathbf{y}|^2)F_u \right\}_u + \left\{ (M^2 - |\mathbf{x}|^2)(M^2 - |\mathbf{y}|^2)F_v \right\}_v \\ &\geq 0 \quad \text{in } B. \end{aligned}$$

Theorem 2. (Geometric maximum principle of E. Heinz)

Let the function $\mathbf{x}(u, v) = (x_1(u, v), \dots, x_n(u, v)) : \overline{B} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n \in C^2(B) \cap C^0(\overline{B})$ denote a solution of the differential inequality

$$|\Delta \mathbf{x}(u, v)| \leq a |\nabla \mathbf{x}(u, v)|^2, \quad (u, v) \in B. \quad (18)$$

The smallness condition

$$|\mathbf{x}(u, v)| \leq M, \quad (u, v) \in B, \quad (19)$$

may be fulfilled, and we have

$$aM \leq 1 \quad \text{for the constants } a \in [0, +\infty), \quad M \in (0, +\infty). \quad (20)$$

Statement: Then we infer

$$\sup_{(u,v) \in B} |\mathbf{x}(u, v)| \leq \sup_{(u,v) \in \partial B} |\mathbf{x}(u, v)|.$$

Proof: The auxiliary function $f(u, v) := |\mathbf{x}(u, v)|^2$, $(u, v) \in \overline{B}$, satisfies the differential inequality

$$\begin{aligned} \Delta f(u, v) &= 2 \left(|\nabla \mathbf{x}(u, v)|^2 + \mathbf{x}(u, v) \cdot \Delta \mathbf{x}(u, v) \right) \\ &\geq 2 \left(|\nabla \mathbf{x}(u, v)|^2 - |\mathbf{x}(u, v)| |\Delta \mathbf{x}(u, v)| \right) \\ &\geq 2 \left(|\nabla \mathbf{x}(u, v)|^2 - a |\mathbf{x}(u, v)| |\nabla \mathbf{x}(u, v)|^2 \right) \\ &\geq 2 |\nabla \mathbf{x}(u, v)|^2 (1 - aM) \geq 0 \quad \text{in } B. \end{aligned}$$

The maximum principle for subharmonic functions yields the statement above.
q.e.d.

Remarks:

1. If $|\mathbf{x}(u, v)| \not\equiv M$ on B is valid, we deduce $|\mathbf{x}(u, v)| < M$ for all $(u, v) \in B$.
2. Theorem 2 holds true especially for solutions of the H -surface system (3) with $a = h_0$.

Theorem 3. (Jäger's estimate)

The function $H = H(w, \mathbf{x})$ satisfies (1) and (2), and we set

$$M := \frac{\sqrt{h_0^2 + 2h_1}}{h_0^2 + h_1}.$$

Furthermore, the symbols $\mathbf{x}$ and $\mathbf{y}$ denote two solutions of the H -surface system (3) such that

$$|\mathbf{x}(u, v)| \leq M, \quad |\mathbf{y}(u, v)| \leq M \quad \text{for all } (u, v) \in \overline{B}. \quad (21)$$

Additionally, we require $\|\mathbf{x}\|_{C^0(\partial B)} := \sup_{w \in \partial B} |\mathbf{x}(w)| < M$ and $\|\mathbf{y}\|_{C^0(\partial B)} < M$.

Statement: Then we have the inequality

$$\frac{|\mathbf{x}(w) - \mathbf{y}(w)|^2}{(M^2 - |\mathbf{x}(w)|^2)(M^2 - |\mathbf{y}(w)|^2)} \leq \frac{\|\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{y}\|_{C^0(\partial B)}^2}{(M^2 - \|\mathbf{x}\|_{C^0(\partial B)}^2)(M^2 - \|\mathbf{y}\|_{C^0(\partial B)}^2)} \quad (22)$$

for all $w \in \overline{B}$.

Proof: We shall apply the geometric maximum principle of E. Heinz to the functions $\mathbf{x}$ and $\mathbf{y}$ with $a = h_0$. In this context we note that $aM \leq 1$ is valid if and only if

$$\frac{h_0^2(h_0^2 + 2h_1)}{(h_0^2 + h_1)^2} \leq 1$$

or equivalently $h_0^4 + 2h_0^2h_1 \leq h_0^4 + 2h_0^2h_1 + h_1^2$ is correct - and the latter inequality is evidently fulfilled. Therefore, Theorem 2 yields

$$\|\mathbf{x}\|_{C^0(\overline{B})} \leq \|\mathbf{x}\|_{C^0(\partial B)} < M \quad \text{and} \quad \|\mathbf{y}\|_{C^0(\overline{B})} \leq \|\mathbf{y}\|_{C^0(\partial B)} < M.$$

We apply E. Hopf's maximum principle to the auxiliary function $F(u, v)$ from Theorem 1 and obtain (22).
q.e.d.

Corollary: In addition to the assumptions of Theorem 3 let the inequalities

$$\|\mathbf{x}\|_{C^0(\partial B)} \leq M' < M \quad \text{and} \quad \|\mathbf{y}\|_{C^0(\partial B)} \leq M' < M$$

be satisfied. Then we have a constant $k = k(M, M') > 0$, such that

$$\|\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{y}\|_{C^0(\overline{B})} \leq k(M, M') \|\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{y}\|_{C^0(\partial B)}. \quad (23)$$

Remark: In the original paper of

W. Jäger: *Ein Maximumprinzip für ein System nichtlinearer Differentialgleichungen*. Nachr. Akad. Wiss. Göttingen, II. Math. Phys. Kl. (1976), 157-164

a maximum principle is derived even for systems of the form

$$\Delta \mathbf{x}(u, v) = \mathbf{F}(u, v, \mathbf{x}(u, v), \nabla \mathbf{x}(u, v)), \quad (u, v) \in B, \quad (24)$$

under structural conditions for the right-hand side. Specialized to the H -surface system, we obtain a quantitatively weaker statement.

§2 Gradient estimates for nonlinear elliptic systems

We take a domain $\Omega \subset \mathbb{R}^2$ and consider solutions

$$\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{x}(u, v) = (x_1(u, v), \dots, x_n(u, v)) \in C^2(\Omega, \mathbb{R}^n) \cap C^0(\overline{\Omega}, \mathbb{R}^n) \quad (1)$$

of the *differential inequality*

$$|\Delta \mathbf{x}(u, v)| \leq a |\nabla \mathbf{x}(u, v)|^2 + b \quad \text{for all } (u, v) \in \Omega \quad (2)$$

with the constants $a, b \in [0, +\infty)$. We require the *smallness condition*

$$|\mathbf{x}(u, v)| \leq M \quad \text{for all } (u, v) \in \overline{\Omega} \quad (3)$$

for the solution of (1), (2) with the constant $M \in (0, +\infty)$.

Remark: The H -surface system, linear systems as well as the Poisson equation are covered by the differential inequality (2).

Now we shall estimate the quantity $|\nabla \mathbf{x}(u, v)|$ from above, in the interior of Ω and on the boundary - with respect to adequate boundary conditions.

Proposition 1. *Let $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{x}(u, v)$ denote a solution of (1)-(3). Then the function $f(u, v) := |\mathbf{x}(u, v)|^2$ in Ω satisfies the differential inequality*

$$\Delta f(u, v) \geq 2(1 - aM) |\nabla \mathbf{x}(u, v)|^2 - 2bM, \quad (u, v) \in \Omega. \quad (4)$$

Proof: At first, we have $\Delta f(u, v) = 2(|\nabla \mathbf{x}(u, v)|^2 + \mathbf{x} \cdot \Delta \mathbf{x}(u, v))$ in Ω . Furthermore, the relation (2) yields the inequality

$$|\mathbf{x} \cdot \Delta \mathbf{x}(u, v)| \leq aM |\nabla \mathbf{x}(u, v)|^2 + bM \quad \text{in } \Omega, \quad ,$$

and we infer (4).

q.e.d.

Proposition 2. (Inner energy estimate)

Let the condition $aM < 1$ be satisfied and $\vartheta \in (0, 1)$ be chosen. Furthermore, the disc $B_R(w_0) := \{w \in \mathbb{C} : |w - w_0| < R\}$ with the center $w_0 \in \Omega$ and the radius $R > 0$ fulfills the inclusion $B_R(w_0) \subset \Omega$. Then all solutions of (1)-(3) satisfy the inequality

$$\begin{aligned} & \iint_{B_{\vartheta R}(w_0)} |\nabla \mathbf{x}(u, v)|^2 du dv \\ & \leq \frac{1}{-\log \vartheta} \left\{ \frac{2\pi M}{1 - aM} \sup_{w \in \partial B_R(w_0)} |\mathbf{x}(w) - \mathbf{x}(w_0)| + \frac{\pi b M R^2}{2(1 - aM)} \right\}. \end{aligned} \quad (5)$$

Proof: According to Theorem 3 from Chapter V, §2 arbitrary functions $\phi \in C^2(\Omega) \cap C^0(\overline{\Omega})$ satisfy the identity

$$\phi(w_0) = \frac{1}{2\pi R} \int_{\partial B_R(w_0)} \phi(w) d\sigma(w) - \frac{1}{2\pi} \iint_{B_R(w_0)} \left(\log \frac{R}{|w - w_0|} \right) \Delta \phi(w) du dv. \quad (6)$$

Inserting $\phi(w) := |w - w_0|^2 = (u - u_0)^2 + (v - v_0)^2$, $w \in \mathbb{R}^2$ we obtain

$$0 = R^2 - \frac{1}{2\pi} \iint_{B_R(w_0)} \left(\log \frac{R}{|w - w_0|} \right) 4 du dv$$

and consequently

$$\iint_{B_R(w_0)} \log \frac{R}{|w - w_0|} du dv = \frac{\pi R^2}{2}. \quad (7)$$

Inserting $\phi = f(u, v) = |\mathbf{x}(u, v)|^2$ into (6), Proposition 1 yields

$$\begin{aligned} & \frac{1 - aM}{\pi} \iint_{B_R(w_0)} \left(\log \frac{R}{|w - w_0|} \right) |\nabla \mathbf{x}(u, v)|^2 du dv - \frac{b M R^2}{2} \\ & \leq \frac{1}{2\pi} \iint_{B_R(w_0)} \left(\log \frac{R}{|w - w_0|} \right) \Delta f(u, v) du dv \\ & = \frac{1}{2\pi R} \int_{\partial B_R(w_0)} \left(f(w) - f(w_0) \right) d\sigma(w) \\ & \leq \frac{1}{2\pi R} \int_{\partial B_R(w_0)} |\mathbf{x}(w) - \mathbf{x}(w_0)| |\mathbf{x}(w) + \mathbf{x}(w_0)| d\sigma(w) \\ & \leq 2M \sup_{w \in \partial B_R(w_0)} |\mathbf{x}(w) - \mathbf{x}(w_0)|. \end{aligned}$$

This implies the estimate

$$\begin{aligned} & \iint_{B_R(w_0)} \left(\log \frac{R}{|w - w_0|} \right) |\nabla \mathbf{x}(u, v)|^2 du dv \\ & \leq \frac{2\pi M}{1 - aM} \sup_{w \in \partial B_R(w_0)} |\mathbf{x}(w) - \mathbf{x}(w_0)| + \frac{\pi b M R^2}{2(1 - aM)}. \end{aligned} \quad (8)$$

The inequality now yields (5).

q.e.d.

Proposition 3. (Boundary-energy-estimate)

We have the condition $aM < 1$ and choose $\vartheta \in (0, 1)$. The disc $B_R(w_0)$ with the center $w_0 \in \mathbb{R}$ and the radius $R > 0$ satisfies

$$B_R(w_0) \cap \Omega = \left\{ w \in B_R(w_0) : \operatorname{Im} w > 0 \right\} =: H_R(w_0). \quad (9)$$

We set $\partial H_R(w_0) = C_R(w_0) \cup I_R(w_0)$ with

$$\begin{aligned} C_R(w_0) &:= \left\{ w \in \partial B_R(w_0) : \operatorname{Im} w \geq 0 \right\}, \\ I_R(w_0) &:= [w_0 - R, w_0 + R]. \end{aligned}$$

For all solutions $\mathbf{x} \in C^1(\overline{\Omega})$ of (1)-(3) satisfying the boundary condition

$$\mathbf{x}(u, 0) = 0 \quad \text{for all } u \in I_R(w_0)$$

we have the following estimate

$$\begin{aligned} & \iint_{H_{\vartheta R}(w_0)} |\nabla \mathbf{x}(u, v)|^2 du dv \\ & \leq \frac{1}{-\log \vartheta} \left\{ \frac{\pi M}{1 - aM} \sup_{w \in C_R(w_0)} |\mathbf{x}(w) - \mathbf{x}(w_0)| + \frac{\pi b M R^2}{4(1 - aM)} \right\}. \end{aligned} \quad (10)$$

Proof:

1. With the aid of a reflection we continue $\mathbf{x}$ as follows:

$$\hat{\mathbf{x}}(u, v) := \begin{cases} \mathbf{x}(u, v), & w = u + iv \in \overline{H_R(w_0)} \\ \mathbf{x}(u, -v), & w \in \overline{B_R(w_0)} \setminus \overline{H_R(w_0)} \end{cases}. \quad (11)$$

The function $\hat{\mathbf{x}}(u, v)$ is continuous in $\overline{B_R(w_0)}$ and satisfies the differential inequality (2) in $B_R(w_0) \setminus I_R(w_0)$. However, the function $\mathbf{x}_v(u, v)$ may possess jump discontinuities on the interval $I_R(w_0)$. We consider the function

$$\phi(u, v) := |\hat{\mathbf{x}}(u, v)|^2, \quad (u, v) \in \overline{B_R(w_0)}, \quad (12)$$

which is subject to the differential inequality (4) in $B_R(w_0) \setminus I_R(w_0)$. Furthermore, we deduce

$$\phi \in C^1(\overline{B_R(w_0)}) \quad \text{and} \quad \phi(u, 0) = 0 = \phi_v(u, 0) \quad \text{in } I_R(w_0). \quad (13)$$

We now show that formula (6) is valid for the function $\phi = |\hat{\mathbf{x}}|^2$ as well. Continuing as in the proof of Proposition 2, we then obtain the relation (5) for the reflected function $\hat{\mathbf{x}}(w)$. The estimate (10) finally follows by means of symmetry arguments.

2. Choosing the parameter $0 < \varepsilon < \varepsilon_0$ sufficiently small, we define the sets

$$B_\varepsilon^\pm := \left\{ w \in \mathbb{C} : 0 < \varepsilon < |w - w_0| < R, \pm \operatorname{Im} w > 0 \right\}$$

and set $r := |w - w_0| \in [0, R]$. At the point w_0 we utilize Green's function

$$\begin{aligned} \psi(w) &= \psi(u, v) = \frac{1}{2\pi} \log \frac{R}{|w - w_0|} \\ &= \frac{1}{2\pi} (\log R - \log r), \quad w \in \overline{B_R(w_0)} \setminus \{w_0\}. \end{aligned} \quad (14)$$

With the aid of Green's formula we calculate

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{1}{2\pi} \iint_{B_\varepsilon^\pm} \left(\log \frac{R}{|w - w_0|} \right) \Delta \phi(u, v) \, du \, dv &= \iint_{B_\varepsilon^\pm} (\psi \Delta \phi - \phi \Delta \psi) \, du \, dv \\ &= \int_{\partial B_\varepsilon^\pm} \left(\psi \frac{\partial \phi}{\partial \nu} - \phi \frac{\partial \psi}{\partial \nu} \right) d\sigma \end{aligned} \quad (15)$$

for $0 < \varepsilon < \varepsilon_0$. From the boundary conditions (13) and (14) for ϕ and ψ we infer the following identity from (15) by addition

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{1}{2\pi} \iint_{B_\varepsilon^+ \cup B_\varepsilon^-} \left(\log \frac{R}{|w - w_0|} \right) \Delta \phi(u, v) \, du \, dv &= \frac{1}{2\pi R} \int_{\partial B_R(w_0)} \phi(w) \, d\sigma(w) \\ &\quad - \frac{1}{2\pi \varepsilon} \int_{|w - w_0| = \varepsilon} \phi(w) \, d\sigma(w) + \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{|w - w_0| = \varepsilon} \left(\log \frac{R}{\varepsilon} \right) \frac{\partial \phi(w)}{\partial \nu} d\sigma(w) \end{aligned}$$

with $0 < \varepsilon < \varepsilon_0$. On account of $\phi \in C^1(\overline{B_R(w_0)})$ the transition to the limit $\varepsilon \rightarrow 0+$ yields

$$\begin{aligned} \phi(w_0) &= \frac{1}{2\pi R} \int_{\partial B_R(w_0)} \phi(w) \, d\sigma(w) \\ &\quad - \frac{1}{2\pi} \iint_{B_R(w_0)} \left(\log \frac{R}{|w - w_0|} \right) \Delta \phi(u, v) \, du \, dv. \end{aligned}$$

Following part 1 of the proof, we now arrive at the statement above.

q.e.d.

With the aid of Proposition 2 and 3, we now can estimate the oscillation of $\mathbf{x}$ via the Courant-Lebesgue lemma on selected circular lines. Using the Wirtinger operators

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial w} = \frac{1}{2} \left(\frac{\partial}{\partial u} - i \frac{\partial}{\partial v} \right) \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{\partial}{\partial \bar{w}} = \frac{1}{2} \left(\frac{\partial}{\partial u} + i \frac{\partial}{\partial v} \right)$$

we consider the complex derivative function

$$\mathbf{y}(w) := \mathbf{x}_w(w), \quad w \in \Omega. \quad (16)$$

The differential inequality (2) can be rewritten into the form

$$4|\mathbf{x}_{w\bar{w}}(w)| \leq 4a|\mathbf{x}_w(w)|^2 + b$$

or equivalently

$$|\mathbf{y}_{\bar{w}}(w)| \leq a|\mathbf{y}(w)|^2 + \frac{1}{4}b \quad \text{for all } w \in \Omega. \quad (17)$$

By the oscillation inequalities we now shall estimate the Cauchy integral of the complex derivative function $\mathbf{y}$ for solutions of (2).

Proposition 4. *Given the assumptions of Proposition 2, each number $\vartheta \in (0, 1)$ admits a number $\lambda = \lambda(\vartheta) \in [\frac{1}{4}, \frac{1}{2}]$ such that the derivative function $\mathbf{y}(w) = \mathbf{x}_w(w)$ for a solution $\mathbf{x}(w)$ of (1)-(3) satisfies the following inequality:*

$$\begin{aligned} \left| \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{\partial B_{\lambda\vartheta R}(w_0)} \frac{\mathbf{y}(w)}{w - w_0} dw \right| &\leq \frac{8\sqrt{M^2 + \frac{1}{8}bMR^2}}{\sqrt{\log 4}\sqrt{1 - aM}} \frac{1}{\vartheta\sqrt{-\log \vartheta}} \frac{1}{R} \\ &\quad + \frac{a}{2}\vartheta R \sup_{w \in B_{\vartheta R}(w_0)} |\mathbf{y}(w)|^2 + \frac{b}{8}\vartheta R. \end{aligned} \quad (18)$$

Proof:

1. Proposition 2 yields the following estimate for arbitrary numbers $\vartheta \in (0, 1)$:

$$\sqrt{\iint_{B_{\vartheta R}(w_0)} |\nabla \mathbf{x}(u, v)|^2 du dv} \leq \frac{\sqrt{\pi}}{\sqrt{-\log \vartheta}} \frac{2\sqrt{M^2 + \frac{1}{8}bMR^2}}{\sqrt{1 - aM}}. \quad (19)$$

Due to the Courant-Lebesgue oscillation lemma (compare Theorem 3 in Chapter I, § 5) we have a number $\lambda = \lambda(\vartheta) \in [\frac{1}{4}, \frac{1}{2}]$ satisfying

$$\int_{\partial B_{\lambda\vartheta R}(w_0)} |d\mathbf{x}(w)| \leq \frac{4\pi}{\sqrt{\log 4}} \frac{\sqrt{M^2 + \frac{1}{8}bMR^2}}{\sqrt{1 - aM}} \frac{1}{\sqrt{-\log \vartheta}}. \quad (20)$$

2. We set $B := B_{\lambda\vartheta R}(w_0)$ and $\varrho := \lambda\vartheta R$. With the aid of the Gaussian integral theorem in the complex form (see Chapter IV, §4) we calculate

$$\begin{aligned}
 & \int_{\partial B} \frac{\mathbf{y}(w)}{w - w_0} dw - \int_{\partial B} \frac{d\mathbf{x}(w)}{w - w_0} \\
 &= \int_{\partial B} \frac{\mathbf{x}_w(w)}{w - w_0} dw - \int_{\partial B} \frac{\mathbf{x}_w(w) dw + \mathbf{x}_{\overline{w}}(w) d\overline{w}}{w - w_0} \\
 &= - \int_{\partial B} \frac{\mathbf{x}_{\overline{w}}(w) d\overline{w}}{w - w_0} = -\frac{1}{\varrho} \left(\int_{\partial B} \frac{\overline{\mathbf{x}_w(w) dw}}{\frac{w - w_0}{\varrho}} \right) \\
 &= -\frac{1}{\varrho} \left(\int_{\partial B} \frac{\overline{\mathbf{x}_w(w) dw}}{\frac{\varrho}{w - w_0}} \right) = -\frac{1}{\varrho^2} \left(\int_{\partial B} \overline{(w - w_0) \mathbf{x}_w dw} \right) \\
 &= -\frac{1}{\varrho^2} \left(2i \iint_B \frac{\partial}{\partial \overline{w}} \left\{ (w - w_0) \mathbf{x}_w(w) \right\} du dv \right) \\
 &= \frac{2i}{\varrho^2} \iint_B \overline{(w - w_0) \mathbf{x}_{w\overline{w}}(w)} du dv \\
 &= \frac{2i}{\varrho^2} \iint_B \overline{(w - w_0) \mathbf{y}_{\overline{w}}(w)} du dv.
 \end{aligned}$$

3. We now estimate as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}
 \left| \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{\partial B} \frac{\mathbf{y}(w)}{w - w_0} dw \right| &\leq \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{\partial B} \frac{|d\mathbf{x}(w)|}{|w - w_0|} + \frac{1}{\pi\varrho^2} \iint_B |w - w_0| |\mathbf{y}_{\overline{w}}(w)| du dv \\
 &\leq \frac{1}{2\pi\varrho} \int_{\partial B} |d\mathbf{x}(w)| + \varrho \sup_{w \in B} |\mathbf{y}_{\overline{w}}(w)| \\
 &\leq \frac{2}{\pi\vartheta R} \frac{4\pi}{\sqrt{\log 4}} \frac{\sqrt{M^2 + \frac{b}{8}MR^2}}{\sqrt{1 - aM}} \frac{1}{\sqrt{-\log \vartheta}} \\
 &\quad + \frac{\vartheta R}{2} \left(a \sup_{w \in B} |\mathbf{y}(w)|^2 + \frac{b}{4} \right) \\
 &\leq \frac{8}{\vartheta R} \frac{\sqrt{M^2 + \frac{b}{8}MR^2}}{\sqrt{\log 4} \sqrt{1 - aM}} \frac{1}{\sqrt{-\log \vartheta}} \\
 &\quad + \frac{a}{2} \vartheta R \sup_{w \in B_{\vartheta R}(w_0)} |\mathbf{y}(w)|^2 + \frac{b}{8} \vartheta R.
 \end{aligned}$$

q.e.d.

Proposition 5. *With the assumptions of Proposition 3 we consider the reflected gradient function*

$$\mathbf{z}(w) := \begin{cases} i\mathbf{x}_w(w), & w \in \overline{H_R(w_0)} \\ -i\mathbf{x}_{\overline{w}}(\overline{w}), & w \in B_R(w_0) \setminus \overline{H_R(w_0)} \end{cases}. \quad (21)$$

This function belongs to the class $C^0(\overline{B_R(w_0)}) \cap C^1(B_R(w_0) \setminus I_R(w_0))$ and satisfies the differential inequality

$$|\mathbf{z}_{\overline{w}}(w)| \leq a|\mathbf{z}(w)|^2 + \frac{b}{4} \quad \text{for all } w \in B_R(w_0) \setminus I_R(w_0). \quad (22)$$

Furthermore, there exists a number $\lambda = \lambda(\vartheta) \in [\frac{1}{4}, \frac{1}{2}]$ for each $\vartheta \in (0, 1)$, such that

$$\begin{aligned} \left| \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{\partial B_{\lambda\vartheta R}(w_0)} \frac{\mathbf{z}(w)}{w - w_0} dw \right| &\leq \frac{8\sqrt{M^2 + \frac{1}{8}bMR^2}}{\sqrt{\log 4}\sqrt{1 - aM}} \frac{1}{\vartheta\sqrt{-\log \vartheta}} \frac{1}{R} \\ &\quad + \frac{a}{2}\vartheta R \sup_{w \in B_{\vartheta R}(w_0)} |\mathbf{z}(w)|^2 + \frac{b}{8}\vartheta R. \end{aligned} \quad (23)$$

Proof:

1. Due to the relation (11) we reflect $\mathbf{x}(u, v)$ and obtain the function $\hat{\mathbf{x}}(u, v)$ satisfying

$$|\Delta \hat{\mathbf{x}}(u, v)| \leq a|\nabla \hat{\mathbf{x}}(u, v)|^2 + b \quad \text{for all } (u, v) \in B_R(w_0) \setminus I_R(w_0). \quad (24)$$

We observe $\mathbf{x}_u(u, 0) = 0 = \text{Im } \mathbf{z}(u, 0)$ in $I_R(w_0)$, and the function defined in (21) is continuous in $B_R(w_0)$. Furthermore, we have

$$\hat{\mathbf{x}}_w(w) = \begin{cases} \mathbf{x}_w(w) = -i\mathbf{z}(w), & w \in H_R(w_0) \\ \mathbf{x}_{\overline{w}}(\overline{w}) = i\mathbf{z}(w), & w \in B_R(w_0) \setminus \overline{H_R(w_0)} \end{cases}, \quad (25)$$

and (24) yields the inequality (22). In part 1 of the proof for Proposition 4 we replace $\mathbf{x}$ by the function $\hat{\mathbf{x}}$, and we deduce

$$\int_{\partial B_{\lambda\vartheta R}(w_0)} |d\hat{\mathbf{x}}(w)| \leq \frac{4\pi}{\sqrt{\log 4}} \frac{\sqrt{M^2 + \frac{b}{8}MR^2}}{\sqrt{1 - aM}} \frac{1}{\sqrt{-\log \vartheta}} \quad (26)$$

with a suitable $\lambda = \lambda(\vartheta) \in [\frac{1}{4}, \frac{1}{2}]$. The Courant-Lebesgue lemma is namely applicable to the function $\hat{\mathbf{x}}$, whose derivatives might possess jump discontinuities at the interval $I_R(w_0)$.

2. We now follow the arguments in part 2 of the proof for Proposition 4, and we additionally set

$$B^\pm := \left\{ w \in B_{\lambda\vartheta R}(w_0) : \pm \operatorname{Im} w > 0 \right\},$$

$$C^\pm := \left\{ w \in \partial B_{\lambda\vartheta R}(w_0) : \pm \operatorname{Im} w \geq 0 \right\}.$$

The calculation there yields

$$\int_{C^\pm} \frac{i\hat{\mathbf{x}}_w(w)}{w - w_0} dw - i \int_{C^\pm} \frac{d\hat{\mathbf{x}}(w)}{w - w_0} = \frac{1}{\varrho^2} \left(\overline{\int_{C^\pm} (w - w_0) i\hat{\mathbf{x}}_w(w) dw} \right). \quad (27)$$

We observe that the integrand $(w - w_0)i\hat{\mathbf{x}}_w(w)$, approaching the interval $I_R(w_0)$ from above or from below, is subject to a change of sign, and we infer

$$\begin{aligned} & \int_{C^+} \frac{i\hat{\mathbf{x}}_w(w)}{w - w_0} dw + \int_{C^-} \frac{-i\hat{\mathbf{x}}_w(w)}{w - w_0} dw - i \int_{C^+} \frac{d\hat{\mathbf{x}}(w)}{w - w_0} + i \int_{C^-} \frac{d\hat{\mathbf{x}}(w)}{w - w_0} \\ &= \frac{1}{\varrho^2} \left(\overline{\int_{\partial B^+} (w - w_0) i\hat{\mathbf{x}}_w(w) dw} \right) \\ & \quad + \frac{1}{\varrho^2} \left(\overline{\int_{\partial B^-} (w - w_0) (-i)\hat{\mathbf{x}}_w(w) dw} \right) \\ &= \frac{1}{\varrho^2} \left(\overline{2i \iint_{B^+} (w - w_0) i\hat{\mathbf{x}}_w \overline{w}(w) du dv} \right) \\ & \quad + \frac{1}{\varrho^2} \left(\overline{2i \iint_{B^-} (w - w_0) (-i)\hat{\mathbf{x}}_w \overline{w}(w) du dv} \right) \\ &= -\frac{2}{\varrho^2} \iint_{B^+} \overline{(w - w_0)} \hat{\mathbf{x}}_w \overline{w}(w) du dv \\ & \quad + \frac{2}{\varrho^2} \iint_{B^-} \overline{(w - w_0)} \hat{\mathbf{x}}_w \overline{w}(w) du dv. \end{aligned}$$

Taking (25) into account, we obtain the following estimate:

$$\begin{aligned} & \left| \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{\partial B_{\lambda\vartheta R}(w_0)} \frac{\mathbf{z}(w)}{w - w_0} dw \right| = \frac{1}{2\pi} \left| \int_{C^+} \frac{i\hat{\mathbf{x}}_w(w)}{w - w_0} dw + \int_{C^-} \frac{-i\hat{\mathbf{x}}_w(w)}{w - w_0} dw \right| \\ & \leq \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{\partial B} \frac{|d\hat{\mathbf{x}}(w)|}{|w - w_0|} + \frac{1}{\pi\varrho^2} \iint_B |w - w_0| |\mathbf{z}\overline{w}(w)| du dv. \end{aligned}$$

We now deduce the estimate (23) as in part 3 of the proof for Proposition 4. Therefore, we replace the function $\mathbf{y}$ by $\mathbf{z}$ and utilize besides (22) the

oscillation estimate (26).

q.e.d.

Remark: With adequate assumptions, Proposition 5 remains true for the discs with centers $w_0 \in \mathbb{C}$ and $\text{Im } w_0 > 0$ satisfying $B_R(w_0) \cap \Omega = \{w \in B_R(w_0) : \text{Im } w > 0\}$. The estimate of Dirichlet's integral in Proposition 3 remains correct - in a slightly modified form - also in this situation. We shall use the Propositions 3 and 5 in the next section, in order to derive a global $C^{1+\alpha}$ -estimate.

Theorem 1. (Gradient estimate of E. Heinz)

A solution $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{x}(u, v)$ of the problem (1)-(3) with $aM < 1$ is given on the bounded domain $\Omega \subset \mathbb{R}^2$. We define

$$\delta(w) := \text{dist}\{w, \partial\Omega\} = \inf_{\zeta \in \mathbb{C} \setminus \Omega} |\zeta - w|, \quad w \in \Omega \quad \text{and} \quad d := \sup_{w \in \Omega} \delta(w).$$

Then we have a constant $C = C(a, M, bd^2)$, such that the inequality

$$\delta(w)|\nabla \mathbf{x}(w)| \leq C(a, M, bd^2) \quad \text{for all } w \in \Omega \quad (28)$$

is satisfied.

Proof:

1. At first, we assume $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{x}(u, v) \in C^1(\overline{\Omega}, \mathbb{R}^n)$ and consider the continuous function

$$\phi(w) := \delta(w)|\mathbf{y}(w)|, \quad w \in \Omega \quad (29)$$

with $\mathbf{y}(w) = \mathbf{x}_w(w)$, $w \in \overline{\Omega}$. On account of the boundary condition $\phi|_{\partial\Omega} = 0$ this function attains its maximum at an interior point $w_0 \in \Omega$. Setting $R := \delta(w_0) > 0$ we obtain $B_R(w_0) \subset \Omega$. We apply the Proposition 4: For an arbitrary number $\vartheta \in (0, 1)$ we find a quantity $\lambda = \lambda(\vartheta) \in [\frac{1}{4}, \frac{1}{2}]$, such that

$$\begin{aligned} R \left| \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{\partial B_{\lambda\vartheta R}(w_0)} \frac{\mathbf{y}(w)}{w - w_0} dw \right| &\leq \frac{c_1(a, M, bd^2)}{\vartheta \sqrt{-\log \vartheta}} + \frac{bd^2}{8} \\ &\quad + \frac{a}{2} \vartheta R^2 \sup_{w \in B_{\vartheta R}(w_0)} |\mathbf{y}(w)|^2 \end{aligned} \quad (30)$$

holds true with the constant

$$c_1(a, M, bd^2) := \frac{8\sqrt{M^2 + \frac{1}{8}bMd^2}}{\sqrt{\log 4}\sqrt{1 - aM}}.$$

On the disc $B := B_{\lambda\vartheta R}(w_0)$ of radius $\varrho := \lambda\vartheta R \in (0, R)$ we infer the following integral representation from Theorem 1 in Chapter IV, § 5:

$$\mathbf{y}(w_0) = \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{\partial B} \frac{\mathbf{y}(w)}{w - w_0} dw - \frac{1}{\pi} \iint_B \frac{\mathbf{y}\overline{w}(w)}{w - w_0} du dv. \quad (31)$$

The first integral on the right-hand side of (31) has been estimated in (30). We introduce polar coordinates and observe (17); then we obtain the following inequality for the second integral in (31):

$$\begin{aligned} \left| \frac{R}{\pi} \iint_B \frac{\mathbf{y}\overline{w}(w)}{w - w_0} du dv \right| &\leq \frac{R}{\pi} \sup_{w \in B} |\mathbf{y}\overline{w}(w)| \iint_B \frac{1}{|w - w_0|} du dv \\ &\leq \frac{R}{\pi} \left(a \sup_{w \in B_{\vartheta R}(w_0)} |\mathbf{y}(w)|^2 + \frac{b}{4} \right) 2\pi \frac{1}{2} \vartheta R \\ &\leq a\vartheta R^2 \sup_{w \in B_{\vartheta R}(w_0)} |\mathbf{y}(w)|^2 + \frac{1}{4} b d^2. \end{aligned} \quad (32)$$

2. From (29)-(32) we infer

$$\begin{aligned} \phi(w_0) &= \delta(w_0) |\mathbf{y}(w_0)| = R |\mathbf{y}(w_0)| \\ &\leq \frac{c_1(a, M, bd^2)}{\vartheta \sqrt{-\log \vartheta}} + \frac{3}{8} bd^2 + \frac{3}{2} a\vartheta R^2 \sup_{w \in B_{\vartheta R}(w_0)} |\mathbf{y}(w)|^2 \\ &\leq \frac{c_1(a, M, bd^2)}{\vartheta \sqrt{-\log \vartheta}} + \frac{3}{8} bd^2 + \frac{3}{2} a\vartheta R^2 \sup_{w \in B_{\vartheta R}(w_0)} \left\{ \frac{\delta(w)}{R - \vartheta R} |\mathbf{y}(w)| \right\}^2 \\ &\leq \frac{c_1(a, M, bd^2)}{\vartheta \sqrt{-\log \vartheta}} + \frac{3}{8} bd^2 + \frac{3a}{2} \frac{\vartheta}{(1 - \vartheta)^2} \sup_{w \in B_{\vartheta R}(w_0)} \phi(w)^2. \end{aligned}$$

Consequently, we have the inequality

$$\phi(w_0) \leq \frac{c_1(a, M, bd^2)}{\vartheta \sqrt{-\log \vartheta}} + \frac{3}{8} bd^2 + \frac{3a}{2} \frac{\vartheta}{(1 - \vartheta)^2} \phi(w_0)^2 \quad (33)$$

for all $\vartheta \in (0, 1)$.

3. Taking $\vartheta \in (0, 1)$ we define

$$\alpha(\vartheta) := \frac{3a}{2} \frac{\vartheta}{(1 - \vartheta)^2} > 0 \quad \text{with} \quad \lim_{\vartheta \rightarrow 0+} \alpha(\vartheta) = 0$$

and

$$\beta(\vartheta) := \frac{c_1(a, M, bd^2)}{\vartheta \sqrt{-\log \vartheta}} + \frac{3}{8} bd^2 > 0 \quad \text{with} \quad \lim_{\vartheta \rightarrow 0+} \beta(\vartheta) = +\infty.$$

Then we deduce

$$\alpha(\vartheta)\beta(\vartheta) = \frac{3ac_1(a, M, bd^2)}{2(1 - \vartheta)^2 \sqrt{-\log \vartheta}} + \frac{9abd^2\vartheta}{16(1 - \vartheta)^2} \rightarrow 0, \quad \vartheta \rightarrow 0+.$$

Setting $t := \phi(w_0)$ we obtain the inequality

$$\alpha(\vartheta)t^2 - t + \beta(\vartheta) \geq 0 \quad \text{for all } \vartheta \in (0, 1). \quad (34)$$

We note the equivalent statement

$$\left(t - \frac{1}{2\alpha(\vartheta)}\right)^2 \geq \frac{1 - 4\alpha(\vartheta)\beta(\vartheta)}{4\alpha(\vartheta)^2} \quad \text{for all } \vartheta \in (0, 1). \quad (35)$$

There now exists a quantity $\vartheta_0 = \vartheta_0(a, M, bd^2) \in (0, 1)$ satisfying

$$0 < 4\alpha(\vartheta)\beta(\vartheta) \leq \frac{3}{4} \quad \text{for all } \vartheta \in (0, \vartheta_0], \quad (36)$$

which implies

$$\sqrt{1 - 4\alpha(\vartheta)\beta(\vartheta)} \geq \frac{1}{2} \quad \text{for all } \vartheta \in (0, \vartheta_0]. \quad (37)$$

When we introduce the functions

$$\chi^\pm(\vartheta) := \frac{1 \pm \sqrt{1 - 4\alpha(\vartheta)\beta(\vartheta)}}{2\alpha(\vartheta)}, \quad \vartheta \in (0, \vartheta_0],$$

the relation (35) yields the subsequent alternative for each number $\vartheta \in (0, \vartheta_0]$, namely

$$t \leq \chi^-(\vartheta) \quad \text{or} \quad t \geq \chi^+(\vartheta). \quad (38)$$

Since the functions $\chi^-(\vartheta) < \chi^+(\vartheta)$, $\vartheta \in (0, \vartheta_0]$ depend continuously on the parameter ϑ in the interval $(0, \vartheta_0]$ and the asymptotic behavior $\lim_{\vartheta \rightarrow 0+} \chi^+(\vartheta) = +\infty$ is correct, we infer

$$t \leq \chi^-(\vartheta) \quad \text{for all } \vartheta \in (0, \vartheta_0].$$

This implies

$$t \leq \chi^-(\vartheta_0) = \chi^-(\vartheta_0(a, M, bd^2)) =: \frac{1}{2}C(a, M, bd^2) \quad (39)$$

and consequently

$$\begin{aligned} \sup_{w \in \Omega} \delta(w) |\nabla \mathbf{x}(w)| &= 2 \sup_{w \in \Omega} \delta(w) |\mathbf{y}(w)| = 2 \sup_{w \in \Omega} \phi(w) \\ &= 2\phi(w_0) = 2t \leq C(a, M, bd^2). \end{aligned}$$

We thus obtain the desired estimate (28) in the case $\mathbf{x} \in C^1(\overline{\Omega}, \mathbb{R}^n)$.

4. Now we assume only the regularity $\mathbf{x} \in C^2(\Omega) \cap C^0(\overline{\Omega})$. Then we apply the estimate (28) on the set

$$\Omega_\varepsilon := \left\{ w \in \Omega : \text{dist}\{w, \partial\Omega\} > \varepsilon \right\} \quad \text{for } 0 < \varepsilon < \varepsilon_0$$

at first, and we obtain

$$(\delta(w) - \varepsilon)|\nabla \mathbf{x}(w)| \leq C(a, M, bd^2) \quad \text{for all } w \in \Omega_\varepsilon \quad (40)$$

with an arbitrary parameter $0 < \varepsilon < \varepsilon_0$. The transition to the limit $\varepsilon \rightarrow 0+$ yields

$$\delta(w)|\nabla \mathbf{x}(w)| \leq C(a, M, bd^2) \quad \text{for all } w \in \Omega. \quad \text{q.e.d.}$$

We consider the compact set $K \subset \mathbb{C}$ and introduce the linear space

$$C^{1+\alpha}(K, \mathbb{R}^n) := \left\{ \mathbf{x} \in C^1(K, \mathbb{R}^n) : \sup_{\substack{w_1, w_2 \in K \\ w_1 \neq w_2}} \frac{|\nabla \mathbf{x}(w_1) - \nabla \mathbf{x}(w_2)|}{|w_1 - w_2|^\alpha} < +\infty \right\},$$

where $\alpha \in (0, 1)$ has been chosen. When we endow this space with the $C^{1+\alpha}$ -Hölder-norm

$$\|\mathbf{x}\|_{C^{1+\alpha}(K)} := \sup_{w \in K} |\mathbf{x}(w)| + \sup_{w \in K} |\nabla \mathbf{x}(w)| + \sup_{\substack{w_1, w_2 \in K \\ w_1 \neq w_2}} \frac{|\nabla \mathbf{x}(w_1) - \nabla \mathbf{x}(w_2)|}{|w_1 - w_2|^\alpha}, \quad (41)$$

the set $C^{1+\alpha}(K, \mathbb{R}^n)$ becomes a Banach space. We easily infer the following result from Theorem 1 above, namely

Theorem 2. (Inner $C^{1+\alpha}$ -estimate)

Let a solution $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{x}(u, v)$ of (1)-(3) with $aM < 1$ be given on the bounded domain $\Omega \subset \mathbb{R}^2$. We choose an arbitrary number $\varepsilon > 0$ and consider the compact set

$$K_\varepsilon := \left\{ w \in \Omega : \text{dist}\{w, \partial\Omega\} \geq \varepsilon \right\},$$

and additionally we fix the exponent $\alpha \in (0, 1)$. Then we have a constant $C = C(a, M, b, d, \varepsilon, \alpha) \in (0, +\infty)$, such that

$$\|\mathbf{x}\|_{C^{1+\alpha}(K_\varepsilon)} \leq C(a, M, b, d, \varepsilon, \alpha). \quad (42)$$

Proof: At first, we infer the inequality

$$\sup_{w \in K_\varepsilon} |\mathbf{x}(w)| \leq M$$

from (3), and Theorem 1 yields the gradient estimate

$$|\nabla \mathbf{x}(w)| \leq \frac{2C(a, M, bd^2)}{\varepsilon} \quad \text{for all } w \in K_{\frac{\varepsilon}{2}}. \quad (43)$$

For all points $w_0 \in K_\varepsilon$ we have the representation

$$\mathbf{x}_w(w_*) = \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{\partial B_{\frac{\varepsilon}{2}}(w_0)} \frac{\mathbf{x}_w(w)}{w - w_*} dw - \frac{1}{\pi} \iint_{B_{\frac{\varepsilon}{2}}(w_0)} \frac{\mathbf{x}_{w\bar{w}}(w)}{w - w_*} du dv, \quad w_* \in B_{\frac{\varepsilon}{2}}(w_0) \quad (44)$$

according to Theorem 1 in Chapter IV, § 5. On account of (43) the first parameter integral satisfies a Lipschitz condition in the disc $B_{\frac{\varepsilon}{4}}(w_0)$, with a Lipschitz constant depending on a, M, bd^2, ε . Furthermore, the relation (43) implies

$$\sup_{w \in K_{\frac{\varepsilon}{2}}} |\mathbf{x}_{w\overline{w}}(w)| \leq C_1(a, M, b, d, \varepsilon) < +\infty \quad .$$

We apply Hadamard's estimate (compare Theorem 7 in Chapter IV, § 4) to the second parameter integral in $B_{\frac{\varepsilon}{4}}(w_0)$ and get a Hölder condition depending on $a, M, b, d, \varepsilon, \alpha$. Therefore, the relation (44) yields the inequality

$$\begin{aligned} |\mathbf{x}_w(w_1) - \mathbf{x}_w(w_2)| &\leq C_2(a, M, b, d, \varepsilon, \alpha) |w_1 - w_2|^\alpha \\ \text{for all } w_1, w_2 &\in K_{\frac{3}{4}\varepsilon} \subset \Omega. \end{aligned} \quad (45)$$

Finally, we obtain the estimate (42).

q.e.d.

§3 Global estimates for nonlinear systems

We continue our considerations from § 2 and quote these results by the additional symbol *. Let us define the unit disc $E := \{\zeta = \xi + i\eta : |\zeta| < 1\}$ and consider solutions of the problem

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{x} &= \mathbf{x}(\zeta) = (x_1(\xi, \eta), \dots, x_n(\xi, \eta)) \in C^2(E, \mathbb{R}^n) \cap C^1(\overline{E}, \mathbb{R}^n), \\ |\Delta \mathbf{x}(\xi, \eta)| &\leq a |\nabla \mathbf{x}(\xi, \eta)|^2 + b \quad \text{for all } (\xi, \eta) \in E, \\ |\mathbf{x}(\xi, \eta)| &\leq M \quad \text{for all } (\xi, \eta) \in E, \\ \mathbf{x}(\xi, \eta) &= 0 \quad \text{for all } (\xi, \eta) \in \partial E \end{aligned} \quad (1)$$

with the constants $a, b \in [0, +\infty)$ and $M \in (0, +\infty)$. We intend to estimate $|\nabla \mathbf{x}|$ in $\overline{E}$ from above and to establish an adequate a priori bound for $\|\mathbf{x}\|_{C^{1+\alpha}(\overline{E})}$. To this aim we map the unit disc E conformally onto the upper half-plane $\mathbb{C}^+ := \{w = u + iv : v > 0\}$ with the aid of the following Möbius transformation (compare Chapter IV, § 7, Example 1):

$$f(\zeta) = \frac{\zeta + i}{i\zeta + 1}, \quad \zeta \in E; \quad f : \partial E \setminus \{i\} \leftrightarrow \mathbb{R}. \quad (2)$$

We now define the ray

$$S := \left\{ \zeta = -it \mid 0 \leq t \leq 1 \right\} \subset \overline{E}$$

and the interval

$$J := \left\{ w = iv \mid 0 \leq v \leq 1 \right\} \subset \overline{\mathbb{C}^+}.$$

The function

$$f(i\eta) = i \frac{1+\eta}{1-\eta}, \quad \eta \in [-1, 0] \quad (3)$$

then maps the ray S bijectively onto the interval J . The inverse mapping of f is denoted by

$$\zeta = g(w) : \mathbb{C}^+ \rightarrow E, \quad \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \partial E \setminus \{i\}, \quad J \rightarrow S. \quad (4)$$

With the parameter $\mu \in [0, 2\pi)$ we consider the rotated rays

$$S_\mu := \left\{ \tilde{\zeta} = e^{i\mu} \zeta : \zeta \in S \right\}$$

and the family of conformal mappings

$$g_\mu(w) := e^{i\mu} g(w), \quad w \in \mathbb{C}^+. \quad (5)$$

Evidently, we have

$$g_\mu : \mathbb{C}^+ \leftrightarrow E \text{ conformal}, \quad g_\mu : J \leftrightarrow S_\mu \quad \text{for } 0 \leq \mu < 2\pi. \quad (6)$$

Setting

$$\Omega^+ := \left\{ w \in \mathbb{C}^+ : \text{dist}\{w, J\} < 1 \right\},$$

we have a constant $\beta \in (0, 1)$ such that the distortion estimate

$$\beta \leq |g'_\mu(w)| \leq \frac{1}{\beta} \quad \text{for all } w \in \Omega^+ \text{ and all } \mu \in [0, 2\pi) \quad (7)$$

is correct. With the aid of arguments from §2, we now prove the following

Theorem 1. (Global $C^{1+\alpha}$ -estimate)

Let $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{x}(\xi, \eta)$ denote a solution of (1) with $aM < 1$, and let the exponent $\alpha \in (0, 1)$ be chosen. Then we have a constant $C = C(a, b, M, \alpha)$ satisfying

$$\|\mathbf{x}\|_{C^{1+\alpha}(\overline{E})} \leq C(a, b, M, \alpha). \quad (8)$$

Proof:

1. By the method of Theorem 1* we now shall estimate $|\nabla \mathbf{x}|$ in $\overline{E}$ from above. In this context we consider the function

$$\phi(\zeta) := |\mathbf{x}_\zeta(\zeta)| = \frac{1}{2} |\nabla \mathbf{x}(\zeta)|, \quad \zeta \in \overline{E}, \quad (9)$$

which attains its maximum at a point $\zeta_0 \in \overline{E}$. For this point $\zeta_0 \in \overline{E}$ we find a number $\mu \in [0, 2\pi)$ and a point $w_0 \in J \subset \mathbb{C}^+ \cup \mathbb{R}$ satisfying $g_\mu(w_0) = \zeta_0$. We fix the angle μ and suppress the index. Via the mapping (5) we now introduce new parameters (u, v) into the function $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{x}(\xi, \eta)$ and reflect $\mathbf{x} \circ g(u, v)$ at the real axis $v = 0$ as follows:

$$\hat{\mathbf{x}}(u, v) := \begin{cases} \mathbf{x} \circ g(u, v), & w = u + iv \in \mathbb{C}^+ \cup \mathbb{R} \\ \mathbf{x} \circ g(u, -v), & w = u + iv \in \mathbb{C}^- := \{\tilde{w} \in \mathbb{C} : \operatorname{Im} \tilde{w} < 0\} \end{cases} \quad (10)$$

A simple calculation shows

$$\begin{aligned} \hat{\mathbf{x}}(u, v) &\in C^2(\mathbb{C}^+ \cup \mathbb{C}^-) \cap C^1(\mathbb{C}^+ \cup \mathbb{R}) \cap C^0(\mathbb{C}), \\ \sup_{u+iv \in \mathbb{C}} |\hat{\mathbf{x}}(u, v)| &\leq M, \quad \hat{\mathbf{x}}(u, 0) = 0 \quad \text{for all } u \in \mathbb{R}, \\ |\Delta \hat{\mathbf{x}}(u, v)| &\leq a |\nabla \hat{\mathbf{x}}(u, v)|^2 + \frac{b}{\beta^2} \quad \text{for all } w = u + iv \in \Omega^+ \cup \Omega^-, \end{aligned} \quad (11)$$

where we abbreviate $\Omega^- := \{w \in \mathbb{C} : \bar{w} \in \Omega^+\}$. We now choose $R = 1$ as fixed and $\vartheta \in (0, 1)$ arbitrarily. Then we estimate the energy as in Proposition 3*, namely

$$\iint_{B_{\vartheta}(w_0)} |\nabla \hat{\mathbf{x}}(u, v)|^2 du dv.$$

(Please observe the Remark following Proposition 5*.)

2. We now make the transition to the reflected complex derivative function

$$\mathbf{z}(w) := \begin{cases} i\hat{\mathbf{x}}_w(w), & w \in \overline{B_1(w_0)} \cap \mathbb{C}^+ \\ -i\hat{\mathbf{x}}_{\bar{w}}(\bar{w}), & w \in \overline{B_1(w_0)} \cap \mathbb{C}^- \end{cases} \quad (12)$$

from Proposition 5*. This function is continuous in $\overline{B_1(w_0)}$ and satisfies the differential inequality

$$|\mathbf{z}_{\bar{w}}(w)| \leq a |\mathbf{z}(w)|^2 + \frac{b}{4\beta^2} \quad \text{for all } w \in B_1(w_0) \setminus \mathbb{R}. \quad (13)$$

The integral representation of Pompeiu-Vekua from Theorem 1 in Chapter IV, § 5 is valid for $\mathbf{z}$ as well, and we have

$$\mathbf{z}(w_0) = \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{\partial B_{\lambda\vartheta}(w_0)} \frac{\mathbf{z}(w)}{w - w_0} dw - \frac{1}{\pi} \iint_{B_{\lambda\vartheta}(w_0)} \frac{\mathbf{z}_{\bar{w}}(w)}{w - w_0} du dv \quad (14)$$

with arbitrary parameters $\vartheta, \lambda \in (0, 1)$. In the derivation of this formula we integrate separately on the half-planes $\mathbb{C}^\pm$: Since $\mathbf{z}$ is continuous on the real line $\mathbb{R}$, the curvilinear integrals on the real line annul each other. We use Proposition 5* and get a number $\lambda = \lambda(\vartheta) \in [\frac{1}{4}, \frac{1}{2}]$, such that Cauchy's integral of $\mathbf{z}$ can be estimated as follows:

$$\left| \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{\partial B_{\lambda\vartheta}(w_0)} \frac{\mathbf{z}(w)}{w - w_0} dw \right| \leq \frac{c_1(a, b, M)}{\vartheta \sqrt{-\log \vartheta}} + \frac{b}{8\beta^2} + \frac{a}{2} \vartheta \sup_{w \in B_{\vartheta}(w_0)} |\mathbf{z}(w)|^2 \quad (15)$$

with the constant

$$c_1(a, b, M) := \frac{8\sqrt{M^2 + \frac{b}{8\beta^2}M}}{\sqrt{\log 4}\sqrt{1 - aM}}.$$

Parallel to (32)*, we deduce the following estimate from the differential inequality (13):

$$\left| \frac{1}{\pi} \iint_{B_{\lambda\vartheta}(w_0)} \frac{\mathbf{z}\overline{w}(w)}{w - w_0} du dv \right| \leq a\vartheta \sup_{w \in B_{\vartheta}(w_0)} |\mathbf{z}(w)|^2 + \frac{b}{4\beta^2}. \quad (16)$$

3. Noting that

$$|\mathbf{z}(w)| = |\hat{\mathbf{x}}_w(w)| = |\mathbf{x}_\zeta \circ g(w)| |g'(w)|, \quad w \in \mathbb{C}^+ \cup \mathbb{R},$$

the relation (7) yields the inequality

$$\beta |\mathbf{z}(w)| \leq \phi(g(w)) \leq \frac{1}{\beta} |\mathbf{z}(w)| \quad \text{for all } w \in \overline{B_{\vartheta}(w_0)} \cap \mathbb{C}^+. \quad (17)$$

We then obtain the following estimate from (14)-(16):

$$\begin{aligned} \phi(\zeta_0) &= \phi(g(w_0)) \leq \frac{1}{\beta} |\mathbf{z}(w_0)| \\ &\leq \frac{c_1(a, b, M)}{\beta\vartheta\sqrt{-\log \vartheta}} + \frac{3b}{8\beta^3} + \frac{3a}{2\beta}\vartheta \sup_{w \in B_{\vartheta}(w_0)} |\mathbf{z}(w)|^2 \\ &\leq \frac{c_1(a, b, M)}{\beta\vartheta\sqrt{-\log \vartheta}} + \frac{3b}{8\beta^3} + \frac{3a}{2\beta^3}\vartheta \sup_{w \in \overline{B_{\vartheta}(w_0)} \cap \mathbb{C}^+} \phi(g(w))^2 \\ &\leq \frac{c_1(a, b, M)}{\beta\vartheta\sqrt{-\log \vartheta}} + \frac{3b}{8\beta^3} + \frac{3a}{2\beta^3}\vartheta \phi(\zeta_0)^2. \end{aligned}$$

Therefore, the subsequent inequality holds true

$$\phi(\zeta_0) \leq \frac{c_1(a, b, M)}{\beta\vartheta\sqrt{-\log \vartheta}} + \frac{3b}{8\beta^3} + \frac{3a}{2\beta^3}\vartheta \phi(\zeta_0)^2 \quad \text{for all } 0 < \vartheta < 1. \quad (18)$$

4. Parallel to part 3 of the proof for Theorem 1*, we obtain the existence of a constant $C_1 = C_1(a, b, M)$ from (18), such that

$$\sup_{\zeta \in E} |\nabla \mathbf{x}(\zeta)| = 2 \sup_{\zeta \in E} \phi(\zeta) \leq C_1(a, b, M) \quad (19)$$

holds true. We apply the representation formula (14) - valid in $\overline{E}$ - to the function $\mathbf{x}_w$. Then we find a constant $C_2 = C_2(a, b, M, \alpha)$ for the number $\alpha \in (0, 1)$ given - as in the proof of Theorem 2* - such that

$$|\nabla \mathbf{x}(\zeta_1) - \nabla \mathbf{x}(\zeta_2)| \leq C_2 |\zeta_1 - \zeta_2|^\alpha \quad \text{for all } \zeta_1, \zeta_2 \in \overline{E} \quad (20)$$

is valid. The statement (8) can now be inferred from the inequalities (19) and (20). q.e.d.

§4 The Dirichlet problem for nonlinear elliptic systems

We choose the parameters $\alpha \in (0, 1)$ and $M \in (0, +\infty)$ and prescribe periodic boundary values - with the period 2π - on the boundary of the unit disc $B := \{w = u + iv : |w| < 1\}$, namely

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{g} &= \mathbf{g}(t) = (g_1(t), \dots, g_n(t)) : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n \in C_{2\pi}^{2+\alpha}(\mathbb{R}, \mathbb{R}^n), \\ |\mathbf{g}(t)| &\leq M \quad \text{for all } t \in \mathbb{R}. \end{aligned} \quad (1)$$

Now we concentrate our interest on the Dirichlet problem

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{x} &= \mathbf{x}(u, v) = (x_1(u, v), \dots, x_n(u, v)) \in C^{2+\alpha}(\overline{B}, \mathbb{R}^n), \\ \Delta \mathbf{x}(u, v) &= \mathbf{F}(u, v, \mathbf{x}(u, v), \nabla \mathbf{x}(u, v)) \quad \text{for all } (u, v) \in B, \\ |\mathbf{x}(u, v)| &\leq M \quad \text{for all } (u, v) \in B, \\ \mathbf{x}(\cos t, \sin t) &= \mathbf{g}(t) \quad \text{for all } t \in \mathbb{R}. \end{aligned} \quad (2)$$

As our right-hand side $\mathbf{F}$ we prescribe a homogeneous quadratic polynomial in the first derivatives

$$\nabla \mathbf{x}(u, v) = (x_{1u}(u, v), \dots, x_{nu}(u, v), x_{1v}(u, v), \dots, x_{nv}(u, v)).$$

The coefficients are assumed to depend Hölder-continuously on the variables u, v and Lipschitz-continuously on the vector $\mathbf{x}$, and we require that they vanish on the exterior space $|\mathbf{x}| \geq M$. More precisely, we define the function

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{F}(u, v, \mathbf{x}; \mathbf{p}, \mathbf{q}) &= (F_1(\dots), \dots, F_n(\dots)) : \overline{B} \times \mathbb{R}^n \times \mathbb{R}^{2n} \times \mathbb{R}^{2n} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n, \\ F_k(u, v, \mathbf{x}; \mathbf{p}, \mathbf{q}) &:= \sum_{i,j=1}^{2n} f_{ij}^k(u, v, \mathbf{x}) p_i q_j, \quad k = 1, \dots, n. \end{aligned} \quad (3)$$

Here the coefficients fulfill

$$\begin{aligned} f_{ij}^k(w, \mathbf{x}) &= 0 \quad \text{for all } w \in \overline{B} \text{ and } \mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{R}^n \text{ with } |\mathbf{x}| \geq M, \\ |f_{ij}^k(w, \mathbf{x})| &\leq K \quad \text{for all } w \in \overline{B} \text{ and } \mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{R}^n \text{ with } |\mathbf{x}| \leq M, \\ |f_{ij}^k(w, \mathbf{x}) - f_{ij}^k(\tilde{w}, \tilde{\mathbf{x}})| &\leq L\{|w - \tilde{w}|^\alpha + |\mathbf{x} - \tilde{\mathbf{x}}|\} \\ &\text{for all } w, \tilde{w} \in \overline{B} \text{ and } \mathbf{x}, \tilde{\mathbf{x}} \in \mathbb{R}^n \end{aligned} \quad (4)$$

for $i, j = 1, \dots, 2n$ and $k = 1, \dots, n$; where the constants $K, L \in [0, +\infty)$ are given. Finally, we use the following function $\mathbf{F}$ as the right-hand side in (2), namely

$$\mathbf{F}(u, v, \mathbf{x}, \mathbf{p}) := \mathbf{F}(u, v, \mathbf{x}; \mathbf{p}, \mathbf{p}), \quad (u, v) \in \overline{B}, \quad \mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{R}^n, \quad \mathbf{p} \in \mathbb{R}^{2n}.$$

All elliptic systems appearing in differential geometry are of the following form:

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta \mathbf{x}(u, v) &= \mathbf{F}(u, v, \mathbf{x}(u, v); \nabla \mathbf{x}(u, v), \nabla \mathbf{x}(u, v)) \\ &= \mathbf{F}(u, v, \mathbf{x}(u, v), \nabla \mathbf{x}(u, v)), \quad (u, v) \in B.\end{aligned}\quad (5)$$

Fixing $(u, v, \mathbf{x}) \in \overline{B} \times \mathbb{R}^n$, the subsequent mapping

$$(\mathbf{p}, \mathbf{q}) \mapsto \mathbf{F}(w, \mathbf{x}; \mathbf{p}, \mathbf{q}) \quad (6)$$

is bilinear but not necessarily symmetric.

Choosing a parameter $a \in [0, +\infty)$, we now require a *growth condition for the right-hand side* $\mathbf{F}$:

$$|\mathbf{F}(w, \mathbf{x}; \mathbf{p}, \mathbf{p})| \leq a|\mathbf{p}|^2 \text{ or equivalently } \sqrt{\sum_{k=1}^n \left(\sum_{i,j=1}^{2n} f_{ij}^k(w, \mathbf{x}) p_i p_j \right)^2} \leq a \sum_{i=1}^{2n} p_i^2$$

for all $w \in \overline{B}$, $\mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{R}^n$, $\mathbf{p} = (p_1, \dots, p_{2n}) \in \mathbb{R}^{2n}$. (7)

Remarks:

1. On the basis of (3) and (4) we can certainly find a constant a satisfying (7). One should optimize this constant, however. Though the constants K, L from (4) do not enter quantitatively into our later existence result, this is the case for the constant a .
2. If the condition $aM \leq 1$ is fulfilled, then a solution $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{x}(u, v)$ of (2) is subject to the geometric maximum principle of E. Heinz

$$\sup_{(u,v) \in \overline{B}} |\mathbf{x}(u, v)| \leq \sup_{(u,v) \in \partial B} |\mathbf{x}(u, v)|. \quad (8)$$

In order to solve (2), we make the transition to zero boundary values. In this context we solve the following boundary value problem by potential-theoretic methods (compare Theorem 5 in Chapter IX, §6):

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{y} &= \mathbf{y}(u, v) \in C^{2+\alpha}(\overline{B}, \mathbb{R}^n), \\ \Delta \mathbf{y}(u, v) &= 0 \quad \text{for all } (u, v) \in B, \\ \mathbf{y}(\cos t, \sin t) &= \mathbf{g}(t) \quad \text{for all } t \in \mathbb{R}.\end{aligned}\quad (9)$$

The maximum principle for harmonic functions yields

$$\sup_{(u,v) \in B} |\mathbf{y}(u, v)| \leq M. \quad (10)$$

If $\mathbf{x}$ denotes a solution of (2), we then consider the difference function

$$\mathbf{z}(u, v) := \mathbf{x}(u, v) - \mathbf{y}(u, v), \quad (u, v) \in \overline{B}, \quad (11)$$

which belongs to the space

$$C_*^{2+\alpha}(\overline{B}) := \left\{ \tilde{\mathbf{z}}(u, v) \in C^{2+\alpha}(\overline{B}, \mathbb{R}^n) : \tilde{\mathbf{z}}(u, v) = 0 \text{ auf } \partial B \right\} .$$

Now the function $\mathbf{z}$ satisfies the following differential equation:

$$\begin{aligned} \Delta \mathbf{z}(u, v) &= \Delta \mathbf{x}(u, v) = \mathbf{F}(u, v, \mathbf{x}(u, v); \nabla \mathbf{x}(u, v), \nabla \mathbf{x}(u, v)) \\ &= \mathbf{F}(u, v, \mathbf{y}(u, v) + \mathbf{z}(u, v); \nabla \mathbf{y}(u, v) + \nabla \mathbf{z}(u, v), \nabla \mathbf{y}(u, v) + \nabla \mathbf{z}(u, v)) \\ &= \mathbf{F}(u, v, \mathbf{y}(u, v) + \mathbf{z}(u, v); \nabla \mathbf{z}(u, v), \nabla \mathbf{z}(u, v)) \\ &\quad + \mathbf{F}(u, v, \mathbf{y}(u, v) + \mathbf{z}(u, v); \nabla \mathbf{y}(u, v), \nabla \mathbf{z}(u, v)) \\ &\quad + \mathbf{F}(u, v, \mathbf{y}(u, v) + \mathbf{z}(u, v); \nabla \mathbf{z}(u, v), \nabla \mathbf{y}(u, v)) \\ &\quad + \mathbf{F}(u, v, \mathbf{y}(u, v) + \mathbf{z}(u, v); \nabla \mathbf{y}(u, v), \nabla \mathbf{y}(u, v)) \\ &=: \mathbf{G}(u, v, \mathbf{z}(u, v), \nabla \mathbf{z}(u, v)) \quad \text{for all } (u, v) \in B. \end{aligned} \tag{12}$$

Therefore, the function $\mathbf{z}(u, v) \in C_*^{2+\alpha}(\overline{B})$ satisfies an inhomogeneous differential equation with quadratic growth in its gradient. We choose an arbitrary $\varepsilon > 0$, and with the aid of (7) we deduce the following inequality

$$\begin{aligned} |\Delta \mathbf{z}(u, v)| &= |\mathbf{F}(u, v, \mathbf{y}(u, v) + \mathbf{z}(u, v), \nabla \mathbf{y}(u, v) + \nabla \mathbf{z}(u, v))| \\ &\leq a |\nabla \mathbf{y}(u, v) + \nabla \mathbf{z}(u, v)|^2 \\ &\leq a \left\{ |\nabla \mathbf{y}(u, v)|^2 + 2 \frac{1}{\sqrt{\varepsilon}} |\nabla \mathbf{y}(u, v)| \sqrt{\varepsilon} |\nabla \mathbf{z}(u, v)| + |\nabla \mathbf{z}(u, v)|^2 \right\} \\ &\leq a(1 + \varepsilon) |\nabla \mathbf{z}(u, v)|^2 + a \left(1 + \frac{1}{\varepsilon} \right) |\nabla \mathbf{y}(u, v)|^2 \\ &\leq a(1 + \varepsilon) |\nabla \mathbf{z}(u, v)|^2 + a \left(1 + \frac{1}{\varepsilon} \right) \sup_{(u, v) \in B} |\nabla \mathbf{y}(u, v)|^2 \end{aligned} \tag{13}$$

for all $(u, v) \in B$. Very important is the subsequent

Proposition 1. (A priori estimate)

Let the constants $\alpha \in (0, 1)$ and $a \in [0, +\infty)$, $M \in (0, +\infty)$ with $2aM < 1$ be chosen. Then we have an a-priori-constant $C_1(a, M, \alpha)$, such that all solutions of the problem

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{z} &= \mathbf{z}(u, v) \in C^2(B) \cap C^1(\overline{B}), \\ \Delta \mathbf{z}(u, v) &= \mathbf{G}(w, \mathbf{z}(w), \nabla \mathbf{z}(w)) \quad \text{for all } w \in B, \\ \mathbf{z}(w) &= 0 \quad \text{for all } w \in \partial B \end{aligned} \tag{14}$$

satisfy the following estimate:

$$\|\mathbf{z}\|_{C^{1+\alpha}(\overline{B}, \mathbb{R}^n)} \leq C_1(a, M, \alpha). \tag{15}$$

Proof:

1. At first, we verify the subsequent statement:

$$\sup_{w \in B} |\mathbf{z}(w)| \leq 2M. \quad (16)$$

If this were violated, there would exist a point $w_0 \in B$ satisfying

$$2M < |\mathbf{z}(w_0)| \leq |\mathbf{y}(w_0) + \mathbf{z}(w_0)| + |\mathbf{y}(w_0)| \leq |\mathbf{y}(w_0) + \mathbf{z}(w_0)| + M$$

and consequently

$$M < |\mathbf{y}(w_0) + \mathbf{z}(w_0)|.$$

For continuity reasons we can find a disc $B_\varrho(w_0) \subset B$ such that

$$|\mathbf{y}(w) + \mathbf{z}(w)| \geq M \quad \text{for all } w \in B_\varrho(w_0). \quad (17)$$

On account of the assumption (4) for the coefficients f_{ij}^k we infer

$$\begin{aligned} \Delta \mathbf{z}(w) &= \mathbf{F}(w, \mathbf{y}(w) + \mathbf{z}(w); \nabla \mathbf{y}(w) + \nabla \mathbf{z}(w), \nabla \mathbf{y}(w) + \nabla \mathbf{z}(w)) \\ &= 0, \quad w \in B_\varrho(w_0). \end{aligned} \quad (18)$$

We now consider the function

$$\phi(w) := |\mathbf{z}(w)|^2, \quad w \in B_\varrho(w_0), \quad (19)$$

which is subharmonic due to

$$\Delta \phi(w) = 2(|\nabla \mathbf{z}(w)|^2 + \mathbf{z}(w) \cdot \Delta \mathbf{z}(w)) = 2|\nabla \mathbf{z}(w)|^2 \geq 0 \quad \text{in } B_\varrho(w_0).$$

Choosing $w_0 \in B$ in such a way that

$$|\mathbf{z}(w_0)| = \sup_{w \in B} |\mathbf{z}(w)|$$

holds true, the subharmonic function $\phi(w)$, $w \in B_\varrho(w_0)$ attains its maximum at the interior point w_0 . Therefore, we obtain

$$\phi(w) \equiv \phi(w_0) \quad \text{in } \overline{B_\varrho(w_0)}. \quad (20)$$

A continuation argument finally yields

$$\phi(w) \equiv \phi(w_0) \quad \text{in } \overline{B}$$

contradicting the statement $\phi(w) = 0$ on ∂B . Consequently, the relation (16) is satisfied.

2. Formula (13) gives us the differential inequality

$$|\Delta \mathbf{z}(u, v)| \leq a(1 + \varepsilon)|\nabla \mathbf{z}(u, v)|^2 + b(\varepsilon), \quad (u, v) \in B, \quad (21)$$

where we have set

$$b(\varepsilon) := a \left(1 + \frac{1}{\varepsilon}\right) \sup_{(u, v) \in B} |\nabla \mathbf{y}(u, v)|^2.$$

We choose $\varepsilon > 0$ so small that $a(1 + \varepsilon)2M < 1$ is fulfilled, and Theorem 1 from §3 yields the following a priori estimate (15) on account of (16) and (21).

q.e.d.

We now transform (14) into an integral equation. We consider the Banach space

$$\mathcal{B} := \left\{ \mathbf{x} \in C^1(\overline{B}, \mathbb{R}^n) : \mathbf{x}(w) = 0 \text{ on } \partial B \right\}$$

endowed with the norm

$$\|\cdot\| := \|\cdot\|_{C^1(\overline{B}, \mathbb{R}^n)},$$

and define the balls

$$\mathcal{B}_N := \left\{ \mathbf{x} \in \mathcal{B} : \|\mathbf{x}\| < N \right\}$$

with the radii $N > 0$. Taking $0 \leq \lambda \leq 1$ we investigate the nonlinear integral operators ($\zeta = \xi + i\eta$)

$$\mathbb{V}_\lambda(\mathbf{z})|_w := -\frac{\lambda}{2\pi} \iint_B \log \left| \frac{1 - \overline{w}\zeta}{\zeta - w} \right| \mathbf{G}(\zeta, \mathbf{z}(\zeta), \nabla \mathbf{z}(\zeta)) d\xi d\eta, \quad w \in B. \quad (22)$$

With the aid of the Leray-Schauder degree of mapping we shall construct a solution of the nonlinear integral equation $\mathbf{z} = \mathbb{V}_1(\mathbf{z})$. The latter then solves (14), and by the transition (11) we obtain a solution of the problem (2). At first, we need the following

Proposition 2. *Green's operator*

$$u(w) \in C^0(\overline{B}) \quad \mapsto \quad \mathbb{L}(u)|_w := -\frac{1}{2\pi} \iint_B \log \left| \frac{1 - \overline{w}\zeta}{\zeta - w} \right| u(\zeta) d\xi d\eta, \quad w \in B, \quad (23)$$

maps the space $C^0(\overline{B})$ continuously to the space

$$C_*^{1+\beta}(\overline{B}) := \left\{ v(w) \in C^{1+\beta}(\overline{B}) : v(w) = 0 \text{ for all } w \in \partial B \right\}$$

for each number $\beta \in (0, 1)$. Therefore, we have a constant $C_2(\beta)$ satisfying

$$\|\mathbb{L}(u)\|_{C^{1+\beta}(\overline{B})} \leq C_2(\beta) \|u\|_{C^0(\overline{B})} \quad \text{for all } u \in C^0(\overline{B}). \quad (24)$$

Proof: One should utilize the potential-theoretic estimates from Chapter IX, § 4 and Hadamard's estimate (compare Theorem 7 in Chapter IV, § 4) for the complex derivative $\frac{\partial}{\partial w} L(u)$. q.e.d.

Proposition 3. *Let the number $\beta \in (0, 1)$ be chosen arbitrarily. Then the nonlinear integral operator $\mathbb{V}_\lambda : \mathcal{B} \rightarrow C_*^{1+\beta}(\overline{B}, \mathbb{R}^n)$ is continuous and as the operator $\mathbb{V}_\lambda : \mathcal{B} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$ even completely continuous for all $0 \leq \lambda \leq 1$.*

Proof: We observe the following connection for all $0 \leq \lambda \leq 1$, namely

$$\mathbb{V}_\lambda(\mathbf{z}) = \lambda \mathbb{L}(\mathbf{G}(\cdot, \mathbf{z}(\cdot), \nabla \mathbf{z}(\cdot))), \quad \mathbf{z} \in \mathcal{B}. \quad (25)$$

On account of (4), the function

$$\mathbf{F}(\cdot, \mathbf{y} + \mathbf{z}, \nabla \mathbf{y} + \nabla \mathbf{z}, \nabla \mathbf{y} + \nabla \mathbf{z}) = \mathbf{G}(\cdot, \mathbf{z}, \nabla \mathbf{z}), \quad \mathbf{z} \in \mathcal{B}_N \quad (26)$$

satisfies a Lipschitz condition in the ball $\mathcal{B}_N$ with an arbitrary radius $N > 0$ in all three components, where the Lipschitz constant may depend on N . Therefore, we have a constant $C_3 = C_3(K, L, N)$ satisfying

$$\begin{aligned} \|\mathbf{G}(\cdot, \mathbf{z}, \nabla \mathbf{z}) - \mathbf{G}(\cdot, \tilde{\mathbf{z}}, \nabla \tilde{\mathbf{z}})\|_{C^0(\overline{\mathcal{B}})} &\leq C_3(K, L, N) \|\mathbf{z} - \tilde{\mathbf{z}}\| \\ \text{for all } \mathbf{z}, \tilde{\mathbf{z}} &\in \mathcal{B}_N. \end{aligned} \quad (27)$$

Proposition 2 now yields

$$\begin{aligned} \|\mathbb{V}_\lambda(\mathbf{z}) - \mathbb{V}_\lambda(\tilde{\mathbf{z}})\|_{C^{1+\beta}(\overline{\mathcal{B}})} &\leq \lambda C_2(\beta) C_3(K, L, N) \|\mathbf{z} - \tilde{\mathbf{z}}\| \\ \text{for all } \mathbf{z}, \tilde{\mathbf{z}} &\in \mathcal{B}_N. \end{aligned} \quad (28)$$

Consequently, the operator $\mathbb{V}_\lambda : \mathcal{B}_N \rightarrow C_*^{1+\beta}(\overline{\mathcal{B}})$ is continuous. Furthermore, we infer the following estimate from Proposition 2 on account of (26) and (4), namely

$$\begin{aligned} \|\mathbb{V}_\lambda(\mathbf{z})\|_{C^{1+\beta}(\overline{\mathcal{B}})} &\leq \lambda C_2(\beta) \|\mathbf{G}(\cdot, \mathbf{z}, \nabla \mathbf{z})\|_{C^0(\overline{\mathcal{B}})} \\ &\leq C_4(K, N, \beta), \quad \mathbf{z} \in \mathcal{B}_N. \end{aligned} \quad (29)$$

Therefore, the operator $\mathbb{V}_\lambda : \mathcal{B} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$ is completely continuous. q.e.d.

With the aid of topological methods we now prove the following

Theorem 1. *Let the constants $\alpha \in (0, 1)$ and $a \in [0, +\infty)$, $M \in (0, +\infty)$ with $aM < \frac{1}{2}$ be chosen. Furthermore, let the boundary values $\mathbf{g}$ from (1) be prescribed, and let the right-hand side $\mathbf{F}$ be defined as in (3) satisfying (4) and the growth condition (7). Then we have a solution $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{x}(u, v)$ of the Dirichlet problem (2).*

Proof: We choose the quantity $N := C_1(a, M, \alpha) + 1$ with the constant C_1 from Proposition 1 as radius for the ball $\mathcal{B}_N$ in the Banach space $\mathcal{B}$. We consider the family of operators

$$\text{Id} - \mathbb{V}_\lambda : \mathcal{B}_N \rightarrow \mathcal{B}, \quad \mathbf{z} \mapsto \mathbf{z} - \mathbb{V}_\lambda(\mathbf{z}), \quad 0 \leq \lambda \leq 1. \quad (30)$$

For $\lambda = 0$ the mapping possesses a zero, namely $\mathbf{z} = \mathbf{0} \in \mathcal{B}$. Due to Proposition 3 the operator $\mathbb{V}_\lambda : \mathcal{B}_N \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$ is completely continuous for each $\lambda \in [0, 1]$. Furthermore, the family $\mathbb{V}_\lambda$ depends continuously on the parameter $\lambda \in [0, 1]$. We now show that the statement

$$(\text{Id} - \mathbb{V}_\lambda)(\mathbf{z}) \neq \mathbf{0} \quad \text{for all } \mathbf{z} \in \partial \mathcal{B}_N \quad \text{and all } \lambda \in [0, 1] \quad (31)$$

is correct. If $\mathbf{z} \in \partial \mathcal{B}_N$ namely would be a zero of $\text{Id} - \mathbb{V}_\lambda$ with a parameter $\lambda \in [0, 1]$, we infer

$$\mathbf{z} = \mathbb{V}_\lambda(\mathbf{z}). \quad (32)$$

The solution of this integral equation represents a solution of the Dirichlet problem

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{z} &= \mathbf{z}(u, v) \in C^2(B) \cap C^1(\overline{B}), \\ \Delta \mathbf{z}(u, v) &= \lambda \mathbf{G}(u, v, \mathbf{z}(u, v), \nabla \mathbf{z}(u, v)), \quad (u, v) \in B, \\ \mathbf{z}(u, v) &= 0, \quad (u, v) \in \partial B. \end{aligned} \quad (33)$$

In (14) we replace $\mathbf{G}(\dots)$ by $\lambda \mathbf{G}(\dots)$, and Proposition 1 yields an evident contradiction with the inequality

$$\|\mathbf{z}\|_{C^{1+\alpha}(\overline{B}, \mathbb{R}^n)} \leq C_1(a, M, \alpha) = N - 1 < N = \|\mathbf{z}\|_{C^1(\overline{B}, \mathbb{R}^n)} \quad .$$

Therefore, the relation (31) is fulfilled. According to the Leray-Schauder theorem (compare Chapter VII, § 3) the mapping (30) possesses at least one zero $\mathbf{z} = \mathbf{z}(w)$ for each parameter $\lambda \in [0, 1]$. Specialized on the parameter $\lambda = 1$, this zero solves the Dirichlet problem (14). Theorem 1 from Chapter IX, § 4 now implies $\mathbf{z} \in C_*^{2+\alpha}(\overline{B}, \mathbb{R}^n)$. If $\mathbf{y} = \mathbf{y}(w)$ represents the solution of (9), we obtain a solution of (2) with $\mathbf{x}(u, v) = \mathbf{y}(u, v) + \mathbf{z}(u, v)$, $(u, v) \in \overline{B}$. The property

$$\sup_{(u, v) \in B} |\mathbf{x}(u, v)| \leq M$$

is easily established as in part 1 of the proof for Proposition 1. q.e.d.

We now specialize our result to the H -surface system from § 1. Taking the boundary values $\mathbf{g}(t)$ from (1) in the case $n = 3$, we consider the Dirichlet problem

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{x} &= \mathbf{x}(u, v) = (x_1(u, v), x_2(u, v), x_3(u, v)) \in C^{2+\alpha}(\overline{B}, \mathbb{R}^3), \\ \Delta \mathbf{x}(u, v) &= 2H(u, v, \mathbf{x}(u, v)) \mathbf{x}_u \wedge \mathbf{x}_v(u, v) \quad \text{in } B, \\ |\mathbf{x}(u, v)| &\leq M \quad \text{in } B, \\ \mathbf{x}(\cos t, \sin t) &= \mathbf{g}(t) \quad \text{for } t \in \mathbb{R}. \end{aligned} \quad (34)$$

Here we prescribe the function $H = H(w, \mathbf{x})$ as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} H &= H(w, \mathbf{x}) : \overline{B} \times \mathbb{R}^3 \rightarrow \mathbb{R} \in C^\alpha(\overline{B} \times \mathbb{R}^3) \quad \text{with} \\ |H(w, \mathbf{x})| &\leq h_0, \quad |H(w, \mathbf{x}) - H(w, \mathbf{y})| \leq h_1 |\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{y}|, \quad w \in \overline{B}, \quad \mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y} \in \mathbb{R}^3, \\ H(w, \mathbf{x}) &= 0, \quad w \in \overline{B}, \quad \mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{R}^3 \quad \text{with } |\mathbf{x}| \geq M. \end{aligned} \quad (35)$$

When we set

$$\mathbf{F}(u, v, \mathbf{x}(u, v), \nabla \mathbf{x}(u, v)) := 2H(u, v, \mathbf{x}(u, v)) \mathbf{x}_u \wedge \mathbf{x}_v(u, v) \quad ,$$

the right-hand side (3) appears in the form

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{F}(u, v, \mathbf{x}; \mathbf{p}, \mathbf{q}) &:= 2H(w, \mathbf{x})\mathbf{p}' \wedge \mathbf{q}'' \quad \text{with } \mathbf{p}, \mathbf{q} \in \mathbb{R}^6 \quad \text{and} \\ \mathbf{p} = (\mathbf{p}', \mathbf{p}'') &= (p'_1, p'_2, p'_3, p''_1, p''_2, p''_3), \quad \mathbf{q} = (\mathbf{q}', \mathbf{q}'') = (q'_1, q'_2, q'_3, q''_1, q''_2, q''_3). \end{aligned} \quad (36)$$

We then have the growth condition

$$\begin{aligned} |\mathbf{F}(w, \mathbf{x}; \mathbf{p}, \mathbf{p})| &\leq 2|H(w, \mathbf{x})||\mathbf{p}' \wedge \mathbf{p}''| \leq h_0(|\mathbf{p}'|^2 + |\mathbf{p}''|^2) = h_0|\mathbf{p}|^2 \\ \text{for all } w &\in \overline{B}, \quad \mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{R}^3, \quad \mathbf{p} \in \mathbb{R}^6. \end{aligned} \quad (37)$$

Theorem 1 immediately implies the following

Theorem 2. (E. Heinz, H. Werner, S. Hildebrandt)

In the case $h_0M < \frac{1}{2}$ the Dirichlet problem (34) possesses a solution, with the boundary values (1) and the right-hand side (35).

Remarks:

1. E. Heinz solved the Dirichlet problem (34) for the case $H \equiv \text{const}$ in 1954 by means of the topological method presented here.
2. H. Werner has attained the condition $h_0M < \frac{1}{2}$.
3. With the aid of variational methods, S. Hildebrandt has solved the Dirichlet problem (34) even in the case $H = H(\mathbf{x})$ and $h_0M < 1$.
4. According to Jäger's maximum principle from §1, the Dirichlet problem (34) is uniquely solvable in a ball of the radius

$$M := \frac{\sqrt{h_0^2 + 2h_1}}{h_0^2 + h_1}.$$

Therefore, Theorem 2 yields an existence result for large h_1 without answering the uniqueness question.

5. Due to §1, Theorem 3 and its corollary, the Dirichlet problem (34) is stable with respect to perturbations of the boundary values in the $C^0(\overline{B}, \mathbb{R}^3)$ -norm under the conditions given there. Consequently, we can even solve the Dirichlet problem (34) for continuous boundary values.

We finally note the following

Theorem 3. *In the case $H(w, \mathbf{x}) \equiv h_0$ or $H(w, \mathbf{x}) \equiv -h_0$ with $h_0 > 0$ and $h_0M \leq \frac{1}{2}$, the Dirichlet problem (34) possesses exactly one solution of the regularity class $C^{2+\alpha}(B, \mathbb{R}^3) \cap C^0(\overline{B}, \mathbb{R}^3)$, for the continuous boundary values $\mathbf{g} = \mathbf{g}(t) \in C_{2\pi}^0(\mathbb{R}, \mathbb{R}^n)$ satisfying $|\mathbf{g}(t)| \leq M$, $t \in \mathbb{R}$.*

Proof: We smooth the constant function H at the boundary of the ball $|\mathbf{x}| \leq M$ in such a way that H vanishes for all $|\mathbf{x}| \geq M$. Then we solve (34) for $C^{2+\alpha}$ -boundary values and approximate the continuous boundary values $\mathbf{g}$ uniformly with the aid of Theorem 3 from §1 and Theorem 2 from §2.

q.e.d.

§5 Distortion estimates for plane elliptic systems

We begin with the important

Theorem 1. *Let the radius $R > 0$ be given, and we consider the disc $B_R := \{w = u + iv \in \mathbb{C} : |w| < R\}$ and the pseudoholomorphic function $f(w) : B_R \rightarrow \mathbb{C} \in C^1(B_R, \mathbb{C})$ satisfying*

$$|f_{\overline{w}}(w)| \leq M|f(w)|, \quad w \in B_R, \quad (1)$$

with a constant $M \in [0, +\infty)$. Furthermore, there exists a constant $K \in (0, +\infty)$ such that

$$0 < |f(w)| \leq K, \quad w \in B_R \quad (2)$$

is fulfilled. Finally, we choose the number $r \in (0, R)$. Then we have the following inequalities for all points $w \in \overline{B_r}$, namely

$$|f(w)| \leq K^{\frac{2r}{R+r}} e^{8MR} |f(0)|^{\frac{R-r}{R+r}} \quad (3)$$

and

$$|f(w)| \geq K^{-\frac{2r}{R-r}} e^{-\frac{8MR(R+r)}{R-r}} |f(0)|^{\frac{R+r}{R-r}}. \quad (4)$$

Proof:

1. The inequality (3) can be transformed into

$$\left| \frac{f(w)}{K} \right| \leq e^{8MR} \left| \frac{f(0)}{K} \right|^{\frac{R-r}{R+r}}, \quad w \in \overline{B_r},$$

and (4) is equivalent to

$$\left| \frac{f(w)}{K} \right| \geq e^{-\frac{8MR(R+r)}{R-r}} \left| \frac{f(0)}{K} \right|^{\frac{R+r}{R-r}}, \quad w \in \overline{B_r}.$$

With $f(w)$ the function $\frac{f(w)}{K}$ satisfies the inequality (1) as well. Therefore, it suffices to verify the estimates (3) and (4) only for the case $K = 1$.

2. We define the potential

$$a(w) := \frac{f_{\overline{w}}(w)}{f(w)}, \quad w \in B_R, \quad (5)$$

and note

$$\|a\|_{\infty} := \sup_{w \in B_R} |a(w)| \leq M < +\infty.$$

Consequently, the function f satisfies the differential equation

$$\frac{d}{dw} f(w) = a(w) f(w), \quad w \in B_R \quad (6)$$

and is pseudoholomorphic in the sense of Chapter IV, §6. According to the similarity principle of Bers and Vekua given there, we have the representation formula

$$f(w) = e^{\psi(w)} \phi(w), \quad w \in B_R, \quad (7)$$

with the function ϕ being holomorphic in B_R and the following integral ($\zeta = \xi + i\eta$)

$$\psi(w) := -\frac{1}{\pi} \iint_{B_R} \frac{a(\zeta)}{\zeta - w} d\xi d\eta, \quad w \in B_R. \quad (8)$$

We note

$$|\psi(w)| \leq \frac{M}{\pi} \iint_{B_R} \frac{1}{|\zeta - w|} d\xi d\eta \leq \frac{M}{\pi} 2\pi 2R = 4MR, \quad w \in B_R$$

and obtain

$$e^{-4MR} \leq |e^{\psi(w)}| \leq e^{4MR}, \quad w \in B_R. \quad (9)$$

Together with (2) and (7), we deduce

$$0 < |\phi(w)| = |e^{-\psi(w)}| |f(w)| \leq e^{4MR}, \quad w \in B_R. \quad (10)$$

3. We consider the nonnegative harmonic function

$$\chi(w) := 4MR - \log |\phi(w)| \geq 0, \quad w \in B_R.$$

Harnack's inequality (compare Theorem 4 in Chapter V, §2) yields the estimate

$$\frac{R-r}{R+r} \chi(0) \leq \chi(w) \leq \frac{R+r}{R-r} \chi(0), \quad w \in B_r \quad (11)$$

for all $r \in (0, R)$. We rewrite this inequality into the form

$$\begin{aligned} \log |\phi(w)| &\leq 4MR - \frac{R-r}{R+r} (4MR - \log |\phi(0)|) \\ &= \frac{R-r}{R+r} \log |\phi(0)| + \frac{8MRr}{R+r}, \quad w \in B_r \end{aligned} \quad (12)$$

and

$$\begin{aligned} \log |\phi(w)| &\geq 4MR - \frac{R+r}{R-r} (4MR - \log |\phi(0)|) \\ &= \frac{R+r}{R-r} \log |\phi(0)| - \frac{8MRr}{R-r}, \quad w \in B_r, \end{aligned} \quad (13)$$

respectively. Via exponentiation we arrive at

$$|\phi(w)| \leq e^{\frac{8MRr}{R+r}} |\phi(0)|^{\frac{R-r}{R+r}}, \quad w \in B_r \quad (14)$$

and

$$|\phi(w)| \geq e^{-\frac{8MRr}{R-r}} |\phi(0)|^{\frac{R+r}{R-r}}, \quad w \in B_r. \quad (15)$$

4. From (7) and (9) we infer

$$e^{-4MR}|\phi(w)| \leq |f(w)| \leq e^{4MR}|\phi(w)|, \quad w \in B_R. \quad (16)$$

Together with (14) we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} |f(w)| &\leq e^{4MR}|\phi(w)| \leq e^{4MR}e^{\frac{8MR}{R+r}}|\phi(0)|^{\frac{R-r}{R+r}} \\ &\leq e^{4MR}e^{\frac{8MR}{R+r}}e^{4MR\frac{R-r}{R+r}}|f(0)|^{\frac{R-r}{R+r}} \\ &= e^{8MR}|f(0)|^{\frac{R-r}{R+r}}, \quad w \in B_r \end{aligned}$$

and finally the inequality (3) stated. Correspondingly, the relations (16) and (15) imply

$$\begin{aligned} |f(w)| &\geq e^{-4MR}|\phi(w)| \geq e^{-4MR}e^{-\frac{8MR}{R-r}}|\phi(0)|^{\frac{R+r}{R-r}} \\ &\geq e^{-4MR}e^{-\frac{8MR}{R-r}}e^{-4MR\frac{R+r}{R-r}}|f(0)|^{\frac{R+r}{R-r}} \\ &= e^{-8MR\frac{R+r}{R-r}}|f(0)|^{\frac{R+r}{R-r}}, \quad w \in B_r, \end{aligned}$$

and we get (4).

q.e.d.

Theorem 2. (Heinz's inequality)

We take the unit disc $B := \{w = u + iv \in \mathbb{C} : |w| < 1\}$ and consider the plane mapping $\mathbf{z}(u, v) = (x(u, v), y(u, v)) \in C^2(B, \mathbb{R}^2)$. The latter may satisfy the differential inequality

$$|\Delta \mathbf{z}(u, v)| \leq a|\nabla \mathbf{z}(u, v)|^2 + b|\nabla \mathbf{z}(u, v)| \quad \text{in } B \quad (17)$$

with the constants $a, b \in [0, +\infty)$, it is subject to the smallness condition

$$|\mathbf{z}(u, v)| \leq m \quad \text{in } B \quad (18)$$

with a constant $m \in (0, +\infty)$, and it is positive-oriented due to

$$J_{\mathbf{z}}(u, v) := \frac{\partial(x, y)}{\partial(u, v)} > 0 \quad \text{for all } (u, v) \in B. \quad (19)$$

Finally, we require the condition $am < 1$. Then there exist constants $C^{\pm}(a, b, m, r) > 0$ for each number $r \in (0, 1)$, such that

$$C^-(a, b, m, r)|\nabla \mathbf{z}(0)|^{\frac{1+3r}{1-r}} \leq |\nabla \mathbf{z}(w)| \leq C^+(a, b, m, r)|\nabla \mathbf{z}(0)|^{\frac{1-r}{1+3r}}, \quad w \in \overline{B_r}. \quad (20)$$

Proof:

1. We take the parameter $\lambda \in (0, +\infty)$ and deduce the following estimate from (17):

$$\begin{aligned} |\Delta \mathbf{z}(u, v)| &\leq a|\nabla \mathbf{z}(u, v)|^2 + 2\lambda|\nabla \mathbf{z}(u, v)| \frac{b}{2\lambda} \\ &\leq (a + \lambda^2)|\nabla \mathbf{z}(u, v)|^2 + \frac{b^2}{4\lambda^2} \quad \text{in } B. \end{aligned} \quad (21)$$

Then we choose $\lambda = \lambda(a, m) > 0$ so small that $(a + \lambda^2)m < 1$ holds true. Theorem 1 from §2 gives us the following estimate in the disc B_R of radius $R := \frac{1+r}{2} \in (r, 1)$:

$$|\nabla \mathbf{z}(u, v)| \leq C_1(a, b, m, r), \quad w \in B_R. \quad (22)$$

We obtain the linear differential inequality when we insert into (17), namely

$$\begin{aligned} |\Delta \mathbf{z}(u, v)| &\leq (aC_1(a, b, m, r) + b)|\nabla \mathbf{z}(u, v)| \\ &= C_2(a, b, m, r)|\nabla \mathbf{z}(u, v)| \quad \text{in } \overline{B_R}. \end{aligned} \quad (23)$$

2. We utilize the auxiliary function $f(w) := x_w(w) + iy_w(w) : B \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$ and calculate

$$\begin{aligned} |f(w)|^2 &= f(w)\overline{f(w)} = (x_w + iy_w)(x_{\overline{w}} - iy_{\overline{w}}) \\ &= |x_w|^2 + |y_w|^2 - i(x_w y_{\overline{w}} - x_{\overline{w}} y_w) \\ &= \frac{1}{4}|\nabla \mathbf{z}(w)|^2 - \frac{i}{4}\left\{(x_u - ix_v)(y_u + iy_v) - (x_u + ix_v)(y_u - iy_v)\right\} \\ &= \frac{1}{4}|\nabla \mathbf{z}(w)|^2 + \frac{1}{2}\frac{\partial(x, y)}{\partial(u, v)} \quad \text{in } B. \end{aligned}$$

On account of (19), we infer

$$\frac{1}{2}|\nabla \mathbf{z}(w)| < |f(w)| \leq \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}|\nabla \mathbf{z}(w)|, \quad w \in B. \quad (24)$$

3. The relations (22)-(24) imply the inequalities

$$\begin{aligned} |f_{\overline{w}}(w)| &= \frac{1}{4}|\Delta x(w) + i\Delta y(w)| = \frac{1}{4}|\Delta \mathbf{z}(w)| \\ &\leq \frac{1}{4}C_2(a, b, m, r)|\nabla \mathbf{z}(w)| \\ &\leq \frac{1}{2}C_2(a, b, m, r)|f(w)| \quad \text{in } B_R \end{aligned} \quad (25)$$

and

$$0 < |f(w)| \leq \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}|\nabla \mathbf{z}(w)| \leq \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}C_1(a, b, m, r) \quad \text{in } B_R. \quad (26)$$

Therefore, the function $f(w)$ is pseudoholomorphic in B_R with the constants

$$M = M(a, b, m, r) := \frac{1}{2}C_2(a, b, m, r),$$

$$K = K(a, b, m, r) := \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}C_1(a, b, m, r).$$

With the aid of the identities $\frac{R-r}{R+r} = \frac{1-r}{1+3r}$ and $\frac{R+r}{R-r} = \frac{1+3r}{1-r}$, Theorem 1 yields the estimate

$$K^{-\frac{2r}{R-r}} e^{-\frac{8MR(R+r)}{R-r}} |f(0)|^{\frac{1+3r}{1-r}} \leq |f(w)| \leq K^{\frac{2r}{R+r}} e^{8MR} |f(0)|^{\frac{1-r}{1+3r}} \quad (27)$$

in $\overline{B_r}$. Taking (24) into account, we then find the inequality (20) with the a-priori-constants $C^\pm(a, b, m, r) > 0$. q.e.d.

The following class of mappings is particularly important for problems in differential geometry:

Definition 1. *With the constants $a, b \in [0, +\infty)$ and $N \in (0, +\infty]$ being prescribed, we denote the following class of mappings by the symbol $\Gamma(B, a, b, N)$:*

- i) *The function $\mathbf{z}(w) = (x(u, v), y(u, v)) : \overline{B} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^2 \in C^2(B) \cap C^0(\overline{B})$ maps the circumference ∂B topologically and in a positive-orientied way onto the circular line ∂B ;*
- ii) *The mapping $\mathbf{z}$ is origin-preserving which means $\mathbf{z}(0) = (0, 0)$;*
- iii) *We have the condition*

$$J_{\mathbf{z}}(w) = \frac{\partial(x, y)}{\partial(u, v)} > 0 \quad \text{for all } w = u + iv \in B;$$

- iv) *The function $\mathbf{z}$ satisfies the differential inequality*

$$|\Delta \mathbf{z}(u, v)| \leq a|\nabla \mathbf{z}(u, v)|^2 + b|\nabla \mathbf{z}(u, v)| \quad \text{in } B;$$

- v) *Dirichlet's integral of $\mathbf{z}$ fulfills*

$$D(\mathbf{z}) := \iint_B (|\mathbf{z}_u(u, v)|^2 + |\mathbf{z}_v(u, v)|^2) du dv \leq N.$$

Remarks:

1. With the aid of the index-sum formula we easily see that the mapping $\mathbf{z} : \overline{B} \rightarrow \overline{B}$ is topological.
2. In the special case $N = +\infty$, we do not require a bound on Dirichlet's integral $D(\mathbf{z})$.
3. E. Heinz has studied this class of mappings and applied it to differential-geometric problems.

4. Linear systems - appearing in the special case $a = 0$ - have already been considered by P. Berg.

We now prove the profound

Theorem 3. (Distortion estimate of E. Heinz)

Let the parameters $a, b \in [0, +\infty)$, $N \in (0, +\infty)$, and $r \in (0, 1)$ be chosen. Then we have constants $0 < \Theta(a, b, N, r) \leq \Lambda(a, b, N, r) < +\infty$, such that each mapping $\mathbf{z} = \mathbf{z}(w) \in \Gamma(B, a, b, N)$ satisfies the inequality

$$\Theta(a, b, N, r) \leq |\nabla \mathbf{z}(w)| \leq \Lambda(a, b, N, r) \quad \text{for all } w \in \overline{B_r}. \quad (28)$$

Furthermore, the modulus of continuity for the mappings on $\overline{B}$ is estimated according to the formula (29) given below.

Proof:

1. At first, we show the *intermediate statement*: For all functions $\mathbf{z} = \mathbf{z}(w) \in \Gamma(B, a, b, N)$ and all numbers $\delta \in (0, \frac{1}{4})$ we have the estimate

$$|\mathbf{z}(w_1) - \mathbf{z}(w_0)| \leq 4 \sqrt{\frac{\pi N}{\log \frac{1}{\delta}}} \quad (29)$$

for all $w_0, w_1 \in \overline{B}$ with $|w_0 - w_1| \leq \delta$.

We assume

$$4 \sqrt{\frac{\pi N}{\log \frac{1}{\delta}}} < 2$$

without loss of generality, since (29) would be trivial otherwise. We choose an arbitrary point $w_0 \in \overline{B}$. Via the Courant-Lebesgue oscillation lemma we find a number $\delta^* \in [\delta, \sqrt{\delta}]$ such that

$$\int_{\substack{w \in B \\ |w - w_0| = \delta^*}} |d\mathbf{z}(w)| \leq 2 \sqrt{\frac{\pi N}{\log \frac{1}{\delta}}} \quad (30)$$

holds true. We define the following sets

$$\Omega := \{w \in \overline{B} : |w - w_0| \leq \delta^*\}, \quad \gamma := \{w \in \overline{B} : |w - w_0| = \delta^*\}$$

and their topological images $\hat{\Omega} := \mathbf{z}(\Omega)$, $\hat{\gamma} := \mathbf{z}(\gamma)$. Now we distinguish between the following cases:

Case a: $\Omega \subset B$. Then we infer $\partial \hat{\Omega} = \hat{\gamma}$, and the length of $\hat{\gamma}$ satisfies

$$L(\hat{\gamma}) \leq 2 \sqrt{\frac{\pi N}{\log \frac{1}{\delta}}}$$

on account of (30). Since the mapping $\mathbf{z}$ is topological, we obtain

$$|\mathbf{z}(w_1) - \mathbf{z}(w_0)| \leq 2\sqrt{\frac{\pi N}{\log \frac{1}{\delta}}} \quad \text{for all } w_1 \in \Omega. \quad (31)$$

Case b: $\partial\Omega \cap \partial B \neq \emptyset$. Then we have a point $\hat{\mathbf{z}} \in \hat{\gamma} \cap \partial B$, and the relation (30) yields

$$\hat{\gamma} \subset K := \left\{ \zeta \in \mathbb{C} : |\zeta - \hat{\mathbf{z}}| \leq 2\sqrt{\frac{\pi N}{\log \frac{1}{\delta}}} \right\}.$$

On account of $|\hat{\mathbf{z}}| = 1$ and

$$2\sqrt{\frac{\pi N}{\log \frac{1}{\delta}}} < 1$$

the statement $0 \notin K$ holds true, and due to $\delta^* \leq \sqrt{\delta} < \frac{1}{2}$ and $\partial\Omega \cap \partial B \neq \emptyset$ we have $0 \notin \Omega$. Since the mapping $\mathbf{z} : \overline{B} \rightarrow \overline{B}$ is topological and origin-preserving, the relation $\hat{\gamma} \subset K$ implies the inclusion $\hat{\Omega} \subset K$. We obtain the following estimate for all points $w_1 \in \Omega$, namely

$$|\mathbf{z}(w_1) - \mathbf{z}(w_0)| \leq |\mathbf{z}(w_1) - \hat{\mathbf{z}}| + |\hat{\mathbf{z}} - \mathbf{z}(w_0)| \leq 4\sqrt{\frac{\pi N}{\log \frac{1}{\delta}}}. \quad (32)$$

When we additionally note $\delta \leq \delta^*$, the relations (31) and (32) yield the proof of the intermediate statement (29).

2. The function $\mathbf{z} = \mathbf{z}(w) \in \Gamma(B, a, b, N)$ satisfies the differential inequality

$$|\Delta \mathbf{z}(w)| \leq a|\nabla \mathbf{z}(w)|^2 + b|\nabla \mathbf{z}(w)| \leq (a+1)|\nabla \mathbf{z}(w)|^2 + \frac{b^2}{4} \quad \text{in } B. \quad (33)$$

We now choose the number $r \in (0, 1)$ so large that the quantity $\delta := \frac{1-r}{2} > 0$ satisfies both conditions $\delta \in (0, \frac{1}{4})$ and

$$(a+1)4\sqrt{\frac{\pi N}{\log \frac{1}{\delta}}} \leq \frac{1}{2}. \quad (34)$$

We consider an arbitrary point $\tilde{w} \in \overline{B_{1-\delta}} = \overline{B_{\frac{r+1}{2}}}$ and associate the auxiliary function

$$\mathbf{x}(w) := \mathbf{z}(w) - \mathbf{z}(\tilde{w}), \quad w \in \Omega := \left\{ w \in \overline{B} : |w - \tilde{w}| \leq \delta \right\}. \quad (35)$$

On account of (29) and (33), we then have

$$\begin{aligned} |\Delta \mathbf{x}(w)| &\leq (a+1)|\nabla \mathbf{x}(w)|^2 + \frac{b^2}{4} \quad \text{in } \overset{\circ}{\Omega}, \\ \sup_{w \in \Omega} |\mathbf{x}(w)| &\leq 4\sqrt{\frac{\pi N}{\log \frac{1}{\delta}}}. \end{aligned} \quad (36)$$

When we additionally note (34), the gradient estimate of E. Heinz from §2, Theorem 1 yields the inequality

$$\begin{aligned} |\nabla \mathbf{z}(\tilde{w})| &= |\nabla \mathbf{x}(\tilde{w})| \leq \tilde{A}(a, b, N, \delta) \\ &=: \Lambda(a, b, N, r) \quad \text{for all } \tilde{w} \in \overline{B_{\frac{r+1}{2}}}. \end{aligned} \quad (37)$$

Therefore, we have obtained the estimate (28) from above.

3. We now choose the number $r \in (0, 1)$ so large that the quantity $\delta = \frac{1-r}{2}$ satisfies the conditions $\delta \in (0, \frac{1}{8})$ and

$$4\sqrt{\frac{\pi N}{\log \frac{1}{2\delta}}} \leq \frac{1}{2}$$

besides (34). From (29) we deduce

$$|\mathbf{z}(w)| \geq \frac{1}{2} \quad \text{for all } w \in \mathbb{C} \quad \text{with } r = 1 - 2\delta \leq |w| \leq 1. \quad (38)$$

We now consider the curve $\mathbf{y}(t) := \mathbf{z}(tw_0)$, $0 \leq t \leq 1$ associated with a point $w_0 \in \partial B_r$. Then we calculate

$$\frac{1}{2} \leq |\mathbf{z}(w_0)| = |\mathbf{z}(w_0) - \mathbf{z}(0)| \leq \int_0^1 |\mathbf{y}'(t)| dt = |\mathbf{y}'(t_0)| \leq |\nabla \mathbf{z}(t_0 w_0)|$$

with an element $t_0 \in [0, 1]$. Therefore, we have a point

$$w_* := t_0 w_0 \in \overline{B_r} \quad \text{with } |\nabla \mathbf{z}(w_*)| \geq \frac{1}{2}. \quad (39)$$

4. On account of (37), the function $\mathbf{z}$ satisfies the linear differential inequality

$$|\Delta \mathbf{z}(u, v)| \leq (a\Lambda(a, b, N, r) + b)|\nabla \mathbf{z}(u, v)| \quad \text{in } B_{\frac{r+1}{2}}. \quad (40)$$

We apply Heinz's inequality from Theorem 2 (for $a = 0$ and $B \rightarrow B_{\frac{r+1}{2}}$, $B_r \rightarrow B_r$). Then we obtain the following estimate in $\overline{B_r}$

$$C^-(a, b, N, r)|\nabla \mathbf{z}(0)|^{e_-(r)} \leq |\nabla \mathbf{z}(w)| \leq C^+(a, b, N, r)|\nabla \mathbf{z}(0)|^{e_+(r)} \quad (41)$$

with certain exponents $e_{\pm}(r) > 0$ and constants $C^{\pm}(a, b, N, r) > 0$. When we additionally take (39) and (41) into account, we find a constant $\Theta(a, b, N, r) > 0$ such that

$$|\nabla \mathbf{z}(w)| \geq \Theta(a, b, N, r) \quad \text{for all } w \in B_r \quad (42)$$

holds true for arbitrary mappings $\mathbf{z} \in \Gamma(B, a, b, N)$. Consequently, the estimate from below in (28) has also been proved.

q.e.d.

§6 A curvature estimate for minimal surfaces

We can even prove distortion estimates for the class $\Gamma(B, a, b, +\infty)$ of those mappings without a bound for Dirichlet's integral, if $a \in [0, \frac{1}{2})$ holds true. We confine ourselves to the class $\Gamma(B, 0, 0, +\infty)$ of one-to-one harmonic mappings on the unit disc B and begin with the

Proposition 1. (Continuous boundary behavior)

The harmonic mapping $\mathbf{z} = \mathbf{z}(w)$ of the class $\Gamma(B, 0, 0, +\infty)$ may satisfy

$$|\mathbf{z}(e^{i\varphi}) - \mathbf{z}(e^{i\vartheta})| \leq \varepsilon \quad \text{for all } \varphi \in [\vartheta - \delta, \vartheta + \delta] \quad (1)$$

with an angle $\vartheta \in [0, 2\pi)$, a number $\delta \in (0, \frac{\pi}{2})$, and a quantity $\varepsilon > 0$. Then we have the estimate

$$|\mathbf{z}(re^{i\vartheta}) - \mathbf{z}(e^{i\vartheta})| \leq \varepsilon + \frac{4}{\sin^2 \delta} (1 - r) \quad \text{for all } r \in (0, 1). \quad (2)$$

Proof: We invoke Poisson's integral formula

$$\mathbf{z}(re^{i\vartheta}) = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} \frac{1 - r^2}{|e^{i\varphi} - r|^2} \mathbf{z}(e^{i(\vartheta+\varphi)}) d\varphi$$

and obtain the following inequality for all $r \in (0, 1)$:

$$\begin{aligned} |\mathbf{z}(re^{i\vartheta}) - \mathbf{z}(e^{i\vartheta})| &\leq \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} \frac{1 - r^2}{|e^{i\varphi} - r|^2} |\mathbf{z}(e^{i(\vartheta+\varphi)}) - \mathbf{z}(e^{i\vartheta})| d\varphi \\ &= \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{-\delta} \frac{1 - r^2}{|e^{i\varphi} - r|^2} |\mathbf{z}(e^{i(\vartheta+\varphi)}) - \mathbf{z}(e^{i\vartheta})| d\varphi \\ &\quad + \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\delta}^{\delta} \frac{1 - r^2}{|e^{i\varphi} - r|^2} |\mathbf{z}(e^{i(\vartheta+\varphi)}) - \mathbf{z}(e^{i\vartheta})| d\varphi \\ &\quad + \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{\delta}^{\pi} \frac{1 - r^2}{|e^{i\varphi} - r|^2} |\mathbf{z}(e^{i(\vartheta+\varphi)}) - \mathbf{z}(e^{i\vartheta})| d\varphi. \end{aligned}$$

Here we have used

$$\frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} \frac{1 - r^2}{|e^{i\varphi} - r|^2} d\varphi = 1 \quad \text{for all } r \in (0, 1) \quad .$$

Now we observe $|e^{i\varphi} - r| \geq \sin \delta$ for all $\varphi \in [-\pi, -\delta] \cup [\delta, \pi]$ and all $r \in (0, 1)$. We note (1) and infer

$$\begin{aligned}
 |\mathbf{z}(re^{i\vartheta}) - \mathbf{z}(e^{i\vartheta})| &\leq \frac{1}{2\pi} \frac{1-r^2}{\sin^2 \delta} 2 \cdot 2\pi + \varepsilon \leq 2 \frac{(1-r)(1+r)}{\sin^2 \delta} + \varepsilon \\
 &\leq \frac{4}{\sin^2 \delta} (1-r) + \varepsilon \quad \text{for all } r \in (0, 1).
 \end{aligned}$$

q.e.d.

Proposition 2. *Let $\mathbf{z} = \mathbf{z}(w) : \overline{B} \rightarrow \overline{B}$ denote a topological mapping. Then we have an angle $\vartheta_n \in [0, 2\pi)$ for each integer $n \in \mathbb{N}$, such that*

$$|\mathbf{z}(e^{i\varphi}) - \mathbf{z}(e^{i\vartheta_n})| \leq \frac{2\pi}{n} \quad \text{for all } \varphi \in [\vartheta_n - \frac{\pi}{n}, \vartheta_n + \frac{\pi}{n}]. \quad (3)$$

Proof: We partition the circle ∂B into n arcs $\sigma_1, \dots, \sigma_n$ of the equal length $\frac{2\pi}{n}$, and denote their images with respect to the topological mapping $\mathbf{z}$ by $\gamma_k := \mathbf{z}(\sigma_k)$ for $k = 1, \dots, n$. Evidently, their lengths $|\gamma_k|$ fulfill $|\gamma_1| + \dots + |\gamma_n| = 2\pi$. Therefore, we find an index $m \in \{1, \dots, n\}$ with the property $|\gamma_m| \leq \frac{2\pi}{n}$. If $e^{i\vartheta_n}$ with $\vartheta_n \in [0, 2\pi)$ denotes the center of the arc σ_m , the relation (3) is satisfied.

q.e.d.

In 1952, E. Heinz proved the following remarkable result:

Theorem 1. *There exists a universal constant $\Theta > 0$, such that each one-to-one harmonic mapping $\mathbf{z} = \mathbf{z}(w) \in \Gamma(B, 0, 0, +\infty)$ satisfies the inequality*

$$|\nabla \mathbf{z}(0)| \geq \Theta. \quad (4)$$

Proof: We choose the mapping $\mathbf{z} \in \Gamma(B, 0, 0, +\infty)$ and the integer $n \in \mathbb{N}$. According to Proposition 2, we find an angle $\vartheta_n \in [0, 2\pi)$ satisfying (3). Proposition 1 then yields the estimate

$$|\mathbf{z}(re^{i\vartheta_n}) - \mathbf{z}(e^{i\vartheta_n})| \leq \frac{2\pi}{n} + \frac{4}{\sin^2 \frac{\pi}{n}} (1-r) \quad \text{for all } r \in (0, 1). \quad (5)$$

At first, taking the integer $n \in \mathbb{N}$ sufficiently large and afterwards choosing the radius $r \in (0, 1)$ suitably, the right-hand side in (5) becomes less than or equal to $\frac{1}{2}$, and we infer

$$|\mathbf{z}(re^{i\vartheta_n})| \geq |\mathbf{z}(e^{i\vartheta_n})| - |\mathbf{z}(re^{i\vartheta_n}) - \mathbf{z}(e^{i\vartheta_n})| \geq \frac{1}{2}. \quad (6)$$

As in part 3 of the proof for Theorem 3 in §5, we then find a point $w_* \in \overline{B}_r$ satisfying

$$|\nabla \mathbf{z}(w_*)| \geq \frac{1}{2}. \quad (7)$$

We obtain the following estimate via Heinz's inequality from §5 Theorem 2, namely

$$\begin{aligned}
|\nabla \mathbf{z}(0)| &\geq C^+(0, 0, 1, r)^{-\frac{1+3r}{1-r}} |\nabla \mathbf{z}(w_*)|^{\frac{1+3r}{1-r}} \\
&\geq (2C^+(0, 0, 1, r))^{-\frac{1+3r}{1-r}} =: \Theta,
\end{aligned} \tag{8}$$

since the radius $r \in (0, 1)$ has been determined independently of the mapping $\mathbf{z}$. q.e.d.

We now prove the following result with the aid of the uniformization method.

Theorem 2. (Curvature estimate of E. Heinz)

Let the radius $R \in (0, +\infty)$ be chosen arbitrarily and the disc $B_R := \{z = x + iy \in \mathbb{C} : |z| < R\}$ be defined. Then we have a universal constant $M \in (0, +\infty)$, such that all solutions of the minimal surface equation

$$\begin{aligned}
z &= \zeta(x, y) \in C^{2+\alpha}(\overline{B_R}, \mathbb{R}), \quad \alpha \in (0, 1), \\
\mathcal{M}\zeta(x, y) &:= (1 + \zeta_y^2)\zeta_{xx} - 2\zeta_x\zeta_y\zeta_{xy} + (1 + \zeta_x^2)\zeta_{yy} = 0 \quad \text{in } B_R
\end{aligned} \tag{9}$$

satisfy the estimate

$$\kappa_1(0, 0)^2 + \kappa_2(0, 0)^2 \leq \frac{1}{R^2} M \tag{10}$$

for their principal curvatures $\kappa_j(0, 0)$ with $j = 1, 2$ at the point $\mathbf{y}(0, 0)$ of the graph $\mathbf{y}(x, y) := (x, y, \zeta(x, y))$, $(x, y) \in \overline{B_R}$.

Proof:

1. Using the uniformization theorem (compare the subsequent § 8), we introduce isothermal parameters into the Riemannian metric

$$\begin{aligned}
ds^2 &:= |\mathbf{y}_x|^2 dx^2 + 2(\mathbf{y}_x \cdot \mathbf{y}_y) dx dy + |\mathbf{y}_y|^2 dy^2 \\
&= (1 + \zeta_x^2) dx^2 + 2\zeta_x\zeta_y dx dy + (1 + \zeta_y^2) dy^2, \quad (x, y) \in \overline{B_R},
\end{aligned} \tag{11}$$

of the class $C^{1+\alpha}(\overline{B_R})$. We take the uniformizing mapping

$$\begin{aligned}
f(u, v) &= x(u, v) + iy(u, v) : \overline{B} \rightarrow \overline{B_R} \in C^{2+\alpha}(\overline{B}, \overline{B_R}), \\
f(0, 0) &= 0,
\end{aligned} \tag{12}$$

and consider the surface

$$\mathbf{x}(u, v) = \mathbf{y} \circ f(u, v) = (f(u, v), \zeta \circ f(u, v)) = (x(u, v), y(u, v), z(u, v)) \tag{13}$$

of the class $C^{2+\alpha}(\overline{B}, \mathbb{R}^3)$. This surface is subject to the differential equations

$$\begin{aligned}
\Delta \mathbf{x}(u, v) &= 0 \quad \text{in } B, \\
|\mathbf{x}_u| - |\mathbf{x}_v| &= 0 = \mathbf{x}_u \cdot \mathbf{x}_v \quad \text{in } B.
\end{aligned} \tag{14}$$

In particular, the plane mapping

$$g(u, v) := \frac{1}{R} f(u, v), \quad (u, v) \in \overline{B}, \tag{15}$$

belongs to the class $\Gamma(B, 0, 0, +\infty)$. Theorem 1 now yields $|\nabla g(0, 0)| \geq \Theta$ and consequently

$$|\nabla f(0, 0)| \geq \Theta R \quad , \quad (16)$$

with the universal constant $\Theta > 0$.

2. The normal to the surface $\mathbf{y}(x, y)$ in direction $\mathbf{e} = (0, 0, 1)$ is denoted by the symbol

$$\mathbf{Y}(x, y) := \frac{1}{\sqrt{1 + |\nabla \zeta(x, y)|^2}} (-\zeta_x(x, y), -\zeta_y(x, y), 1), \quad (x, y) \in \overline{B_R},$$

and we define $\mathbf{X}(u, v) := \mathbf{Y} \circ f(u, v)$, $(u, v) \in \overline{B}$. According to Theorem 2 from Chapter XI, § 1 the following mapping

$$\mathbf{X} : B \rightarrow S^+ := \left\{ \mathbf{z} = (z_1, z_2, z_3) \in \mathbb{R}^3 : |\mathbf{z}| = 1, z_3 > 0 \right\} \quad (17)$$

is antiholomorphic. We now consider the stereographic projection from the south pole $(0, 0, -1)$, more precisely

$$\sigma = \sigma(\mathbf{z}) : S^+ \rightarrow B \quad \text{conformal.} \quad (18)$$

The mapping $h(u, v) := \sigma \circ \mathbf{X}(u, v)$, $(u, v) \in \overline{B}$ is antiholomorphic and consequently harmonic. Therefore, we find a constant $\Lambda \in (0, +\infty)$ such that

$$|\nabla \mathbf{X}(0, 0)| \leq \Lambda \quad (19)$$

holds true.

3. We now evaluate via considerations from Chapter XI, § 1 as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} \kappa_1(0, 0)^2 + \kappa_2(0, 0)^2 &= -2\kappa_1(0, 0)\kappa_2(0, 0) = -2K(0, 0) \\ &= 2|K(0, 0)| = 2 \frac{|\mathbf{X}_u \wedge \mathbf{X}_v(0, 0)|}{|\mathbf{x}_u \wedge \mathbf{x}_v(0, 0)|} \\ &= 2 \frac{|\nabla \mathbf{X}(0, 0)|^2}{|\nabla \mathbf{x}(0, 0)|^2} \leq 2 \frac{|\nabla \mathbf{X}(0, 0)|^2}{|\nabla f(0, 0)|^2} \\ &\leq 2 \frac{\Lambda^2}{\Theta^2 R^2} = \frac{M}{R^2}. \end{aligned}$$

Here we have set the quantity $M := 2 \frac{\Lambda^2}{\Theta^2}$. q.e.d.

We obtain the following result as a corollary from Theorem 2, namely

Theorem 3. (S. Bernstein)

Let $z = \zeta(x, y) : \mathbb{R}^2 \rightarrow \mathbb{R} \in C^{2+\mu}(\mathbb{R}^2)$ - with $\mu \in (0, 1)$ - denote an entire solution of the minimal surface equation $\mathcal{M}\zeta(x, y) = 0$ in $\mathbb{R}^2$. Then we have coefficients $\alpha, \beta, \gamma \in \mathbb{R}$ such that

$$\zeta(x, y) = \alpha x + \beta y + \gamma \quad \text{in } \mathbb{R}^2$$

is satisfied, which means ζ is an affine-linear function.

Proof: We consider the transition to the limit $R \rightarrow +\infty$ in the estimate (10) and obtain $\kappa_1(0,0) = 0 = \kappa_2(0,0)$. Since this argument is valid at each point of the minimal graph, we infer

$$\kappa_1(x, y) = 0 = \kappa_2(x, y) \quad \text{in } \mathbb{R}^2. \quad (20)$$

Consequently, the surface $\mathbf{y}(x, y) = (x, y, \zeta(x, y))$, $(x, y) \in \mathbb{R}^2$ represents a plane.

q.e.d.

Remarks to Theorem 2 and Theorem 3:

1. We owe the curvature estimate in Theorem 2 to:

E. Heinz: *Über die Lösungen der Minimalflächengleichung*. Nachr. Akad. Wiss. Göttingen, Math.-Phys. Kl. (1952), 51-56.

2. Curvature estimates for surfaces of prescribed mean curvature have been established by:

F. Sauvigny: *A priori estimates of the principle curvatures for immersions of prescribed mean curvature and theorems of Bernstein-type*. Math. Zeitschrift 205 (1990), 567-582.

3. In his thesis, S. Fröhlich has derived curvature estimates for stable solutions of the Euler equations for parametric elliptic functionals - in particular for relative minima. Here we refer the reader to:

S. Fröhlich: *Curvature estimates for μ -stable G -minimal surfaces and theorems of Bernstein-type*. Analysis 22 (2002), 109-130.

§7 Global estimates for conformal mappings with respect to Riemannian metrics

We define the unit disc $E := \{\mathbf{x} = (x^1, x^2) \in \mathbb{R}^2 : |\mathbf{x}| < 1\}$ in the coordinates (x^1, x^2) and the unit disc $B := \{w = u + iv \in \mathbb{C} : |w| < 1\}$ in the coordinates $u + iv \cong (u, v)$. We prescribe the Riemannian metric

$$\begin{aligned} ds^2 &= g_{jk}(x^1, x^2) dx^j dx^k \\ &= g_{11}(x^1, x^2) (dx^1)^2 + 2g_{12}(x^1, x^2) dx^1 dx^2 + g_{22}(x^1, x^2) (dx^2)^2 \end{aligned} \quad (1)$$

on the disc E . Here we use Einstein's summation convention and require the coefficients to satisfy

$$\begin{aligned} g_{jk} &= g_{jk}(x^1, x^2) \in C^{1+\alpha}(E, \mathbb{R}) \quad \text{for } j, k = 1, 2 \quad ; \\ g_{12}(x^1, x^2) &= g_{21}(x^1, x^2) \quad \text{in } E \end{aligned} \quad (2)$$

and

$$\lambda|\xi|^2 \leq g_{jk}(x^1, x^2)\xi^j\xi^k \leq \frac{1}{\lambda}|\xi|^2 \quad (3)$$

for all $\xi = (\xi^1, \xi^2) \in \mathbb{R}^2$ and $(x^1, x^2) \in E$,

with the constants $\alpha, \lambda \in (0, 1)$.

Proposition 1. *The C^2 -diffeomorphic, positive-oriented mapping*

$$\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{x}(u, v) = (x^1(u, v), x^2(u, v))^* : \overline{B} \rightarrow \overline{E} \in C^2(B, \mathbb{R}^2) \cap C^0(\overline{B}, \overline{E})$$

may satisfy the weighted conformality relations

$$x_u^j(u, v)g_{jk}(x^1(u, v), x^2(u, v))x_v^k(u, v) = 0 \quad \text{in } B, \quad (4)$$

$$x_u^j(u, v)g_{jk}(x^1, x^2)x_u^k(u, v) = x_v^j(u, v)g_{jk}(x^1, x^2)x_v^k(u, v) \quad \text{in } B. \quad (5)$$

Then the function $\mathbf{x}$ satisfies the nonlinear elliptic system

$$\Delta x^l + \Gamma_{jk}^l(x_u^j x_u^k + x_v^j x_v^k) = 0 \quad \text{in } B \quad \text{for } l = 1, 2 \quad (6)$$

where we have used the Christoffel symbols

$$\Gamma_{jk}^{li} := \frac{1}{2}g^{li}(g_{ki,x^j} + g_{ij,x^k} - g_{jk,x^i}), \quad j, k, l = 1, 2 \quad (7)$$

with the inverse matrix $(g^{jk})_{j,k=1,2} := (g_{jk})_{j,k=1,2}^{-1}$. Therefore, $\mathbf{x}$ represents a harmonic mapping of the disc $\{B, (\delta_{jk})\}$ onto the disc $\{E, (g_{jk})\}$, with the unit matrix $(\delta_{jk})_{j,k=1,2}$.

Proof: We derive the equation (4) with respect to the variable v and the equation (5) with respect to the variable u :

$$x_{uv}^j g_{jk} x_v^k + x_u^j g_{jk} x_{vv}^k + x_u^j g_{jk, x^l} x_v^k x_v^l = 0,$$

$$x_{uv}^j g_{jk} x_v^k = x_u^j g_{jk} x_{uu}^k + \frac{1}{2} x_u^j g_{jk, x^l} x_u^k x_u^l - \frac{1}{2} x_u^l g_{jk, x^l} x_v^j x_v^k.$$

When we insert the second equation into the first, we obtain

$$x_u^j g_{jk} \Delta x^k + x_u^j g_{jk, x^l} x_v^k x_v^l + \frac{1}{2} x_u^j g_{jk, x^l} x_u^k x_u^l - \frac{1}{2} x_u^l g_{jk, x^l} x_v^j x_v^k = 0$$

as well as

$$x_u^j g_{jk} \Delta x^k + \frac{1}{2} x_u^j (g_{kj, x^l} + g_{jl, x^k} - g_{lk, x^j}) (x_u^k x_u^l + x_v^k x_v^l) = 0.$$

Interchanging the variables u with v in these calculations, we deduce analogously

$$x_v^j g_{jk} \Delta x^k + \frac{1}{2} x_v^j (g_{kj, x^l} + g_{jl, x^k} - g_{lk, x^j}) (x_u^k x_u^l + x_v^k x_v^l) = 0.$$

Since the vectors $\mathbf{x}_u$ and $\mathbf{x}_v$ are linear independent, we obtain

$$g_{jk}\Delta x^k + \frac{1}{2}(g_{kj,x^l} + g_{jl,x^k} - g_{lk,x^j})(x_u^k x_u^l + x_v^k x_v^l) = 0, \quad j = 1, 2.$$

Multiplication by the inverse matrix (g^{ij}) finally yields

$$\delta_k^i \Delta x^k + \frac{1}{2}g^{ij}(g_{kj,x^l} + g_{jl,x^k} - g_{lk,x^j})(x_u^k x_u^l + x_v^k x_v^l) = 0, \quad i = 1, 2$$

and consequently

$$\Delta x^i + \Gamma_{lk}^i(x_u^k x_u^l + x_v^k x_v^l) = 0, \quad i = 1, 2. \quad \text{q.e.d.}$$

We have the following convention for our class of mappings, namely

$$\mathbf{x}(0, 0) = (0, 0)^*. \quad (8)$$

Furthermore, we define the positive-definite matrix

$$G(x^1, x^2) := (g_{jk}(x^1, x^2))_{j,k=1,2} : E \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{2 \times 2}. \quad (9)$$

Via the principal axes transformation, we determine its square root $G^{\frac{1}{2}}(x^1, x^2)$ - by carrying out this operation for the positive eigenvalues. Then we calculate

$$\begin{aligned} \left\{ |G^{\frac{1}{2}}(\mathbf{x}(u, v))| |(\mathbf{x}_u, \mathbf{x}_v)| \right\}^2 &= \left| \left(G^{\frac{1}{2}}(\mathbf{x}(u, v)) \circ \mathbf{x}_u, G^{\frac{1}{2}}(\mathbf{x}(u, v)) \circ \mathbf{x}_v \right) \right|^2 \\ &= \left| \left(\left(G^{\frac{1}{2}}(\mathbf{x}) \circ \mathbf{x}_u \right)^*, \left(G^{\frac{1}{2}}(\mathbf{x}) \circ \mathbf{x}_v \right)^* \right) \circ \left(G^{\frac{1}{2}}(\mathbf{x}) \circ \mathbf{x}_u, G^{\frac{1}{2}}(\mathbf{x}) \circ \mathbf{x}_v \right) \right| \\ &= \left| \left(\mathbf{x}_u^* \circ G(\mathbf{x}) \circ \mathbf{x}_u, \mathbf{x}_u^* \circ G(\mathbf{x}) \circ \mathbf{x}_v \right), \left(\mathbf{x}_v^* \circ G(\mathbf{x}) \circ \mathbf{x}_u, \mathbf{x}_v^* \circ G(\mathbf{x}) \circ \mathbf{x}_v \right) \right| \\ &= \frac{1}{4} \left\{ \mathbf{x}_u^* \circ G(\mathbf{x}) \circ \mathbf{x}_u + \mathbf{x}_v^* \circ G(\mathbf{x}) \circ \mathbf{x}_v \right\}^2 \quad \text{in } B. \end{aligned}$$

This implies

$$|G^{\frac{1}{2}}(\mathbf{x}(u, v))| |(\mathbf{x}_u, \mathbf{x}_v)| = \frac{1}{2} \left\{ \mathbf{x}_u^* \circ G(\mathbf{x}) \circ \mathbf{x}_u + \mathbf{x}_v^* \circ G(\mathbf{x}) \circ \mathbf{x}_v \right\} \quad (10)$$

for all $(u, v) \in B$. With the aid of (3), we obtain

$$\frac{\lambda^2}{2} |\nabla \mathbf{x}(u, v)|^2 \leq \frac{\partial(x^1, x^2)}{\partial(u, v)} \leq \frac{1}{2\lambda^2} |\nabla \mathbf{x}(u, v)|^2 \quad \text{for all } (u, v) \in B. \quad (11)$$

We define the discs $E_r := \{\mathbf{x} \in E : |\mathbf{x}| < r\}$ for the radii $r \in (0, 1)$, and similarly $B_r := \{w \in B : |w| < r\}$. Then we introduce the monotonic function

$$\gamma(r) := \max_{j,k=1,2} \|g_{jk}\|_{C^{1+\alpha}(\overline{E_r})}, \quad r \in (0, 1). \quad (12)$$

Theorem 1. (Inner estimates for conformal mappings)

Associated to the metric (1)-(3), let the mapping $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{x}(u, v) : \overline{B} \rightarrow \overline{E} \in C^2(B) \cap C^0(\overline{B})$ represent a weighted conformal, positive-orientied C^2 -diffeomorphism with (4), (5), and (8). For each number $r \in (0, 1)$ given, we then have a constant $\Theta = \Theta(r, \lambda, \gamma(\frac{r+1}{2})) > 0$ and a constant $\Lambda = \Lambda(r, \lambda, \alpha, \gamma(\frac{r+1}{2})) < +\infty$, such that the estimates

$$J_{\mathbf{x}}(u, v) = \frac{\partial(x^1, x^2)}{\partial(u, v)} \geq \Theta \quad \text{for all } (u, v) \in B_r \quad (13)$$

and

$$\|\mathbf{x}\|_{C^{2+\alpha}(B_r, \mathbb{R}^2)} \leq \Lambda \quad (14)$$

hold true. Furthermore, the class of mappings above is equicontinuous.

Proof: We follow the arguments in the proof of Theorem 3 from §5. On account of (11), we comprehend

$$D(\mathbf{x}) \leq \frac{2}{\lambda^2} \iint_B \frac{\partial(x^1, x^2)}{\partial(u, v)} du dv = \frac{2\pi}{\lambda^2}. \quad (15)$$

Therefore, we can estimate the modulus of continuity in $\overline{B}$ parallel to part 1 of the proof quoted above. From (6), (7), (3), and (12) we deduce the subsequent differential inequality for an arbitrary radius $r \in (0, 1)$, namely

$$|\Delta \mathbf{x}(u, v)| \leq a |\nabla \mathbf{x}(u, v)|^2 \quad \text{in } B_{\frac{r+1}{2}}, \quad (16)$$

with the constant $a = a(\lambda, \gamma(\frac{r+1}{2})) \in (0, +\infty)$. Then we estimate $|\nabla \mathbf{x}(u, v)|$ in $B_{r+\varepsilon}$ from above for sufficiently small numbers $\varepsilon > 0$, and the transition to a linear differential inequality is possible. On account of (11) we finally obtain the constant Θ from (13), as in part 3 and 4 of the proof quoted above. We further deduce (14) via potential-theoretic estimates. q.e.d.

With the complex derivatives

$$x_w^j = \frac{1}{2}(x_u^j - ix_v^j), \quad x_{\overline{w}}^j = \frac{1}{2}(x_u^j + ix_v^j), \quad j = 1, 2$$

we rewrite the *weighted conformality relations* into the *complex form*

$$x_w^j(u, v) g_{jk}(x^1(u, v), x^2(u, v)) x_w^k(u, v) = 0 \quad \text{in } B. \quad (17)$$

Furthermore, we modify the equation (6) and obtain *harmonic mappings in the complex form*:

$$x_{w\overline{w}}^l + \frac{1}{2} \Gamma_{jk}^l (x_w^j x_{\overline{w}}^k + x_{\overline{w}}^j x_w^k) = 0 \quad \text{in } B; \quad l = 1, 2. \quad (18)$$

We easily infer the following result from the weighted conformality relation.

Proposition 2. (Elimination lemma)

We have the constants $\mu(\lambda) > 1$ and $0 < \mu_1(\lambda) \leq \mu_2(\lambda) < +\infty$, such that all weighted conformal mappings (4) and (5), with respect to the arbitrary Riemannian metric (1)-(3), satisfy the following inequalities:

$$\frac{1}{\mu(\lambda)} |x_w^1(w)| \leq |x_w^2(w)| \leq \mu(\lambda) |x_w^1(w)|, \quad w \in B, \quad (19)$$

and

$$\mu_1(\lambda) |x_w^1(w)|^2 \leq \frac{\partial(x^1, x^2)}{\partial(u, v)} \leq \frac{1}{2} |\nabla \mathbf{x}(u, v)|^2 \leq \mu_2(\lambda) |x_w^1(w)|^2, \quad w \in B. \quad (20)$$

Proof:

1. The weighted conformality relation (17) yields

$$g_{11}(x^1, x^2) x_w^1 x_w^1 = -2g_{12}(x^1, x^2) x_w^1 x_w^2 - g_{22}(x^1, x^2) x_w^2 x_w^2 \quad \text{in } B.$$

With the aid of (3) we deduce

$$\begin{aligned} \lambda |x_w^1|^2 &\leq |g_{11}| |x_w^1|^2 \leq 2|g_{12}| |x_w^1| |x_w^2| + |g_{22}| |x_w^2|^2 \\ &\leq 2 \left(\sqrt{\frac{\lambda}{2}} |x_w^1| \right) \left(\sqrt{\frac{2}{\lambda}} |x_w^2| \right) + \frac{1}{\lambda} |x_w^2|^2 \\ &\leq \frac{\lambda}{2} |x_w^1|^2 + \left(\frac{2}{\lambda} \frac{1}{\lambda^2} + \frac{1}{\lambda} \right) |x_w^2|^2 \\ &= \frac{\lambda}{2} |x_w^1|^2 + \frac{2 + \lambda^2}{\lambda^3} |x_w^2|^2 \end{aligned}$$

and consequently

$$|x_w^1|^2 \leq \frac{4 + 2\lambda^2}{\lambda^4} |x_w^2|^2, \quad w \in B.$$

Similarly, we find

$$|x_w^2|^2 \leq \frac{4 + 2\lambda^2}{\lambda^4} |x_w^1|^2, \quad w \in B,$$

by resolving the weighted conformality relation (17) with respect to $g_{22}(x^1, x^2) x_w^2 x_w^2$. Setting $\mu(\lambda) := \frac{1}{\lambda^2} \sqrt{4 + 2\lambda^2}$ we obtain (19).

2. We now estimate

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{1}{2} |\nabla \mathbf{x}(u, v)|^2 &= 2(|x_w^1(w)|^2 + |x_w^2(w)|^2) \\ &\leq 2(1 + \mu(\lambda)^2) |x_w^1(w)|^2 \\ &= \mu_2(\lambda) |x_w^1(w)|^2, \quad w \in B, \end{aligned}$$

with $\mu_2(\lambda) := 2(1 + \mu(\lambda)^2)$. Taking (11) into account, we find

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\partial(x^1, x^2)}{\partial(u, v)} &\geq \frac{\lambda^2}{2} |\nabla \mathbf{x}(u, v)|^2 = 2\lambda^2 (|x_w^1(w)|^2 + |x_w^2(w)|^2) \\ &\geq 2\lambda^2 \left(1 + \frac{1}{\mu(\lambda)^2}\right) |x_w^1(w)|^2 = \mu_1(\lambda) |x_w^1(w)|^2, \quad w \in B, \end{aligned}$$

with $\mu_1(\lambda) := 2\lambda^2(1 + \frac{1}{\mu(\lambda)^2}) > 0$. Therefore, the relation (20) has been shown. q.e.d.

We now prove the important

Theorem 2. (Global estimates for conformal mappings)

The metric ds^2 from (1)-(3) with the coefficients $g_{jk}(x^1, x^2) \in C^{1+\alpha}(\overline{E}, \mathbb{R})$ for $j, k = 1, 2$ may be given, and we consider the weighted conformal, positive-oriented C^2 -diffeomorphism

$$\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{x}(u, v) = (x^1(u, v), x^2(u, v))^* : \overline{B} \rightarrow \overline{E} \in C^2(B, \mathbb{R}^2) \cap C^1(\overline{B}, \overline{E}) \quad (21)$$

from (4), (5), and (8). Then we have the regularity property $\mathbf{x} \in C^{2+\alpha}(\overline{B}, \mathbb{R}^2)$ and the following a priori estimates

$$J_{\mathbf{x}}(u, v) \geq \Theta \quad \text{for all } (u, v) \in \overline{B} \quad (22)$$

and

$$\|\mathbf{x}\|_{C^{2+\alpha}(\overline{B}, \mathbb{R}^2)} \leq \Lambda, \quad (23)$$

with the constants $\Theta = \Theta(\lambda, \alpha, \gamma(1)) > 0$ and $\Lambda = \Lambda(\lambda, \alpha, \gamma(1)) < +\infty$; here the function $\gamma(r)$ is defined in (12).

Proof:

1. On the circular line ∂E we consider the tangential vector-field

$$\mathbf{t}(x^1, x^2) := (-x^2, x^1)^* : \partial E \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^2$$

and the constant vector-field $\mathbf{e} = (1, 0)^*$. Furthermore, let

$$\mathbf{a}(x^1, x^2) = (a^1(x^1, x^2), a^2(x^1, x^2))^* : \partial E \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^2$$

denote a vector-field of length 1 with respect to the metric ds^2 , which means

$$a^j(x^1, x^2) g_{jk}(x^1, x^2) a^k(x^1, x^2) = 1 \quad \text{on } \partial E. \quad (24)$$

We choose $\mathbf{a}(x^1, x^2)$ such that its oriented angle to the tangential vector $\mathbf{t}(x^1, x^2)$ in the Riemannian metric coincides with the Euclidean angle between $\mathbf{e}$ and $\mathbf{t}(x^1, x^2)$. With the symbol

$$\mathbf{b}(x^1, x^2) = (b^1(x^1, x^2), b^2(x^1, x^2))^* : \partial E \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^2$$

we denote the unit vector-field orthogonal to $\mathbf{a}(x^1, x^2)$ in the Riemannian metric ds^2 , which is oriented due to

$$\det(\mathbf{a}(x^1, x^2), \mathbf{b}(x^1, x^2)) = \begin{vmatrix} a^1(x^1, x^2) & b^1(x^1, x^2) \\ a^2(x^1, x^2) & b^2(x^1, x^2) \end{vmatrix} > 0 \quad \text{on } \partial E. \quad (25)$$

The weighted conformal mapping $\mathbf{x}(u, v)$ then possesses the following *free boundary condition*

$$(\mathbf{x}_u(w), \mathbf{x}_v(w)) = \nu(w)(\mathbf{a}(\mathbf{x}(w)), \mathbf{b}(\mathbf{x}(w))), \quad w \in \partial B, \quad (26)$$

with the function $\nu(w) : \partial B \rightarrow (0, +\infty)$. Finally, we find a function $\varphi = \varphi(x^1, x^2) : \partial E \rightarrow \mathbb{R} \in C^{1+\alpha}(\partial E)$, such that

$$\begin{pmatrix} a^1(x^1, x^2) & b^1(x^1, x^2) \\ a^2(x^1, x^2) & b^2(x^1, x^2) \end{pmatrix} \circ \begin{pmatrix} \cos \varphi(x^1, x^2) & -\sin \varphi(x^1, x^2) \\ \sin \varphi(x^1, x^2) & \cos \varphi(x^1, x^2) \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} * & 0 \\ * & * \end{pmatrix} \quad (27)$$

holds true on ∂E .

2. We now utilize the Schwarzian integral formula from Theorem 2 in §2 of Chapter IX, namely

$$F(z) := \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_0^{2\pi} \frac{e^{it} + z}{e^{it} - z} \varphi(e^{it}) dt, \quad z = x^1 + ix^2 \in E, \quad (28)$$

with the function $\varphi \in C^{1+\alpha}(\partial E)$ defined in part 1. Now the function $F(z)$ is holomorphic in E , and via potential-theoretic methods (compare Theorem 3 in Chapter IX, §4) we see

$$F(z) \in C^{1+\alpha}(\overline{E}, \mathbb{C}), \quad \|F\|_{C^{1+\alpha}(\overline{E})} \leq C(\alpha) \|\varphi\|_{C^{1+\alpha}(\partial E)}. \quad (29)$$

Furthermore, F satisfies the boundary condition

$$\operatorname{Re} F(z) = \varphi(z) \quad \text{for all } z \in \partial E. \quad (30)$$

The function

$$f(z) := \exp\{iF(z)\}, \quad z \in \overline{E} \quad (31)$$

of the class $C^{1+\alpha}(\overline{E}, \mathbb{C} \setminus \{0\})$ is consequently subject to the following boundary condition

$$f(z) = \varrho(z) e^{i\varphi(z)}, \quad z \in \partial E, \quad (32)$$

with the positive real function

$$\varrho(z) := e^{-\operatorname{Im} F(z)}, \quad z \in \partial E. \quad (33)$$

3. From (32) we deduce the following boundary condition for the function $y(w) := x_w^1(w)f(\mathbf{x}(w)) : \overline{B} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$, namely

$$\begin{aligned} y(w) &= x_w^1(w)f(\mathbf{x}(w)) = \frac{1}{2}(x_u^1(w) - ix_v^1(w))\varrho(\mathbf{x}(w))e^{i\varphi(\mathbf{x}(w))} \\ &= \frac{\varrho(\mathbf{x}(w))}{2}(x_u^1(w) - ix_v^1(w))(\cos \varphi(\mathbf{x}(w)) + i \sin \varphi(\mathbf{x}(w))) \end{aligned}$$

for all points $w \in \partial B$. From (26) and (27) we infer

$$\begin{aligned} \operatorname{Im} y(w) &= \frac{\varrho(\mathbf{x}(w))}{2}(x_u^1(w) \sin \varphi(\mathbf{x}(w)) - x_v^1(w) \cos \varphi(\mathbf{x}(w))) \\ &= \frac{\nu(w)\varrho(\mathbf{x}(w))}{2}(a^1(\mathbf{x}(w)) \sin \varphi(\mathbf{x}(w)) - b^1(\mathbf{x}(w)) \cos \varphi(\mathbf{x}(w))) \\ &= 0 \quad \text{for all } w \in \partial B. \end{aligned} \tag{34}$$

Furthermore, we calculate

$$y_{\overline{w}} = x_{w\overline{w}}^1 f(x^1, x^2) + x_w^1 f_{x^1}(x^1, x^2) x_{\overline{w}}^1 + x_w^1 f_{x^2}(x^1, x^2) x_{\overline{w}}^2 \quad \text{in } B.$$

Together with the relations (18), (19), and (29), we arrive at the differential inequality

$$|y_{\overline{w}}(w)| \leq a|y(w)|^2, \quad w \in B, \tag{35}$$

with a constant $a = a(\lambda, \alpha, \gamma(1)) \in (0, +\infty)$.

4. As in §3 we transform the unit disc E onto the upper half-plane $\mathbb{C}^+$ via the mapping $g : \mathbb{C}^+ \rightarrow E$ and apply the reflection

$$\hat{\mathbf{x}}(w) = (\hat{x}^1(w), \hat{x}^2(w)) := \begin{cases} \mathbf{x} \circ g(w), & \operatorname{Im} w > 0 \\ \mathbf{x} \circ g(\overline{w}), & \operatorname{Im} w < 0 \end{cases}. \tag{36}$$

From (15) we infer a growth condition for Dirichlet's integral of $\hat{\mathbf{x}}(w)$ described in §2, Proposition 2 and 3. Here we utilize the Courant-Lebesgue lemma, estimate the area by the length of the boundary curve via the isoperimetric inequality, and obtain a growth condition for Dirichlet's integral on account of (11).

Similar to Proposition 4 and 5 in §2, we now estimate the oscillation of $\hat{\mathbf{x}}(w)$ on discs in the interior. Then we obtain the following estimates with the notations applied there:

$$\begin{aligned} 2 \int_{\partial B_{\vartheta\lambda(\vartheta)}(w_0)} |\operatorname{Re}(\hat{x}_w^j(w) dw)| &= \int_{\partial B_{\vartheta\lambda(\vartheta)}(w_0)} |d\hat{x}^j(w)| \leq \int_{\partial B_{\vartheta\lambda(\vartheta)}(w_0)} |d\hat{\mathbf{x}}(w)| \\ &\leq \frac{C(\lambda)}{\sqrt{-\log \vartheta}} \quad \text{for } j = 1, 2. \end{aligned} \tag{37}$$

Now we have functions $\varrho^\pm = \varrho^\pm(x^1, x^2) : \mathbb{C}^+ \rightarrow \mathbb{C} \setminus \mathbb{R}$ depending on the metric ds^2 , such that

$$\hat{x}_w^2(w) = \varrho^\pm(\hat{\mathbf{x}}(w))\hat{x}_w^1(w) \quad \text{for } w \in \mathbb{C} \setminus \mathbb{R} \quad \text{with } \pm \operatorname{Im} w > 0 \quad (38)$$

holds true (compare the formulas (5) and (6) in §9). Consequently, we have

$$2 \int_{\partial B_{\vartheta\lambda(\vartheta)}(w_0)} |\operatorname{Re}(\hat{x}_w^1(w) dw)| + 2 \int_{\partial B_{\vartheta\lambda(\vartheta)}(w_0)} |\operatorname{Re}(\varrho^\pm(\hat{\mathbf{x}}(w))\hat{x}_w^1(w) dw)| \leq \frac{2C(\lambda)}{\sqrt{-\log \vartheta}},$$

which implies

$$\int_{\partial B_{\vartheta\lambda(\vartheta)}(w_0)} |\hat{x}_w^1(w) dw| \leq \frac{\tilde{C}(\lambda)}{\sqrt{-\log \vartheta}} \quad . \quad (39)$$

5. Now we consider the reflected derivative function

$$z(w) := \begin{cases} y \circ g(w) = x_w^1(g(w))f(\hat{\mathbf{x}}(w)), & \operatorname{Im} w > 0 \\ \bar{y} \circ g(\bar{w}) = x_{\bar{w}}^1(g(\bar{w}))\bar{f}(\hat{\mathbf{x}}(w)), & \operatorname{Im} w < 0 \end{cases}, \quad (40)$$

and z is continuous due to the boundary condition (34). With the aid of (39) and (29), we then obtain an estimate for the Cauchy integral of $z(w)$ - as described in Proposition 4 and 5 of §2. We apply the method of Theorem 1 from §3 and find a constant $\tilde{A}(\lambda, \alpha, \beta, \gamma(1)) < +\infty$ satisfying

$$\|y\|_{C^{1+\beta}(\bar{B})} \leq \tilde{A}(\lambda, \alpha, \beta, \gamma(1)) \quad \text{for all } \beta \in (0, 1) \quad (41)$$

on account of (35). We still observe (19), and the system (6) together with potential-theoretic methods yield the inequality

$$\|\mathbf{x}\|_{C^{2+\alpha}(\bar{B}, \mathbb{R}^2)} \leq A \quad (42)$$

with the a-priori-constant $A = A(\lambda, \alpha, \gamma(1))$. Finally, we apply Theorem 1 from §5 to the nonvanishing function $y(w)$, $w \in \bar{B}$. The methods of proof for Theorem 3 from §5 provide a constant $\Theta = \Theta(\lambda, \alpha, \gamma(1)) > 0$ satisfying

$$J_{\mathbf{x}}(u, v) \geq \Theta \quad \text{for all } (u, v) \in \bar{B}, \quad (43)$$

on account of (20). This completes the proof of our theorem. q.e.d.

Remark: When the condition $g_{jk}(x^1, x^2) = \delta_{jk}$ is valid in the neighborhood of the circular line ∂E for the Riemannian metric, we can reflect the mapping $\mathbf{x}$ at the circumference: Then we do not need the Schwarzian integral formula (28).

§8 Introduction of conformal parameters into a Riemannian metric

We continue our deliberations from § 7 and quote those results by adding the symbol *. We shall introduce conformal parameters into the metric ds^2 from (1)*, (2)*, (3)* of the class $C^{1+\alpha}(\overline{E})$. This means solving the system (4)*, (5)* of the weighted conformality relations and transferring the metric ds^2 into the isothermal form

$$ds^2 = \sigma(u, v)(du^2 + dv^2) \quad \text{in } \overline{B}, \quad \sigma(u, v) > 0 \quad \text{in } \overline{B}. \quad (1)$$

At first, we achieve this aim for metrics ds^2 whose coefficients in the $C^{1+\alpha}(\overline{E})$ -norm have a sufficiently small deviation from the isothermal metric

$$\begin{aligned} dr^2 &= \varrho(x^1, x^2) \delta_{jk} dx^j dx^k \quad \text{in } \overline{E}, \\ \varrho(x^1, x^2) &: \overline{E} \rightarrow (0, +\infty) \in C^{1+\alpha}(\overline{E}). \end{aligned} \quad (2)$$

We define the surface element of ds^2 by

$$\begin{aligned} g(x^1, x^2) &:= (\det G(x^1, x^2))^{\frac{1}{2}} \\ &= \sqrt{g_{11}(x^1, x^2)g_{22}(x^1, x^2) - g_{12}(x^1, x^2)^2} \quad \text{in } \overline{E}. \end{aligned} \quad (3)$$

In order to render the subsequent calculations into a more simple form, we set $(x^1, x^2) = (x, y) = z \in \overline{E}$ and

$$G(x^1, x^2) = (g_{jk}(x^1, x^2))_{j,k=1,2} = \begin{pmatrix} a(x, y) & b(x, y) \\ b(x, y) & c(x, y) \end{pmatrix} \quad \text{in } \overline{E}. \quad (4)$$

We shall construct a positive-oriented diffeomorphism

$$w(z) = u(x, y) + iv(x, y) : \overline{E} \rightarrow \overline{\Omega} \in C^{2+\alpha}(\overline{E}, \mathbb{C}) \quad (5)$$

onto a bounded, simply connected domain $\Omega \subset \mathbb{C}$ with the inverse mapping

$$z = z(w) = x(u, v) + iy(u, v) : \overline{\Omega} \rightarrow \overline{E} \in C^{2+\alpha}(\overline{\Omega}, \mathbb{C}), \quad (6)$$

such that the metric ds^2 is transferred into the isothermal form

$$ds^2 = \sigma(u, v)(du^2 + dv^2) \quad \text{in } \overline{\Omega}. \quad (7)$$

We calculate

$$\begin{aligned} ds^2 &= a dx^2 + 2b dx dy + c dy^2 \\ &= \frac{1}{a} \{ a^2 dx^2 + 2ab dx dy + ac dy^2 \} \\ &= \frac{1}{a} \{ a dx + (b + ig) dy \} \{ a dx + (b - ig) dy \}. \end{aligned} \quad (8)$$

Now we look for a complex, diffeomorphic primitive function

$$w = w(z) : \overline{E} \rightarrow \overline{\Omega} \in C^{2+\alpha}(\overline{E}, \mathbb{C}) \quad ,$$

such that

$$a \, dx + (b + ig) \, dy = \varrho(z) \, dw \quad \text{in } \overline{E} \quad (9)$$

is correct, with a function $\varrho \in C^{1+\alpha}(\overline{E}, \mathbb{C} \setminus \{0\})$. Then we infer

$$a \, dx + (b - ig) \, dy = \overline{\varrho(z)} \, d\overline{w} \quad \text{in } \overline{E}, \quad (10)$$

and the relations (8)-(10) provide the desired isothermal form

$$\begin{aligned} ds^2 &= \frac{1}{a} \varrho \, dw \, \overline{\varrho} \, d\overline{w} = \frac{|\varrho(z)|^2}{a(z)} \, dw \, d\overline{w} = \lambda(w) (du^2 + dv^2) \\ \text{with } \lambda(w) &:= \frac{|\varrho(z(w))|^2}{a(z(w))} : \overline{\Omega} \rightarrow (0, +\infty) \in C^{1+\alpha}(\overline{\Omega}). \end{aligned} \quad (11)$$

The formula (9) is equivalent to the system

$$\varrho(z) \frac{\partial}{\partial x} w(z) = a(z), \quad \varrho(z) \frac{\partial}{\partial y} w(z) = b(z) + ig(z) \quad \text{in } \overline{E} \quad ,$$

and consequently to

$$\begin{aligned} 2\varrho \frac{\partial}{\partial z} w &= \varrho \frac{\partial}{\partial x} w - i\varrho \frac{\partial}{\partial y} w = a + g - ib, \\ 2\varrho \frac{\partial}{\partial \overline{z}} w &= \varrho \frac{\partial}{\partial x} w + i\varrho \frac{\partial}{\partial y} w = a - g + ib \quad \text{in } \overline{E}, \end{aligned}$$

and to the equations

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\partial}{\partial \overline{z}} w(z) &= \frac{1}{2\varrho(z)} (a(z) - g(z) + ib(z)), \\ \frac{1}{2\varrho(z)} &= \frac{1}{a(z) + g(z) - ib(z)} \frac{\partial}{\partial z} w(z) \quad \text{in } \overline{E} \end{aligned}$$

as well. When we insert the second relation into the first, we obtain the following complex equation equivalent to (9), namely

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial \overline{z}} w(z) - \frac{a(z) - g(z) + ib(z)}{a(z) + g(z) - ib(z)} \frac{\partial}{\partial z} w(z) = 0 \quad \text{in } \overline{E}.$$

We now define

$$q(z) := \frac{a(z) - g(z) + ib(z)}{a(z) + g(z) - ib(z)}, \quad z \in \overline{E}. \quad (12)$$

We observe

$$q(z) = 0 \quad \Leftrightarrow \quad b(z) = 0, \quad a(z) = c(z) \quad \text{for a point } z \in \overline{E}, \quad (13)$$

and

$$\begin{aligned} |q(z)| &= \sqrt{\frac{(a-g)^2 + b^2}{(a+g)^2 + b^2}} = \sqrt{\frac{(a+g)^2 + b^2 - 4ag}{(a+g)^2 + b^2}} \\ &= \sqrt{1 - 4\frac{ag}{(a+g)^2 + b^2}} < 1 \quad \text{for all } z \in \overline{E}. \end{aligned} \quad (14)$$

We now have to solve *Beltrami's differential equation in the complex form*

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial \bar{z}} w(z) - q(z) \frac{\partial}{\partial z} w(z) = 0, \quad z \in \overline{E}. \quad (15)$$

Here we utilize *Cauchy's integral operator* from Definition 5 in Chapter IV, § 4

$$T_E[f](z) := -\frac{1}{\pi} \iint_E \frac{f(\zeta)}{\zeta - z} d\xi d\eta, \quad z \in \overline{E} \quad (16)$$

with $\zeta = \xi + i\eta$. Here the function f lies in the Banach space $\mathcal{B} := C^{1+\alpha}(\overline{E}, \mathbb{C})$ endowed with the norm

$$\|f\| := \sup_{z \in E} \left\{ |f(z)| + |\nabla f(z)| \right\} + \sup_{\substack{z_1, z_2 \in E \\ z_1 \neq z_2}} \frac{|\nabla f(z_1) - \nabla f(z_2)|}{|z_1 - z_2|^\alpha}. \quad (17)$$

In the book of I. N. Vekua [V], namely Theorem 1.33 of § 8 in Chapter I, the following inequality is proved by potential-theoretic means:

$$\|T_E[f]\|_{C^{2+\alpha}(\overline{E})} \leq C_1(\alpha) \|f\|, \quad f \in \mathcal{B}. \quad (18)$$

As in Proposition 3 from Chapter IV, § 5 we define *Vekua's integral operator*

$$\Pi_E[f](z) := \lim_{\varepsilon \rightarrow 0+} \left\{ -\frac{1}{\pi} \iint_{\substack{\zeta \in E \\ |\zeta - z| > \varepsilon}} \frac{f(\zeta)}{(\zeta - z)^2} d\xi d\eta \right\}, \quad z \in \overline{E}. \quad (19)$$

According to the Theorem of I. N. Vekua given above, we have the estimate

$$\|\Pi_E[f]\| \leq C_2(\alpha) \|f\|, \quad f \in \mathcal{B}, \quad (20)$$

with a constant $C_2(\alpha) \in (0, +\infty)$. Proposition 4 in Chapter IV, § 5 provides the identities

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial \bar{z}} \{T_E[f](z)\} = f(z), \quad \frac{\partial}{\partial z} \{T_E[f](z)\} = \Pi_E[f](z), \quad z \in \overline{E}. \quad (21)$$

In order to prove (20), we apply Theorem 4 from Chapter IX, § 4 to the function $\frac{\partial}{\partial z} f$. We recall the identity

$$T_E\left[\frac{\partial}{\partial\zeta}f\right](z) = \Pi_E[f](z) - \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{\partial E} \frac{f(\zeta)}{\zeta^2(\zeta - z)} d\zeta, \quad z \in E$$

from Proposition 5 in Chapter IV, § 5; and we still have to estimate the curvilinear integral in the $C^{1+\alpha}(\overline{E})$ -norm. The latter represents a holomorphic function in E , attaining certain Cauchy principal values over ∂E as boundary values, due to Theorem 1 from Chapter IX, § 2 of Plemelj. We control them with the aid of Proposition 2 from Chapter IX, § 4 and note Theorem 3 there. Then we can estimate the curvilinear integral in the $C^{1+\alpha}(\overline{E})$ -norm and obtain (20). We use (21) and have shown (18) as well.

We now propose the *ansatz of L. Ahlfors and I. N. Vekua* for the solution of Beltrami's differential equation (15), namely

$$W(z) = z + T_E[f](z), \quad z \in \overline{E}, \quad \text{for } f \in \mathcal{B}. \quad (22)$$

When we insert (22) into (15), we arrive at *Tricomi's integral equation* for $f \in \mathcal{B}$

$$f(z) - q(z)\Pi_E[f](z) = q(z), \quad z \in \overline{E}, \quad (23)$$

with the aid of (21). We now consider the operator

$$\mathbb{L}f := q(z) + q(z)\Pi_E[f](z), \quad z \in \overline{E}, \quad \text{for } f \in \mathcal{B}. \quad (24)$$

If the condition

$$\|q\|C_2(\alpha) < 1 \quad (25)$$

is fulfilled, the operator $\mathbb{L}$ on $\mathcal{B}$ becomes contracting. On account of (20), we have the following inequality for two elements $f_1, f_2 \in \mathcal{B}$, namely

$$\begin{aligned} \|\mathbb{L}f_1 - \mathbb{L}f_2\| &= \|q\Pi_E[f_1 - f_2]\| \\ &\leq \|q\| \|\Pi_E[f_1 - f_2]\| \\ &\leq \|q\|C_2(\alpha)\|f_1 - f_2\|. \end{aligned} \quad (26)$$

Given the assumption (25), the operator $\mathbb{L} : \mathcal{B} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$ possesses exactly one fixed point $f \in \mathcal{B}$ with $\mathbb{L}f = f$, due to Banach's fixed point theorem. Now the function $f \in \mathcal{B}$ satisfies Tricomi's integral equation (23). We then obtain a solution of the differential equation (15) with the function $W(z)$ from (22), and the relation (18) implies $W \in C^{2+\alpha}(\overline{E})$. Furthermore, we infer the estimate

$$\|f\| \leq \frac{\|q\|}{1 - \|q\|C_2(\alpha)} \quad (27)$$

for the fixed point $f = \mathbb{L}f$ from (20) and (25). Due to (18), we can estimate the $C^{2+\alpha}(\overline{E})$ -norm for the perturbation of the identity caused by $T_E[f](z)$ in (22). When we assume $\|q\|$ to be sufficiently small, the mapping

$$W(z) : \overline{E} \rightarrow \overline{\mathcal{O}} \in C^{2+\alpha}(\overline{E}, \mathbb{C}) \quad (28)$$

represents a positive-oriented diffeomorphism onto the Jordan domain $\Omega \subset \mathbb{C}$, with the $C^{2+\alpha}$ -boundary $\partial\Omega$ constituting a Jordan curve. With the aid of results in Chapter IV, §§ 7-8 we now transform the set $\overline{\Omega}$ conformally onto the unit disc $\overline{B}$ via the mapping $X(w) : \overline{\Omega} \rightarrow \overline{B}$, such that $X \circ W(0) = 0$ is fulfilled. The mapping $X^{-1} : \overline{B} \rightarrow \overline{\Omega}$ belongs to the class $C^{1,1}(\overline{B})$ according to Theorem 5 in Chapter IV, § 8. Then Theorem 2 from § 7 implies

$$\begin{aligned}(X \circ W)^{-1} &= W^{-1} \circ X^{-1} : \overline{B} \rightarrow \overline{E} \in C^{2+\alpha}(\overline{B}, \mathbb{C}), \\ (X \circ W)^{-1}(0) &= 0.\end{aligned}$$

We summarize our considerations to the following

Theorem 1. (Stability for conformal mappings)

The metric ds^2 from (1), (2)*, (3)* satisfies the following inequality with respect to the metric (2), namely*

$$\|g_{jk} - \varrho \delta_{jk}\|_{C^{1+\alpha}(\overline{E})} < \delta \quad \text{for } j, k = 1, 2 \quad (29)$$

with a sufficiently small number $\delta = \delta(\alpha, \varrho) > 0$. Then we have a weighted conformal diffeomorphism $\mathbf{x}(u, v) = (x^1(u, v), x^2(u, v)) \in C^{2+\alpha}(\overline{B}, \overline{E})$ which satisfies (4), (5)*, (8)*. Therefore, the metric ds^2 appears in the isothermal form (1).*

By a nonlinear continuity method we now prove the uniformization theorem, which is of central significance for differential geometry, complex analysis, and the theory of partial differential equations. Already C. F. Gauß could conformally map analytic surface patches in the small, and L. Lichtenstein locally mapped differentiable surface patches conformally. Conformal mappings in the large have been constructed by P. Koebe in the analytic situation, and in the nonanalytic case C. B. Morrey, E. Heinz, L. Ahlfors, and I. N. Vekua attained similar results by different methods.

Theorem 2. (Uniformization theorem)

Let the Riemannian metric ds^2 from (1), (2)*, (3)* with the coefficients $g_{jk} \in C^{1+\alpha}(\overline{E})$ for $j, k = 1, 2$ be prescribed. Then we have a diffeomorphism $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{x}(u, v) \in C^{2+\alpha}(\overline{B}, \overline{E})$ satisfying (4)*, (5)*, (8)*, which transfers the metric ds^2 into the isothermal form*

$$ds^2 = \sigma(u, v)(du^2 + dv^2) \quad \text{in } \overline{B}, \quad (30)$$

with the surface element $\sigma = \sigma(u, v) \in C^{1+\alpha}(\overline{B}, (0, +\infty))$.

Proof: We deform the metric ds^2 into the Euclidean metric via

$$\begin{aligned}ds^2(\tau) &:= g_{jk}^{(\tau)}(x^1, x^2) dx^j dx^k \quad \text{in } \overline{E}, \quad 0 \leq \tau \leq 1, \quad \text{with} \\ g_{jk}^{(\tau)}(x^1, x^2) &:= (1 - \tau)\delta_{jk} + \tau g_{jk}(x^1, x^2), \quad (x^1, x^2) \in \overline{E}, \quad j, k = 1, 2.\end{aligned} \quad (31)$$

For the parameter $\tau = 0$, the metric $ds^2(0) = \delta_{jk} dx^j dx^k$ is already isothermal. With the aid of Theorem 1, we then find a maximal number $\tau^* \in (0, 1]$, such that all metrics $ds^2(\tau)$ with $0 \leq \tau < \tau^*$ can be transferred into the isothermal form. Theorem 2* now implies that also the metric $ds^2(\tau^*)$ can be transferred into the isothermal form, with the aid of the diffeomorphism $\mathbf{x} \in C^{2+\alpha}(\overline{B}, \overline{E})$ satisfying (4)*, (5)*, (8)*. If the inequality $\tau^* < 1$ were true, we could - due to Theorem 1 - transfer the metrics $ds^2(\tau)$ for all parameters $\tau^* \leq \tau < \tau^* + \varepsilon$ - with a sufficiently small number $\varepsilon > 0$ - into the isothermal form. Since the number $\tau^* \in (0, 1]$ has been chosen maximal, the identity $\tau^* = 1$ holds true. Consequently, the metric

$$ds^2 = ds^2(1) = g_{jk}(x^1, x^2) dx^j dx^k$$

can be transferred into the isothermal form as described above. q.e.d.

We finally note the following

Theorem 3. *For each Riemannian metric ds^2 from (1)*, (2)*, (3)* we have a $C^{2+\alpha}(B)$ -diffeomorphism $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{x}(u, v)$ satisfying (4)*, (5)*, (8)* which transfers ds^2 into the isothermal form*

$$ds^2 = \sigma(u, v)(du^2 + dv^2) \quad \text{in } B \quad (32)$$

with the surface element $\sigma = \sigma(u, v) \in C^{1+\alpha}(B, (0, +\infty))$.

Proof: For all radii $r \in (0, 1)$, we introduce isothermal parameters into the metric ds^2 on E_r - according to Theorem 2. With the aid of Theorem 1*, we then find a solution of (32) by approximation. q.e.d.

Remark to Theorem 3: We can derive this theorem alternatively by approximation with metrics being Euclidean at the boundary. In this context we refer the reader to the Remark following Theorem 2*.

§9 The uniformization method for quasilinear elliptic differential equations and the Dirichlet problem

We consider the Jordan domain $\Omega \subset \mathbb{R}^2$ with the $C^{2+\alpha}$ -boundary-curve $\partial\Omega$, and we investigate the quasilinear elliptic differential equation

$$a(x, y, z, p, q)r + 2b(x, y, z, p, q)s + c(x, y, z, p, q)t + d(x, y, z, p, q) = 0 \quad \text{in } \Omega$$

with $ac - b^2 > 0$. (1)

Here we use the familiar symbols of G. Monge

$$p = z_x(x, y), \quad q = z_y(x, y), \quad r = z_{xx}(x, y), \quad s = z_{xy}(x, y), \quad t = z_{yy}(x, y) \quad (2)$$

for the derivatives of a function $z = z(x, y) : \overline{\Omega} \rightarrow \mathbb{R} \in \mathbb{C}^{2+\alpha}(\overline{\Omega})$. With adequate assumptions, we introduce isothermal parameters into the metric

$$ds^2 = c dx^2 - 2b dx dy + a dy^2 \quad (5)$$

via the uniformizing mapping

$$x + iy = f(w) = f(u, v) : \overline{B} \rightarrow \overline{\Omega}. \quad (6)$$

Here we apply the uniformization theorem from §8. The deliberations from Chapter XI, §3 can formally be repeated by substitution of the characteristic parameters ξ, η with the complex parameters $w, \overline{w}$. We now define the functions

$$\lambda^\pm(u, v) := \frac{b \pm i\sqrt{ac - b^2}}{a} \Big|_{x+iy=f(u,v)}. \quad (7)$$

Then we obtain the following system of first order, associated with the differential equation (1), in the same way as in the theory of characteristics quoted above:

$$\begin{aligned} y_w - \lambda^+ x_w &= 0, & y_{\overline{w}} - \lambda^- x_{\overline{w}} &= 0, \\ p_w + \lambda^- q_w + \frac{d}{a} x_w &= 0, & p_{\overline{w}} + \lambda^+ q_{\overline{w}} + \frac{d}{a} x_{\overline{w}} &= 0, \end{aligned} \quad (8)$$

$$z_w - p x_w - q y_w = 0$$

(with $z = z \circ f(w)$ etc.). In these equations the derivatives with respect to w and $\overline{w}$, respectively, only appear separately. Therefore, we differentiate the equations containing $\frac{\partial}{\partial w}$ with respect to $\overline{w}$, and the equations containing $\frac{\partial}{\partial \overline{w}}$ are derived with respect to w . We obtain a linear system of equations for the functions x_w, y_w, z_w, p_w, q_w , which we can resolve to these quantities as in Chapter XI, §3. We introduce the function

$$\mathbf{x}(w) = \mathbf{x}(u, v) = (x(u, v), y(u, v), z(u, v), p(u, v), q(u, v)) \quad \text{in } \overline{B}, \quad (9)$$

and obtain a system

$$\Delta \mathbf{x}(w) = \Phi(\mathbf{x}(u, v), \mathbf{x}_u(u, v), \mathbf{x}_v(u, v)), \quad w = u + iv \in B, \quad (10)$$

with quadratic growth in the gradient. One can deduce results for the differential equation (1) via the system (8) combined with the equations of first order (6). Estimates for the uniformizing mapping f then guarantee the independence of the parametrization.

We remark that the system (8) is deduced by real differentiation from the differential equation (1) in the original papers of F. Müller, which have been quoted in Chapter XI, §6.

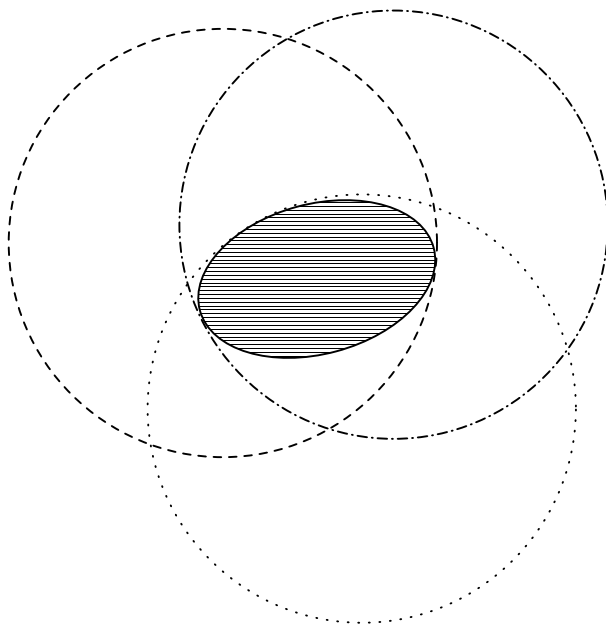
With the aid of the uniformization method, we now shall solve Dirichlet's problem for the nonparametric equation of prescribed mean curvature. We choose the bound $0 < h_0 < +\infty$, define the disc

$$\Omega_0 := \left\{ (x, y) \in \mathbb{R}^2 : 4h_0^2(x^2 + y^2) \leq 1 \right\} ,$$

and fix a Hölder exponent $\alpha \in (0, 1)$.

Assumption D₁: The bounded domain $\Omega \subset \Omega_0$ may have a regular $C^{2+\alpha}$ -Jordan-curve $\partial\Omega$ as its boundary, whose curvature satisfies the inequality $\kappa(x, y) \geq 2h_0$ for all points $(x, y) \in \partial\Omega$. Furthermore, let the condition $(0, 0) \in \Omega$ be fulfilled.

GRAPHIC OF A $(2h_0)$ -CONVEX DOMAIN - allowing support circles of radius $\frac{1}{2h_0}$ uniformly:



Assumption D₂: On the circular cylinder

$$\mathcal{Z} := \left\{ (x, y, z) \in \mathbb{R}^3 : (x, y) \in \Omega_0 \right\}$$

we prescribe the mean curvature

$$H = H(x, y, z) : \mathcal{Z} \rightarrow \mathbb{R} \in C^{1+\alpha}(\mathcal{Z})$$

with the following properties:

- We have a height $z_0 \in \mathbb{R}$ and a number $H_0 \in [-h_0, +h_0]$, such that the relation

$$H(x, y, z) = H_0 \quad \text{for all } (x, y, z) \in \mathcal{Z} \quad \text{with } z \leq z_0 \quad (9)$$

holds true.

- We require the monotonicity

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial z} H(x, y, z) \geq 0 \quad \text{for all } (x, y, z) \in \mathcal{Z}. \quad (10)$$

- Finally, we assume the bound

$$|H(x, y, z)| \leq h_0 \quad \text{for all } (x, y, z) \in \mathcal{Z}. \quad (11)$$

According to §2 in Chapter VI, the following problem possesses at most one solution.

Definition 1. *The continuous height representation $g : \partial\Omega \rightarrow \mathbb{R} \in C^0(\partial\Omega, \mathbb{R})$ being given, we consider a solution $z = \zeta(x, y) \in C^2(\Omega) \cap C^0(\overline{\Omega})$ of Dirichlet's problem $\mathcal{P}(g)$ for the nonparametric equation of prescribed mean curvature*

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{M}\zeta(x, y) &:= (1 + \zeta_y^2)\zeta_{xx} - 2\zeta_x\zeta_y\zeta_{xy} + (1 + \zeta_x^2)\zeta_{yy} \\ &= 2H(x, y, \zeta(x, y))(1 + |\nabla\zeta(x, y)|^2)^{\frac{3}{2}} \quad \text{in } \Omega \end{aligned} \quad (12)$$

and

$$\zeta(x, y) = g(x, y) \quad \text{for all } (x, y) \in \partial\Omega. \quad (13)$$

We additionally set

$$\|g\|_{C^0(\partial\Omega)} := \sup_{(x, y) \in \partial\Omega} |g(x, y)|.$$

Proposition 1. (R. Finn)

A solution $\zeta \in \mathcal{P}(g)$ of our problem with the boundary distribution $g \in C^0(\partial\Omega, \mathbb{R})$ satisfies the following estimates:

- (a) $|\zeta(x, y)| \leq \|g\|_{C^0(\partial\Omega)} + \frac{1}{h_0} \quad \text{for all } (x, y) \in \Omega,$
- (b) $\iint_{\Omega} \sqrt{1 + |\nabla\zeta(x, y)|^2} dx dy \leq 3|\Omega| + (2h_0|\Omega| + |\partial\Omega|)\|g\|_{C^0(\partial\Omega)}.$

Here the symbols $|\Omega|$ and $|\partial\Omega|$ denote the area of the domain Ω and the length of the curve $\partial\Omega$, respectively.

Proof:

(a) We consider the spherical graphs

$$\eta^\pm(x, y) := \pm \|g\|_{C^0(\partial\Omega)} \pm \sqrt{\frac{1}{h_0^2} - (x^2 + y^2)}, \quad (x, y) \in \Omega_0. \quad (14)$$

These fulfill the differential inequalities

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{M}\eta^\pm(x, y) &= \pm 2h_0(1 + |\nabla\eta^\pm(x, y)|^2)^{\frac{3}{2}} \\ &\geq 2H(x, y, \eta^\pm(x, y))(1 + |\nabla\eta^\pm(x, y)|^2)^{\frac{3}{2}} \quad \text{in } \Omega. \end{aligned} \quad (15)$$

We now deduce a differential inequality for the function

$$\phi(x, y) := \zeta(x, y) - \eta^\pm(x, y) \quad \text{in } \Omega$$

as in §2 from Chapter VI, taking (10) into account. Then the maximum principle yields

$$\eta^-(x, y) \leq \zeta(x, y) \leq \eta^+(x, y) \quad \text{in } \Omega. \quad (16)$$

This implies the estimate (a).

(b) We rewrite (12) into the divergence form, abbreviate $\sqrt{\cdot} := \sqrt{1 + |\nabla\zeta|^2}$, and obtain

$$\zeta \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \left(\frac{\zeta_x}{\sqrt{\cdot}} \right) + \zeta \frac{\partial}{\partial y} \left(\frac{\zeta_y}{\sqrt{\cdot}} \right) = 2H(x, y, \zeta) \zeta.$$

Then we integrate over the domain Ω as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} &2 \iint_{\Omega} \zeta(x, y) H(x, y, \zeta(x, y)) \, dx \, dy \\ &= \iint_{\Omega} \left\{ \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \left(\zeta \frac{\zeta_x}{\sqrt{\cdot}} \right) + \frac{\partial}{\partial y} \left(\zeta \frac{\zeta_y}{\sqrt{\cdot}} \right) \right\} \, dx \, dy - \iint_{\Omega} \frac{|\nabla\zeta|^2}{\sqrt{\cdot}} \, dx \, dy \\ &= \int_{\partial\Omega} \zeta \left(\frac{\zeta_x}{\sqrt{\cdot}} \, dy - \frac{\zeta_y}{\sqrt{\cdot}} \, dx \right) - \iint_{\Omega} \sqrt{\cdot} \, dx \, dy + \iint_{\Omega} \frac{1}{\sqrt{\cdot}} \, dx \, dy. \end{aligned}$$

We note (a) and estimate

$$\begin{aligned} &\iint_{\Omega} \sqrt{1 + |\nabla\zeta|^2} \, dx \, dy \\ &= \int_{\partial\Omega} \zeta \left(\frac{\zeta_x}{\sqrt{\cdot}} \, dy - \frac{\zeta_y}{\sqrt{\cdot}} \, dx \right) + \iint_{\Omega} \frac{1}{\sqrt{\cdot}} \, dx \, dy - 2 \iint_{\Omega} \zeta H(x, y, \zeta) \, dx \, dy \\ &\leq \|g\|_{C^0(\partial\Omega)} |\partial\Omega| + |\Omega| + 2 \left(\|g\|_{C^0(\partial\Omega)} + \frac{1}{h_0} \right) h_0 |\Omega|, \end{aligned}$$

and (b) is shown as well.

q.e.d.

Via Theorem 3 from §8, we now introduce conformal parameters into the graph $\zeta \in \mathcal{P}(g)$ by the uniformizing mapping

$$\begin{aligned} f = f(u, v) : \overline{B} &\rightarrow \overline{\Omega} \in C^2(B) \cap C^0(\overline{B}) \quad \text{diffeomorphic,} \\ f(0, 0) &= (0, 0). \end{aligned} \quad (17)$$

Then the function

$$\mathbf{x}(u, v) := (f(u, v), \zeta(f(u, v))), \quad (u, v) \in \overline{B} \quad (18)$$

is an H -surface in the following sense:

Definition 2. A nonconstant solution $\mathbf{x} \in C^2(B, \mathbb{R}^3)$ of the system

$$\begin{aligned} \Delta \mathbf{x}(u, v) &= 2H(\mathbf{x}(u, v))\mathbf{x}_u \wedge \mathbf{x}_v(u, v) \quad \text{in } B, \\ |\mathbf{x}_u(u, v)|^2 - |\mathbf{x}_v(u, v)|^2 &= 0 = \mathbf{x}_u \cdot \mathbf{x}_v(u, v) \quad \text{in } B \end{aligned} \quad (19)$$

is called an H -surface. This surface is called immersed or free of branch points if the condition

$$E(u, v) := |\mathbf{x}_u \wedge \mathbf{x}_v(u, v)| > 0 \quad \text{for all } (u, v) \in B$$

is valid.

Proposition 2. The normal $\mathbf{X}(u, v) \in C^{2+\alpha}(B)$ to the immersed H -surface $\mathbf{x}$ satisfies the following differential equation

$$\Delta \mathbf{X}(u, v) + 2(2EH(\mathbf{x})^2 - EK - E(\nabla H(\mathbf{x}) \cdot \mathbf{X}))\mathbf{X} = -2E\nabla H(\mathbf{x}) \quad \text{in } B, \quad (20)$$

with the notations from Chapter XI, §1.

Proof: From the Weingarten equations (compare [BL]) in conformal parameters

$$\mathbf{X}_u = -\frac{L}{E}\mathbf{x}_u - \frac{M}{E}\mathbf{x}_v, \quad \mathbf{X}_v = -\frac{M}{E}\mathbf{x}_u - \frac{N}{E}\mathbf{x}_v$$

we infer the identities

$$(\mathbf{X} \wedge \mathbf{X}_v)_u - (\mathbf{X} \wedge \mathbf{X}_u)_v = 2\mathbf{X}_u \wedge \mathbf{X}_v = 2\frac{LN - M^2}{E^2}\mathbf{x}_u \wedge \mathbf{x}_v = 2EK\mathbf{X}$$

and

$$\mathbf{X} \wedge \mathbf{X}_u = -\mathbf{X}_v - 2H(\mathbf{x})\mathbf{x}_v, \quad \mathbf{X} \wedge \mathbf{X}_v = \mathbf{X}_u + 2H(\mathbf{x})\mathbf{x}_u.$$

On account of

$$\{H(\mathbf{x}(u, v))\}_u = \nabla H(\mathbf{x}) \cdot \mathbf{x}_u, \quad \{H(\mathbf{x}(u, v))\}_v = \nabla H(\mathbf{x}) \cdot \mathbf{x}_v$$

we obtain

$$\begin{aligned}
2EK\mathbf{X} &= (\mathbf{X} \wedge \mathbf{X}_v)_u - (\mathbf{X} \wedge \mathbf{X}_u)_v \\
&= \mathbf{X}_{uu} + 2(\nabla H \cdot \mathbf{x}_u)\mathbf{x}_u + 2H\mathbf{x}_{uu} + \mathbf{X}_{vv} + 2(\nabla H \cdot \mathbf{x}_v)\mathbf{x}_v + 2H\mathbf{x}_{vv} \\
&= \Delta\mathbf{X} + 4EH^2\mathbf{X} + 2((\nabla H \cdot \mathbf{x}_u)\mathbf{x}_u + (\nabla H \cdot \mathbf{x}_v)\mathbf{x}_v).
\end{aligned} \tag{21}$$

Now we expand

$$\nabla H = \left(\nabla H \cdot \frac{\mathbf{x}_u}{|\mathbf{x}_u|} \right) \frac{\mathbf{x}_u}{|\mathbf{x}_u|} + \left(\nabla H \cdot \frac{\mathbf{x}_v}{|\mathbf{x}_v|} \right) \frac{\mathbf{x}_v}{|\mathbf{x}_v|} + (\nabla H \cdot \mathbf{X})\mathbf{X}$$

and deduce

$$(\nabla H \cdot \mathbf{x}_u)\mathbf{x}_u + (\nabla H \cdot \mathbf{x}_v)\mathbf{x}_v = E\nabla H - E(\nabla H \cdot \mathbf{X})\mathbf{X}. \tag{22}$$

The formulas (21) and (22) imply the differential equation (20). q.e.d.

Theorem 1. (Compactness of graphs)

With the assumptions (D_1) and (D_2) , let the boundary distributions $g_k \in C^0(\partial\Omega, \mathbb{R})$ for $k = 1, 2, \dots$ be given, and our problem may possess a solution $\zeta_k \in \mathcal{P}(g_k)$ for each function g_k . Furthermore, let the sequence $\{g_k\}_{k=1,2,\dots}$ converge uniformly on $\partial\Omega$ towards the limit function

$$g(x) := \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} g_k(x) \in C^0(\partial\Omega, \mathbb{R}).$$

Then also the limit problem $\mathcal{P}(g)$ possesses a solution ζ .

Proof:

1. As described in (17)-(18), we introduce conformal parameters into the graphs ζ_k by the uniformizing mappings $f_k = f_k(u, v) : \overline{B} \rightarrow \overline{\Omega}$. Then we obtain the immersed H -surfaces

$$\mathbf{x}_k(u, v) := (f_k(u, v), \zeta_k(f_k(u, v))) =: (f_k(u, v), z_k(u, v)), \quad (u, v) \in \overline{B}. \tag{23}$$

Due to Proposition 1 of R. Finn, this sequence has a uniformly bounded Dirichlet's integral. Via the Courant-Lebesgue lemma combined with the geometric maximum principle of E. Heinz, we prove that the sequence of functions $\{\mathbf{x}_k\}_{k=1,2,\dots}$ is equicontinuous on the domain $\overline{B}$. The Arzelà-Ascoli theorem allows us the transition to a uniformly convergent subsequence on $\overline{B}$, converging towards an H -surface

$$\mathbf{x}(u, v) = (f(u, v), z(u, v)) : \overline{B} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^3 \in C^2(B) \cap C^0(\overline{B}) \quad , \tag{24}$$

on account of Theorem 2 in § 2.

2. Since the surface $\mathbf{x}_k$ is conformally parametrized, we can eliminate the third component due to Proposition 2 from § 7; more precisely

$$|\nabla z_k(u, v)|^2 \leq |\nabla f_k(u, v)|^2 \quad \text{in } B \quad \text{for } k = 1, 2, \dots \tag{25}$$

We then obtain the sequence of plane mappings

$$\begin{aligned} f_k(u, v) : \overline{B} &\rightarrow \overline{\Omega} \in C^2(B) \cap C^0(\overline{B}) && \text{diffeomorphic,} \\ |\Delta f_k(u, v)| &\leq c_1 |\nabla f_k(u, v)|^2 && \text{in } B, \\ f_k(0, 0) &= (0, 0), \\ D(f_k) &\leq c_2 && \text{for } k = 1, 2, \dots \end{aligned} \quad (26)$$

with the constants c_1, c_2 and Dirichlet's integral $D(f_k)$ of f_k . The distortion estimate of E. Heinz from §5 provides a constant $\Theta(c_1, c_2, r) > 0$ for each radius $r \in (0, 1)$, such that the inequality

$$|\nabla f_k(u, v)| \geq \Theta(c_1, c_2, r) \quad \text{for all points } (u, v) \in B_r \quad (27)$$

is satisfied on the disc $B_r := \{(u, v) \in B : u^2 + v^2 < r^2\}$. Here we replace the image domain B with the domain Ω in the proof of Theorem 3 from §5. On account of (27), we find the estimate

$$|\nabla f(u, v)| > 0 \quad \text{in } B \quad (28)$$

for the limit mapping, and the H -surface $\mathbf{x}$ from (24) is immersed.

3. With the normal $\mathbf{X}(u, v)$ for the surface $\mathbf{x}(u, v)$ we associate the auxiliary function

$$\phi(u, v) := \mathbf{X}(u, v) \cdot \mathbf{e} \geq 0, \quad (u, v) \in B, \quad (29)$$

where the vector $\mathbf{e} := (0, 0, 1)$ appears. Introducing the potential-function

$$q(u, v) := 2(2EH(\mathbf{x})^2 - EK - E(\nabla H(\mathbf{x}) \cdot \mathbf{X})),$$

Proposition 2 together with (10) yield the differential inequality

$$\Delta \phi(u, v) + q(u, v)\phi(u, v) \leq 0 \quad \text{in } B. \quad (30)$$

Via multiplication by a nonnegative test function and integration, we arrive at the *weak differential inequality*

$$\iint_B \left\{ \nabla \phi(u, v) \cdot \nabla \psi(u, v) - q(u, v)\phi(u, v)\psi(u, v) \right\} du dv \geq 0 \quad (31)$$

for all $\psi \in C_0^\infty(B)$ with $\psi \geq 0$ in B .

Now Moser's inequality (compare Theorem 1 from Chapter X, §5) pertains to solutions of these differential inequalities, and the function ϕ is subject to the principle of unique continuation. Consequently, the function ϕ on B must vanish if at least one zero appears in B . Since the case $\phi \equiv 0$ in B is evidently excluded, we infer

$$\phi(u, v) > 0 \quad \text{for all } (u, v) \in B$$

and finally

$$J_f(u, v) := \frac{\partial(x, y)}{\partial(u, v)} > 0 \quad \text{in } B. \quad (32)$$

Consequently, the function $f : \overline{B} \rightarrow \overline{\Omega}$ represents a diffeomorphism of the class $C^2(B) \cap C^0(\overline{B})$, when we additionally observe the following: The boundary mapping $f|_{\partial B}$ is weakly monotonic, at first. However, this function cannot develop intervals where it remains constant: Otherwise, we could easily derive the statement $\mathbf{x}_w(w) \equiv 0$ in B , with the aid of the conformality relations and the similarity principle: This is impossible, of course! With the function

$$\zeta(x, y) := z(f^{-1}(x, y)), \quad (x, y) \in \overline{\Omega}$$

we finally obtain a solution of the problem $\mathcal{P}(g)$. q.e.d.

Proposition 3. (Geometric maximum principle of S. Hildebrandt)

The auxiliary function $\phi(u, v) := x(u, v)^2 + y(u, v)^2$, $(u, v) \in \overline{B}$, associated with the H -surface $\mathbf{x}(u, v) = (x(u, v), y(u, v), z(u, v)) : \overline{B} \rightarrow \mathcal{Z}$, satisfies the differential inequality

$$\Delta\phi(u, v) \geq 0 \quad \text{in } B.$$

Proof: We calculate

$$\begin{aligned} \Delta\phi(u, v) &= 2(|\nabla x|^2 + |\nabla y|^2 + x \Delta x + y \Delta y) \\ &= 2(|\nabla x|^2 + |\nabla y|^2 + 2H(\mathbf{x})(x, y, 0) \cdot \mathbf{x}_u \wedge \mathbf{x}_v). \end{aligned}$$

Since the surface $\mathbf{x}$ is represented in conformal parameters, we infer

$$|\nabla z|^2 \leq |\nabla x|^2 + |\nabla y|^2 \quad \text{in } B$$

and consequently

$$\begin{aligned} |2H(\mathbf{x})(x, y, 0) \cdot \mathbf{x}_u \wedge \mathbf{x}_v| &\leq 2h_0 \frac{1}{2h_0} \frac{1}{2} (|\nabla x|^2 + |\nabla y|^2 + |\nabla z|^2) \\ &\leq |\nabla x|^2 + |\nabla y|^2 \quad \text{in } B. \end{aligned}$$

We summarize our considerations to the inequality $\Delta\phi(u, v) \geq 0$ in B . q.e.d.

With a fundamental boundary regularity result of S. Hildebrandt, J. C. C. Nitsche, F. Tomi, and E. Heinz we prove the following

Theorem 2. (Regularity of graphs)

With the assumptions (D_1) and (D_2) being given, let $\zeta \in \mathcal{P}(g)$ denote a solution of our problem to the boundary distribution $g \in C^{2+\alpha}(\partial\Omega, \mathbb{R})$. Then we have the regularity statement $\zeta = \zeta(x, y) \in C^{2+\alpha}(\overline{\Omega})$.

Proof: We investigate the H -surface

$$\mathbf{x}(u, v) = (f(u, v), \zeta(f(u, v))) \quad , \quad (u, v) \in \overline{B}$$

again, which belongs to the regularity class $C^2(B) \cap C^0(\overline{B})$. According to [DHKW] 7.3, Theorem 2, we infer the regularity statement $\mathbf{x} \in C^{2+\alpha}(\overline{B})$. We already know the condition

$$J_f(u, v) > 0 \quad \text{in } B$$

for the Jacobian of the uniformizing mapping, and we intend to establish this estimate on the closed disc ∂B as well. Let the point $w_0 \in \partial B$ be chosen arbitrarily, and let $x_0 := x(w_0)$, $y_0 := y(w_0)$ be defined. Via a translation of the domain $\Omega \subset \Omega_0$, we can achieve the condition $(x_0, y_0) \in \partial\Omega_0$. According to the boundary point lemma of E. Hopf, now Proposition 3 implies the following inequality for the auxiliary function ϕ in polar coordinates $w = re^{i\vartheta}$, namely

$$0 < \frac{1}{2} \frac{\partial \phi}{\partial r} \Big|_{w_0} = (xx_r + yy_r) \Big|_{w_0} . \quad (33)$$

Since the function $\phi(\vartheta) := \phi(\cos \vartheta, \sin \vartheta)$ attains its maximum at the point ϑ_0 , we infer the identity

$$0 = \frac{1}{2} \frac{\partial \phi}{\partial \vartheta} \Big|_{\vartheta_0} = (xx_{\vartheta} + yy_{\vartheta}) \Big|_{w_0} . \quad (34)$$

The relation (33) implies that w_0 does not represent a branch point, more precisely

$$|\mathbf{x}_{\vartheta}(w_0)|^2 = |\mathbf{x}_r(w_0)|^2 > 0. \quad (35)$$

Furthermore, we have a number $K > 0$ satisfying

$$z_{\vartheta}^2 \leq K(x_{\vartheta}^2 + y_{\vartheta}^2). \quad (36)$$

From (35) and (36) we infer

$$0 < (x_{\vartheta}^2 + y_{\vartheta}^2 + z_{\vartheta}^2) \Big|_{w_0} \leq (1 + K)(x_{\vartheta}^2 + y_{\vartheta}^2) \Big|_{w_0}$$

and consequently

$$(x_{\vartheta}^2 + y_{\vartheta}^2) \Big|_{w_0} > 0. \quad (37)$$

Since the mapping f is positive-oriented, we find a parameter $\lambda > 0$ satisfying

$$x_{\vartheta}(w_0) = -\lambda y(w_0), \quad y_{\vartheta}(w_0) = \lambda x(w_0) \quad ,$$

on account of (34). This implies

$$(x_r y_{\vartheta} - x_{\vartheta} y_r) \Big|_{w_0} = \lambda (xx_r + yy_r) \Big|_{w_0} > 0$$

and equivalently

$$J_f(w_0) > 0.$$

Therefore, the function $f : \overline{B} \rightarrow \overline{\Omega}$ represents a $C^{2+\alpha}(\overline{B})$ -diffeomorphism, and the height function

$$\zeta(x, y) := z(f^{-1}(x, y)) \quad , \quad (x, y) \in \overline{\Omega}$$

belongs to the regularity class $C^{2+\alpha}(\overline{\Omega})$.

q.e.d.

The following result was initiated by considerations of J.C.C. Nitsche for minimal surfaces.

Proposition 4. (Stability of graphs) *For the boundary distribution $g \in C^{2+\alpha}(\partial\Omega)$ let $\zeta = \zeta(x, y) \in \mathcal{P}(g)$ denote a solution of the class $C^{2+\alpha}(\overline{\Omega})$. Then we have a quantity $\varepsilon = \varepsilon(\zeta) > 0$, such that all boundary distributions $\tilde{g} \in C^{2+\alpha}(\partial\Omega)$ satisfying*

$$\|\tilde{g} - g\|_{C^{2+\alpha}(\partial\Omega)} \leq \varepsilon$$

possess a solution of the problem $\mathcal{P}(\tilde{g})$.

Proof: We solve the problem $\mathcal{P}(\tilde{g})$ via perturbation with a function $\eta(x, y) \in C^{2+\alpha}(\overline{\Omega})$. In this context we have to achieve that besides the function ζ the perturbed function $\zeta + \eta$ satisfies the differential equation (12) as well: From the identity

$$\begin{aligned} 0 = & (1 + (\zeta_y + \eta_y)^2)(\zeta_{xx} + \eta_{xx}) - 2(\zeta_x + \eta_x)(\zeta_y + \eta_y)(\zeta_{xy} + \eta_{xy}) \\ & + (1 + (\zeta_x + \eta_x)^2)(\zeta_{yy} + \eta_{yy}) - 2H(x, y, \zeta + \eta)(1 + |\nabla(\zeta + \eta)|^2)^{\frac{3}{2}} \end{aligned} \quad (38)$$

we deduce the following differential equation - ordered with respect to the degree of homogeneity in $\eta, \eta_x, \dots, \eta_{yy}$, namely

$$\mathcal{L}\eta(x, y) = \phi(\eta) \quad \text{in } \Omega. \quad (39)$$

Here the symbol

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{L}\eta := & (1 + \zeta_y^2)\eta_{xx} - 2\zeta_x\zeta_y\eta_{xy} + (1 + \zeta_x^2)\eta_{yy} \\ & + a(x, y)\eta_x + b(x, y)\eta_y + c(x, y)\eta \end{aligned}$$

denotes a linear elliptic differential operator, with coefficients depending on the quantities $\zeta, \zeta_x, \dots, \zeta_{yy}$. We observe the condition $c(x, y) \leq 0$ in Ω , due to (10). The right-hand side is quadratic and of higher order in $\eta, \eta_x, \dots, \eta_{yy}$ and consequently satisfies the *contraction condition*

$$\begin{aligned} \|\phi(\eta_1) - \phi(\eta_2)\|_{C^\alpha(\overline{\Omega})} & \leq C(\varrho)\|\eta_1 - \eta_2\|_{C^{2+\alpha}(\overline{\Omega})} \\ \text{for all } \eta_j & \in C^{2+\alpha}(\overline{\Omega}) \quad \text{with } \|\eta_j\|_{C^{2+\alpha}(\overline{\Omega})} \leq \varrho \quad \text{and } j = 1, 2. \end{aligned} \quad (40)$$

Here the property $C(\varrho) \rightarrow 0$ for $\varrho \rightarrow 0+$ is correct, and we note $\phi(0) = 0$. With the aid of the Schauder theory from §6 in Chapter IX, we now solve the linear problem

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{L}\eta &= \omega & \text{in } \Omega, \\ \eta &= \psi & \text{on } \partial\Omega \end{aligned} \quad (41)$$

uniquely by a function $\eta \in C^{2+\alpha}(\overline{\Omega})$ - for each right-hand side $\omega \in C^\alpha(\overline{\Omega})$ and all boundary values $\psi \in C^{2+\alpha}(\partial\Omega)$. For the boundary values $\psi \equiv 0$ on $\partial\Omega$, we set

$$C_*^{2+\alpha}(\overline{\Omega}) := \left\{ \eta \in C^{2+\alpha}(\overline{\Omega}) : \eta = 0 \text{ on } \partial\Omega \right\}.$$

We use the symbol $\mathcal{L}_0 := \mathcal{L}|_{C_*^{2+\alpha}(\overline{\Omega})}$ for the restriction of the operator $\mathcal{L}$ to the subspace $C_*^{2+\alpha}(\overline{\Omega})$. Then the operator

$$\omega = \mathcal{L}_0(\eta) : C_*^{2+\alpha}(\overline{\Omega}) \rightarrow C^\alpha(\overline{\Omega}) \quad (42)$$

is invertible, and we have Schauder's estimate

$$\|\mathcal{L}_0^{-1}(\omega)\|_{C^{2+\alpha}(\overline{\Omega})} \leq C\|\omega\|_{C^\alpha(\overline{\Omega})} \quad \text{for all } \omega \in C^\alpha(\overline{\Omega}), \quad (43)$$

due to Theorem 2 in §5 from Chapter IX. Given the boundary values $\|\psi\|_{C^{2+\alpha}(\partial\Omega)} \leq \varepsilon$, we solve

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{L}\eta_0 &= 0 & \text{in } \Omega, \\ \eta_0 &= \psi & \text{on } \partial\Omega. \end{aligned} \quad (44)$$

Here we have to estimate the solution by its boundary values with respect to the $C^{2+\alpha}$ -norm. In this context we firstly estimate the solution $\eta_0(x, y)$ in the C^0 -norm by its boundary values due to Theorem 1 from Chapter VI, §1. With the aid of the Schauder theory from Chapter IX, §7 we secondly estimate the solution in the $C^{2+\alpha}$ -norm by its boundary values. Here we locally straighten the boundary of the domain, and then we can extend the boundary values into the ambient space - without augmenting their $C^{2+\alpha}$ -norm. Subtracting the extended boundary values, we get an inhomogeneous differential equation with zero boundary values, from which we gain our Schauder estimates. Now we iterate

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{L}\eta_{k+1} &= \phi(\eta_k) & \text{in } \Omega, \\ \eta_{k+1} &= \psi & \text{on } \partial\Omega \end{aligned} \quad (45)$$

for $k = 0, 1, 2, \dots$. With the aid of (40) and (43), we see that the sequence $\{\eta_k\}_{k=1,2,\dots}$ converges towards a solution $\eta \in C^{2+\alpha}(\overline{\Omega})$ of (39) in the Banach space $C^{2+\alpha}(\overline{\Omega})$; here we choose the number $\varepsilon > 0$ sufficiently small. q.e.d.

Theorem 3. (Quasilinear Dirichlet problem)

With the assumptions (D_1) and (D_2) , we take an arbitrary boundary function $g \in C^0(\partial\Omega, \mathbb{R})$. Then the Dirichlet problem $\mathcal{P}(g)$ for the nonparametric equation of prescribed mean curvature possesses exactly one solution.

Proof: We note the condition (9) and find a spherical graph $\eta(x, y) : \overline{\Omega} \rightarrow \mathbb{R} \in C^{2+\alpha}(\overline{\Omega})$ of constant mean curvature H_0 , such that the differential equation (12) is fulfilled with the boundary values

$$f(x, y) := \eta(x, y), \quad (x, y) \in \partial\Omega.$$

We solve the problem $\mathcal{P}(g_\lambda)$ for the family of boundary values

$$g_\lambda(x, y) := f(x, y) + \lambda(g(x, y) - f(x, y)), \quad (x, y) \in \partial\Omega, \quad (46)$$

with $0 \leq \lambda \leq 1$ and $g \in C^{2+\alpha}(\partial\Omega, \mathbb{R})$. This has already been done for the start parameter $\lambda = 0$, and the solvability is - due to Proposition 4 - an open, and - due to Theorem 1 - also a closed property. Consequently, the Dirichlet problem $\mathcal{P}(g_\lambda)$ is solvable for all $0 \leq \lambda \leq 1$, and - in particular for the terminal parameter - $\mathcal{P}(g)$ possesses a solution $\zeta \in C^{2+\alpha}(\overline{\Omega})$. With the aid of Theorem 1, we then comprehend the solvability of Dirichlet's problem for continuous boundary values. The uniqueness has already been shown in § 2 of Chapter VI. q.e.d.

Remark: This approach to the Dirichlet problem is contained in the following paper:

F. Sauvigny: *Deformation of boundary value problems for surfaces with prescribed mean curvature*. Analysis 21 (2001), 157-169.

§10 An outlook on Plateau's problem

Given the radius $M > 0$, we define the ball

$$K := \{(x, y, z) \in \mathbb{R}^3 : x^2 + y^2 + z^2 \leq M^2\}.$$

Within K we take a rectifiable Jordan curve $\Gamma \subset K$, where we fix three points $\mathbf{p}_j \in \Gamma$ for $j = 1, 2, 3$. We define the nonvoid *class of admissible functions*

$$\mathcal{Z}(\Gamma) := \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \mathbf{x} \in C^2(B) \cap C^0(\overline{B}) \cap W^{1,2}(B), \\ \mathbf{x} = \mathbf{x}(u, v) : \overline{B} \rightarrow K : \mathbf{x} : \partial B \rightarrow \Gamma \text{ weakly monotonic,} \\ \mathbf{x}(e^{\frac{2\pi i}{3}j}) = \mathbf{p}_j, \quad j = 1, 2, 3 \end{array} \right\}.$$

Besides the *generalized area*

$$A(\mathbf{x}) := \iint_B \left\{ |\mathbf{x}_u \wedge \mathbf{x}_v| + \frac{2H}{3}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x}_u, \mathbf{x}_v) \right\} du dv \quad (1)$$

from Chapter XI, § 2 we consider the *energy functional of E. Heinz*

$$E(\mathbf{x}) := \iint_B \left\{ (|\mathbf{x}_u|^2 + |\mathbf{x}_v|^2) + \frac{4H}{3}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x}_u, \mathbf{x}_v) \right\} du dv \quad (2)$$

for $\mathbf{x} \in \mathcal{Z}(\Gamma)$, assuming $H \in [-\frac{1}{2M}, +\frac{1}{2M}]$. Dirichlet's integral

$$D(\mathbf{x}) := \iint_B (|\mathbf{x}_u|^2 + |\mathbf{x}_v|^2) du dv$$

has the following relationship to this energy functional:

$$E(\mathbf{x}) \geq \frac{2}{3}D(\mathbf{x}) \quad \text{for all } \mathbf{x} \in \mathcal{Z}(\Gamma). \quad (3)$$

Furthermore, we observe

$$2A(\mathbf{x}) \leq E(\mathbf{x}) \quad \text{for all } \mathbf{x} \in \mathcal{Z}(\Gamma), \quad (4)$$

where equality is exactly attained in the case of conformal parametrization

$$|\mathbf{x}_u| = |\mathbf{x}_v|, \quad \mathbf{x}_u \cdot \mathbf{x}_v = 0 \quad \text{in } B. \quad (5)$$

This is based on the inequality

$$\sqrt{EG - F^2} \leq \sqrt{EG} \leq \frac{1}{2}(E + G)$$

for the coefficients of the first fundamental form

$$d\mathbf{x}^2 = E du^2 + 2F du dv + G dv^2$$

associate to the surface.

We owe the following result to T. Radó and C. B. Morrey:

Proposition 1. (Almost conformal parameters)

Let the function $\mathbf{x} = (x(u, v), y(u, v), z(u, v)) \in \mathcal{Z}(\Gamma)$ and the quantity $\varepsilon > 0$ be given. Then we have a parameter transformation $f(\alpha, \beta) : \overline{B} \rightarrow \overline{B}$ which is topological, such that the surface $\mathbf{y}(\alpha, \beta) := \mathbf{x} \circ f(\alpha, \beta) \in \mathcal{Z}(\Gamma)$ is admissible and the estimate

$$\frac{1}{2}E(\mathbf{y}) \leq A(\mathbf{y}) + \varepsilon \quad (6)$$

is fulfilled.

Proof: Since the second summand in $2A$ and E are parameter-invariant (with respect to orientation-preserving reparametrizations), we have only to investigate the case $H = 0$. Given the number $\delta > 0$ we define the extended mapping

$$\tilde{\mathbf{x}}(u, v) = (x(u, v), y(u, v), z(u, v); \delta u, \delta v) : \overline{B} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^5 \quad (7)$$

with the first fundamental form

$$\tilde{E} = \tilde{\mathbf{x}}_u \cdot \tilde{\mathbf{x}}_u = E + \delta^2, \quad \tilde{F} = \tilde{\mathbf{x}}_u \cdot \tilde{\mathbf{x}}_v = F, \quad \tilde{G} = \tilde{\mathbf{x}}_v \cdot \tilde{\mathbf{x}}_v = G + \delta^2$$

and the surface element

$$\tilde{E}\tilde{G} - \tilde{F}^2 = EG - F^2 + \delta^2(E + G) + \delta^4 > 0.$$

According to § 8 we introduce isothermal parameters into the regular surface $\tilde{\mathbf{x}}(u, v)$ with the aid of the positive-oriented mapping

$$f(\alpha, \beta) = (u(\alpha, \beta), v(\alpha, \beta)) : \overline{B} \rightarrow \overline{B}.$$

The surface

$$\tilde{\mathbf{y}}(\alpha, \beta) := \tilde{\mathbf{x}} \circ f(\alpha, \beta) = (\mathbf{x} \circ f(\alpha, \beta), \delta f(\alpha, \beta)) = (\mathbf{y}(\alpha, \beta), \delta f(\alpha, \beta)) : \overline{B} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^5$$

satisfies

$$\tilde{\mathbf{y}}_\alpha \cdot \tilde{\mathbf{y}}_\beta = 0 = |\tilde{\mathbf{y}}_\alpha|^2 - |\tilde{\mathbf{y}}_\beta|^2 \quad \text{in } B,$$

and the transformation formula for multiple integrals yields

$$\begin{aligned} D(\mathbf{y}) + \delta^2 D(f) &= D(\tilde{\mathbf{y}}) = 2 \iint_B \sqrt{\tilde{E}\tilde{G} - \tilde{F}^2} d\alpha d\beta \\ &= 2 \iint_B \sqrt{(EG - F^2) + \delta^2(E + G) + \delta^4} du dv \\ &\leq 2 \iint_B \sqrt{EG - F^2} du dv + 2\delta \iint_B \sqrt{E + G} du dv + 2\pi\delta^2. \end{aligned} \tag{8}$$

The quantity $\varepsilon > 0$ given, we can find a number $\delta > 0$ and an associate parameter transformation f , such that the inequality (6) holds true for $\mathbf{y} = \mathbf{x} \circ f$. q.e.d.

Proposition 2. (Minimal property)

Let the function $\mathbf{x}(u, v) \in \mathcal{Z}(\Gamma)$ denote a solution of the H -surface system

$$\Delta \mathbf{x}(u, v) = 2H \mathbf{x}_u \wedge \mathbf{x}_v(u, v) \quad \text{in } B$$

with $H \in [-\frac{1}{2M}, +\frac{1}{2M}]$. Then all admissible functions $\mathbf{y}(u, v) \in \mathcal{Z}(\Gamma)$ satisfying $\mathbf{y}(u, v) = \mathbf{x}(u, v)$ on ∂B realize the inequality

$$E(\mathbf{y}) \geq E(\mathbf{x}). \tag{9}$$

Proof: With the aid of the Gaussian integral theorem we easily verify the following identity:

$$E(\mathbf{x} + \mathbf{z}) = E(\mathbf{x}) + \iint_B \left\{ |\nabla \mathbf{z}|^2 + \frac{4H}{3} (3\mathbf{x} + \mathbf{z}, \mathbf{z}_u, \mathbf{z}_v) \right\} du dv \tag{10}$$

for all $\mathbf{z} \in C_0^\infty(B, \mathbb{R}^3)$.

Therefore, we develop

$$\begin{aligned}
E(\mathbf{x} + \mathbf{z}) &= \iint_B \left\{ |\nabla \mathbf{x}|^2 + 2\nabla(\mathbf{z} \cdot \nabla \mathbf{x}) + |\nabla \mathbf{z}|^2 - 2\mathbf{z} \cdot \Delta \mathbf{x} \right\} du dv \\
&\quad + \frac{4H}{3} \iint_B (\mathbf{x} + \mathbf{z}, \mathbf{x}_u + \mathbf{z}_u, \mathbf{x}_v + \mathbf{z}_v) du dv \\
&= E(\mathbf{x}) + \iint_B \left\{ |\nabla \mathbf{z}|^2 + \frac{4H}{3}(\mathbf{x} + \mathbf{z}) \cdot \mathbf{z}_u \wedge \mathbf{z}_v - 4H(\mathbf{x}_u, \mathbf{x}_v, \mathbf{z}) \right\} du dv \\
&\quad + \frac{4H}{3} \iint_B \left\{ (\mathbf{z}, \mathbf{x}_u, \mathbf{x}_v) + (\mathbf{x} + \mathbf{z}, \mathbf{x}_u, \mathbf{z}_v) + (\mathbf{x} + \mathbf{z}, \mathbf{z}_u, \mathbf{x}_v) \right\} du dv \\
&= E(\mathbf{x}) + \iint_B \left\{ |\nabla \mathbf{z}|^2 + \frac{4H}{3}(\mathbf{x} + \mathbf{z}) \cdot \mathbf{z}_u \wedge \mathbf{z}_v \right\} du dv \\
&\quad + \frac{4H}{3} \iint_B \left\{ (\mathbf{x} + \mathbf{z}, \mathbf{x}_u, \mathbf{z})_v + (\mathbf{x} + \mathbf{z}, \mathbf{z}, \mathbf{x}_v)_u \right\} du dv \\
&\quad - \frac{4H}{3} \iint_B \left\{ (\mathbf{z}_v, \mathbf{x}_u, \mathbf{z}) + (\mathbf{z}_u, \mathbf{z}, \mathbf{x}_v) \right\} du dv \\
&= E(\mathbf{x}) + \iint_B \left\{ |\nabla \mathbf{z}|^2 + \frac{4H}{3}(3\mathbf{x} + \mathbf{z}) \cdot \mathbf{z}_u \wedge \mathbf{z}_v \right\} du dv \\
&\quad - \frac{4H}{3} \iint_B \left\{ (\mathbf{z}_v, \mathbf{x}, \mathbf{z})_u + (\mathbf{z}_u, \mathbf{z}, \mathbf{x})_v \right\} du dv \\
&= E(\mathbf{x}) + \iint_B \left\{ |\nabla \mathbf{z}|^2 + \frac{4H}{3}(3\mathbf{x} + \mathbf{z}) \cdot \mathbf{z}_u \wedge \mathbf{z}_v \right\} du dv.
\end{aligned}$$

Via a well-known approximation procedure we can insert the function $\mathbf{z} = \mathbf{y} - \mathbf{x}$ with $|\mathbf{x} + \mathbf{z}| \leq M$ on B into (10). From the condition $|H|M \leq \frac{1}{2}$ we then infer the inequality (9). q.e.d.

We owe the following result for surfaces of constant mean curvature to E. Heinz:

Theorem 1. (Plateau's problem)

Let the parameter $H \in [-\frac{1}{2M}, +\frac{1}{2M}]$ be given. Then the variational problem

$$A(\mathbf{x}) \rightarrow \text{minimum}, \quad \mathbf{x} \in \mathcal{Z}(\Gamma) \quad (11)$$

possesses a solution $\mathbf{x} \in \mathcal{Z}(\Gamma)$, representing an H -surface with the curve Γ as its boundary.

Proof: We define the number

$$a := \inf_{\mathbf{x} \in \mathcal{Z}(\Gamma)} A(\mathbf{x}) \in (0, +\infty)$$

and choose a minimal sequence $\{\mathbf{x}_n\}_{n=1,2,\dots} \subset \mathcal{Z}(\Gamma)$ with

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} A(\mathbf{x}_n) = a. \quad (12)$$

Via Proposition 1 we make the transition to a sequence $\{\mathbf{y}_n\}_{n=1,2,\dots} \subset \mathcal{Z}(\Gamma)$ satisfying

$$\frac{1}{2}E(\mathbf{y}_n) \leq A(\mathbf{x}_n) + \frac{1}{n}, \quad n = 1, 2, \dots \quad (13)$$

Using Theorem 3 from § 4 we can uniquely extend the continuous boundary values of $\mathbf{y}_n$ to a solution of Rellich's system, namely

$$\begin{aligned} \Delta \mathbf{z}_n(u, v) &= 2H(\mathbf{z}_n)_u \wedge (\mathbf{z}_n)_v(u, v) \quad \text{in } B, \\ \mathbf{z}_n &= \mathbf{y}_n \quad \text{on } \partial B. \end{aligned} \quad (14)$$

Proposition 2 together with (13) yield the inequality

$$\frac{1}{2}E(\mathbf{z}_n) \leq A(\mathbf{x}_n) + \frac{1}{n}, \quad n = 1, 2, \dots \quad (15)$$

On account of (3) the sequence $\{\mathbf{z}_n\}_n$ possesses a uniformly bounded Dirichlet's integral. With the aid of the Courant-Lebesgue lemma we see that the boundary values $\mathbf{z}_n|_{\partial B}$, $n = 1, 2, \dots$ are equicontinuous. W. Jäger's maximum principle from § 1 allows the transition to a uniformly convergent subsequence on the closed disc $\overline{B}$. According to § 2, Theorem 2 we find a function $\mathbf{z}(u, v) \in \mathcal{Z}(\Gamma)$ in the limit satisfying

$$\Delta \mathbf{z}(u, v) = 2H \mathbf{z}_u \wedge \mathbf{z}_v \quad \text{in } B \quad (16)$$

On account of the convergence in $C^1(B)$ we infer the following inequality from (15), namely

$$a \leq \frac{1}{2}E(\mathbf{z}) \leq a \leq A(\mathbf{z}) \quad (17)$$

which implies $A(\mathbf{z}) = \frac{1}{2}E(\mathbf{z})$. Consequently, the surface $\mathbf{z}$ is conformally parametrized and represents a H -surface.

q.e.d.

On each disc $B_r(w_0) \subset \subset B$ with the center $w_0 \in B$, our H -surface satisfies the differential inequality

$$|\mathbf{x}_{w\overline{w}}(w)| \leq c|\mathbf{x}_w| \quad \text{in } B_r(w_0) \quad (18)$$

with a number $c = c(w_0, r) > 0$. According to the similarity principle of Bers and Vekua (compare § 6 in Chapter IV) we then have the asymptotic representation

$$\mathbf{x}_w(w) = \mathbf{a}(w - w_0)^n + o(|w - w_0|^n), \quad w \rightarrow w_0. \quad (19)$$

Here we have the integer $n = n(w_0) \in \mathbb{N} \cup \{0\}$ and the nonvanishing complex vector $\mathbf{a} = \mathbf{a}(w_0) \in \mathbb{C}^3 \setminus \{\mathbf{0}\}$. Those points w_0 with $n(w_0) \in \mathbb{N}$ are called *branch points of the H -surface*, which are isolated on account of (19). There the surface is not regular in the differential-geometric sense.

The regularity of H -surfaces - especially at the boundary - is intensively studied in the beautiful *Grundlehren* [DHKW] of U. Dierkes and S. Hildebrandt on Minimal Surfaces. If the boundary curve Γ is real-analytic, the solution can be analytically continued beyond the boundary as an H -surface due to the result of

F. Müller: *Analyticity of solutions for semilinear elliptic systems of second order*. Calc. Var. and PDE 15 (2002), 257-288.

According to a complicated theorem of Alt-Gulliver-Osserman one can exclude the branch points for the solutions of the above variational problem a posteriori. However, the desire remains to solve the variational problem (11) directly in the class

$$\mathcal{Z}^*(\Gamma) := \left\{ \mathbf{x} \in \mathcal{Z}(\Gamma) : |\mathbf{x}_u \wedge \mathbf{x}_v(u, v)| > 0 \text{ for all } (u, v) \in B \right\} \quad (20)$$

Finally, we recommend the very interesting monograph by J.C.C. Nitsche [N].

In the case $H = 0$, Plateau's problem has been solved independently by T. Radó and J. Douglas, and later R. Courant created the approach using Dirichlet's principle.

§11 Some historical notices to Chapter XII

We owe to C.F. Gauß, already in 1827, the introduction of isothermal parameters in the small for real-analytic surfaces. B. Riemann was the first to solve Plateau's problem for a quadrilateral in 1867, treating a very special Riemann-Hilbert problem. In 1866 and 1887, K. Weierstraß elaborated the close relationship between the theories of holomorphic functions and minimal surfaces, respectively.

L. Lichtenstein developed his ideas for conformal mappings between nonanalytic surfaces from 1911 to 1916. We owe to T. Carleman, about 1930, the profound observation that the class of pseudoholomorphic functions share the property of isolated zeroes with the much smaller class of holomorphic functions. This fact was utilized by P. Hartman and A. Wintner in 1953 for the investigation of singularities on nonanalytic surfaces.

The significance of isothermal parameters for surfaces of prescribed mean curvature was revealed by F. Rellich: In 1938 he established his H -surface-system. Then E. Heinz solved the Dirichlet problem for this system by topological

methods in 1954. Moreover, he developed the profound theory of nonlinear elliptic systems, in 1956/57, presented here. With his pioneering paper from 1952, E. Heinz also initiated the study of curvature estimates, still flourishing today.

In 1966, S. Hildebrandt investigated the behavior of minimal surfaces at the nonanalytic boundary. Moreover, Plateau's problem for prescribed variable mean curvature has been solved by S. Hildebrandt in 1969/70 – as well as regularity problems.

Very influential in this context was R. Courant's book on *Dirichlet's Principle* from 1950, who personally built the bridge between Germany and the United States of America – in Mathematics and beyond. This treatise above, inspired already by D. Hilbert, gives a simplified solution of Plateau's problem by J. Douglas and T. Radó, the first Fields medalists from 1930.

The Dirichlet problem, for the nonparametric equation of prescribed mean curvature H , was originally treated by T. Radó in 1930 for the case $H=0$ – and by J. Serrin in 1967 for arbitrary H .

In 1976, W. Jäger presented a uniqueness result for the Dirichlet problem of nonlinear elliptic systems with his well-known maximum principle. We should note that existence and regularity questions are quite well understood today. However, the study of the entire set of solutions and their classification remains a great challenge for the theory of nonlinear partial differential equations in the future.

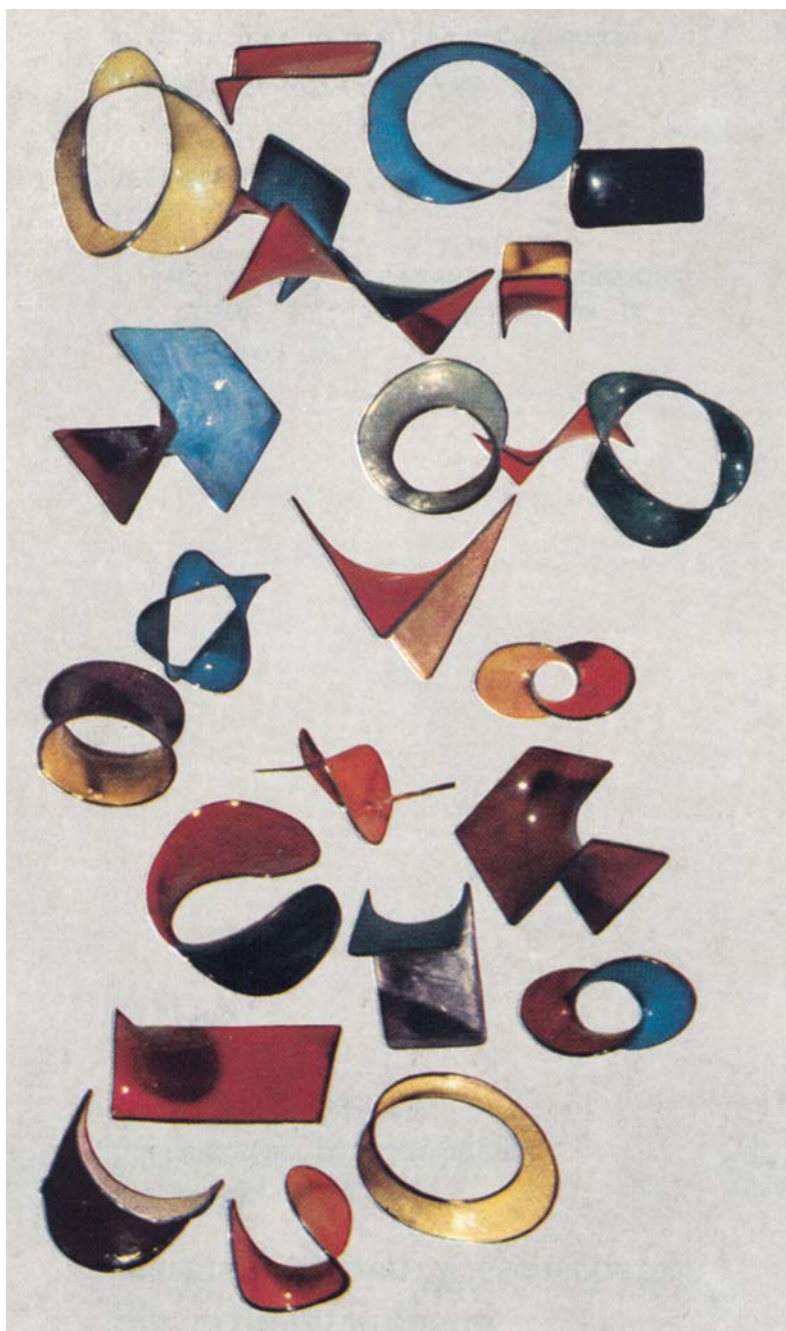
On the next page:

MINIMAL SURFACES SPANNING VARIOUS CONTOURS;

taken from the title-page of the monograph by

J. C. C. Nitsche: Vorlesungen über Minimalflächen,

Grundlehren Band **199**, Springer-Verlag, Berlin... (1975).



References

- [BS] H. Behnke, F. Sommer: *Theorie der analytischen Funktionen einer komplexen Veränderlichen*. Grundlehren der Math. Wissenschaften **77**, Springer-Verlag, Berlin ..., 1955.
- [BL] W. Blaschke, K. Leichtweiss: *Elementare Differentialgeometrie*. Grundlehren der Math. Wissenschaften **1**, 5. Auflage, Springer-Verlag, Berlin ..., 1973.
- [CH] R. Courant, D. Hilbert: *Methoden der mathematischen Physik I, II*. Heidelberger Taschenbücher, Springer-Verlag, Berlin ..., 1968.
- [D] K. Deimling: *Nichtlineare Gleichungen und Abbildungsgrade*. Hochschultext, Springer-Verlag, Berlin ..., 1974.
- [DHKW] U. Dierkes, S. Hildebrandt, A. Küster, O. Wohlrab: *Minimal surfaces I, II*. Grundlehren der Math. Wissenschaften **295, 296**, Springer-Verlag, Berlin ..., 1992.
- [E] L. C. Evans: *Partial Differential Equations*. AMS-Publication, Providence, RI., 1998.
- [G] P. R. Garabedian: *Partial Differential Equations*. Chelsea, New York, 1986.
- [GT] D. Gilbarg, N. S. Trudinger: *Elliptic Partial Differential Equations of Second Order*. Grundlehren der Math. Wissenschaften **224**, Springer-Verlag, Berlin ..., 1983.
- [Gr] H. Grauert: *Funktionentheorie I*. Vorlesungsskriptum an der Universität Göttingen im Wintersemester 1964/65.
- [GF] H. Grauert, K. Fritzsche: *Einführung in die Funktionentheorie mehrerer Veränderlicher*. Hochschultext, Springer-Verlag, Berlin ..., 1974.
- [GL] H. Grauert, I. Lieb: *Differential- und Integralrechnung III*. 1. Auflage, Heidelberger Taschenbücher, Springer-Verlag, Berlin ..., 1968.
- [GuLe] R. B. Guenther, J. W. Lee: *Partial Differential Equations of Mathematical Physics and Integral Equations*. Prentice Hall, London, 1988.
- [H1] E. Heinz: *Differential- und Integralrechnung III*. Ausarbeitung einer Vorlesung an der Georg-August-Universität Göttingen im Wintersemester 1986/87.
- [H2] E. Heinz: *Partielle Differentialgleichungen*. Vorlesung an der Georg-August-Universität Göttingen im Sommersemester 1973.

- [H3] E. Heinz: *Lineare Operatoren im Hilbertraum I*. Vorlesung an der Georg-August-Universität Göttingen im Wintersemester 1973/74.
- [H4] E. Heinz: *Fixpunktsätze*. Vorlesung an der Georg-August-Universität Göttingen im Sommersemester 1975.
- [H5] E. Heinz: *Hyperbolische Differentialgleichungen*. Vorlesung an der Georg-August-Universität Göttingen im Wintersemester 1975/76.
- [H6] E. Heinz: *Elliptische Differentialgleichungen*. Vorlesung an der Georg-August-Universität Göttingen im Sommersemester 1976.
- [H7] E. Heinz: *On certain nonlinear elliptic systems and univalent mappings*. Journal d'Analyse Math. **5**, 197-272 (1956/57).
- [H8] E. Heinz: *An elementary analytic theory of the degree of mapping*. Journal of Math. and Mechanics **8**, 231-248 (1959).
- [He1] G. Hellwig: *Partielle Differentialgleichungen*. Teubner-Verlag, Stuttgart, 1960.
- [He2] G. Hellwig: *Differentialoperatoren der mathematischen Physik*. Springer-Verlag, Berlin ..., 1964.
- [Hi1] S. Hildebrandt: *Analysis 1*. Springer-Verlag, Berlin ..., 2002.
- [Hi2] S. Hildebrandt: *Analysis 2*. Springer-Verlag, Berlin ..., 2003.
- [HS] F. Hirzebruch und W. Scharlau: *Einführung in die Funktionalanalysis*. Bibl. Inst., Mannheim, 1971.
- [HC] A. Hurwitz, R. Courant: *Funktionentheorie*. Grundlehren der Math. Wissenschaften **3**, 4. Auflage, Springer-Verlag, Berlin ..., 1964.
- [J] F. John: *Partial Differential Equations*. Springer-Verlag, New York ..., 1982.
- [Jo] J. Jost: *Partielle Differentialgleichungen. Elliptische (und parabolische) Gleichungen*. Springer-Verlag, Berlin ..., 1998.
- [M] C. Müller: *Spherical Harmonics*. Lecture Notes in Math. **17**, Springer-Verlag, Berlin ..., 1966.
- [N] J. C. C. Nitsche: *Vorlesungen über Minimalflächen*. Grundlehren **199**, Springer-Verlag, Berlin ..., 1975.
- [R] W. Rudin: *Principles of Mathematical Analysis*. McGraw Hill, New York, 1953.
- [S1] F. Sauvigny: *Analysis I*. Vorlesungsskriptum an der BTU Cottbus im Wintersemester 1994/95.
- [S2] F. Sauvigny: *Analysis II*. Vorlesungsskriptum an der BTU Cottbus im Sommersemester 1995.
- [Sc] F. Schulz: *Regularity theory for quasilinear elliptic systems and Monge-Ampère equations in two dimensions*. Lecture Notes in Math. **1445**, Springer-Verlag, Berlin ..., 1990.
- [V] I. N. Vekua: *Verallgemeinerte analytische Funktionen*. Akademie-Verlag, Berlin, 1963.

Index

- Adjoint operator 66
- Admissible approximation
 - of a completely continuous mapping 17
- Almost conformal parameters 375
- Associate gradient function 128
- Banach space 1
- Beltrami's differential equation in the complex form 359
- Bernstein's analyticity theorem 297
 - for nonparametric H -surfaces 300
- Bessel's inequality 59
- Bilinear form 73
 - bounded 73
 - Hermitian 73
 - strictly positive-definite 73
 - symmetric 73
- Boundary behavior of weak solutions 236
- Boundary condition
 - Dirichlet's 132
 - Neumann's 132
- Boundary estimate for weak solutions 215
- Boundary value problem
 - of Poincaré 131
 - of Riemann-Hilbert 133, 136, 144
 - in the normal form 137
 - Index 136
 - Riemann-Hilbert 154
- Cauchy's initial value problem
 - for hyperbolic systems 283–289
 - for quasilinear hyperbolic equations 289
- Characteristic triangle 284, 294
- Class of mappings $\Gamma(B, a, b, N)$ 340
- Completeness relation 59
- Conformal mapping 349
 - Elimination lemma 352
 - Global estimates 353
 - Stability theorem 361
- Conformal mappings
 - Inner estimates 351
- Curvature
 - Gaussian 262
 - mean 262
 - principal 261
- Curvature estimate of E. Heinz 346
- Degree of mapping
 - due to Leray-Schauder 17
- Diffeomorphic ball 161
- Distortion estimate of E. Heinz 341
- Eigenvalue problem
 - for weakly singular integral operators 110
 - of H. Weyl 53, 120
 - of Leray 9
 - of Sturm-Liouville 35, 114
 - of the n -dimensional oscillation equation 40, 53, 120
- Embedding
 - compact 205
- Equation of prescribed mean curvature 272

- Dirichlet's problem 373
- Euler's equation 269
- Euler's formula for the normal curvature 262
- Existence theorem
 - for completely continuous mappings 19
 - for linear elliptic equations 164
 - for weak elliptic differential equations 212
- Expansion theorem for kernels 111
- Extension
 - of an operator 65
- Extension theorem
 - for dense subspaces 65
 - of Hahn-Banach 25
- Fixed point theorem
 - of Banach 10
 - of Brouwer (for the unit simplex) 7
 - of Schauder 8
- Fourier-Plancherel integral theorem 87
- Function
 - superlinear 25
- Functional
 - bounded linear 64
 - linear 25
 - of E. Heinz 267
 - of S. Hildebrandt 267
- Fundamental theorem for elliptic differential operators 168
- Generalized area integral 266
- Generalized Green's function 251
- Graphs of prescribed mean curvature
 - Area estimate of R. Finn 365
 - Regularity 370
 - Stability 372
- Graphs of prescribed mean curvature
 - Compactness 368
- Green's function
 - for the Sturm-Liouville operator 37
 - of the Laplace operator 40
- H -surface 367
 - Branch points 379
 - Differential equation for the normal 367
 - immersed or free of branch points 367
- H -surface system 305
- Haar's method 241
- Harmonic mapping 349
- Harnack-Moser inequality 226
- Heinz's inequality 338
- Hermitian integral kernel 42
- Hilbert space 56
 - separable 56
- Hilbert's fundamental theorem 57
- Hilbert's selection theorem 89
- Hilbert-Schmidt integral kernel 68
- Homotopy theorem 18
- Hopf's estimates 146
- Index 21
- Index-sum formula 21
- Integral equation
 - of Fredholm 46
 - of the second kind 47
- Integral equations
 - of the first kind 45
- Integral operator
 - of Cauchy 128, 359
 - of Vekua 359
- Inverse
 - of an operator 69
- Involution 66
- Jäger's estimate 311
- Lemma of Zorn 29
- Leray-Schauder theorem 21
- Linear subspace 62
 - closed 62
 - Closure of a 62
- Lower bound
 - of a totally ordered set 27
- Mappings in Banach spaces
 - completely continuous (compact) 4
 - continuous 4
- Maximum principle
 - geometric, of E. Heinz 310
 - geometric, of S. Hildebrandt 370
 - of W. Jäger 310
- Minimal element
 - of a partially ordered set 27

- Minimal surface
 - of H. F. Scherk 272
- Minimal surface equation 272
 - n -dimensional 265
 - in divergence form 265
- Minimal surfaces spanning various
 - contours by J.C.C. Nitsche 380
- Morrey's class of functions 228
- Morrey's embedding theorem 234
- Moser's inequality 216
- Nonlinear elliptic systems
 - A priori estimate 330
 - Boundary-energy-estimate 314
 - Dirichlet problem 335
 - Dirichlet problem for 328
 - Global $C^{1,\alpha}$ -estimate 325
 - Gradient estimate of E. Heinz 320
 - Inner $C^{1,\alpha}$ -estimate 323
 - Inner energy estimate 313
- Norm
 - of a linear functional 64
 - Sobolev norm 189
- Norm-interpolation 177
- Operator
 - continuous 22
 - contracting 10
 - Fourier's integral 78
 - Hermitian 66
 - Hilbert-Schmidt 68
 - isometric 75
 - linear 22, 65
 - linear bounded 65
 - linear completely continuous
 - (compact) 23, 91
 - of Fredholm 97
 - of Hilbert-Schmidt 99, 109
 - of Riemann-Hilbert 154
 - of order n 138
 - of Riesz 227
 - singular integral 43
 - Sturm-Liouville 35
 - unitary 76
 - with finite square-norm 93
- Operators
 - contracting family of 10
 - unitary equivalent 77
- Orthogonal space 63
- Orthonormal system
 - complete 59
- Parseval's equation 60
- Plateau's problem 374–379
- Portrait of
 - D. Hilbert (1862–1943) 30
 - F. Rellich (1906–1955) 303
 - K. Friedrichs (1901–1982) 257
 - R. Courant (1888–1972) 126
 - H. Lewy (1904–1988) 303
- Pre-Hilbert-space 54
- Principle of the open mapping 22
- Principle of uniform boundedness 87
- Principle of unique continuation 216
- Projection theorem 64
- Projector 72
- Proposition
 - of Giesecke-Heinz 117
 - of E. Hopf 145
 - of Vekua 139, 143
- Quasilinear curvature equation 269
- Quasilinear elliptic differential equation
 - 362
- Quasilinear hyperbolic differential
 - equation 274–281
 - Characteristic curves 275
 - Characteristic form 275
 - Hyperbolic normal form 276, 280
- Regularity theorem of de Giorgi 243
- Representation theorem
 - for bilinear forms 74
 - of Fréchet-Riesz 64
- Riemann's integration method 291
- Riemannian function 295
- Riemannian integration method 296
- Schauder's continuity method 158
- Schauder's estimates 157, 169, 185
 - interior 160
- Scherk's minimal surface
 - graphic of 273
- Schwarzian integral formula 134, 354
- Selection theorem of Rellich-Kondrachov 205
- Set
 - compact 3

- convex 3
- partially ordered 27
- precompact 3, 91
- totally ordered 27
- Singular kernel 42
- Sobolev space 189, 194
- Sobolev's embedding theorem 201
- Spectral theorem
 - of F. Rellich 106
 - of Hilbert-Schmidt 109
- Surface
 - differential-geometrically regular 259
 - Fundamental form of a 260
 - Normal of a 259
 - Umbilical point of a 262
- Theorem
 - about inner regularity 165
 - about boundary regularity 166
 - about iterated kernels 52
 - about the continuous embedding 203
 - about the lattice property 199
 - of C.B. Morrey 233
 - of de Giorgi - Nash 224
 - of F. Riesz 24
 - of Fourier-Plancherel 87
 - of Fredholm 97
 - of Friedrichs 190, 192, 193
 - of H. Weyl 123
 - of Hartman-Wintner 130
 - of Heinz-Werner-Hildebrandt 335
 - of Hilbert-Schmidt 99
 - of I. Schur 52
 - of Jenkins-Serrin 244
 - of John-Nirenberg 232
 - of Lagrange-Gauß 272
 - of Lax-Milgram 74
 - of Meyers-Serrin 193
 - of Moser 226
 - of O. Toeplitz 69
 - of Plemelj 133
 - of Privalov 155
 - of reconstruction 162
 - of Rellich 270
 - of S. Bernstein 347
 - of Stampacchia 213
 - of the closed graph 23
 - of the inverse operator 22
 - of Trudinger 234
 - on the compactness of graphs 368
 - on the regularity of graphs 370
 - on weakly singular integral equations 102
- Tricomi's integral equation 360
- Uniformization theorem 361
- Unitary space 63
- Weak chain rule 198
- Weak convergence
 - in Hilbert spaces 87
- Weak convergence criterion 88
- Weak partial derivative 188
- Weak potential-theoretic estimates 227-234
- Weak product rule 197
- Weighted conformality relations 349
- Weighted distance function of W. Jäger 306
- Weingarten mapping 261
- Wiener's condition 236

- Aguilar, M.; Gitler, S.; Prieto, C.*: Algebraic Topology from a Homotopical Viewpoint
- Aksoy, A.; Khamsi, M. A.*: Methods in Fixed Point Theory
- Alevras, D.; Padberg M. W.*: Linear Optimization and Extensions
- Andersson, M.*: Topics in Complex Analysis
- Aoki, M.*: State Space Modeling of Time Series
- Arnold, V. I.*: Lectures on Partial Differential Equations
- Arnold, V. I.*: Ordinary Differential Equations
- Audin, M.*: Geometry
- Aupetit, B.*: A Primer on Spectral Theory
- Bachem, A.; Kern, W.*: Linear Programming Duality
- Bachmann, G.; Narici, L.; Beckenstein, E.*: Fourier and Wavelet Analysis
- Badescu, L.*: Algebraic Surfaces
- Balakrishnan, R.; Ranganathan, K.*: A Textbook of Graph Theory
- Balser, W.*: Formal Power Series and Linear Systems of Meromorphic Ordinary Differential Equations
- Bapat, R. B.*: Linear Algebra and Linear Models
- Benedetti, R.; Petronio, C.*: Lectures on Hyperbolic Geometry
- Benth, F. E.*: Option Theory with Stochastic Analysis
- Berberian, S. K.*: Fundamentals of Real Analysis
- Berger, M.*: Geometry I, and II
- Bliedtner, J.; Hansen, W.*: Potential Theory
- Blowey, J. F.; Coleman, J. P.; Craig, A. W. (Eds.)*: Theory and Numerics of Differential Equations
- Blowey, J.; Craig, A. (Eds.)*: Frontiers in Numerical Analysis. Durham 2004
- Blyth, T. S.*: Lattices and Ordered Algebraic Structures
- Börger, E.; Grädel, E.; Gurevich, Y.*: The Classical Decision Problem
- Böttcher, A.; Silbermann, B.*: Introduction to Large Truncated Toeplitz Matrices
- Boltyanski, V.; Martini, H.; Soltan, P. S.*: Excursions into Combinatorial Geometry
- Boltyanskii, V. G.; Efremovich, V. A.*: Intuitive Combinatorial Topology
- Bonnans, J. F.; Gilbert, J. C.; Lemaréchal, C.; Sagastizábal, C. A.*: Numerical Optimization
- Booss, B.; Bleecker, D. D.*: Topology and Analysis
- Borkar, V. S.*: Probability Theory
- Brunt B. van*: The Calculus of Variations
- Bühlmann, H.; Gisler, A.*: A Course in Credibility Theory and Its Applications
- Carleson, L.; Gamelin, T. W.*: Complex Dynamics
- Cecil, T. E.*: Lie Sphere Geometry: With Applications of Submanifolds
- Chae, S. B.*: Lebesgue Integration
- Chandrasekharan, K.*: Classical Fourier Transform
- Charlap, L. S.*: Bieberbach Groups and Flat Manifolds
- Chern, S.*: Complex Manifolds without Potential Theory
- Chorin, A. J.; Marsden, J. E.*: Mathematical Introduction to Fluid Mechanics
- Cohn, H.*: A Classical Invitation to Algebraic Numbers and Class Fields
- Curtis, M. L.*: Abstract Linear Algebra
- Curtis, M. L.*: Matrix Groups
- Cyganowski, S.; Kloeden, P.; Ombach, J.*: From Elementary Probability to Stochastic Differential Equations with MAPLE
- Dalen, D. van*: Logic and Structure
- Da Prato, G.*: An Introduction to Infinite-Dimensional Analysis
- Das, A.*: The Special Theory of Relativity: A Mathematical Exposition
- Debarre, O.*: Higher-Dimensional Algebraic Geometry
- Deitmar, A.*: A First Course in Harmonic Analysis

- Demazure, M.*: Bifurcations and Catastrophes
- Devlin, K. J.*: Fundamentals of Contemporary Set Theory
- DiBenedetto, E.*: Degenerate Parabolic Equations
- Diener, F.; Diener, M. (Eds.)*: Nonstandard Analysis in Practice
- Dimca, A.*: Sheaves in Topology
- Dimca, A.*: Singularities and Topology of Hypersurfaces
- DoCarmo, M. P.*: Differential Forms and Applications
- Duistermaat, J. J.; Kolk, J. A. C.*: Lie Groups
- Dumortier, F.*: Qualitative Theory of Planar Differential Systems
- Edwards, R. E.*: A Formal Background to Higher Mathematics Ia, and Ib
- Edwards, R. E.*: A Formal Background to Higher Mathematics IIa, and IIb
- Emery, M.*: Stochastic Calculus in Manifolds
- Emmanouil, I.*: Idempotent Matrices over Complex Group Algebras
- Endler, O.*: Valuation Theory
- Erez, B.*: Galois Modules in Arithmetic
- Everest, G.; Ward, T.*: Heights of Polynomials and Entropy in Algebraic Dynamics
- Farenick, D. R.*: Algebras of Linear Transformations
- Foulds, L. R.*: Graph Theory Applications
- Franke, J.; Härdle, W.; Hafner, C. M.*: Statistics of Financial Markets: An Introduction
- Frauenthal, J. C.*: Mathematical Modeling in Epidemiology
- Freitag, E.; Busam, R.*: Complex Analysis
- Friedman, R.*: Algebraic Surfaces and Holomorphic Vector Bundles
- Fuks, D. B.; Rokhlin, V. A.*: Beginner's Course in Topology
- Fuhrmann, P. A.*: A Polynomial Approach to Linear Algebra
- Gallot, S.; Hulin, D.; Lafontaine, J.*: Riemannian Geometry
- Gardiner, C. F.*: A First Course in Group Theory
- Gårding, L.; Tambour, T.*: Algebra for Computer Science
- Godbillon, C.*: Dynamical Systems on Surfaces
- Godement, R.*: Analysis I, and II
- Goldblatt, R.*: Orthogonality and Spacetime Geometry
- Gouvêa, F. Q.*: p -Adic Numbers
- Gross, M. et al.*: Calabi-Yau Manifolds and Related Geometries
- Gustafson, K. E.; Rao, D. K. M.*: Numerical Range. The Field of Values of Linear Operators and Matrices
- Gustafson, S. J.; Sigal, I. M.*: Mathematical Concepts of Quantum Mechanics
- Hahn, A. J.*: Quadratic Algebras, Clifford Algebras, and Arithmetic Witt Groups
- Hájek, P.; Havránek, T.*: Mechanizing Hypothesis Formation
- Heinonen, J.*: Lectures on Analysis on Metric Spaces
- Hlawka, E.; Schoißengeier, J.; Taschner, R.*: Geometric and Analytic Number Theory
- Holmgren, R. A.*: A First Course in Discrete Dynamical Systems
- Howe, R., Tan, E. Ch.*: Non-Abelian Harmonic Analysis
- Howes, N. R.*: Modern Analysis and Topology
- Hsieh, P.-F.; Sibuya, Y. (Eds.)*: Basic Theory of Ordinary Differential Equations
- Humi, M., Miller, W.*: Second Course in Ordinary Differential Equations for Scientists and Engineers
- Hurwitz, A.; Kritikos, N.*: Lectures on Number Theory
- Huybrechts, D.*: Complex Geometry: An Introduction
- Isaev, A.*: Introduction to Mathematical Methods in Bioinformatics
- Istas, J.*: Mathematical Modeling for the Life Sciences
- Iversen, B.*: Cohomology of Sheaves
- Jacod, J.; Protter, P.*: Probability Essentials
- Jennings, G. A.*: Modern Geometry with Applications
- Jones, A.; Morris, S. A.; Pearson, K. R.*: Abstract Algebra and Famous Impossibilities

- Jost, J.:* Compact Riemann Surfaces
- Jost, J.:* Dynamical Systems. Examples of Complex Behaviour
- Jost, J.:* Postmodern Analysis
- Jost, J.:* Riemannian Geometry and Geometric Analysis
- Kac, V.; Cheung, P.:* Quantum Calculus
- Kannan, R.; Krueger, C. K.:* Advanced Analysis on the Real Line
- Kelly, P.; Matthews, G.:* The Non-Euclidean Hyperbolic Plane
- Kempf, G.:* Complex Abelian Varieties and Theta Functions
- Kitchens, B. P.:* Symbolic Dynamics
- Kloeden, P.; Ombach, J.; Cyganowski, S.:* From Elementary Probability to Stochastic Differential Equations with MAPLE
- Kloeden, P. E.; Platen, E.; Schurz, H.:* Numerical Solution of SDE Through Computer Experiments
- Kostrikin, A. I.:* Introduction to Algebra
- Krasnoselskii, M. A.; Pokrovskii, A. V.:* Systems with Hysteresis
- Kurzweil, H.; Stellmacher, B.:* The Theory of Finite Groups. An Introduction
- Kyprianou, A.:* Introductory Lectures on Fluctuations of Lévy Processes with Applications
- Lang, S.:* Introduction to Differentiable Manifolds
- Luecking, D. H., Rubel, L. A.:* Complex Analysis. A Functional Analysis Approach
- Ma, Zhi-Ming; Roeckner, M.:* Introduction to the Theory of (non-symmetric) Dirichlet Forms
- Mac Lane, S.; Moerdijk, I.:* Sheaves in Geometry and Logic
- Marcus, D. A.:* Number Fields
- Martinez, A.:* An Introduction to Semiclassical and Microlocal Analysis
- Matoušek, J.:* Using the Borsuk-Ulam Theorem
- Matsuki, K.:* Introduction to the Mori Program
- Mazzola, G.; Milmeister G.; Weissman J.:* Comprehensive Mathematics for Computer Scientists 1
- Mazzola, G.; Milmeister G.; Weissman J.:* Comprehensive Mathematics for Computer Scientists 2
- Mc Carthy, P. J.:* Introduction to Arithmetical Functions
- McCrimmon, K.:* A Taste of Jordan Algebras
- Meyer, R. M.:* Essential Mathematics for Applied Field
- Meyer-Nieberg, P.:* Banach Lattices
- Mikosch, T.:* Non-Life Insurance Mathematics
- Mines, R.; Richman, F.; Ruitenburg, W.:* A Course in Constructive Algebra
- Moise, E. E.:* Introductory Problem Courses in Analysis and Topology
- Montesinos-Amilibia, J. M.:* Classical Tessellations and Three Manifolds
- Morris, P.:* Introduction to Game Theory
- Nikulin, V. V.; Shafarevich, I. R.:* Geometries and Groups
- Oden, J. J.; Reddy, J. N.:* Variational Methods in Theoretical Mechanics
- Øksendal, B.:* Stochastic Differential Equations
- Øksendal, B.; Sulem, A.:* Applied Stochastic Control of Jump Diffusions
- Poizat, B.:* A Course in Model Theory
- Polster, B.:* A Geometrical Picture Book
- Porter, J. R.; Woods, R. G.:* Extensions and Absolutes of Hausdorff Spaces
- Radjavi, H.; Rosenthal, P.:* Simultaneous Triangularization
- Ramsay, A.; Richtmeyer, R. D.:* Introduction to Hyperbolic Geometry
- Rautenberg, W.:* A Concise Introduction to Mathematical Logic
- Rees, E. G.:* Notes on Geometry
- Reisel, R. B.:* Elementary Theory of Metric Spaces
- Rey, W. J. J.:* Introduction to Robust and Quasi-Robust Statistical Methods
- Ribenboim, P.:* Classical Theory of Algebraic Numbers
- Rickart, C. E.:* Natural Function Algebras
- Roger G.:* Analysis II
- Rotman, J. J.:* Galois Theory

- Rubel, L. A.*: Entire and Meromorphic Functions
- Ruiz-Tolosa, J. R.*; *Castillo E.*: From Vectors to Tensors
- Runde, V.*: A Taste of Topology
- Rybakowski, K. P.*: The Homotopy Index and Partial Differential Equations
- Sagan, H.*: Space-Filling Curves
- Samelson, H.*: Notes on Lie Algebras
- Sauvigny, F.*: Partial Differential Equations 1
- Sauvigny, F.*: Partial Differential Equations 2
- Schiff, J. L.*: Normal Families
- Sengupta, J. K.*: Optimal Decisions under Uncertainty
- Sérroul, R.*: Programming for Mathematicians
- Seydel, R.*: Tools for Computational Finance
- Shafarevich, I. R.*: Discourses on Algebra
- Shapiro, J. H.*: Composition Operators and Classical Function Theory
- Simonnet, M.*: Measures and Probabilities
- Smith, K. E.*; *Kahanpää, L.*; *Kekäläinen, P.*; *Traves, W.*: An Invitation to Algebraic Geometry
- Smith, K. T.*: Power Series from a Computational Point of View
- Smoryński, C.*: Logical Number Theory I. An Introduction
- Stichtenoth, H.*: Algebraic Function Fields and Codes
- Stillwell, J.*: Geometry of Surfaces
- Stroock, D. W.*: An Introduction to the Theory of Large Deviations
- Sunder, V. S.*: An Invitation to von Neumann Algebras
- Tamme, G.*: Introduction to Étale Cohomology
- Tondeur, P.*: Foliations on Riemannian Manifolds
- Toth, G.*: Finite Möbius Groups, Minimal Immersions of Spheres, and Moduli
- Verhulst, F.*: Nonlinear Differential Equations and Dynamical Systems
- Weintraub, S. H.*: Galois Theory
- Wong, M. W.*: Weyl Transforms
- Xambó-Descamps, S.*: Block Error-Correcting Codes
- Zaanen, A. C.*: Continuity, Integration and Fourier Theory
- Zhang, F.*: Matrix Theory
- Zong, C.*: Sphere Packings
- Zong, C.*: Strange Phenomena in Convex and Discrete Geometry
- Zorich, V. A.*: Mathematical Analysis I
- Zorich, V. A.*: Mathematical Analysis II